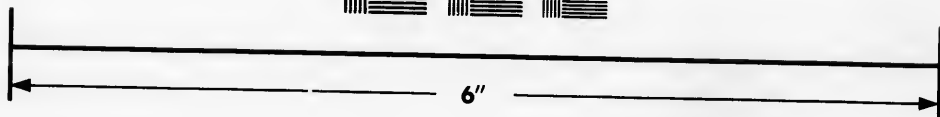
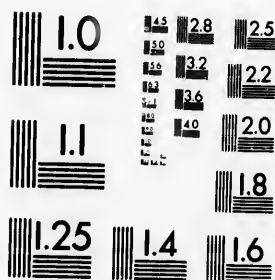


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM
Microfiche
Series
(Monographs)**

**ICMH
Collection de
microfiches
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1993

Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur

Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur

Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée

Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées

Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée

Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées

Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque

Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées

Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur

Pages detached/
Pages détachées

Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)

Showthrough/
Transparence

Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur

Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression

Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents

Continuous pagination/
Pagination continue

Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure

Includes index(es)/
Comprend un (des) index

Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

Title on header taken from: /
Le titre de l'en-tête provient:

Title page of issue/
Page de titre de la livraison

Caption of issue/
Titre de départ de la livraison

Masthead/
Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

Additional comments: / Parts of pages [iii]-[iv] are missing.
Commentaires supplémentaires:

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below /
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

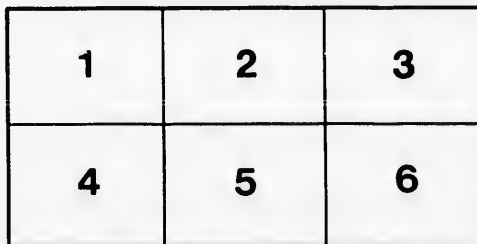
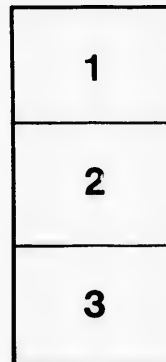
Izaak Walton Killam Memorial Library
Dalhousie University

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Izaak Walton Killam Memorial Library
Dalhousie University

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

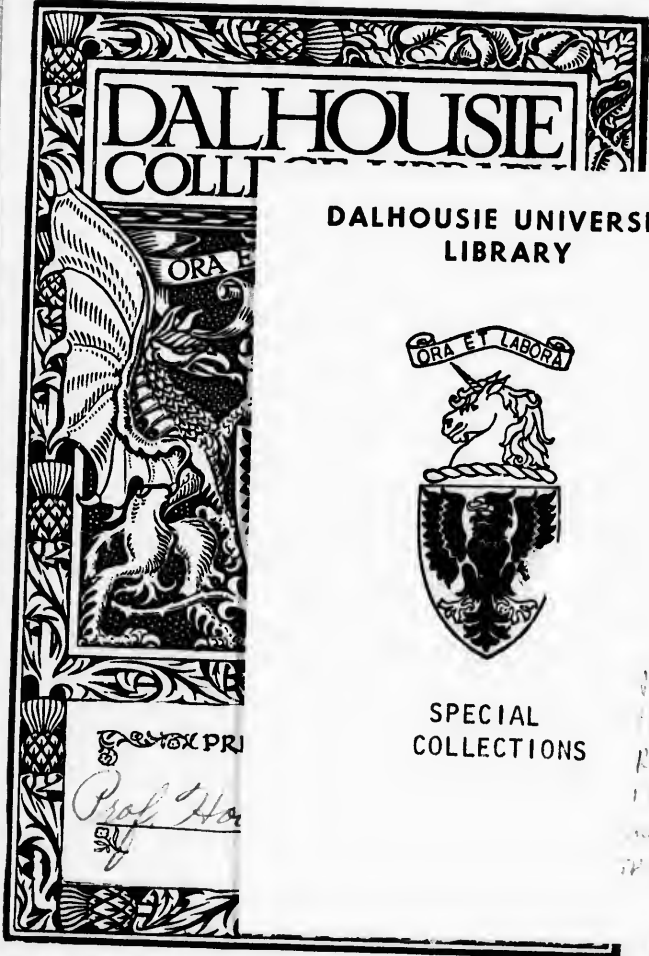
Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

PE
1117
R88
1880
no.5

haz



DALHOUSIE UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY



SPECIAL
COLLECTIONS

72
117
R88
1880
no.5

EX PR
Prof. H...

both
Man
3d
73
76
78
80
81
82

The Royal School Series.

No. V.

THE ROYAL READERS.

PRESCRIBED BY THE COUNCIL OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION
FOR USE IN THE PUBLIC SCHOOLS IN NOVA SCOTIA



ILLUSTRATED

HALIFAX: A. & W. MACKINLAY.

1882.

RSITY

11
117
188
1170
117
117

117

28826- June 12/33

PE

1117

R88

1880

no. 5

ev
m
im
th
an
wi
pac
com
rap
add
I
in e
nun
Deri
they
II
of w
Dicta
select
simila
Spelli
homon
revisio

WHILE this book, both in matter and in style, is a considerable advance upon No. IV., it will be found to meet for its own stage the special aim of the whole Series of ROYAL READERS—namely, to cultivate *the love of reading* by presenting interesting subjects treated in an attractive style. For convenience in class-reading, the lessons are divided into paragraphs of nearly equal length.

The following are the leading features in the plan of the volume:—

I. Very copious NOTES are appended to each lesson, explaining every point of difficulty that occurs in the course of it. These Notes make the book thoroughly *self-interpreting*—a matter of the greatest importance when it is remembered how rarely the scholars have within their reach the books of reference necessary to make every scientific and historical allusion intelligible. It is believed, also, that teachers will find it advantageous to have the requisite information in the compact form in which it is given in the Notes, not only for their own convenience, but also as a means of enabling them to advance more rapidly, as well as more surely, than if they had to communicate that additional information orally during school hours.

II. The ACCENTUATION and the MEANING of all the difficult words in each lesson are given in a Vocabulary at the end of it. The Pronunciation in phonetic spelling of Foreign words is given in the Notes. Derivations are introduced sparingly, and always in brackets, so that they may be either prescribed or not, at the discretion of the teacher.

III. The WORD LESSONS include, besides the Vocabularies, groups of words related in meaning; and two series of specially prepared Dictation Exercises, containing difficult words in common use, words selected from the Civil Service Examination Papers, and words of similar and of opposite meaning. They also embrace some useful Spelling Rules, with exercises upon them; and a complete list of homonyms, the list given in Book IV. having, for convenience in revision, been repeated in the present volume.

of
n
on
out
sition

V. The USEFUL KNOWLEDGE LESSONS at the end of Part II. embrace two sets, in the same form as those in the preceding books,—that of question and answer,—one on the *Senses*, and another on the *Atmosphere*. They also embrace a series of brief lessons on the important subject of the *Health of the Body*. Avoiding technical terms and scientific details, these lessons point out in simple language the things which it is most important that both young people and those who have charge of them, should know regarding the care of the body and the best means of keeping it in health. The same Division includes a series of lessons on *Plants and their Uses*; in which the most important facts regarding the vegetable products turned to account by man are briefly stated, and grouped in such a way as to be easy of remembrance.

NOTE.—At the urgent solicitation of many Teachers, additional POETRY for READING and RECITATION, and a selection of RHETORICAL PASSAGES in Prose, have been given in this edition. To make room for these, the Outlines of British History have been omitted. The latter are, on the whole, better suited for separate publication; and in this form they will shortly be issued, under the title of "A Brief History of England."

The CHOICE QUOTATIONS for committing to memory, which in the former edition were scattered through the book, will now be found printed together. (See p. 355.)

Though the book has been subjected to a careful revision, the changes made are not such as to prevent the two editions from being used in the same class.

M
A
Th
Al
Th
Th
Th
Th
Ma
Dea
Gra
The
A M
Nels
The
The
The
The
The
The
The
Living
David
Scenes
The Ro
Greenl
Greenl
Hymn
Iceland
Lady C
The Ba

CONTENTS.

* * * *The Italics indicate Poetical Pieces.*

PART I.

<i>Miriam's Song,</i>	Moore,	9
A Frenzied Adventure,	E. B.,	10
<i>The Destruction of Sennacherib's Army,</i>	Byron,	12
Above the Clouds,	Piazzi Smyth,	13
The Condor of the Andes,	Von Tschudi,	16
<i>The Brook,</i>	Tennyson,	20
The Prairie on Fire—Part I.,	Cooper,	21
The Prairie on Fire—Part II.,	Cooper,	27
<i>Mary, Queen of Scots,</i>	H. G. Bell,	31
Death of Little Nell,	Dickens,	3
<i>Grace Darling,</i>	Wordsworth,	41
The Frigate-Bird,	Michelet,	41
<i>A Mother's Love,</i>	Montgomery,	47
Nelson and Hardy,	Giffard,	49
<i>The Spanish Champion,</i>	Hemans,	52
The Chemistry of a Candle—Part I.,	"Household Words,"	55
The Chemistry of a Candle—Part II.,	"Household Words,"	60
<i>The Parting of Marnion and Douglas,</i>	Scott,	64
The "Mayflower,"	R. Mackenzie,	66
<i>The Pilgrim Fathers,</i>	Hemans,	72
Living Stoves,	George Wilson,	73
<i>David's Lament for Absalom,</i>	N. P. Willis,	79
Scenes in Canton,	Albert Smith,	81
<i>The Rainbow,</i>	Campbell,	87
Greenland—Part I.,	Compiled,	89
Greenland—Part II.,	Compiled,	94
<i>Hymn of the Hebrew Maid,</i>	Scott,	98
Iceland, and the Geysers,	Lord Dufferin,	100
<i>Lady Clare,</i>	Tennyson,	103
The Battle of the Nile,	Warburton,	106

POETRY
PASSAGES
these, the
o, on the
they will
"e former
nted to-

changes
d in the

<i>Lochiel's Warning</i> ,	Campbell,	110
<i>The Aurora</i> ,	Compiled,	113
<i>The Battle of the Baltic</i> ,	Campbell,	115
<i>Triumphs of the English Language</i> ,	J. G. Lyons,	118
<i>Young Lochinvar</i> ,	Scott,	121
WORD LESSONS :—		
Words Pronounced nearly Alike—		
Part I.,	}	123
Words Pronounced nearly Alike—		
Part II.,	}	126
Words Related in Meaning,		130
Rules for Adding the Verbal Suffixes,		135
Spelling Rule for <i>ci</i> and <i>ie</i> ,		136
DICTION EXERCISES,		137
Difficult Words from Civil Service		
Examination Papers,	}	140
HOW TO WRITE LETTERS,		141
HYMNS FOR RECITATION :—		
<i>The Nativity</i> ,	Campbell,	143
<i>The Song of the Angels</i> ,	Sears,	144
<i>Thy Will be Done</i> ,	Elliott,	145
<i>Behold, the Bridegroom Cometh</i> ,	Moultric,	146
<i>Too Late</i> ,	Tennyson,	147
<i>That Day of Wrath!</i>	Scott,	148

PART II.

<i>The Tidal Bore of the Tsien-Tang</i> ,	Dr. Macgowan,	149
<i>The Saxon and the Gael</i> ,	Scott,	153
<i>The Well of St. Keyne</i> ,	Southey,	157
<i>Capturing the Wild Horse</i> ,	W. Irving,	159
<i>Elegy written in a Country Churchyard</i> ,	Gray,	164
<i>The Siege of Quebec</i> ,	Warburton,	169
<i>The Deserted Village</i> ,	Goldsmith,	177
<i>Hudson Bay Territory</i> ,	R. M. Ballantyne,	179
<i>The Four Eras</i> ,	Rogers,	185
<i>The Skater and the Wolves</i> ,	Whitehead,	186
<i>The Village Preacher</i> ,	Goldsmith,	191
<i>An Indian's Traps</i> ,	R. M. Ballantyne,	193
<i>Virginia</i> ,	R. Mackenzie,	198
<i>Waterloo</i> ,	Byron,	203
<i>The Slave's Dream</i> ,	Longfellow,	206

CONTENTS.

vii

... 110	The Siege of Torquilstone—Part I, ...	Scott,	207
... 113	The Siege of Torquilstone—Part II, ...	Scott,	212
... 115	Pennsylvania,	R Mackenzie,	216
... 118	<i>The Sky-Lark</i> ,	Hogg,	220
... 121	Weathering Cape Horn,	Cheever,	221
	<i>On the Downfall of Poland</i> ,	Campbell,	226
... 123	The Eye—Part I,	George Wilson,	228
	The Eye—Part II,	George Wilson,	234
... 126	<i>The Shipwreck</i> ,	Byron,	238
... 130	The Five Great Oceans, ... ..	... ..	241
... 135	USEFUL KNOWLEDGE:—		
... 136	The Atmosphere, Clouds, Rain, &c., ... ..	... ..	251
... 137	The Senses, ... ..	... ..	253
... 140	HEALTH OF THE BODY:—		
... 141	Food, ... ..	... ..	255
	Cleanliness, ... ..	... ..	257
	Clothing, ... ..	... ..	258
... 143	Ventilation, ... ..	... ..	259
... 144	Exercise and Rest, ... ..	... ..	261
... 145	PLANTS AND THEIR USES:—		
... 146	Food Plants, ... ..	... ..	263
... 147	Industrial Plants, ... ..	... ..	274
... 148	Medicinal Plants, ... ..	... ..	284

PART III.

... 149	The Amazon,	Compiled,	287
... 153	NARRATIVE COMPOSITION—Model Exercise, ... ..	... ..	294
... 157	The Pacific Ocean—Part I,	Gosse,	297
... 159	The Pacific Ocean—Part II,	Gosse,	302
... 164	The Himalayah—Part I,	Hugh Murray,	306
... 169	The Himalayah—Part II,	Hugh Murray,	312
... 177	London and its Food,	Dr. Wynter,	317
... 179	The Waters of the Globe,	Compiled,	322
... 185	The Ocean,	Gosse,	325
... 186	<i>The Ocean</i> ,	Byron,	326
... 191	The Vision of Mirza,	Addison,	328
... 193	<i>A Psalm of Life</i> ,	Longfellow,	334
... 198	The Tide Wave in the Bay of Fundy,	Dawson,	336
... 203	Coal,	Ellis,	340
... 206	The Air Ocean,	Maury,	344
	Unwritten History, and How to Read it,	J. Mackenzie,	348

CHOICE QUOTATIONS—To be written from memory,	355
LIVES OF GREAT MEN:—	
Alfred the Great,	361
John Guttenberg,	361
Christopher Columbus,	362
Sir Walter Raleigh,	363
William Shakespeare,	363
John Milton,	364
Peter the Great,	365
Robert, Lord Clive,	365
Captain Cook,	366
Horatio Nelson,	366
George Washington,	367
Napoleon Buonaparte,	367
Sir Walter Scott,	368
Wellington,	368
RULES FOR GOOD READING,	369
POETRY FOR READING AND RECITATION:—	
<i>The Poor Fisher Folk</i> ,	Victor Hugo, 372
<i>The Ship on Fire</i> ,	H. Pateman, 377
<i>The Breton Sailor, Hervé Riel</i> ,	R. Browning, 382
<i>An Order for a Picture</i> ,	Alice Cary, 387
<i>Rock Me to Sleep</i> ,	Mrs. Akers, 390
<i>The Little Boy that Died</i> ,	J. D. Robinson, 392
<i>Ring out, Wild Bells</i> ,	Teunyson, 393
RHETORICAL PASSAGES:—	
Introduction—On Learning by Heart, <i>V. Lushington</i> ,	395
Pitt's Reply to Walpole,	397
Traces of Ocean,	<i>Hugh Miller</i> , 399
The Hungarian Revolution,	<i>Kossuth</i> , 400
Lord Brougham on Negro Slavery,	402
Chatham on the American War,	404
FIGURES OF SPEECH,	408
DICTATION EXERCISES:—	
On Synonyms and Antonyms,	409
PARAPHRASING,	413
Passages for Paraphrasing,	415

*. * A Point is prefixed to every word in each lesson that is explained in the Vocabulary

The Numbers refer to the Notes.

ar r
boas
con

! M
the
took
the v

... 355

... 301

... 361

... 362

... 363

... 368

... 364

... 365

... 365

... 366

... 366

... 367

... 367

... 368

... 368

... 363

... 369

... 372

... 377

... 382

... 387

... 390

... 392

... 393

... 395

... 397

... 399

... 400

... 402

... 404

... 408

... 409

... 413

... 415

FIFTH READING-BOOK.

MIRIAM'S SONG.¹

SOUND the loud 'timbrel o'er Egypt's dark sea !
 Jehovah has 'triumphed—His people are free !
 Sing !—for the pride of the 'tyrant² is broken :
 His chariots, his horsemen, all 'splendid and brave—
 How vain was their 'boasting !—the LORD hath but spoken,
 And chariots and horsemen are sunk in the wave !
 Sound the loud timbrel o'er Egypt's dark sea !
 Jehovah has triumphed—His people are free !

'Praise to the 'Conqueror ! praise to the LORD !
 His word was our 'arrow, His breath was our sword !
 Who shall return³ to tell Egypt the story
 Of those she sent forth in the hour of her pride ?
 For the LORD hath looked out from his pillar of glory,⁴
 And all her brave thousands are 'dashed in the tide.
 Sound the loud timbrel o'er Egypt's dark sea !
 Jehovah has triumphed—His people are free !

THOMAS MOORE (1770-1852).

ar'row, dart.
boast'ing, vaunt'ing.
con'queror, victor.

dashed, prostrated.
praise, glory.
splen'did, shin'ing.

tim'brel, kind of drum.
tri'umphed, con'quered.
ty rant, des'pot.

¹ Mir'iam's Song.—" And Miriam the prophetess, the sister of Aaron, took a timbrel in her hand ; and all the women went out after her with timbrels and with dances. And Miriam answered them, Sing ye to the LORD, for he hath triumphed gloriously ; the horse and his rider hath he thrown into

the sea." (*Exodus*, xv. 20, 21.) The reference of course is to the destruction of Pharaoh's host in the Red Sea.

² The ty'rant—the Pharaoh or King of Egypt.

³ Who shall return, &c.—The meaning is, the destruction has been so com-

plete that not one man is left to return with the story to Egypt.

⁴ Pillar of glory.—The pillar of cloud by day, and of fire by night. (*Exodus*, xiv. 24. See also *Hymn of the Hebrew Maid*, p. 99, stanza 1, and Note 2.)

A PERILOUS ADVENTURE.

THREE or four lads are standing in the channel below the great Natural Bridge of Virginia. They see hundreds of names carved in the limestone 'buttresses, and 'resolve to add theirs to the number. This done, one of them is 'seized with the mad 'ambition of carving his name higher than the highest there! His companions try to 'dissuade him from 'attempting so 'dangerous a feat, but in vain. He is a wild, 'reckless youth; and afraid now to yield, lest he should be thought a coward, he carves his way up and up the limestone rock, till he can hear the voices, but not the words of his terror-stricken playmates.

One of them runs off to the village, and tells the boy's father of his perilous situation. Others go for help in other directions; and ere long there are hundreds of people standing in the rocky channel below, and hundreds on the bridge above, all holding their breath, and awaiting the fearful 'catastrophe. The poor boy can just distinguish the tones of his father, who is shouting with all the 'energy of 'despair, — "William! William! don't look down! Your mother, and Henry, and Harriet are all here praying for you! Don't look down! Keep your eyes towards the top!"

The boy does not look down. His eye is fixed towards heaven, and his young heart on Him who reigns there. He grasps again his knife. He cuts another niche, and another foot is added to the hundreds that remove him from the reach of human help from below.

The sun is half way down in the west. Men are 'lean-

ing over the outer edge of the bridge with ropes in their hands. But fifty more niches must be cut before the longest rope can reach the boy! Two minutes more, and all will be over. That blade is worn to the last half inch. The boy's head reels. His last hope is 'dying in his heart, his life must hang upon the next niche he cuts. That niche will be his last.

At the last cut he makes, his knife—his faithful knife—drops from his little 'nerveless hand, and ringing down the 'precipice, falls at his mot' 's feet! An 'involuntary groan of despair runs through the crowd below, and all is still as the grave. At the height of nearly three hundred feet, the devoted boy lifts his hopeless heart and closing eyes to 'commend his soul to God.

Hark!—a shout falls on his ears from above! A man who is lying with half his length over the bridge, has caught a 'glimpse of the boy's head and shoulders. Quick as thought the noosed rope is within reach of the sinking youth. No one breathes. With a faint, 'convulsive effort, the 'swooning boy drops his arm into the noose.

Not a lip moves while he is dangling over that fearful abyss; but when a sturdy arm reaches down and draws up the lad, and holds him up before the tearful, breathless 'multitude—such shouting and such leaping and weeping for joy never 'greeted a human being so recovered from the jaws of death.

ambition, aspiration.	despair', hopelessness.	lean'ing, stretch'ing.
attempt'ing, undertak'ing.	dissuade', discour'age.	mul'titude, crowd.
buttresses, supports'.	dy'ing, expir'ing.	nerveless, fee'ble.
catas trophe, event'.	en'ergy, ve'hemence.	prec'ipice, cliff.
commend', commit'.	glimpse, glance.	reck'less, rash.
convul'sive, ag'itated.	greet'ed, wel'comed.	resolve', deter'mine.
dan'gerous, per'ilous.	invol'untary, unintentional.	seized, inspired'.
		swoon'ing, faint'ing.

QUESTIONS.—What did the boys see on the limestone rocks? What did they resolve to do? What did one of them propose? Who came to witness his dangerous position? In what did his chance of safety lie? How was he at last saved?

THE DESTRUCTION OF SENNACHERIB'S ARMY.

THE Assyrian¹ came down like the wolf on the fold,
And his cohorts² were 'gleaming with purple and gold,
And the 'sheen of their spears was like stars on the sea,
When the blue waves roll nightly on deep Galilee.

Like the leaves of the forest when summer is green,
That host with their 'banners at sunset were seen;
Like the leaves of the forest when autumn hath blown,
That host on the morrow lay 'withered and strown.

For the Angel of Death spread his wings on the blast,³
And breathed in the face of the foe as he passed ;
And the eyes of the sleepers 'waxed dead and chill,
And their hearts but once heaved, and for ever were still.

And there lay the steed with his nostrils all wide,
But through them there rolled not the breath of his pride ;
And the foam of his 'gasping lay white on the turf,
And cold as the spray of the rock-beating surf.

And there lay the rider, 'distorted and pale,
With the dew on his brow and the rust on his mail ;
And the tents were all 'silent, the banners alone,
The lances unlifted, the trumpets unblown.

And the widows of Asshur⁴ are loud in their 'wail;
And the idols are broke in the temple of Baal ;⁵
And the might of the Gentile, unsmote by the sword,⁶
Hath melted like snow in the glance of the LORD !

LORD BYRON (1788-1824).

ban'ners, stand'ards.
distort'ed, deformed'.
gasp'ing, pant'ing.

gleam'ing, spark'ling.
sheen, bright'ness.
si'lent, noise'less.

wail, lamenta'tion.
waxed, became'.
with'ered, fad'ed.

¹ The Assyrian—Sennacherib, King of Assyria, who invaded Judah in the reign of Hezekiah, and was pacified by a tribute. But Sennacherib broke his pledge and suddenly sent a blasphemous letter to the king at Jerusalem,

threatening him with destruction. Before this threat could be carried out, a "blast" from the LORD killed 185,000 of the Assyrian host in one night. (See 2 Kings, xix.)

² Cohort, a division of the Roman

army, a tenth part of a legion; here put for companies or troops generally.

³The blast.—Thought by some to have been the poisonous wind, the sirocco, which blows from the Libyan Desert towards Italy, Greece, and Syria.

⁴Assh'ur, Assyria.

⁵Ba'al, the chief idol of the Assyri-

ans; generally called Bel or Belus. The word *Baal* means "lord," and was the general name for the "strange gods" of the nations adjoining Israel, especially of the Phœnicians.

⁶Unsmote by the sword.—Because their destruction was accomplished by natural means, without the aid of man.

"ABOVE THE CLOUDS."

In 1856 an attempt was made, under the 'auspices of the British Government, to 'commence a series of 'observations in some region "above the clouds," where the 'serene and quiet air would be specially favourable for viewing the heavenly bodies. The island of Teneriffe¹ was selected for this purpose, as combining more of the required advantages than any other mountain within easy reach of Europe.

The 'expedition was under the direction of Piazzì Smyth, the 'distinguished astronomer at Edinburgh; who, in a remarkable and interesting work, has since published a 'narrative of the expedition. In an article contributed to a popular magazine he thus 'graphically describes the ascent of Teneriffe to a point high "above the clouds:"—

It was only a few days after—on a morning also cloudy, and with north-east cloud too—that the little party set forth from the town of Orotava, on the northern coast of Teneriffe, to climb the great mountain, and put to the only true test of 'actual 'practice their hopes of getting "above the clouds." Through long, winding, stony pathways, between vineyards and cactus plantations,² between orange groves and fig-trees, they proceeded, always 'ascending; past gardens, and then past orchards, still ever ascending; past corn-fields and oat-fields, ascending yet higher, and then amongst natural 'vegetation only—ferns and heath and some few wild laurels; and now, at a height of 3000 feet vertical, they are close under the cloud.

Before entering therein, let us pause for a moment and survey the beauties of creation in the region we are leaving behind. If, for that one purpose of severe astronomy, a position below the clouds is unsuitable, yet what an infinite amount of benefit for man to enjoy, and of beauty for him to contemplate, is connected therewith ! Beneath the clouds are kindly rains and gentle dews ; and these, assisted by a warm climate, encourage all those exquisite forms of vegetation which we have admired clothing the lower slopes of the mountain. Without these, where were the fruits to support human life ; where the buds and blossoms and fading flowers which teach us many a lesson useful to life eternal ?

But duty now calls us on our upward way. Before many more seconds are passed, first comes one cold hurrying blast, with mist upon its wings, and then another, and another. Then, in the midst of a constant dense wet fog, all creation is shut out of our view, except the few feet of sloping earth on which we are treading, and that appears of a dull gray ; and the occasional spiders' webs seen across our path are loaded with heavy drops of moisture.

For half an hour we must toil on and on through this winding-sheet of gloom ; perpetually on the same upward way, but strong in faith and hope of what must in the end be presented to our eyes ; on still, and up higher, when suddenly a momentary break appears overhead, and a portion of sky is seen—oh, so blue !—but it is lost again.

In a few minutes, however, another opening, another blue patch is seen ; and then another, and another. Before three minutes more are passed, all the hurrying clouds seem blown on one side. Fair sky is everywhere above and around, a brilliant sun is shining, and there, there below us, is the upper surface of the clouds, extending far and wide, like a level plain, shutting out lowland and city and sea all from view, and in their place substituting brilliant reflections of solar light, which

make the surface of this new mist-country look whiter than snow! Yes, indeed, we are now "above the clouds;" and this view that we have attempted to describe is the first example of the 'heightened, the advanced, the glorified appearance of even Earth's sombre fog-banks to those who are 'privileged for a time to look on them from the heavenward side.

"Above the clouds!"—not only no rain, no mist, no dew, but a scorching sun, and an air, both by day and by night, dry to almost an 'alarming degree. The further we advance, and the higher we ascend, the drier becomes the air; while at the same time the strength of the north-east trade-wind³ is continually 'decreasing, and at the height of about six or seven thousand feet has 'completely died away.

Not that it has ceased elsewhere as well, for the driving clouds below show that it is still in its 'accustomed 'violence there. The distant movements of those rollers of white cloud betray that it must yet be raging down there in all its strength, tearing the mist piecemeal, and bowing down the heads of suffering palm-trees, and lashing the sea into foam-crested waves. Heaven grant that no cry of shipwrecked 'mariners be borne on the breeze; and, more still, that no evil thoughts be 'engendering in the cities of men.

It was when our party on the mountain were in the fullest enjoyment of their daily and nightly views of the heavens, that their friends in the towns of Teneriffe near the sea-coast wrote to them most 'sympathizingly: "Oh! what 'dreadful weather you must have been suffering! Down here we have had for three weeks the most frightful 'continuance of storms—constant clouds, rain, and howling winds; and if that was the case with us, what must it not have been with you at the greater height!"

Yet at the greater height, at that very time, the air was tranquil and serene, the sky clear, and bad weather en-

tirely 'confined to that lower depth in the atmosphere, beneath "the grosser clouds."

accus'tomed, usual.
ac'tual, real.
alarm'ing, disqui'eting.
ascend'ing, mount'ing.
aus'pices, patronage.
brill'iant, gorge'ous.
commence', begin'.
complete'ly, entire'ly.
confined', lim'ited.
contem'plate, consid'er.
contin'uan'ce, succes'sion
decreas'ing, dimin'ish-
ing.
disting'uish'ed, em'inent

dread'ful, ter'rible.
engen'dering, grow'ing.
expedi'tion, en'terprise.
ex'quisite, del'icate.
graph'ically, forc'ibly.
height'ened, el'e'vated.
hur'rying, fleet'ing.
mar'iners, sea'men.
mo'mentary, trans'ient.
nar'rative, account'.
observa'tions, investi-
ga'tions.
perpet'ually, constan'tly
prac'tice, experi'ence.

priv'ileged, permit'ted.
re'gion, dist'ict.
serene', tran'quil.
severe', ac'curate.
sub'stituting, exchang'-
ing.
survey', exam'ine.
sympathiz'ingly, com-
pas'sionately.
tread'ing, walk'ing.
unsuit'able, inconve'-
nient.
vegeta'tion, plant life.
vi'olence, ve'hemence.

¹ Tenerife', one of the Canary Islands (belonging to Spain), situated off the north-west coast of Africa. Its most remarkable feature is the Peak of Tenerife, an extinct volcano, which is upwards of 12,000 feet high. The Canary Islands yield wine, oil, grain, sugar-cane, and fruits.

² Cactus plantations.—The cactus is cultivated partly for the Indian or prickly pear which grows upon some species, but chiefly for the sake of the cochineal insect, which feeds upon this plant, and from which a valuable dye is procured.

³ Trade-winds, constant winds that

blow in the tropical regions of the great oceans, especially in the Atlantic, where they are most regular. Currents of cold air are always flowing from the poles to the equator, to supply the place of the hot air which rises there from the surface of the earth. If the globe were at rest these would be due north and south winds; but as the globe turns from west to east more quickly than the surrounding air, these lagging currents become a north-east and a south-east wind respectively. They are called trade-winds because of their great advantage to navigators in sailing from east to west.

QUESTIONS.—What place was selected for the astronomical expedition of 1856? Who directed it? At what height was the party close under the cloud? What benefits arise to man from being beneath the clouds? How long was the party in piercing the cloud? What was the state of the sky above it? What was the appearance of the clouds from above? What was the state of the air as they ascended higher? What change did the trade-wind undergo? What showed that it had not ceased elsewhere? What was the state of the weather near the sea-coast? What, above the clouds?

THE CONDOR OF THE ANDES.

In those 'sterile heights¹ Nature withholdeth her 'fostering influence alike from vegetable and from animal life. The scantiest vegetation can scarcely draw nutriment from the 'ungenial soil, and animals shun the dreary and shelter-

less wilds. The condor, or South American vulture, alone finds itself in its native element amidst these mountain deserts. On the inaccessible summits of the Cordillera, and at an elevation of from 10,000 to 15,000 feet, this bird builds its nest, and hatches its young in the months of April and May.

Few animals have attained so wide a celebrity as the condor. This bird was known in Europe at a period when its native land was numbered among those fabulous regions which are regarded as the scenes of imaginary wonders. The most extravagant accounts of the condor were written and read; and general credence was granted to every story which travellers brought from the fairy-land of gold and silver. It was only at the commencement of the present century that Humboldt² overthrew the extravagant notions that had previously prevailed respecting the size, strength, and habits of this extraordinary bird.

(11)



The full-grown condor measures, from the point of the beak to the end of the tail, from four feet ten inches to five feet; and from the tip of one wing to that of the other, from twelve to fourteen feet! This bird feeds chiefly upon carrion;³ it is only when 'impelled by hunger that it seizes living animals, and even then only the small and 'defenceless, such as the young of sheep, vicuñas,⁴ and llamas.⁵

It cannot raise great weights with its feet; which, however, it uses to aid the power of its beak. The principal strength of the condor lies in its neck and in its feet; yet it cannot, when flying, carry a weight 'exceeding eight or ten pounds. All accounts of sheep and calves being carried off by condors are mere exaggerations.

The bird passes a great part of the day in sleep, and hovers in quest of prey chiefly in the morning and evening. Whilst 'soaring at a height beyond the reach of human eyes, the 'sharp-sighted condor 'discerns its prey on the level heights beneath it, and darts down upon it with the swiftness of lightning. When a bait is laid, it is curious to observe the number of condors which 'assemble in a quarter of an hour in a spot near which not one had been previously visible. These birds possess the senses of sight and smell in a 'singularly powerful degree.

Some old travellers have 'affirmed that the plumage of the condor cannot be pierced by a musket ball. This 'absurdity is scarcely worthy of contradiction; but it is nevertheless true that the bird has a singular 'tenacity of life, and that it is seldom killed by fire-arms, unless when shot in some vital part.

Its plumage, 'particularly on the wings, is very strong and thick. The natives, therefore, seldom attempt to shoot the condor. They usually catch it by traps or by the lasso, or kill it by stones flung from slings, or by the bolas.⁶

A curious method of 'capturing the condor alive is practised in one province. A fresh cow-hide, with some

fr
th
be
bu
co
up
un
in
win
spe
vill
of
cha

absu
affir
am'b
asser
cap't
celeb
comm
ning
defen
discer
excee

'Ste
lofty
South
'Hu
'Car
charop
'Vic
the ca
Americ
silken
the alpa

QUEST
its nest
overthre
does it c
in quest
the nativ
curious r
live cond

fragments of flesh adhering to it, is spread out on one of the level heights, and an Indian provided with ropes creeps beneath it, whilst some others station themselves in 'ambush near the spot ready to assist him. Presently a condor, attracted by the smell of the flesh, darts down upon the cow-hide; and then the Indian, who is concealed under it, seizes the bird by the legs, and binds them fast in the skin, as if in a bag. The captured condor flaps its wings, and makes 'ineffectual attempts to fly, but is speedily secured, and carried in 'triumph to the nearest village. Live condors are 'frequently sold in the markets of Chili and Peru, where a very fine one may be 'purchased for a dollar and a half.⁷

DR. J. VON TSCHUDI: *Travels in Peru.*

absur'dity, non'sense.
 affirmed', assert'ed.
 am' bush, concealment.
 assem'ble, collect'.
 capt'uring, seiz'ing.
 celeb' rity, distinc'tion.
 commence'ment, begin'-
 ning.
 defence'less, unprotect'-
 discern's', deseries'. [ed.
 exceed'ing, surpass'ing.

extraor'dinary, won'-
 derful.
 extrav'agant, exagger-
 ated.
 fab'ulous, leg'endary.
 fos'tering, nour'ishing.
 fre'quently, oft'en.
 impelled', driven.
 inacces'sible, unap-
 proach'able.
 ineffec'tual, fruit'less.

partic'ularly, espec'ially
 purch'ased, bought.
 sharp-sight'ed, keen-
 eyed.
 sin'gularly, peculi'arly.
 soar'ing, fly'ing.
 ster'ile, bar'ren.
 sum'mits, peaks.
 tenac'ity, reten'tiveness.
 tri'umph, exulta'tion.
 ungen'ial, unfavourable.

¹ Sterile heights.—The Andes, the lofty range of mountains traversing South America from north to south.

² Hum'boldt.—See p. 93, Note 5.

³ Car' rion, dead or putrid flesh. [Fr. charogne, from Lat. caro, flesh.]

⁴ Vicu'ña (*vicuonya*), an animal of the camel kind, inhabiting South America; much prized for its fine silken wool. It somewhat resembles the alpaca or Peruvian sheep.

⁵ Llama, another animal of the camel kind, found in large numbers on the mountains of Peru. It is used as a beast of burden, and is valued for its flesh, as well as for its light, woolly hair.

⁶ Bo'las, a ball of stone or iron attached to a thong, and thrown with great force and precision.

⁷ A dollar and a half,—about six shillings and threepence in English money.

QUESTIONS.—What other name is given to the condor? Where does it build its nest? What accounts of it were current before the present century? Who overthrew these? What are the dimensions of a full-grown condor? On what does it chiefly feed? Where does its principal strength lie? When does it go in quest of prey? What shows the keenness of its sight and smell? Why do the natives seldom attempt to shoot the condor? How do they kill it? What curious method of capturing it is practised in one province? For what may a live condor sometimes be bought?

THE BROOK.

I come from 'haunts of coot and hern,¹
 I make a sudden 'sally,
 And 'sparkle out among the fern,
 To 'bicker down a valley.
 By thirty hills I hurry down,
 Or slip between the ridges;
 By twenty thorps,² a little town,
 And half a hundred bridges;
 Till, last, by Philip's farm I flow,
 To join the 'brimming river;—
 For men may come, and men may go,
 But I go on for ever.

I chatter over stony ways,
 In little sharps and trebles;
 I bubble into 'eddyng bays,
 I 'babble on the pebbles.
 With many a curve my bank I fret
 By many a field and fallow,³
 And many a 'fairy foreland⁴ set
 With willow-weed and mallow.
 I chatter, chatter, as I flow
 To join the brimming river;—
 For men may come, and men may go,
 But I go on for ever.

I wind about, and in and out,
 With here a 'blossom sailing,
 And here and there a 'lusty trout,
 And here and there a grayling,
 And here and there a foamy flake
 Upon me as I travel,
 With many a silvery water-break
 Above the golden 'gravel,
 And draw them all along, and flow
 To join the brimming river;—
 For men may come, and men may go,
 But I go on for ever.

bab'
 bick'
 bios'
 brim'
 ed'dy'
 fair'y

¹ Co
 frequ
 hills.
² Th
 compo
 [Old E
 dorf, a
³ Fa
 sown;
 yellow
⁴ For

[THE
 there is
 grassy
 wildly
 expans
 furnish
 animal

I steal by 'lawns and grassy plots,
 I slide by hazel covers,
 I move the sweet forget-me-nots
 That grow for happy lovers.
 I slip, I slide, I gloom, I glance,
 Among my 'skimming swallows ;
 I make the netted sunbeam dance
 Against my sard'y shallows.
 I 'murmur under moon and stars
 In brambly 'wildernesses ;
 I 'linger by my 'shingly bars ;
 I loiter round my cresses ;
 And out again I curve and flow,
 To join the brimming river ;—
 For men may come, and men may go,
 But I go on for ever.

ALFRED TENNYSON.¹

bab'ble, chat'ter.
 bick'er, brawl.
 blos'som, flower.
 brim'ming, swelling.
 ed'dying, whir'ing.
 fair'y, fanciful.

grav'el, sand and peb'bles
 haunts, resorts.
 lawns, meads.
 lin'ger, lo'ter.
 lust'y, strong.
 mur'mur, gur'gle.

sal'y, leap.
 shin'gly, grav'elly.
 skim'ming, glid'ing.
 spar'kle, glis'ten.
 wilderness'es, confused
 thick'ets.

¹ Coot and hern, water-birds that frequent quiet streams among the hills.

² Thorp, a hamlet ; generally used in composition—as *Milthorpe Thorparch*. [Old Eng. *thorp*, a group of houses ; Ger. *dorf*, as in *Düsseldorf*.]

³ Fallow, land ploughed, but not sown ; lit. *yellow land*. [Old Eng. *fealo*, yellowish.]

⁴ Foreland, a piece of flat marshy

land projected into the bed of the brook. Set means planted. Willow-weed and Mallow are wild-plants that grow luxuriantly in marshy ground.

⁵ Alfred Tennyson, Poet Laureate ; born in Lincolnshire in 1810 ; gained the Chancellor's medal at Cambridge in 1829 for a poem on *Timbuctoo* ; succeeded Wordsworth as Poet Laureate in 1850. Chief works: *In Memoriam* and *The Idylls of the King*.

THE PRAIRIE ON FIRE.

[THE PRAIRIES.—Between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains there is a vast extent of country, consisting of boundless meadows or grassy plains, called *Prairies*. The soil is fertile and the vegetation wildly 'luxuriant ; and as the tall grass waves in the wind over the wide expanse, it resembles the rolling of an 'emerald ocean. These plains furnish food for countless herds of buffaloes, elks, antelopes, and other animals that feed on herbage. They move continually to and fro in

vast masses, as the seasons change and the state of the pasture drives them to new fields.

Different regions of the prairies have different characters. The wide undulating plains, frequented by buffaloes and covered with grass, are called *Rolling Prairies*, from their general resemblance to the long, heavy swell of the ocean, when subsiding after a storm; and *Dry Prairies*, because they are generally destitute of water. These are the most common and extensive.

Other regions abound in springs, and are covered with shrubs and bushes. These are called *Bushy Prairies*.

Lastly, there are the *Alluvial or Wet Prairies*, which are covered with rich verdure and gorgeous flowers, and which in the rainy season are frequently overflowed.

Sometimes a prairie is set on fire, either accidentally or by design. A prairie on fire is one of the most terrible things in nature. The ocean of flame rolls onward and onward before the wind, with irresistible might, devouring everything that lies in its path. Drove of wild horses, buffaloes, antelopes, rush madly before the advancing flames, beasts of prey forgetting their enmities in the midst of the common danger. Crowds of vultures and other birds of prey follow the course of the fire, and seize upon the carcasses which the flames have not completely consumed.]

PART I.

THE sleep of the fugitives lasted for several hours. The trapper¹ was the first to shake off its influence, as he had been the last to court its refreshment. Rising just as the gray light of day began to brighten that portion of the studded vault² which rested on the eastern margin of the plain, he summoned his companions from their warm lairs, and pointed out the necessity of their being once more on the alert.

"See, Middleton!" exclaimed Inez, in a sudden burst of youthful pleasure, that caused her for a moment to forget her situation, "how lovely is that sky; surely it contains a promise of happier times!"

"It is glorious!" returned her husband. "Glorious and heavenly is that streak of vivid red; and here is a still brighter crimson. Rarely have I seen a richer rising of the sun."

"Rising of the sun!" slowly repeated the old man, lift-

the pasture drives

characters. The wide
red with grass, are
balance to the long,
storm; and *Dry*
cer. These are the

l with shrubs and

which are covered
in the rainy season

tally or by design.
s in nature. The
wind, with irresist-
h. Drove of wild
advancing flames,
st of the common
y follow the course
flames have not com-

ral hours. The
quence, as he had
ising just as the
portion of the
margin of the
their warm lairs,
ng once more on

a sudden burst of
moment to forget
urely it contains

“Glorious and
d here is a still
richer rising of

he old man, lift-



A PRAIRIE ON FIRE.

ing his tall person from his seat with a 'deliberate and 'abstracted air, while he kept his eye 'riveted on the changing and certainly beautiful tints that were 'garnishing the vault of heaven. "Rising of the sun!—I like not such risings of the sun. Ah's me! the Indians have circumvented³ us. The prairie is on fire!"

"Oh, dreadful!" cried Middleton, catching Inez to his bosom, under the instant impressioⁿ of the 'imminence of their danger. "There is no time to lose, old man; each instant is a day. Let us fly!"

"Whither?" 'demanded the trapper, motioning him, with calmness and dignity, to arrest his steps. "In this wilderness of grass and reeds, we are like a vessel in the broad lakes without a compass. A single step on the wrong course might prove the 'destruction of us all. It is seldom danger is so pressing that there is not time enough for reason to do its work, young officer; therefore let us await its biddings."

"For my part," said Paul Hover, looking about him with an 'unequivocal expression of concern, "I 'acknowledge that should this dry bed of weeds get fairly into flame, a bee would have to make a flight higher than common, to prevent his wings from being scorched. Therefore, old trapper, I agree with the captain, and say, Mount and run!"

"Ye are wrong—ye are wrong;—man is not a beast, to follow the gift of instinct, and to snuff up his knowledge by a taint in the air or a rumbling in the ground; but he must see, and reason, and then conclude. So, follow me a little to the left, where there is a rising in the ground whence we may make our 'reconnoitrings."

The old man waved his hand with authority, and led the way, without further parlan^ce,⁴ to the spot he had indicated, followed by the whole of his alarmed companions. An eye less practised than that of the trapper might have failed in discovering the gentle 'elevation to which he

alluded, and which looked on the surface of the meadow like a growth a little taller than common.

When they reached the place, however, the stunted grass itself announced the absence of that moisture which had fed the rank weeds of most of the plain, and furnished a clew to the evidence by which he had judged of the formation of the ground hidden beneath. Here a few minutes were lost in breaking down the tops of the surrounding herbage—which, notwithstanding the advantage of their position, rose even above the heads of Middleton and Paul—and in obtaining a look-out that might command a view of the surrounding sea of fire.

The examination which his companions so instantly and so intently made, rather served to assure them of their desperate situation than to appease their fears. Huge columns of smoke were rolling up from the plain, and thickening in gloomy masses around the horizon. The red glow which gleamed upon their enormous folds, now lighted their volumes with the glare of the conflagration, now flashed to another point, as the flame beneath glided ahead, leaving all behind enveloped in awful darkness, and proclaiming louder than words the character of the imminent and rapidly approaching danger.

"This is terrible!" exclaimed Middleton, folding the trembling Inez to his heart. "At such a time as this, and in such a manner!"

"The gates of heaven are open to all who truly believe," murmured the gentle wife.

"This resignation is maddening! But we are men, and will make a struggle for our lives!—How now, my brave and spirited friend;—shall we yet mount and push across the flames; or shall we stand here, and see those we most love perish in this frightful manner without an effort?"

"I am for a swarming-time and a flight before the hive is too hot to hold us," said the bee hunter, to whom it will be at once seen that the half-distracted Middleton had

addressed himself.—“Come, old trapper, you must acknowledge this is but a slow way of getting out of danger. If we tarry here much longer, it will be in the fashion that the bees lie round the straw after the hive has been smoked⁵ for its honey. You may hear the fire begin to roar already; and I know by experience that when the flame once gets fairly into the prairie grass, he is no sloth that can outrun it.”

“Think you,” returned the old man, pointing scornfully at the mazes of the dry and matted grass which environed them, “that mortal feet can outstrip the speed of fire on such a path?”

“What say you, friend doctor?” cried the bewildered Paul, turning to the naturalist with that sort of helplessness with which the strong are often apt to seek aid of the weak, when human power is baffled by the hand of a mightier Being;—“what say you? Have you no advice to give away in a case of life and death?”

The naturalist stood, tablets⁶ in hand, looking at the awful spectacle with as much composure as though the conflagration had been lighted in order to solve the difficulties of some scientific problem. Aroused by the question of his companion, he turned to his equally calm though differently occupied associate, the trapper, demanding with the most provoking insensibility to the urgent nature of their situation—“Venerable hunter, you have often witnessed similar prismatic experiments⁷—”

He was rudely interrupted by Paul, who struck the tablets from his hand with a violence that betrayed the utter intellectual confusion which had upset his equanimity.⁸

abstract'ed, ab'sent.
acknowl'edge, admit'.
advan'tage, superiority.
allud'ed, referred'.
appeas'e, allay'.
bright'en, illumine.

car'casses, dead bodies.
clew, guide.
conflagra'tion, burning.
delib'erate, calm.
demand'ed, asked.
des'perate, forlorn'.

destruc'tion, ru'in.
devour'ing, consum'ing.
eleva'tion, ris'ing.
em'erald, green.
enor'mous, prodig'ious.
envi'roned, surround'ed.

u must acknowl-
 of danger. If
 he 'fashion that
 as been smoked⁵
 to roar already ;
 flame once gets
 h that can out-

ating 'scornfully
 which 'enviored
 speed of fire on

the bewildered
 sort of helpless-
 seek aid of the
 the hand of a
 you no advice

looking at the
 as though the
 solve the diffi-
 ed by the ques-
 ally calm though
 demanding with
 rgent nature of
 have often wit-

who struck the
 at betrayed the
 verset his equa-

truc'tion, ru'in.
 our'ing, consum'ing.
 va'tion, ris'ing.
 erald, green.
 r'mous, prodig'ious.
 y'roned, surround'ed.

exclaimed, shout'ed.
 expe'rience, personal
 fash'ion, man'ner. [proof.
 fright'ful, ter'rible.
 fur'nished, afford'ed.
 gar'nishing, adorn'ing.
 im'minence, near'ness.
 in'fluence, pow'er. [ence.
 insensibil'ity, indiffer-

intent'ly, ea'gerly.
 luxu'riant, exu'berant.
 mar'gin, border.
 neces'sity, urgen'cy.
 prai'ries, meadow's.
 reconnoi'trings, exami-
 na'tions.
 refresh'ment, com'fort.
 resem'blance, like'ness.

resigna'tion, calm'ness.
 riv'eted, fixed.
 scorn'fully, reproach'-
 spec'tacle, sight. [fully.
 trem'bling, quiv'er'ing.
 un'dulating, wav'ing.
 unequiv'ocal, un'mistak'-
 able.
 ver'dure, green'ness.

¹ The trap'per, one who sets traps to catch animals, especially for their fur. (See p. 193.)

² Stud'ded vault, the sky glittering with stars.

³ Circumvent'ed, out-witted; *lit.* come round. [Lat. *circum*, around; *venio*, I come.]

⁴ Par'lance, talk. [Fr. *parler*, to speak; whence Eng. *parley* and *parlour*.]

⁵ Smoked for its honey; refers to

the practice of burning straw under beehives to kill or drive out the bees, that the honey may be obtained.

⁶ Tab'lets, note-book.

⁷ Prisma'tic exper'iments, exper'iments on light and colour. The ray of natural light is resolved into its component colours by the *prism*.

⁸ Equanim'ity, evenness of mind; composure. [Lat. *equus*, equal; *animus*, the mind.]

QUESTIONS.—For what did Inez and her husband mistake the red streak on the horizon? Who undecieved them? Whom did he suspect of firing the prairie? For what purpose? What did most of the travellers advise? Who opposed this? Where did he lead the party?

THE PRAIRIE ON FIRE.

PART II.

BEFORE time had been allowed for 'remonstrance, the old man, who had continued during the whole scene like one much at a loss how to proceed, though, also, like one who was rather 'perplexed than alarmed, suddenly assumed a decided air, as if he no longer doubted as to the course it was most advisable to pursue.

"It is time to be doing," he said, interrupting the 'controversy that was about to ensue between the naturalist and the bee hunter; "it is time to leave off books and moanings, and to be doing."

"You have come to your 'recollection too late, miserable old man!" cried Middleton. "The flames are within a quarter of a mile of us, and the wind is bringing them down in this direction with dreadful 'rapidity."

"Anan! the flames! I care but little for the flames! If I only knew how to circumvent the cunning of the Tetons as I know how to cheat the fire of its prey, there would be nothing needed but thanks to the Lord for our 'deliverance. Do you call that a fire? If you had seen what I have 'witnessed in the eastern hills, when mighty mountains were like the furnace of a smith, you would have known what it was to fear the flames, and to be thankful that you were spared.—Come, lads, come; 'tis time to be doing now, and to cease talking, for yonder curling flame is truly coming on like a trotting moose.¹ Put hands upon this short and withered grass where we stand, and lay bare the earth."

"Would you think to 'deprive the fire of its victims in this childish manner?" exclaimed Middleton.

A faint but solemn smile passed over the 'features of the old man, as he answered, "Your grandfather would have said, that when the enemy was nigh, a soldier could do no better than obey."

The captain felt the 'reproof, and instantly began to imitate the industry of Paul, who was tearing the decayed herbage from the ground in a sort of desperate 'compliance with the trapper's direction. Even Ellen lent her hands to the labour; nor was it long before Inez was seen similarly 'employed, though none among them knew why. A very few moments sufficed to lay bare a spot of some twenty feet in diameter.

To one side of this little area the trapper brought the females, directing Middleton and Paul to cover their light and 'inflammable dresses with the blankets of the party. Then the old man, crossing to the other side, approached the grass, which still environed² them in a dangerous circle, and selecting a handful of the driest of the herbage, he placed it over the pan of his rifle. The light combustible kindled at the flash. Then he placed the little flame in a bed of the standing fog, and patiently awaited the result.

The 'subtle element seized with 'avidity upon its new

fuel, and in a moment forked flames were gliding among the grass, as the tongues of ruminating animals are seen rolling among their food, apparently in quest of its sweetest portions.

"Now," said the old man, holding up a finger, and laughing in his peculiarly silent manner, "you shall see fire fight fire. Ah's me! many is the time I have burned a path from wanton laziness to pick my way across a tangled bottom."

"But is this not fatal?" cried the amazed Middleton; "are you not bringing the enemy nigher to us, instead of avoiding it?"

"Do you scorch so easily? Your grandfather had a tougher skin. But we shall live to see,—we shall *all* live to see."

The experience of the trapper was in the right. As the fire gained strength, it began to spread on three sides, dying of itself on the fourth for want of aliment. As it increased, and the sullen roaring announced its power, it cleared everything before it, leaving the black and smoking soil far more naked than if the scythe had swept the place. The area in which the fugitives had taken refuge increased as the fire advanced; and by going to the spot where it had been first kindled by the trapper, they avoided the excessive heat. In a very few moments the flames began to recede in every direction, leaving the party enveloped in a cloud of smoke, but perfectly safe from the torrent of fire that was still furiously rolling onward.

The others regarded the simple expedient of the trapper with that species of wonder with which the courtiers of Ferdinand are said to have viewed the manner in which Columbus made his egg to stand on its end,—though with feelings that were filled with gratitude instead of envy.

"Most wonderful!" said Middleton, when he saw the complete success of the device: "the thought was a gift from Heaven."

"Old trapper," cried Paul, thrusting his fingers through his slaggy locks, "I have lined many a loaded bee into his hole, and know something of the nature of the woods, but this is robbing a hornet of his sting without touching the insect!"

"It will do—it will do," returned the old man, who, after the first moment of his success, seemed to think no more of the exploit. "Let the flames do their work for a short half hour, and then we will mount. That time is needed to cool the meadow; for these unshod beasts are tender on the hoof as a barefooted girl."

The 'veteran, on whose experience they all so implicitly relied for protection, employed himself in reconnoitring objects in the distance, through the openings which the air occasionally made in the immense bodies of smoke, that by this time lay in enormous piles on every part of the plain.

J. FENIMORE COOPER.⁵

al'iment, nour'ishment.
appa'rently, seem'ingly.
avid'ity, greed'iness.
avoid'ing, shun'ning.
compli'ance, obe'dience.
con'troversy, dispute'.
deliv'erance, release'.
deprive', cheat.
device', plan.
employ'ed, oc'cupied.
envel'oped, enclosed'.

expe'dient, contriv'ance.
exploit', achieve'ment.
feat'ures, coun'tenance.
fu'gitives, wan'derers.
grat'itude, thank'fulness.
implic'itly, con'fidently.
inflam'mable, combus'tible.
occa'sionally, some'times.
perplex'ed, puz'zled.

rapid'ity, celer'ity.
recollec'tion, remem'brance. [la'tion.
remon'strance, expostu'reproof', rebuke'.
return'ed, an'swered.
sub'tle, w'ily.
sul'ten, dis'mal.
tan'gled, in'tricate.
v'et'eran, old man.
wit'nessed, beheld'.

¹ Moose, or Elk, the largest species of deer; a native of the northern regions of Europe and America. The male is known by his palmated antlers.

² Envi'roned, enclosed; surrounded.

³ Ru'minating, cud-chewing; like the cow, the sheep, and the goat.

⁴ Fer'dinand, the King of Aragon, whose wife, Isabella of Castile, offered to pawn her jewels to equip Columbus

for his voyage of discovery. "The manner in which Columbus made his egg to stand on its end," was by chipping it on the table.

⁵ J. Fenimore Cooper, American novelist and essayist; born in New Jersey in 1789; at sea for six years. Chief works: *The Pioneers*, *The Last of the Mohicans*, *Sketches of Switzerland*, &c. Died in 1851.

QUESTIONS.—What did the trapper presently instruct his companions to do? How large a space did they clear? Where did the trapper place the females? What did the trapper do at the other side? What was the result? With what feelings did the others regard the trapper's device?

MARY, QUEEN OF SCOTS.¹

I LOOKED far back into other years, and lo! in bright array
I saw, as in a dream, the forms of ages passed away.

It was a 'stately convent² with its old and lofty walls,
And gardens with their broad green walks, where soft the foot-
step falls;

And o'er the 'antique dial-stone the creeping shadow passed,
And, all around, the noon-day sun a drowsy radiance cast.

No sound of busy life was heard, save from the 'cloister dim
The tinkling of the silver bell, or the sisters' holy hymn.

And there five noble maidens sat beneath the orchard trees,
In that first budding spring of youth when all its prospects
please;

And little recked they, when they sang, or knelt at vesper
prayers,

That Scotland knew no prouder names—held none more dear
than theirs;—

And little even the loveliest thought, before the holy shrine,
Of royal blood and high 'descent from the ancient Stuart line:

Calmly her happy days flew on, uncounted in their flight;

And as they flew, they left behind a long-continuing light.

The scene was changed. It was the court, the gay court of
Bourbon,³

And 'neath a thousand silver lamps a thousand 'courtiers throng:

And proudly kindles Henry's⁴ eye—well pleased, I ween, to see
The land assemble all its wealth of grace and chivalry:—

But fairer far than all the rest who bask on Fortune's tide,
'Effulgent in the light of youth, is she, the new-made bride!⁵

The 'homage of a thousand hearts—the fond, deep love of one—
The hopes that dance around a life whose charms are but begun,—

They lighten up her chestnut eye, they mantle o'er her cheek,
They sparkle on her open brow, and high-souled joy 'bespeak:

Ah! who shall blame, if scarce that day, through all its brilliant
hours,

She thought of that quiet convent's calm, its sunshine and its
flowers?

The scene was changed. It was a bark⁶ that slowly held its way,
And o'er its lee the coast of France in the light of evening lay;

And on its deck a Lady sat, who gazed with tearful eyes
 Upon the fast 'receding hills, that dim and distant rise.
 No marvel that the Lady wept,—there was no land on earth
 She loved like that dear land, although she owed it not her birth ;
 It was her mother's' land, the land of childhood and of friends,—
 It was the land where she had found for all her griefs amends,—
 The land where her dead husband slept—the land where she
 had known

The 'tranquil convent's hushed repose, and the splendours of a
 throne :

No 'marvel that the Lady wept—it was the land of France—
 The chosen home of chivalry—the garden of romance !
 The past was bright, like those dear hills so far behind her bark ;
 The future, like the gathering night, was 'ominous and dark !
 One gaze again—one long, last gaze—" Adieu, fair France, to
 thee !"

The breeze comes forth—she is alone on the 'unconscious sea !



HOLYROOD PALACE, EDINBURGH.

The scene was changed. It was an eve of raw and surly mood,
 And in a turret-chamber high of ancient Holyrood^s
 Sat Mary, listening to the rain, and sighing with the winds,
 That seemed to suit the stormy state of men's uncertain minds.
 The touch of care had 'blanched her cheek—her smile was sadder
 The weight of royalty had pressed too heavy on her brow ; [now ;

tearful eyes
 instant rise.
 o land on earth
 ed it not her birth ;
 l and of friends,—
 r griefs amends,—
 e land where she
 e splendours of a
 and of France—
 romance !
 r behind her bark ;
 inous and dark !
 eu, fair France, to
 unconscious sea !



w and surly mood,
 tyrood⁸
 with the winds,
 s uncertain minds.
 er smile was sadder
 n her brow ; [now ;

And traitors to her councils came, and rebels to the field ;—
 The Stuart *sceptre* well she swayed, but the *sword* she could not
 wield.

She thought of all her 'blighted hopes—the dreams of youth's
 brief day,

And summoned Rizzio with his lute, and bade the 'minstrel play
 The songs she loved in early years—the songs of gay Navarre ;
 The songs perchance that erst were sung by gallant Chatelar :⁹
 They half 'beguiled her of her cares, they soothed her into smiles,
 They won her thoughts from bigot zeal and fierce domestic
 broils :

But hark ! the tramp of arméd men ! the Douglas'¹⁰ battle-cry !
 They come !—they come !—and lo ! the scowl of Ruthven's¹¹
 hollow eye !

And swords are drawn, and daggers gleam, and tears and words
 are vain—

The 'ruffian steel is in his heart—the faithful Rizzio's slain !
 Then Mary Stuart dashed aside the tears that trickling fell :
 "Now for my father's arm !" she said ;¹²—"my woman's heart
 farewell !"

The scene was changed. It was a lake, with one small lonely
 isle ;¹³

And there, within the prison-walls of its baronial pile,
 Stern men stood 'menacing their Queen, till she should stoop to
 sign

The 'traitorous scroll¹⁴ that snatched the crown from her an-
 cestral line.

"My lords !—my lords !" the captive said, "were I but once
 more free,

With ten good knights on yonder shore to aid my cause and me,
 That 'parchment would I scatter wide to every breeze that
 blows,

And once more reign a Stuart Queen o'er my 'remorseless foes !"
 A red spot burned upon her cheek—streamed her rich tresses
 down ;

She wrote the words—she stood erect—a Queen without a crown !

The scene was changed. A royal host¹⁵ a royal banner bore,
 And the 'faithful of the land stood round their smiling Queen
 once more.

She heard her steed upon a hill—she saw them marching by—
 She heard their shouts—she read success in every flashing eye.
 The 'tumult of the strife begins—it roars—it dies away ;
 And Mary's troops and banners now, and courtiers—where are
 they ?

Scattered and strewn, and flying far, 'defenceless and undone ;—
 Alas ! to think what she has lost, and all that guilt has won !—
 Away ! away ! thy gallant steed must act no 'laggard's part ;
 Yet vain his speed—for thou dost bear the arrow in thy heart !

The scene was changed. Beside the block¹⁶ a sullen 'headsman
 stood,

And 'gleamed the broad axe in his hand, that soon must drip
 with blood.

With slow and steady step there came a Lady through the hall,
 And breathless silence chained the lips and touched the hearts
 of all.

I knew that queenly form again, though blighted was its bloom ;
 I saw that grief had decked it out—an offering for the tomb !
 I knew the eye, though faint its light, that once so brightly shone ;
 I knew the voice, though feeble now, that thrilled with every
 tone ;

I knew the ringlets, almost gray, once threads of living gold !
 I knew that bounding grace of step—that 'symmetry of mould !
 Even now I see her far away, in that calm convent isle,
 I hear her chant her vesper-hymn, I mark her holy smile,—
 Even now I see her bursting forth upon the bridal morn,
 A new star in the 'firmament, to light and glory born !
 Alas, the change !—she placed her foot upon a triple throne,¹⁷
 And on the scaffold now she stands—beside the block—*alone* !
 The little dog that licks her hand, the last of all the crowd
 Who sunned themselves beneath her glance and round her foot-
 steps bowed !

Her neck is bared—the blow is struck—the soul is passed
 away !

The bright, the beautiful, is now—a bleeding piece of clay !
 The dog is moaning 'piteously ; and, as it gurgles o'er,
 Laps the warm blood that trickling runs 'unheeded to the floor !
 The blood of beauty, wealth, and power—the heart-blood of a
 Queen,—

The noblest of the Stuart race—the fairest earth has seen,—

‘Lapped by a dog! Go think of it, in silence and alone;
Then weigh against a grain of sand the glories of a throne!

HENRY GLASSFORD BELL.

antique¹, old-fashioned.
beguiled², cheat^{ed}.
bespeak³, beto^{ken}.
blanched, made pale.
blight^{ed}, withered.
cloister, convent.
courtiers, nobles.
defenceless, unprotect^{ed}.
descent⁴, lineage. [ed.]
effulgent, splen^did.
faithful, loyal.

firmament, heav^{en}s.
gleamed, flashed.
heads man, execu^{tion}er.
homage, reverence.
laggard, loiterer.
lapped, licked.
marvel, wonder.
menacing, threat^{en}ing.
minstrel, song^{ster}.
ominous, portent^{ous}.
parchment, scroll.

pit^{er}ously, mourn^{ful}ly
rec^{ed}ing, retr^{ing}.
remorseless, pit^{iless}.
ruffian, cr^{im}el.
state^{ly}, majes^{tic}.
symmetry, regular^{ity}.
traitorous, treach^{erous}.
tranquil, peace^{ful}.
tumult, up^{roar}.
unconscious, insen^{sible}.
unheed^{ed}, disregar^{ed}.

¹ Mary, Queen of Scots, was born at Linlithgow in 1542, a few days before the death of her father, James V. The Scottish Parliament—having rejected the proposal to marry Mary to Edward VI., the young King of England—sent her to France in 1548, where she was betrothed to Francis, the dauphin. In 1558 they were married. In December 1559 Francis died. Queen Mary returned to Scotland in 1561, and opposed the progress of the Reformation with all her power. In 1565 she married Darnley. In 1567 Darnley was killed by the blowing up of the Kirk of Field, and Mary married Bothwell shortly afterwards. She surrendered to the nobles, who had taken up arms against her, at Carberry Hill, and was imprisoned in Lochleven Castle. She escaped from thence in 1568; was defeated at Langside; and fled to England, where she was executed in 1587.

² A stately convent—the Augustinian priory on the island of Inchmahome (“isle of rest”), in the Lake of Menteith (Perthshire). Here, to be beyond the reach of English arms, the youthful Queen Mary (æet. 5) was sent to live for some months previously to her departure for France. She had as her companions four other “noble maidens,” each of whom was also named Mary, and who form the interesting historical group of “The Queen’s Maries.”

³ The gay court of Bourbon.—Queen

Mary was in her sixth year when she was sent to France, where she remained till her nineteenth year. She therefore received the whole of her education in France, and was more a Frenchwoman than a Scot when she left it.

⁴ Henry — Mary’s father-in-law, Henry II. of France, who in 1559 died of a wound accidentally received in a tournament, on the occasion of his sister’s marriage.

⁵ New-made bride.—She was married to Francis, the Dauphin, son of Henry II. of France, in 1558.

⁶ A bark.—This scene represents Mary on her voyage from France to Scotland, in 1561.

⁷ Her mother’s land.—Her mother was a French princess, Mary of Lorraine, daughter of the Duke of Guise.

⁸ Holyrood.—This scene relates to the murder of Rizzio, Mary’s Italian secretary, which took place in Holyrood Palace, Edinburgh, early in 1566. The plot originated in Darnley’s jealousy of Rizzio’s influence with the Queen; but it was joined by some of the leaders of the reforming party, who believed that Rizzio was intriguing with the Papal Court. Darnley led the conspirators up a secret stair to the Queen’s private room, where she was sitting at supper with a few of her attendants and Rizzio. The latter, after being stabbed in her presence, was dragged into an adjoining room, and despatched with fifty-six wounds.

⁹ **Gallant Chat'elar.**—Pierre de Chastelard, a noble Frenchman, and something of a poet, followed Mary to Scotland. He became deeply in love with her, and indiscreetly put himself in a position which brought upon him the charge of treason. He was executed in 1563.

¹⁰ **The Douglas.**—James Douglas, Earl of Morton, and Lord Chancellor of Scotland, was one of the chief conspirators. He held the gates of Holyrood with a band of soldiers, while the murder was being perpetrated. In 1572 he became Regent. In 1581 he was found guilty of being accessory to the murder of Darnley, and was beheaded.

¹¹ **Ruth ven (Riven)**—Lord Ruthven, another of the conspirators. He and Lord Lindsay conveyed Mary to Lochleven Castle in 1567.

¹² **She said.**—Another account represents her as drying her eyes and exclaiming, "Henceforth I study revenge."

¹³ **Lonely isle**—Kilross-shire) on which stood the castle in which Mary was imprisoned.

¹⁴ **Traitorous scroll.**—Lindsay re-

quired her, on pain of death, to sign a deed, resigning the crown in favour of her son. This can hardly be called "snatching the crown from her ancestral line."

¹⁵ **A royal host.**—By the assistance and ingenuity of a youth named Douglas, Mary escaped from Lochleven in 1568, and soon found herself at the head of 6000 men. At Langside, near Glasgow, she suffered a most disastrous defeat at the hands of the Regent Moray. She fled from the field with a few followers, and did not draw bridle till she reached Dundreman, sixty miles off.

¹⁶ **Beside the block.**—After eighteen years of captivity and exile, Mary was tried for being accessory to Babington's conspiracy (a plot to assassinate Elizabeth, to restore the Roman Catholic religion, and to make Mary Queen of England), was found guilty, and beheaded at Fotheringay Castle, Northamptonshire, 7th February 1587.

¹⁷ **A triple throne.**—Her father-in-law, Henry II., had caused her to be proclaimed as Queen of both Scotland and England; and when he died she became Queen of France as well.

DEATH OF LITTLE NELL.

SHE was dead. No sleep so beautiful and calm, so free from trace of pain, so fair to look upon. She seemed a creature fresh from the hand of God, and waiting for the breath of life; not one who had lived, and suffered death. Her couch was dressed with here and there some winter-berries and green leaves, gathered in a spot she had been used to favour. "When I die, put near me something that has loved the light, and had the sky above it always." These were her words.

She was dead. Dear, gentle, patient, noble Nell was dead. Her little bird—a poor, slight thing, the pressure of a finger would have crushed—was stirring nimbly in its cage; and the strong heart of its child-mistress was mute

and motionless for ever! Where were the traces of her early cares, her sufferings and fatigues? All gone. Sorrow was dead, indeed, in her; but peace and perfect happiness were born—imaged in her tranquil beauty and profound repose.

And still her former self lay there, unaltered in this change. Yes, the old fireside had smiled upon that same sweet face; it had passed like a dream through haunts of misery and care—at the door of the poor schoolmaster on the summer evening,¹ before the furnace fire upon the cold wet night,² at the still bedside of the dying boy,³ there had been the same mild and lovely look. So shall we know the angels in their majesty after death.

The old man⁴ held one languid arm in his, and the small tight hand folded to his breast for warmth. It was the hand she had stretched out to him with her last smile—the hand that had led him on through all their wanderings. Ever and anon he pressed it to his lips, then hugged it to his breast again, murmuring that it was warmer now; and as he said it he looked in agony to those who stood around, as if imploring them to help her.

She was dead, and past all help or need of help. The ancient rooms she had seemed to fill with life even while her own was waning fast, the garden she had tended, the eyes she had gladdened, the noiseless haunts of many a thoughtful hour, the paths she had trodden as it were but yesterday, could know her no more. "It is not," said the schoolmaster,⁵ as he bent down to kiss her on the cheek, and gave his tears free vent—"it is not in *this* world that Heaven's justice ends. Think what it is, compared with the world to which her young spirit has winged its early flight, and say, if one deliberate wish, expressed in solemn tones above this bed, could call her back to life, which of us would utter it?"

She had been dead two days. They were all about her at the time, knowing that the end was drawing on. She

died soon after 'daybreak. They had read and talked to her in the earlier portion of the night; but as the hours crept on she sank to sleep. They could tell, by what she faintly uttered in her dreams, that they were of her wanderings with the old man. They were of no 'painful scenes, but of those who had helped them and used them kindly; for she often said, "God bless you!" with great fervour. Waking, she never 'wandered in her mind but once, and that was at beautiful music which, she said, was in the air. God knows. It may have been.

Opening her eyes at last from a very quiet sleep, she begged that they would kiss her once again. That done, she turned to the old man, with a lovely smile upon her face—such, they said, as they had never seen, and never could forget—and clung with both her arms about his neck. She had never murmured or 'complained, but with a quiet mind, and manner quite 'unaltered—save that she every day became more earnest, and more 'grateful to them—faded like the light upon the summer's evening.

The child⁶ who had been her little friend came there almost as soon as it was day with an 'offering of dried flowers, which he begged them to lay upon her breast. He told them of his dream again, and that it was of her being 'restored to them, just as she used to be. He begged hard to see her, saying that he would be very quiet, and that they need not fear his being alarmed, for he had sat alone by his younger brother all day long when he was dead, and had felt glad to be so near him. They let him have his wish; and indeed he kept his word, and was in his childish way a lesson to them all.

Up to that time the old man had not spoken once—except to her—or stirred from the bedside. But when he saw her little 'favourite, he was moved as they had not seen him yet, and made as though he would have him come nearer. Then, pointing to the bed, he burst into tears for the first time; and they who stood by, knowing that the

sight of this child had done him good, left them alone together.

'Soothing him with his artless talk of her, the child 'persuaded him to take some rest, to walk abroad—to do almost as he desired him. And when the day came on which they must remove her in her earthly shape from earthly eyes for ever, he led him away, that he might not know when she was taken from him. They were to gather fresh leaves and berries for her bed.

And now the bell—the bell she had so often heard by night and day, and listened to with solemn 'pleasure, almost as to a living voice—rang its remorseless toll for her, so young, so beautiful, so good. Decrepit⁷ age, and 'vigorous life, and blooming youth, and helpless infancy, poured forth—on crutches, in the pride of health and strength, in the full blush of promise, in the mere dawn of life—to gather round her tomb. Old men were there, whose eyes were dim and senses failing—grandmothers, who might have died ten years ago and still been old—the deaf, the blind, the lame, the 'palsied—the living dead, in many shapes and forms, to see the closing of that early grave.

Along the crowded path they bore her now—pure as the newly fallen snow that covered it, whose day on earth had been as 'fleeting. Under that porch where she had sat when Heaven, in its mercy, brought her to that peaceful spot, she passed again; and the old church received her in its quiet shade. They carried her to one old nook, where she had many and many a time sat musing, and laid their burden softly on the 'pavement. The light streamed on it through the coloured window—a window where the boughs of trees were ever rustling in the summer, and where the birds sang sweetly all day long. With every breath of air that stirred among those branches in the sunshine, some 'trembling, changing light would fall upon her grave.

"Earth to earth, ashes to ashes, dust to dust." Many a young hand dropped in its little wreath—many a 'stified

sob was heard. Some, and they were not a few, knelt down. All were 'sincere and truthful in their sorrow. The service done, the mourners stood apart, and the villagers closed round to look into the grave before the stone should be replaced.

One called to mind how he had seen her sitting on that very spot, and how her book had fallen on her lap, and she was gazing with a 'pensive face upon the sky. Another told how he had wondered much that one so 'delicate as she should be so bold; how she had never feared to enter the church alone at night, but had loved to linger there when all was quiet, and even to climb the tower-stair, with no more light than that of the moon rays stealing through the loop-holes in the thick old walls. A whisper went about among the oldest there that she had seen and talked with angels; and when they called to mind how she had looked and spoken, and her early death, some thought it might be so indeed.

Thus, coming to the grave in little knots, and 'glancing down, and giving place to others, and falling off in whispering groups of three or four, the church was cleared in time of all but the sexton and the mourning friends. Then, when the dusk of evening had come on, and not a sound 'disturbed the sacred stillness of the place—when the bright moon poured in her light on tomb and 'monument, on pillar, wall, and arch, and most of all, it seemed to them, upon her quiet grave—in that calm time, when all outward things and inward thoughts teem with 'assurances of 'immortality, and worldly hopes and fears are humbled in the dust before them, then with tranquil and submissive hearts they turned away, and left the child with God.

CHARLES DICKENS.*

assur'ances, ev'idences.
complained', repined'.
crea'ture, be'ing.
day'break, dawn. [ed.
delib'erate, premed'itat.

del'icate, weak'ly.
disturbed', broke.
fa'vourite, dar'ling.
fleet'ing, tran'sient.
glad'dened, rejoiced'.

glanc'ing, look'ing.
grate'ful, thank'ful.
immortal'ity, death'less-
ness.
implor'ing, beseech'ing.

ot a few, knelt
n their sorrow.
rt, and the vil-
before the stone

sitting on that
er lap, and she
sky. Another
so 'delicate as
feared to enter
to linger there
ower-stair, with
tealing through
whisper went
seen and talked
d how she had
ome thought it

, and 'glancing
off in whisper-
cleared in time
riends. Then,
d not a sound
when the bright
monument, on
emed to them,
en all outward
'assurances of
re humbled in
nd submissive
with God.

LES DICKENS.⁹

'ing, look'ing.
'ful, thank'ful.
rtal'ity, death'less-
'ring, beseech'ing.

lan'guid, exhaust'ed.
mis'ery, wretch'edness.
mon'ument, memo'rial.
nim'bly, ac'tively.
off'ering, pres'ent.
pain'ful, try'ing.
pal'sied, par'alyzed.
pa'tient, endur'ing.

pave'ment, floor.
pen'sive, thought'ful.
persuad'ed, induced'.
pleas'ure, satisfac'tion.
profound', deep.
repose', rest.
restored', returned'.
sincere', hon'est.

sol'emn, se'rious.
sooth'ing, calm'ing.
sti'fled, smoth'ered.
trem'bling, flick'ering.
unal'tered, unchanged'.
vig'orous, health'y.
wan'dered, raved. [ings.
wan'derings, jour'ney-

¹ At the door of the poor school-
master. — Little Nell and her old
grandfather had wandered away from
London, many miles into the country,
to escape misfortune. At one village
to which they came, they had been
kindly received and lodged by the
schoolmaster, who was taken with her
gentle look and artless story.

² Before the furnace fire. — Once in
their wanderings, when foot-sore and
sick at heart, she had been carried by a
kind but gruff man out of the pelting
rain, and laid on the warm ashes beside
a furnace fire, in an immense iron-work.

³ At the still bedside of the dying
boy. — The schoolmaster referred to in

Note 1, had had a favourite little scholar,
who had died the day after Nell arrived
at the schoolhouse, and of whose tran-
quil death she had been a witness.

⁴ The old man — Nell's grandfather.

⁵ The schoolmaster — the same al-
ready referred to.

⁶ The child. — This was Kit, who had
been her grandfather's errand-boy when
they lived in London.

⁷ Decrep'it, broken down; worn out;
infirm.

⁸ Charles Dickens, novelist; born
1812. Chief works: *The Pickwick Papers*,
David Copperfield, *The Old Curiosity*
Shop (from which the above scene is
taken), *Bleak House*, &c. Died in 1870.

GRACE DARLING.

[GRACE DARLING was a daughter of the lighthouse keeper on
Longstone, the largest of the Farn Islands, a group of bare and deso-
late rocks off the coast of Northumberland. On a dark and stormy
night in September 1838, the steamer *Forfarshire* was wrecked between
these islands and the coast; and the fore part, to which some dozen poor
wretches clung, was impaled upon a rock. At dawn the next morning,
Grace Darling, then a slight maid of twenty-two, 'described the 'frag-
ment of the wreck, and prevailed upon her father to go out with her in
the open boat to rescue the survivors. Nine persons were got safely
into the boat and landed on the island. Grace at once became one of
the most famous of women. She died of consumption in 1841.]

A MAIDEN gentle, yet, at duty's call,
Firm and 'unflinching as the Lighthouse reared
On the Island-rock,¹ her lonely dwelling-place;
Or like the 'invincible Rock² itself that braves,
Age after age, the hostile elements,
As when it guarded holy Cuthbert's cell.

All night the storm had raged, nor ceased, nor paused,
 When, as day broke, the Maid, through misty air,
 Espies far off a Wreck, amid the surf,
 Beating on one of those 'disastrous isles;—
 Half of a Vessel,³ half—no more; the rest
 Had 'vanished, swallowed up with all that there
 Had for the common safety striven in vain,
 Or thither thronged for refuge. With quick glance
 Daughter and Sire through optic-glass discern,
 Clinging about the remnant of this Ship,
 Creatures—how precious in the Maiden's sight!
 For whom, 'belike, the old man grieves still more
 Than for their fellow-sufferers 'engulfed
 Where every parting agony is hushed,
 And hope and fear mix not in further strife.
 "But courage, Father! let us out to sea—
 A few may yet be saved." The Daughter's words,
 Her earnest tone, and look 'beaming with faith,
 Dispel the Father's doubts: nor do they lack
 The noble-minded Mother's helping hand
 To launch the boat; and with her blessing cheered,
 And inwardly 'sustained by silent prayer,
 Together they put forth, Father and Child!
 Each grasps an oar, and struggling on they go—
 Rivals in effort; and, alike intent
 Here to 'elude and there surmount, they watch
 The billows lengthening, mutually crossed
 And shattered, and re-gathering their might;
 As if the tumult, by the Almighty's will,
 Were, in the conscious sea, roused and prolonged,
 That woman's 'fortitude⁴—so tried, so proved—
 May brighten more and more!

True to the mark,
 They stem the current of that perilous gorge,
 Their arms still strengthening with the strengthening heart,
 Though danger, as the Wreck is neared, becomes
 More imminent.—Not unseen do they approach;
 And 'rapture, with varieties of fear
 'Incessantly 'conflicting, thrills the frames
 Of those who, in that 'dauntless energy,

Foretaste 'deliverance. But the least 'perturbed
 Can scarcely trust his eyes, when he perceives
 That of the pair—tossed on the waves to bring
 Hope to the hopeless, to the dying, life—
 One is a Woman, a poor earthly sister;
 Or, be the Visitant other⁶ than she seems,
 A guardian Spirit sent from pitying Heaven,
 In woman's shape. But why prolong the tale,
 Casting weak words amid a host of thoughts
 Armed to repel them? Every hazard faced
 And difficulty mastered, with resolve
 That no one breathing should be left to perish,
 This last remainder of the crew are all
 Placed in the little boat, then o'er the deep
 Are safely borne, landed upon the beach,
 And, in 'fulfilment of God's mercy, lodged
 Within the sheltering Lighthouse.

Shout, ye Waves!

Send forth a song of triumph. Waves and Winds,
 'Exult in this deliverance wrought through faith
 In Him whose providence your rage hath served!
 Ye screaming Sea-mews, in the concert join!
 And would that some 'immortal Voice—a Voice
 Fitly attuned to all that gratitude
 Breathes out from floor or couch, through 'pallid lips
 Of the survivors—to the clouds might bear—
 'Blended with praise of that parental love
 Beneath whose watchful eye the Maiden grew
 Pious and pure, modest and yet so brave,
 Though young so wise, though meek so 'resolute—
 Might carry to the clouds and to the stars,
 Yea, to 'celestial Choirs, GRACE DARLING's name!

WILLIAM WORDSWORTH."

beam'ing, glow'ing.
 beliké', prob'ably.
 blend'ed, mis'gled.
 celest'ial, heav'enly.
 conflict'ing, strugg'ling.
 daunt'less, fear'less.
 deliv'erance, safe'ty.
 descried', discovered.
 disas'trous, calam'itous.

elude', evade'.
 engulfed', swal'lowed.
 exult', glo'ry.
 for'titude, endur'ance.
 frag'ment, rem'nant.
 fulfil'ment, accom'plish-
 ment.
 immor'tal, death'less.
 ince'ssantly, con'stantly.

invin'cible, uncon'quer-
 able.
 pal'lid, death'-like.
 perturbed', disquieted.
 rap'ture, delight'.
 res'olute, stead'fast.
 sustained', upheld'.
 unfinch'ing, stanch.
 van'ished, disappeared'.

¹ Island-rock—Longstone, of which her father and mother and herself were the only inhabitants.

² The invincible Rock—Lindisfarne, or "Saint Cuthbert's Holy Isle," as Scott calls it, about three miles from the coast of Northumberland, and the site of an ancient monastery, in which St. Cuthbert, Bishop of Durham, was buried in 687. (See *The Scott Reader*, Nelsons' Royal School Series, p. 94.)

³ Half of a vessel.—The *Forfarshire* had broken off sharp amidships; the stern was swallowed up, and the fore part alone stuck upon the rock.

⁴ That woman's fortitude.—That here means "in order that."

⁵ Be the Visitant other.—If the visitant be other than she seems; that is, if she is not a woman, she must be an angel.

⁶ William Wordsworth. — Poet; born at Cockermouth, Cumberland, in 1770; Poet Laureate from 1843 till 1850; lived near the Lakes of Cumberland (chiefly at Rydal Mount), where Coleridge and Southey also resided,—hence the three were called "Lake Poets." Chief works: *The Excursion*, *The White Doe of Rylstone*, *The Prelude*; wrote also many lyrical ballads, sonnets, and short poems. The above poem was written in 1842. Wordsworth died 1850.

THE FRIGATE-BIRD.

WHAT bird is this? It is the little ocean-eagle, first and chief of the winged race, the daring navigator who never furls his sails, the lord of the 'tempest, the scorner of all peril—the man-of-war or frigate-bird.¹

Here we have a bird which is virtually nothing more than wings: scarcely any body—barely as large as that of the domestic cock—while his 'prodigious pinions are fifteen feet in span! The great problem of flight is solved and overpassed, for the power of flight seems useless. Such a bird, naturally 'sustained by such supports, needs but allow himself to be borne along. The storm bursts; he mounts to lofty heights, where he finds tranquillity. The poetic 'metaphor, untrue when applied to any other bird, is no exaggeration when applied to him: literally, he sleeps upon the storm.

When he chooses to oar his way seriously, all distance vanishes: he breakfasts at the Senegal;² he dines in America.

Or if he thinks fit to take more time, and amuse himself *en route*,³ he can do so. He may continue his progress through the night 'uninterruptedly, certain of reposing himself. Upon what? On his huge motionless pinion, which

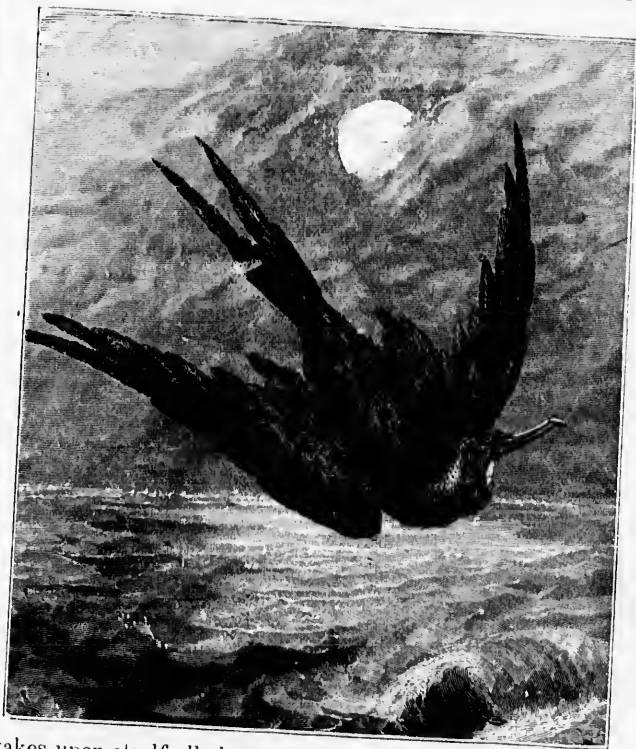
Visitant other.—If the
her than she seems; that
ot a woman, she must be

Wordsworth. — Poet ;
rmouth, Cumberland, in
reate from 1843 till 1850;
e Lakes of Cumberland
al Mount), where Cole-
ey also resided, —hence
e called "Lake Poets."
e *Excursion*, *The White*
e, *The Prelude*; wrote
ical ballads, sonnets,
ms. The above poem
542. Wordsworth died

a-eagle, first and
gator who never
e scorner of all

y nothing more
large as that of
ions are fifteen
is solved and
eless. Such a
eeds but allow
s; he mounts
The poetic
er bird, is no
e sleeps upon

distance van-
s in America.
muse himself
his progress
eposing him-
inion, which



takes upon itself all the weariness of the voyage; or on the
wind, his slave, which eagerly hastens to cradle him.

Amid the glowing azure of the tropics,⁴ at incredible
altitudes, almost imperceptible in the dim remoteness, we
see him triumphantly sweeping past us—this black, soli-
tary bird, alone in the waste of heaven; or, at the most,
at a lower elevation, the snow-white sea-swallow crosses
his flight in easy grace!

On looking at him closely, you perceive that he has no
feet. At all events, his feet, being exceedingly short, can

neither walk nor perch. With a 'formidable beak, he has not the talons of a true eagle of the sea.

Thence arises his life of uncertainty and hazard—the life of a corsair's and a pirate rather than of a mariner.

The immense and superb 'apparatus of his wings becomes on land a danger and an 'embarrassment. To raise himself, he needs a strong wind and a lofty station—a promontory, a rock. Surprised on a sandy level, on the banks, the low reefs where he sometimes halts, the frigate-bird is defenceless; in vain he threatens, in vain he strikes, for a blow from a stick will overcome him.

At sea, those vast wings, of such admirable 'utility in ascent, are ill fitted for skimming the surface of the water. When wetted, they may over-weight and sink him. And thereupon, woe to the bird!

And yet, what shall he do? His food lies in the waters. He is ever compelled to draw near them, to return to them, to skim incessantly the hateful and 'prolific sea which threatens to engulf him.

Thus, then, this being, so well armed and winged, superior to all others in power of flight and vision as in daring, leads but a trembling and 'precarious life. He would die of hunger had he not the ingenuity to create for himself a purveyor, whom he cheats of his food. His 'ignoble 'resource, alas! is to attack a dull and 'timorous bird, the noddy, famous as a fisher. The frigate-bird, which is of no larger 'dimensions, pursues him, strikes him on the neck with his beak, and 'constrains him to yield up his prey. All this takes place in the air. The noddy drops the fish; but the frigate-bird catches it before it can reach the water.

JULES MICHELET.

al'titudes, heights.
appara'tus, machinery.
constrains', compels'.
dimen'sions, size.
embar'assment, hin'-
drance.
for'midable, dread'ful.

igno'ble, mean.
impercep'tible, invis'-
met'aphor, im'age. (ible).
preca'rious, uncertain.
prodig'ious, vast.
prolific, fruit'ful.
resource', exp'e'dient.

sol'itary, lone'y.
sustained', support'ed.
tem'pest, storm.
tim'orous, cowardly.
uninterrupt'edly, con-
tin'uously.
util'ity, use'fulness.

¹ The frigate-bird.—This interesting bird is allied to the cormorants, but differs from them in the possession of a forked tail, short feet, a curved beak, and extraordinary spread of wing. His plumage is coloured of a rich purple black, but the beak is varied with vermilion, and the throat with patches of white. He is an inhabitant of the tropics, where he lives a predatory life, forcing the gannet and the gull to disgorge their prey, and retiring to breed in lonely, uninhabited islands. The lightness of his body, his short tarsi, his enormous spread of wing, together with his long, slender, and forked tail,

all combine to give this bird a superiority over his tribe, not only in length and swiftness of flight, but also in the capability of maintaining himself on extended pinions in his aerial realm, where, at times, he soars so high that his figure can scarce be discerned by the spectator in this nether world.

² The Senegal.—A great river on the west of Africa.

³ En route (*Ang root*), on the way.

[Fr.]

⁴ The tropics.—See p. 301, Note 5.

⁵ Cor'sair, a pirate; *lit.* one who scours the sea. {Fr. *corsaire*; from Lat. *curro*, I run.}

QUESTIONS.—Why does the frigate-bird fly so easily? Where does he go to escape the storm? On what does he repose himself in the night? Why is he helpless on land? Why is it dangerous for him to skim the surface of the water? On what does he feed? How does he procure it?

A MOTHER'S LOVE.

A MOTHER'S LOVE!—how sweet the name!

What is a Mother's Love?—

A noble, pure, and tender flame,

Enkindled from above,

To bless a heart of earthly mould—

The warmest love that *can* grow cold;—

This is a Mother's Love.

To bring a helpless babe to light,

Then, while it lies forlorn,

To gaze upon that dearest sight,

And feel herself new-born;

In its existence lose her own,

And live and breathe in it alone;—

This is a Mother's Love.

In weakness in her arms to bear,

To cherish on her breast,

Feed it from Love's own fountain there,

And lull it there to rest;

Then while it slumbers watch its breath,

As if to guard from instant death;—

This is a Mother's Love.

To mark its growth from day to day,
 Its opening charms 'admire,
 Catch from its eye the earliest ray
 Of 'intellectual fire;¹
 To smile and listen while it talks,
 And lend a finger when it walks;—
 This is a Mother's Love.

And can a Mother's Love grow cold—
 Can she forget her boy?
 His pleading 'innocence behold,
 Nor weep for grief—for joy?
 A mother may forget her child,
 While wolves 'devour it on the wild;—
 Is *this* a Mother's Love?

Ten thousand voices answer, "No!"
 Ye clasp your babes and kiss;
 Your bosoms 'yearn, your eyes o'erflow;
 Yet, ah! 'remember this:—
 The infant 'reared aloof for earth,
 May live, may die—to curse his birth;—
 Is *this* a Mother's Love?

Blest infant! whom his mother taught
 Early to seek the Lord,
 And poured upon his 'dawning thought
 The day-spring of the Word:
 This was the lesson to her son,—
 Time is 'Eternity begun;—
 Behold that Mother's Love!²

Blest mother! who in Wisdom's path,
 By her own parent trod,
 Thus taught her son to flee the wrath,
 And know the fear of God:
 Ah, youth! like him 'enjoy your prime,—
 Begin Eternity in time,
 Taught by that Mother's Love.

That Mother's Love!—how sweet the name!

What *was* that Mother's Love?—
The noblest, purest, tenderest flame,
That kindles from above
Within a heart of earthly mould,—
As much of heaven as heart can hold,—
Nor through eternity grows old;—
This was that Mother's Love.

MONTGOMERY.³

admire', won'der at.
cher'ish, support'.
dawn'ing, o'pening.
devour', consume'.
enjoy', delight' in.
erkin'dled, inflamed'.

eter'nity, futu'rity.
exis'tence, life.
forlorn', help'less.
foun'tain, spring.
in'nocence, simpli'city.
in'stant, imme'diate.

intellec'tual, ment'al.
reared, trained.
remem'ber, recollect'.
slum'bers, sleeps.
ten'derest, most suscep'tible.
yearn, long. [tible.

¹ The earliest ray of intellectual fire—the earliest sign of awakening intelligence.

² That Mother—Eunice, the mother of Timothy, and daughter of Lois—"her own parent," referred to in next stanza. (See 2 Timothy, i. 5, and iii. 14, 15.)

³ James Montgomery, poet; born in Ayrshire, 1771; spent much of his life as a journalist. Chief poems: *Greenland*, *The Pelican Island*, and *The West Indies*. He also wrote a *History of Missionary Enterprise in the South Seas*. Died in 1854.

NELSON AND HARDY.

THE life of Nelson¹ abounds with 'illustrations of naval daring, but most of these are well known. One, however, narrated by Colonel Drinkwater Bethune, the historian of "The Siege of Gibraltar," and an eye-witness of what follows, is as well worthy of general fame as some of Nelson's more splendid 'achievements. It is the more interesting as, on this occasion, that personal affection for his more immediate followers, which in every case secured their devoted 'attachment to himself, was the 'inciting cause of a display of 'unwonted 'gallantry.

Commodore² Nelson, whose broad 'pendant at that time was hoisted in the *Minerve*, Captain Cockburn, got under weigh from Gibraltar on the 11th of February 1797, in order to join Sir John Jervis's fleet. The frigate³ had scarcely cast round from her anchorage, when two of the

three Spanish line-of-battle ships in the upper part of Gibraltar Bay were observed also to be in motion. The headmost of the Spanish ships gaining on the frigate, the latter prepared for action, and the *Minerve's* situation every instant becoming more 'hazardous, Colonel Drinkwater asked Nelson his opinion as to the probability of an 'engagement. The hero said he thought it was very possible, as the headmost ship appeared to be a good sailer; "but," continued he, looking up at the broad pendant,⁴ "before the Dons⁵ get hold of that bit of bunting I will have a struggle with them; and sooner than give up the frigate, I will run her ashore."

Captain Cockburn, who had been taking a view of the chasing enemy, now joined the commodore, and 'observed that there was no doubt of the headmost ship gaining on the frigate. At this moment dinner was announced; but before Nelson and his guests left the deck, orders were given to set the studding-sails.⁶ Seated at dinner, Colonel Drinkwater was 'congratulating Lieutenant Hardy,⁷ who had lately been exchanged, on his being no longer a prisoner of war, when the sudden cry of "a man overboard" threw the dinner-party into disorder. There is, perhaps, no passage in naval history of deeper interest than the following account of what then 'occurred:—

"The officers of the ship ran on deck; I, with others, ran to the stern windows to see if anything could be observed of the 'unfortunate man. We had scarcely reached them before we noticed the lowering of the jolly-boat,⁸ in which was my late neighbour, Hardy, with a party of sailors; and before many seconds had 'elapsed, the current of the Strait (which runs strongly to the eastward) had carried the jolly-boat far astern of the frigate, towards the Spanish ships. Of course the first object was to 'recover, if possible, the fallen man; but he was never seen again. Hardy soon made a signal to that effect, and the man was given up as lost.

the upper part of
be in motion. The
g on the frigate, the
rve's situation every
Colonel Drinkwater
probability of an 'en-
t was very possible,
good sailer; "but,"
l pendant,⁴ "before
ting I will have a
ve up the frigate, I

king a view of the
ore, and 'observed
ost ship gaining on
s announced; but
leck, orders were
at dinner, Colonel
ant Hardy,⁷ who
longer a prisoner
verboard" threw
is, perhaps, no
than the follow-

; I, with others,
ing could be ob-
scarcely reached
the jolly-boat,⁸ in
party of sailors;
e current of the
had carried the
e Spanish ships.
if possible, the

Hardy soon
was given up as

"The attention of every person was now turned to the safety of Hardy and his boat's crew. Their 'situation was 'extremely perilous, and their danger was every instant increasing from the fast sailing of the headmost ship of the chase—the *Terrible*,—which by this time had approached nearly within gunshot of the *Minerve*. The jolly-boat's crew pulled 'might and main' to regain the frigate, but apparently made little progress against the current of the Strait. At this crisis, Nelson, casting an anxious look at the hazardous situation of Hardy and his 'companions, exclaimed, 'No, it shall not be; I shall not lose Hardy: back the mizzen-topsail!'⁹

"No sooner said than done. The *Minerve's* progress was 'retarded, having the current to carry her down towards Hardy and his party, who, seeing this spirited 'manœuvre to save them from returning to their old quarters on board the *Terrible*, naturally redoubled their 'exertions to rejoin the frigate. To the landsmen on board the *Minerve* an action now appeared to be inevitable; and so, it would seem, thought the enemy, who, surprised and 'confounded by this daring manœuvre of the Commodore's (being ignorant of the accident that led to it), must have 'construed it into a direct 'challenge.

"Not 'conceiving, however, a Spanish ship of the line to be an equal match for a British frigate with Nelson on board of her, the captain of the *Terrible* 'suddenly shortened sail in order to allow his consort to join him, and thus afforded time for the *Minerve* to drop down to the jolly-boat to pick up Hardy and the crew; and the moment they were on board the frigate, orders were given again to make sail. Being now under studding-sails, and the widening of the Strait allowing the wind to be brought more on the *Minerve's* quarter, the frigate soon regained the lost distance, and in a short time we had the 'satisfaction to observe that the 'dastardly Don was left far in our wake;¹⁰ and at sunset, by steering to the southward, we lost sight

of him and his 'consort altogether; and Commodore Nelson thus escaped, to share in the Battle of St. Vincent,¹¹ and win fresh laurels from the Spaniard."

GIFFARD.

achievements, exploits.
attach'ment, affection.
challenge, defiance.
companions, mates.
conceiving, supposing.
confound'ed, baffled.
congratulating, compliment'ing.
con'sort, part'ner.
con'strued, interpreted.

das'tardly, cowardly.
elapsed, passed.
engage'ment, com'bat.
exer'tions, efforts.
extreme'ly, high'ly.
gal'antry, bra'very.
haz'ardous, per'ildous.
illustra'tions, exam'ples.
incit'ing, instigating.
maneu'vere, strat'agem.

observed, remark'ed.
occurred, hap'pened.
pen'dant, ban'ner.
recover, res'cue.
retard'ed, imp'ed'ed.
satisfac'tion, pleas'ure.
situa'tion, posi'tion.
sud'denly, unexpectedly.
unfor'tunate, unhapp'py.
unwont'ed, unu'sual.

¹ Nelson, Horatio, Viscount Nelson, the greatest of British seamen. Born 1758; died 1805.

² Com'modore, commander of a squadron detached from the fleet; the rank next below rear-admiral.

³ Frigate, a ship of war, in size between a sloop and a ship of the line; mounting from fifty to sixty guns.

⁴ Broad pendant—his flag as com-modore.

⁵ The Dons—the Spaniards; so called from their common title of courtesy, equivalent to English *Mr.*

⁶ Stud'ing-sails—sails set outside the principal sails to catch as much wind as possible.

⁷ Hardy, afterwards Vice-Admiral Sir Thomas Hardy, the friend in whose arms Nelson died at Trafalgar. To

him, as flag-captain on board the *Victory*, Nelson gave his famous signal, "England expects every man to do his duty." Born 1769; died 1830.

⁸ Jolly-boat, a small boat belonging to a ship, rowed by four or six oars. [A corruption of *yawl-boat*.]

⁹ Mizzen-top'sail, the sail on the top-mast nearest the stern.

¹⁰ Wake, rear; properly the streak of smooth water left in the track of a ship.

¹¹ Cape St. Vincent, the extreme south-western point of Portugal. There Admiral Sir John Jervis defeated the Spanish fleet, February 1797. Jervis was made Earl St. Vincent; and Nelson, through whose vigilance the action was brought about, was made a rear-admiral, and received the order of the Bath.

QUESTIONS.—When did this incident occur? How many Spanish ships followed the *Minerve*? What caused the latter to stop in its course? Who were placed in great peril? What order did Nelson give? Whom was he unwilling to lose? What did the *Terrible* immediately do? What did the *Minerve* do when the jolly-boat's crew was picked up? What was the result?

THE SPANISH CHAMPION.

THE warrior bowed his crested head, and tamed his heart of fire,
And sued the 'haughty king to free his long-imprisoned sire:¹
"I bring thee here my fortress keys,² I bring my 'captive train;
I pledge my faith, my liege, my lord—oh! break my father's
chain."

Commodore Nelson
of St. Vincent,¹¹ and

GIFFARD.

observed, remarked.
occurred, happened.
pendant, banner.
recover, rescue.
retarded, impeded.
satisfaction, pleasure.
situation, position.
suddenly, unexpectedly
unfortunate, unhappy.
unwonted, unusual.

Captain on board the *Vic-*
gave his famous signal,
directs every man to do his
1769; died 1830.
it, a small boat belonging
used by four or six oars.
of yacht-boat.]
up-sail, the sail on the
mast the stern.
er; properly the streak
er left in the track of a

Vincent, the extreme
point of Portugal. There
John Jervis defeated the
February 1797. Jervis
St. Vincent; and Nelson,
vigilance the action was
was made a rear-admiral,
order of the Bath.

any Spanish ships fol-
lows its course? Who were
whom was he unwilling
that did the *Mineve* do
the result?

his heart of fire,
imprisoned sire;¹
y captive train;
reark my father's

"Rise! rise! even now thy father comes, a 'ransomed man this
day;
Mount thy good steed, and thou and I will meet him on his
way:"

Then lightly rose that loyal son, and 'bounded on his steed;
And urged, as if with lance in hand, his charger's foaming speed.

And lo! from far, as on they pressed, there came a 'glittering
band,

With one that 'mid them stately rode, as a leader in the land:
"Now haste, Bernardo, haste! for there, in very truth, is he,
The father—whom thy 'grateful heart hath 'yearned so long to
see."

His dark eye flashed, his proud breast heaved, his cheek's blood
came and went;

He reached that gray-haired chieftain's side, and there dis-
mounting, bent:

A lowly knee to earth he bent, his father's hand he took;—
What was there in its touch that all his fiery spirit shook?

That hand was cold, a frozen thing—it dropped from his like
lead;

He looked up to the face above—the face was of the dead;³

A plume waved o'er that noble brow—the brow was fixed and
white;

He met at length his father's eyes, but in them was no sight!

Up from the ground he sprang, and gazed, but who can paint
that gaze?

They hushed their very hearts who saw its 'horror and amaze:
They might have chained him, as before that noble form he
stood;

For the power was stricken from his arm, and from his cheek
the blood.

"Father!" at length he murmured low, and wept like childhood
then—

(Talk not of grief till thou hast seen the tears of warlike men—)
He thought on all his 'glorious hopes, on all his high 'renown;
Then flung the falchion⁴ from his side, and in the dust sat down;

And, covering with his steel-gloved hand his darkly 'mournful
brow,

"No more, there is no more," he said, "to lift the sword for now;
My king is false! my hope 'betrayed! my father—oh! the worth,
The glory, and the 'loveliness, are passed away from earth!"

Up from the ground he sprang once more, and seized the mon-
arch's rein

Amid the pale and 'wildered looks of all the 'courtier train;
And with a fierce, 'o'er-mastering grasp, the rearing war-horse
led,

And 'sternly set them face to face—the king before the dead!

"Came I not forth upon thy pledge, my father's hand to kiss?—
Be still, and gaze thou on, false king! and tell me what is this?
The voice, the glance, the heart I sought—give answer, where
are they!

If thou wouldst clear thy 'perjured soul, send life through this
cold clay!

"Into these glassy eyes put light—be still, keep down thine
ire!—

Bid these white lips a blessing speak—this earth is *not* my sire!
Give me back him for whom I strove, for whom my blood was
shed!

Thou canst not?—and a king!—His dust be mountains on thy
head!"

He loosed the steed—his slack hand fell; upon the silent face
He cast one long, deep, 'troubled look, then turned from that sad
place:

His hope was crushed—his after-fate untold in 'martial strain—
His banner led the spears no more amidst the hills of Spain!

MRS. HEMANS (1793-1835).

betrayed', deceived'.
bound'ed, leapt.
cap'tive, enslaved'.
court'ier, knight'ly.
glit'tering, spark'ling.
glo'rious, splen'did.
grate'ful, thank'ful.

haught'y, proud.
hor'ror, repugnance.
love'liness, beau'ty.
mar'tial, war'like.
mourn'ful, sor'rowful.
o'ermas'tering, over-
power'ing.

per'jured, forsworn'.
ran'somed, redeemed'.
renown, celeb'rity.
stern'ly, austere'ly.
troub'led, disturbed'.
wil'dered, perplexed'.
yearned, longed.

¹ His long-imprisoned sire.—Don Sancho Count Saldana of Spain had for many years been kept in prison by King Alphonso of Asturias; but at length his son, Bernardo del Carpio, on coming to maturity, took up arms to effect his father's release.

² My fortress keys.—Alphonso had promised to release Don Sancho on condition that Bernardo should deliver up to him his castle of Carpio in exchange for his father's person. To this

Bernardo at once consented, and surrendered the castle in all simplicity of heart, little knowing the treachery which lurked under the agreement.

³ The dead.—The treacherous King had caused Count Saldana to be slain, and his dead body to be placed on horseback, to deceive for a time the dutiful son.

⁴ Falchion, sword; properly a short sword, *falcated*, or bent like a sickle. [Lat. *falx*, a sickle.]

QUESTIONS.—Who was the "warrior" referred to? Who was the "king"? What did the former beg of the latter? What was his father's name? On what condition had the king promised to deliver up Don Sancho? How did he keep his promise? What effect had this event on Bernardo's future?

THE CHEMISTRY OF A CANDLE.

PART I.

"AND now, uncle," asked Harry, who was a favourite with the old gentleman, "can you tell me what you do when you put a candle out?"

"Put an 'extinguisher on it, you young 'rogue, to be sure."

"Oh, but I mean, you cut off its supply of oxygen," said Master Harry.

"Cut off its what?"

"He means something he heard at the Royal Institution,"¹ observed Mrs. Wilkinson. "He reads a great deal about chemistry, and he attended Professor Faraday's lectures there on the chemical history of a candle, and has been full of it ever since."

"Now, you, sir," said Uncle Bagges, "come you here to me, and tell me what you have to say about this chemical eh?—or 'comical, which?—this—comical chemical history of a candle."

"Harry, don't be 'troublesome to your uncle," said Mr. Wilkinson.

"Troublesome? Oh, not at all. I like to hear him."

"Let us get a wax candle then, uncle. There's one on the mantle-shelf. Let me light it."

"Take care you don't burn your fingers, or set anything on fire," said Mrs. Wilkinson.

"Now, uncle," commenced Harry, having drawn his chair to the side of Mr. Bagges, "we have got our candle burning. Look down on the top of it, around the wick. See, it is a little cup full of melted wax. The heat of the flame has melted the wax just round the wick. The cold air keeps the outside of it hard, so as to make the rim of it. The melted wax in the little cup goes up through the wick to be burned, just as oil does in the wick of a lamp. What do you think makes it go up, uncle?"

"Why—why, the flame *draws* it up, doesn't it?"

"Not exactly, uncle. It goes up through little tiny passages in the cotton wick, because very, very small channels, or pipes, or pores, have the power in themselves of sucking up liquids. What they do it by is called capillary attraction;²—just as a sponge sucks up water, or a bit of lump-sugar the little drop of tea or coffee left in the bottom of a cup.

"Now, I'll blow the candle out; not to be in the dark, but to find out what it is.—Look at the smoke rising from the wick. I'll hold a bit of lighted paper in the smoke so as not to touch the wick. But see, for all that, the candle lights again! So this shows that the melted wax sucked up through the wick is turned into vapour, and the vapour burns. The heat of the burning vapour keeps on melting more wax, and that is sucked up too within the flame, and turned into vapour and burned; and so on till the wax is all used up and the candle is gone. So the flame, uncle, you see, is the last of the candle; and the candle seems to go through the flame into nothing, although it doesn't, but goes into several things;—and isn't it curious, as Professor Faraday said, that the candle should look so splendid and glorious in going away?"

"I dare say that the flame of the candle looks flat to you; but if we were to put a lamp-glass over it, so as to shelter it from the draught, you would see it is round—round sideways, and running up to a peak. It is drawn up by the hot air. You know that hot air always rises, and that is the way smoke is taken up the chimney. What do you think is in the middle of the flame?"

"I should say fire," replied Uncle Bagges.

"Oh, no. The flame is hollow. The bright flame we see is something no thicker than a thin peel or skin, and it doesn't touch the wick. Inside of it is the vapour I told you of just now. If you put one end of a bent pipe into the middle of the flame, and let the other end of the pipe dip into a warm bottle, the vapour or gas from the candle will mix with the air there; and if you were to set fire to the mixture of gas from the candle and air in the bottle, it would go off with a bang."

"I wish you'd do that, Harry," said Master Tom, the younger brother of the juvenile lecturer.

"I want the proper things," answered Harry.—"Well, uncle, the flame of the candle is a little shining case, with the case of flame is between the air and the gas. The gas keeps going into the flame to burn; and when the candle burns properly, none of the gas ever passes out through the flame, and none of the air ever gets in through the flame to the gas. The greatest heat of the candle is in this skin, or peel, or case of flame."

"Case of flame!" repeated Mr. Bagges. "Live and learn. I should have thought a candle-flame was as thick as my poor old noddle."

"I can show you the contrary," said Harry. "I take this piece of white paper, look, and hold it a second or two down on the candle-flame, keeping the flame very steady. Now, I'll rub off the black of the smoke, and—there—you find that the paper is scorched in the shape of a

ring, but inside the ring it is only dirtied, and not singed at all."

"Seeing is believing," remarked the uncle.

"But," proceeded Harry, "there is more in the candle-flame than the gas that comes out of the candle. You know a candle won't burn without air. There must be always air around the gas, and touching it, as it were, to make it burn. If a candle hasn't got 'enough of air it goes out, or burns badly, so that some of the vapour inside of the flame comes out through it in the form of smoke; and this is the reason of a candle smoking. So now you know why a great clumsy dip smokes more than a neat wax candle: it is because the thick wick of the dip makes too much fuel in proportion to the air that can get to it.

"What should you say now," continued Harry, "if I were to tell you that the smoke that comes out of a candle is the very thing that makes a candle burn with a bright light? Yes; a candle shines by 'consuming its own smoke. The smoke of a candle is a cloud of small dust; and the little grains of dust are bits of charcoal, or carbon, as chemists call it. They are burned the moment they are made; and the place they are made in is the case of flame itself, where the strongest heat is. The great heat separates them from the gas which comes from the melted wax; and as soon as they touch the air on the outside of the thin case of flame they burn."

"Can you tell me how it is that the little bits of carbon cause the 'brightness of the flame?" asked Mr. Wilkinson.

"Because they are pieces of 'solid matter," answered Harry. "To make a flame shine, there must always be some solid, or at least dense, matter in it."

"Very good," said Mr. Bagges; "solid stuff 'necessary to brightness!"

"Some gases and other things," resumed Harry, "that burn with a flame you can hardly see, burn splendidly when something solid is put into them. Hydrogen³ gas,

if blown through a pipe, burns with very little light; but if the flame is blown upon a piece of quick-lime,⁴ it gets so bright as to be quite 'dazzling. If you now send some oxygen⁵ on to the flame, the flame gets no brighter, but the lime shines like a little sun. Make the smoke of oil of turpentine pass through the same oxygen, and it gives the flame a 'beautiful brightness 'directly. Well, carbon, or charcoal, is what causes the brightness of all lamps, and candles, and other common lights; so, of course, there is carbon in what they are all made of."

"So carbon is smoke, eh? and light is owing to your carbon. Giving light out of smoke, eh? as they say in the classics," observed Mr. Bagges.-

answered, replied'.

beautiful, love'ly.

brightness, brill'iancy.

chimney, smoke-vent.

clum'sy, coarse.

comical, fun'ny.

commenced', began'.

consum'ing, absorb'ing.

con'trary, op'posite.

cu'rious, stranga.

dazzling, blind'ing.

direct'ly, imm'e'diately.

draught, air-current.

enough', plenty.

exact'ly, precise'ly.

extin'guisher, car.

ju'venile, youth'ful.

melt'ed, dissolv'ed.

mix'ture, an'ton.

ne'cessary, essen'tial.

nod'dle, head.

observ'ed, remark'ed'.

pores, pas'sages.

proceed'ed, contin'ued.

prop'erly, right'ly.

rogue, rascal.

scorched, black'ened.

sep'arates, disjoin's.

shel'ter, protect'.

sol'id, substan'tial.

splend'id, grand.

troub'lesome, tire'some.

va'pour, gas.

¹ Royal Institution—founded in London in 1799, by Count Rumford and Sir Joseph Banks. Faraday was director of the laboratory and Fullerian Professor there from 1825 till his death. His lectures on the chemistry of a candle formed part of the series of Christmas lectures adapted to a juvenile audience, which Faraday commenced in 1827 "for boys home for the holidays." They were very successful.

² Capillary attraction is the property of liquids which causes them to rise, contrary to gravity, when in contact with other bodies. So water rises on the sides of a sheet of glass placed in it. If a glass tube be placed in

water, the water will rise within the glass; and the finer the tube, the higher will it rise. *Capillary* means hair-like. [Lat. *capillus*, a hair.]

³ Hydrogen, *lit.* water-producing; because this gas mixed with oxygen produces water. [Gr. *hydor*, water; *gennao*, I produce.]

⁴ Quick-lime, lime in a quick or active state; any calcareous substance (as chalk, lime-stone, &c.) deprived of its carbonic acid by the action of intense heat.

⁵ Oxygen, *lit.* acid-producing; because it was formerly supposed to be an essential element of all acids. [Gr. *oxy*, sharp; *gennao*, I produce.]

QUESTIONS.—When a candle burns, why does the melted wax go up through the wick? What happens when you hold a bit of lighted paper in the smoke of a candle after it has been extinguished? What does this show? Of what does the flame of a candle consist? What is inside? How can this be shown? With-

out what will a candle not burn? Why does a "clumsy dip smoke more than a neat wax candle"? What in reality is the smoke of a candle? Why is it that the little bits of carbon cause the brightness of the flame? Illustrate this by the example of the oxy-hydrogen flame-light.

THE CHEMISTRY OF A CANDLE.

PART II.

"BUT what becomes of the candle," pursued Harry, "as it burns away? where does it go?"

"Nowhere, I should think. It burns to nothing."

"Oh, dear, no!" said Harry; "everything goes somewhere. You can see it goes into smoke, which makes soot, for one thing. There are other things it goes into, not to be seen by merely looking, but you can get to see them by taking the right means. Just put your hand over the candle, uncle."

"Thank you, my young gentleman, I would rather be excused."

"Not close enough down to burn you, uncle;—higher up. There;—you feel a stream of hot air, so something seems to rise from the candle. Suppose you were to put a long glass lamp-chimney over the flame, and let the flame burn just within the end of it, as if it were a chimney, some of the hot steam would go up and pass out at the top, but a sort of dew would be left behind in the glass chimney, if the chimney was cold enough when you put it on. There are ways of collecting this dew; and when it is collected it turns out to be really water. I am not joking, uncle. Water is one of the things which the candle turns into while burning—water coming out of fire! In some light-houses, Professor Faraday says, two gallons of oil are burned in a single night; and if the windows are cold, the steam from the oil clouds them, and, in frosty weather, 'freezes into ice.'

"Water out of a candle, eh?" exclaimed Mr. Bagges.

"As hard to get, I should have thought, as blood out of a post. Where does it come from?"

"Part from the wax, and part from the air; and yet not a drop of it comes from either the air or the wax. What do you make of that, uncle?"

"Eh? Oh, I'm no hand at 'riddles! Give it up."

"No riddle at all, uncle. That which comes from the wax is a gas called hydrogen. We can obtain it from water by passing the steam of boiling water through a red-hot gun-barrel which contains a quantity of iron wire or turnings. Part of the steam will mix with the iron turnings, and change them into rust; and the other part, which comes out of the end of the barrel, will be hydrogen gas, and this part of the water we can set on fire."

"Eh?" cried Mr. Bagges. "Upon my word! One of these days we shall have you setting the river on fire!"

"Nothing more easy," said Harry. "When pure hydrogen burns, we get nothing but water. I should like to show you how light this hydrogen is; and I wish I had a small balloon to fill with it and send up to the ceiling; or a pipe full of it to blow soap-bubbles with, and show how much faster they rise than common ones blown with the breath."

"So do I," interposed Master Tom.

"And so," resumed Harry, "hydrogen, you know, uncle is part of water, and just one-ninth part. The other eight parts are a gas also, called oxygen. This is a very curious gas. It won't burn in air at all itself, like gas from a lamp; but it has a wonderful power of making things burn that are lighted and put into it. A lighted candle put into a jar of oxygen 'blazes up directly, and is consumed before you can say Jack Robinson. Charcoal burns away in it as fast, with beautiful bright sparks; phosphorus burns with a light that would dazzle you to look at; and a piece of iron or steel, just made red-hot at the end first, may be burned in oxygen more quickly than a

stick could be in common air. The 'experiment of burning things in oxygen beats any fire-works."

"How funny that must be!" exclaimed Tom.

"Now we see, uncle," Harry continued, "that water is hydrogen and oxygen 'united together; that water is got whenever hydrogen is burned in common air; that a candle won't burn without air; and that when a candle burns, there is hydrogen in it burning and forming water. Now, then, where does the hydrogen of the candle get the oxygen, to turn into water with it?"

"From the air, eh?"

"Just so. It is the oxygen in the air that makes things burn; but if the air were nothing but oxygen, a candle would not last above a minute.

"If a house were on fire in oxygen,' as Professor Faraday said, 'every iron bar, or, rather, every pillar, every nail and iron tool, and the 'grate itself; all the zinc and copper roofs, and leaden coverings, and gutters, and pipes, would consume and burn, 'increasing the 'combustion.'"

"That would be, indeed, 'burning like a house on fire,'" observed Mr. Bagges.

"But there is another gas, called nitrogen,"¹ said Harry, "which is mixed with the air; and it is this which 'prevents a candle from burning out too fast."

"Eh?" said Mr. Bagges. "Well, I do think we are under 'considerable 'obligations to nitrogen."

"I have 'explained to you, uncle," continued Harry, "how a candle in burning, turns into water. But it turns into something else besides that. The little bits of carbon that I told you about, which are burned in the flame of a candle, and which make the flame bright, mingle with the oxygen in burning, and form still another gas, called carbonic acid² gas, which is very 'destructive to life when we breathe it. So you see that a candle-flame is vapour burning; and that the vapour, in burning, turns into water and carbonic acid gas."

"I
said
"I
a can
is co
breat
of va
Oxyg
it is
"V
the c
"J
Profe
carb
hear
"J
learn
by a
Mr.
and
I'll g
your
old r
blaz'e
ceil'in
collec
comb
tion
consic
deserv
destru
encou
exclai
"Ni
elemen
fifths
able o
nitre
"Ca
which
It is o

ment of burning

Tom.

"that water is
at water is got
; that a candle
candle burns,
water. Now,
get the oxygen,

t makes things
oxygen, a candle

Professor Fara-
pillar, every
the zinc and
rs, and pipes,
mbustion." "
ouse on fire," "

1 said Harry,
s which 'pre-

think we are

uned Harry,
But it turns
ts of carbon
e flame of a
gle with the
, called car-
fe when we
apour burn-
into water

"Haven't you pretty nearly come to your candle's end?"
said Mr. Wilkinson.

"Nearly. I only want to tell uncle that the burning of
a candle is almost exactly like our breathing. Breathing
is consuming oxygen, only not so fast as burning. In
breathing, we throw out from our lungs water in the form
of vapour, and carbonic acid gas, and take oxygen in.
Oxygen is as necessary to support the life of the body as
it is to keep up the flame of a candle."

"Well," said Mr. Bagges, "any more to tell us about
the candle?"

"If I had time, I could tell you a great deal more that
Professor Faraday said about oxygen, and hydrogen, and
carbon, and water, and breathing; but you should go and
hear him yourself, uncle."

"Eh? well I think I shall. Some of us 'seniors may
learn something from a juvenile lecture, at any rate if given
by a Faraday. And now, my boy, I tell you what," added
Mr. Bagges; "I am very glad to find you so fond of study
and science; and you 'deserve to be 'encouraged; and so
I'll give you a—what-d'ye-call-it?—a galvanic battery³ on
your next birth-day; and so much for your teaching your
old uncle the Chemistry of a Candle."

bláz'es, flames.
cell'ing, inside roof.
collect'ing, gath'ering.
combust'ic, configura-
tion.
consider'able, import-
deserve', merit. [ant.
destruct'ive, injur'ious.
encour'aged, stim'ulated
exclaimed', ejac'ulated.

excused', pardoned.
exper'iment, opera'tion.
explained', expound'ed.
freez'es, congeals'.
grate, fire'-place.
increas'ing, augment'ing
jok'ing, making fun.
oblig'a'tion, indebt'ed-
obtain', procure'. [ness.
prevents', hind'ers.

pursued', contin'ued.
quan'tity, por'tion.
rid'dles, conundrums.
se'niors, old folks.
support', maintain'.
suppose', assume'.
turn'ings, fill'ings.
unit'ed, joined.
won'derful, extraor'di-
nary.

¹ Nitrogen, *lit.* nitre-producing; an
elementary gas, forming about four-
fifths of the atmosphere. It is incap-
able of supporting life. [Gr. *nitron*,
nitre (salt-petre); *gennaō*, I produce.]

² Carbonic acid.—This is the gas
which is generated by fermentation.
It is often destructive to life in mines,

and very confined apartments.
Though it is poison to animal life, it is
food to vegetable life.

³ Galvanic battery, an apparatus
(called also a *Voltaic battery*) for pro-
ducing electricity by chemical action.
In its simplest form it consists of a
series of vessels containing sulphuric

acid and water, in each of which are placed a plate of copper and a plate of zinc, not touching each other. The zinc plate in the first vessel is connected with the copper plate in the second by a wire, and so on. A wire of any length is attached to the last zinc plate, and another to the first copper plate. As soon as the two last-mentioned wires are brought into contact, the circuit is completed, and a current of electricity passes round the entire circuit.

QUESTIONS.—What are the different things into which the candle goes when it burns? How is the water produced? What is it that prevents the candle from burning too fast? How is the carbonic acid gas produced? Show how the burning of a candle resembles the process of breathing.

THE PARTING OF MARMION AND DOUGLAS.

Not far advanced was morning day
 When Marmion did his troop 'array,
 To Surrey's camp to ride;
 He had safe-conduct for his band,
 Beneath the royal seal and hand,
 And Douglas gave a guide.
 The ancient earl, with stately grace,
 Would Clara¹ on her palfrey² place;
 And 'whispered, in an under-tone,
 "Let the hawk stoop, his prey is flown."³
 The train from out the castle drew;
 But Marmion stopped to bid 'adieu:—
 "Though something I might plain,"⁴ he said,
 "Of cold respect to stranger guest,
 Sent hither by your king's behest,⁵
 While in Tantallon's⁶ towers I stayed,
 Part we in 'friendship from your land,
 And, noble earl, 'receive my hand."—
 But Douglas round him drew his cloak,
 Folded his arms, and thus he spoke:
 "My manors, halls, and bowers, shall still
 Be open, at my 'sovereign's will,
 To each one whom he lists, howe'er
 Unmeet to be the owner's peer:
 My castles are my king's alone,
 From turret to 'foundation stone;—
 The hand of Douglas is his own,
 And never shall in friendly grasp
 The hand of such as Marmion clasp."—

adien'
 array'
 defied'
 found'
 friend'
 (1)

st zinc plate, and
copper plate. As
mentioned wires
contact, the circuit
current of elec-
the entire circuit.

candle goes when
vents the candle
? Show how the

e said,

ill

THE PARTING OF MARMION AND DOUGLAS.

Burned Marmion's 'swarthy cheek like fire,
And shook his very frame for ire,
And—"This to me!" he said;—
"An' 'twere not for thy hoary beard,
Such hand as Marmion's had not spared
To cleave the Douglas' head!
And, first, I tell thee, haughty peer,
He who does England's message here,
Although the meanest in her state,
May well, proud Angus, be thy mate!
And, Douglas, more I tell thee here,
Even in thy pitch of pride,
Here in thy hold, thy vassals near,—
(Nay, never look upon your lord,
And lay your hands upon your sword),—
I tell thee thou'rt 'defied!
And if thou saidst I am not 'peer
To any lord in Scotland here,
Lowland or Highland, far or near,
Lord Angus, thou hast lied!"
On the earl's cheek—the flush of rage
'O'ercame the ashen hue of age.
Fierce he broke forth:—"And darest thou, then,
To beard the lion in his den,
The Douglas in his hall?
And hopest thou hence 'unscathed to go?—
No! by Saint Bride of Bothwell, no!—
Up drawbridge, grooms!—what, warder, ho!
Let the portcullis⁹ fall."

Lord Marmion turned,—well was his need,—
And dashed the rowels¹⁰ in his steed,
Like arrow through the archway sprung—
The 'ponderous gate behind him rung:
To pass there was such scanty room,
The bars, descending, 'razed his plume!

SIR WALTER SCOTT (1771-1832).

adieu, farewell.
array, arrange.
defied, dared.
founda'tion, base'ment.
friend'ship, am'ity.

(411)

overcame, subdued.
peer, e'qual.
pon derous, weight'y.
razed, lev'elled.
receive, accept.

5

sov ereign, mon'arch.
swarthy, tawn'y.
unscathed, unharmed.
vas'sals, liege'men.
whis'pered, mut'tered.

¹ Clara, an English heiress, for whose hand Marmion had been an unsuccessful suitor. He had attempted to ruin De Wilton, her lover, but had failed.

² Palfrey, a small horse, for a lady; *lit.* a spare or extra horse.

³ His prey is flown.—De Wilton, who had gulped Lord Marmion in Scotland in the disguise of a palmer, had left the castle at dawn, clad in complete armour.

⁴ Plain, complain.

⁵ Behest, command.

⁶ Tantal'ion, Douglas's castle on the coast of East Lothian.

⁷ An, if.

⁸ Angus.—Douglas was Earl of Angus.

⁹ Portcul'is, a sliding gate, formed of iron cross-bars, suspended in the gateway of a castle. When the chains on which it was hung were let loose, it fell by its own weight.

¹⁰ Rowels, spurs; properly the little wheel which bears the sharp points of the spur. [Old Fr. *rouelle*, from Lat. *rota*, a wheel.]

THE "MAYFLOWER."

On the northern border of Nottinghamshire stands the little town of Scrooby. Here, about the end of the sixteenth century, there were some grave and well-reputed persons, to whom the ceremonies of the Established Church were an offence. They met in secret at the house of one of their number, a gentleman named Brewster. They were ministered to in all scriptural simplicity by the pastor of their choice—Mr. Robinson, a wise and good man. But their secret meetings were betrayed to the authorities, and their lives were made bitter by the persecutions that fell upon them. They resolved to leave their own land, and seek among strangers that freedom which was denied them at home.

They embarked with all their goods for Holland. But when the ship was about to sail, soldiers came upon them, plundered them, and drove them on shore. They were marched to the public square of Boston,¹ and there the Fathers of New England endured such indignities as an unbelieving rabble could inflict. After some weeks in prison, they were suffered to return home.

Next spring they tried again to escape. This time a good many were on board, and the others were waiting for the return of the boat which should carry them to the ship.

Suddenly
The ship
with tho
'conduct
In little
Robinson
stage of
New wa

Eleve
Holland
their va
tation
professe
ment.
printed
faction
James.³
time as

The
heart.
colony
depend
were fo
Father
to be a
age.
they c
should

On
upon
for the
a littl
transp
have
can.
fond f

Suddenly dragoons were seen 'spurring across the sands. The shipmaster pulled up his anchor, and pushed out to sea with those of his passengers whom he had. The rest were 'conducted to prison. After a time they were set at liberty. In little groups they also made their way to Holland. Mr. Robinson and his congregation were reunited, and the first stage of the weary 'pilgrimage from the Old England to the New was at length 'accomplished.

Eleven quiet and not unprosperous years were spent in Holland. The Pilgrims worked with patient industry at their various handicrafts.² They quickly gained the 'reputation of doing honestly and effectively whatever they professed to do; and thus they found abundant employment. Mr. Brewster established a printing-press, and printed books about liberty; which, as he had the satisfaction of knowing, greatly 'enraged the foolish King James.³ The little colony received additions from time to time as oppression in England became more 'intolerable.

The instinct of separation was strong within the Pilgrim heart. They could not bear the thought that their little colony was to mingle with the Dutchmen and lose its 'independent existence. But already their sons and daughters were forming alliances which threatened this result. The Fathers considered long and anxiously how the danger was to be averted. They 'determined again to go on pilgrimage. They would seek a home beyond the Atlantic, where they could dwell apart, and found a State in which they should be free to think.

On a sunny morning in July 1620, the Pilgrims kneel upon the sea-shore at Delfthaven,⁴ while the pastor prays for the success of their journey. Out upon the gleaming sea a little ship lies waiting. Money has not been found to transplant the whole colony, and scarcely one hundred have been sent. The 'remainder will follow when they can. These hundred depart amid tears and prayers and fond farewells. Mr. Robinson dismissed them with 'coun-

sels which breathed a pure and high-toned wisdom, urging them to keep their minds ever open for the reception of new truths.

Their little ship, the *Speedwell*, brought them to Southampton, where they found the *Mayflower*, a ship hired for the voyage, and a small band of Pilgrims from London. At Plymouth the *Speedwell* was pronounced unseaworthy, and was abandoned; and the *Mayflower*, crowded with the whole party (one hundred and two souls), set sail alone.



THE "MAYFLOWER" IN CAPE COD BAY.

The *Mayflower* was a ship of one hundred and sixty tons. The weather proved stormy and cold; the voyage unexpectedly long. It was the middle of September when they sailed. It was not till the 11th November that the *Mayflower* dropped her anchor in the waters of Cape Cod Bay.⁵

A bleak-looking and discouraging coast lay before them. Nothing met the eye but low sand-hills, covered with ill-

grown w
had now
they 'hes
them all

Little
suitable
ships to
froze up
'armour
peared t
water.

ping a
revere
solved
New I

The

very
board
shore
Sickn
secon
By th
and t
Bu

wisdom, urging
reception of new

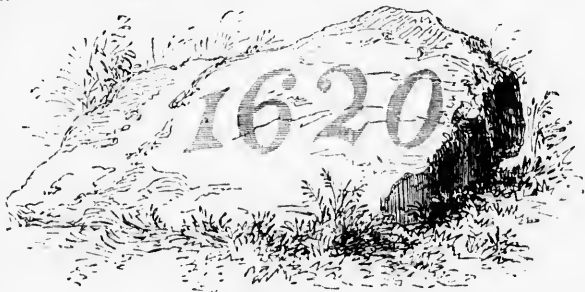
them to South-
a ship hired
as from Lon-
ounced unsea-
crowded with
et sail alone.



sixty tons.
age unex-
when they
the *May-*
od Bay.⁵
ore them.
with ill-

grown wood down to the 'margin of the sea. The Pilgrims had now to choose a place for their settlement. About this they 'hesitated so long that the captain threatened to put them all on shore and leave them.

Little expeditions were sent to explore. At first no suitable 'locality could be found. The men had great hard- ships to endure. The cold was so 'excessive that the spray froze upon their clothes, and they resembled men eased in 'armour. At length a spot was fixed upon. The soil ap- peared to be good, and 'abounded in "delicate springs" of water. On the 23rd December the Pilgrims landed—step-



THE PILGRIM STONE.

ping ashore upon a huge boulder of granite,⁶ which is still reverently preserved by their 'descendants. Here they re- solved to found their 'settlement, which they agreed to call New Plymouth.⁷

The winter was severe, and the infant colony was brought very near to 'extinction. They had been badly fed on board the *Mayflower*, and for some time after going on shore there was very imperfect shelter from the weather. Sickness fell heavily on the worn-out Pilgrims. Every second day a grave had to be dug in the frozen ground. By the time spring came in there were only fifty survivors, and these sadly 'enfeebled and dispirited.

But all through this dismal winter the Pilgrims laboured

at their heavy task. The care of the sick, the burying of the dead, sadly hindered their work. But the building of their little town went on. They found that nineteen houses would contain their diminished numbers. These they built. Then they surrounded them with a palisade.

Upon an eminence beside their town they erected a structure which served a double purpose. Above, it was a fort, on which they mounted six cannon; below, it was their church. Hitherto the Indians had been a cause of anxiety, but had done them no harm. Now they felt safe. Indeed there had never been much risk. A recent epidemic had swept off nine-tenths of the Indians who inhabited that region, and the discouraged survivors could ill afford to incur the hostility of their formidable visitors.

The Pilgrims had been careful to provide for themselves a government. They had drawn up and signed, in the cabin of the *Mayflower*, a document forming themselves into a body politic, and promising obedience to all laws framed for the general good. Under this Constitution they appointed John Carver⁸ to be their governor. They dutifully acknowledged King James, but they left no very large place for his authority. They were essentially a self-governing people. They knew what despotism was, and they were very sure that democracy could by no possibility be so bad.

The welcome spring came at length, and "the birds sang in the woods most pleasantly." The health of the colony began somewhat to improve; but there was still much suffering to endure. The summer passed not unprosperously. They had taken possession of the deserted clearings of the Indians, and had no difficulty in providing themselves with food. In the autumn came a ship with a new company of Pilgrims. This was very encouraging; but happily the ship brought no provisions, and the supplies of the colonists were not sufficient for this unexpected addition. For six months there was only half allowance to each.

Suc
three
to hav
tune a
suffer
in the
difficu
but s
grow.

aboun
accom
ar' mow
author
trate
betray
cer' em
ance
condu
coun's
democ
desce
des' p
dster
discou
doc' m
du' tif

¹ B
colnsl
² H
the ha
hand,
power
³ K
⁴ D
Holle
west
⁵ C
east

Qu
were
pene
were
they
salle
num
theit
first

Such straits recurred frequently during the first two or three years. Often the colonists knew not at night "where to have a bit in the morning." Once or twice the 'opportunity arrival of a ship saved them from famishing. They suffered much, but their cheerful trust in Providence and in their own final triumph never wavered. They faced the difficulties of their position with 'undaunted hearts. Slowly but surely the little colony struck its roots and began to grow.

abound'ed, teemed with.
accomplished, complet'
armour, mail. [ed.
authorities, 'magis-
trates.
betrayed', revealed'.
ceremonies, observ-
ances.
conduct'ed, led.
coun'sels, advice'. [ism.
democracy, republican-
descendants, children.
despotism, tyr'anny.
deter'mined, resolved'.
discour'aging, uninvit'
document, paper. [ing.
dutifully, loy'ally.

em'inance, eleva'tion.
encour'aging, inspirit'
ing.
enfee'bled, weaken'ed.
enraged', irritat'ed.
epidem'ic, disease'.
exces'sive, extreme'.
extinct'ion, extermina'
tion.
hes'itated, wa'vered.
hostil'ity, en'mity.
independ'ent, individ'
ual.
indig'nities, in'sults.
intolerable, insu'fer-
local'ity, dist'ict. [able.
mar'gin, bor'der.

opportune', time'ly.
pilgrimage, jour'ney.
plun'dered, rui'ned.
pronounced', declared'.
reception, entertain'ing.
remain'der, res'idue.
reputa'tion, char'acter.
set'tlement, col'ony.
simplic'ity, plain'ness.
spur'ring, gal'loping-
struc'ture, build'ing.
suf'fered, permit'ted.
undaunt'ed, intrep'id.
unpros'perously, unsuc-
cess'fully.
well-repu'ted, respect'
able.

¹ Boston on the Witham, in Lincolnshire.

² Handicrafts, trades which employ the hand chiefly; *lit.* skill of hand. [Eng. hand, and craft, skill; Old Eng. *craft*, power to lay hold of a thing.]

³ King James—James I. of England.

⁴ Delft'haven, a small port in South Holland, on the Maas, two miles southwest of Rotterdam.

⁵ Cape Cod Bay, a bay in the southeast of Massachusetts, formed by a pen-

insula jutting northward, the extremity of which is called Cape Cod.

⁶ Boulder of granite—Plymouth Rock; called also the *Pilgrim Rock*, in memory of the event of 1620.

⁷ New Plymouth, a town of Massachusetts, on Cape Cod Bay. This settlement formed the nucleus of the State of Massachusetts, the mother State of New England.

⁸ John Carver died in 1621, before he had held his office one year.

QUESTIONS.—To what town did the Pilgrim Fathers originally belong? How were they prevented escaping to Holland on their first attempt? What happened next spring? How many years did the Pilgrims spend in Holland? How were they occupied? Why did they resolve to sail to America? Where did they embark? In what year? Where did they meet the *Mayflower*? How many sailed from Plymouth? Where did they land? Where? To what was their number reduced before spring? What did they erect on an eminence beside their town? Where had they framed their constitution? Who was appointed first governor? To what straits were they frequently subjected?



THE PILGRIM FATHERS.

See page 67.

The breaking waves dashed high on a stern and rock-bound
 coast,
 And the woods against a stormy sky their giant branches tossed,
 And the heavy night hung dark the hills and waters o'er,
 When a band of 'exiles moored their bark on the wild New
 England shore.

Not as the 'conqueror comes, they, the true-hearted, came,—
 Not with the roll of 'stirring drums, and the trumpet that sings
 of fame :
 Not as the flying come, in silence and in fear,—
 They shook the depths of the desert's gloom with their hymns
 of 'lofty cheer.

Amidst the storm they sang, and the stars heard and the sea !
 And the sounding 'aisles of the dim wood rang to the 'anthems
 of the free !

The oc
 And t

There
 Why h

There
 There

What
 The v

Ay, ca
 They

aisles,
 an' the
 con' qu
 ex'iles

[AN
 carbon
 of our
 'parti
 lungs,
 union
 'inter
 burn,
 is the
 partic
 'hum
 mem

WE
 min
 Dain
 are
 cee
 stov

The ocean-eagle soared from his nest by the white waves' foam,
And the rocking pines of the forest roared;—this was their
welcome home!

There were men with 'hoary hair amidst that pilgrim band;
Why had they come to wither there, away from their childhood's
land?

There was woman's 'fearless eye, lit by her deep love's truth;
There was manhood's brow, 'serenely high; and the fiery heart
of youth.

What sought they thus afar? bright 'jewels of the mine?
The wealth of seas, the spoils of war!—They sought a faith's
pure 'shrine!

Ay, call it holy ground, the soil where first they trod!
They have left 'unstained what there they found,—freedom to
worship God!

MRS. HEMANS (1793-1835.)

aisles, pas'sages.
an'thems, hymns.
con'queror, victor.
ex'iles, refugees'.

fear'less, daunt'less.
hoar'y, white.
jew'els, rich'es.
lof'ty, exalt'ed.

serene'ly, calm'ly.
shrine, temple.
stir'ring, rous'ing.
unstained', spot'less.

LIVING STOVES.

[ANIMAL heat is caused by the union of the *oxygen* of the air with the *carbon* derived from the food we eat. This carbon, taken in as a part of our food, and being used to form the tissues of the body, is dislodged, 'particle by particle, whenever we move a muscle, be it of the heart, lungs, or limbs, and whenever we think or feel; and it is then that the union with oxygen (that is, the combustion) takes place. The more 'intensely, therefore, we think, and act, and feel, the more carbon we burn, and the more repairs our bodies need. The condition of life is therefore death; and the faster we live the more rapidly are the particles of our bodies burning up—passing away. The following 'humorous article may help to fix some of these principles in our memories.]

WE must be plain with our reader. It will not do to mince matters where questions of science are concerned. Dainty people will, no doubt, object to the 'proposition we are about to advance. Nevertheless we persist, and proceed to lay down the following assertion: We are all living stoves—walking fire-places—furnaces in the flesh.



See page 67.
ek-bound
es tossed,
er,
ild New
ne,—
at sings
hymns
sea!
thems

Now we do not intend to say that any one can light a cigar, or boil an egg, or even ignite a lucifer-match at these human hearths. Still, we repeat, these bodies of ours are stoves—fire-places—furnaces, if these terms can be applied to any apparatus for the express production of heat. And is not heat produced in the human body by the union of oxygen with carbon, just the same as by the burning of wood in an open fire-place? and does not this union take place in the capillaries¹ of the blood-vessels?

But granting that our bodies are 'veritable stoves, the reader will desire to know where we 'procure our fuel. Fortunately, our coal and fire-wood are stored up in a very interesting form. They are laid before us in the shape of bread and butter, puddings and pies; rashers of bacon for the labourer, and haunches of venison or turtle-soup for the epicure.² Instead of being brought up in scuttles, they are 'presented in tureens, dishes, or tumblers, or all of them, in pleasant succession.

In fact, whenever you send a person an 'invitation to dinner, you virtually request the honour of his company to take fuel; and when you see him 'enthusiastically employed on your dainties, you know that he is literally "shovelling" fuel into his corporeal stove. The 'ultimate form in which this fuel is burned in the capillaries is that of carbon, with a little hydrogen and sulphur; but we swallow it in the shape of fat, starch, sugar, alcohol, and other less 'inflammatory compounds. By far the most heating of these substances is fat. Ten pounds of this material, imported into your stove, will do as much work—that is, will produce as much warmth—as twenty-five pounds of starch, twenty-five of sugar, or even twenty-six of spirits.

And a pleasant thing it is to observe how 'sagaciously the instinct of man has fastened upon the articles which will best supply him with the species of fuel he requires. The Esquimaux³ is 'extremely partial to oily fare. He does not know why. He never heard of the doctrine of

animal heat, but he feels intuitively⁴ that bear's grease and blubber are the things for him. Condemn him to live on potatoes or Indian corn, and the poor fellow would resent the cruelty as much as an alderman of the old school is 'sentenced to 'subsist on water-gruel alone.

And the savage would be perfectly right. Exposed as he is to the fierce cold of a northern sky, every object around him plundering him of his caloric incessantly, what he needs is plenty of oily food, because from that he can produce the greatest quantity of heat. On the other hand, the native of the tropics, equally ignorant of animal chemistry, 'eschews the fiery diet, which his climate renders 'inappropriate, and keeps himself cool on rice, or dates, or watery fruits.

Hence we see the reason why a very stout man, if deprived of food, can keep up his corporeal fires for a longer time than a slender one. Human fat is fuel laid away for use. It 'constitutes a hoard of combustible material upon which the owner may draw whenever his ordinary supplies are 'intercepted. Let all plump persons therefore rejoice. We offer them our hearty, perhaps somewhat envious, congratulations. They, at any rate, are prepared to stand a long siege from cold.

For the same reason, animals which hibernate,⁵ like the bear, jerboa,⁶ marmot,⁷ dormouse,⁸ bat, and others, generally grow plump before they retire into winter quarters. Upon their capital of fat they subsist during their lethargy,⁹ the 'respiration being lessened, the pulse reduced to a few beats per minute, and the 'temperature perhaps nearly to the freezing point. But when the season of torpor 'terminates, they issue from their caves and burrows meagre and ravenous, having burned up their stock of fuel; Bruin¹⁰ himself appearing to be anxious to 'defraud the perfumers of the unguent¹¹ which is so precious in their eyes.

But perhaps the most striking feature in this warmth-

producing apparatus¹² within us is the self-regulating power which it possesses. The fires on our domestic hearths decline at one moment, and 'augment at another. Sometimes the mistress of the house threatens to faint on account of excessive heat; sometimes the master 'endeavours to improve the temperature by a passionate use of the poker, with an occasional growl respecting the excessive cold.

Were such 'irregularities to prevail unchecked in our fleshy stoves, we should suffer considerable 'annoyance. After a meal of very inflammatory materials, or an hour spent in 'extraordinary exertion, the gush of heat might throw the system into a state of high fever. How is this prevented? In some of our artificial stoves, little doors or slides are employed to control the admission of air; in furnaces connected with steam-engines we may have dampers, which will accomplish the same purpose by the 'ingenious workings of the machine itself.

But neither doors nor dampers, pokers nor stokers, can be employed in the bodily apparatus. If, on the one hand, our human fires should begin to flag from undue 'expenditure of heat, the appetite speaks out sharply and compels the owner to look around for fuel. Hunger rings the bell, and orders up coal in the shape of savoury meats. Should the summons be neglected, the garnered fat, as we have seen, is thrown into the grate to keep the furnace in play.

If, on the other hand, the heat of the body should become unreasonably 'intense, a very cunning process of reduction is adopted. When a substance grows too hot, the simplest method of bringing it into a cooler frame is to sprinkle it with water. This is precisely what occurs in our human frames. For no sooner does our internal heat rise above its standard height than the perspiration tubes, with their six or seven millions of openings, 'indignant at the event, begin to pour out the fluid, so as to bathe the surface of

the whole body. Whenever, therefore, a man becomes over-heated, by working, running, rowing, fighting, making furious speeches or other violent exertions, he invariably resorts to this method of 'quenching the heat, by "pouring on water."

What shall we say, then, good reader? Speaking seriously, and looking at the question from a mere human point of view, could any project appear more hopeless than one for burning fuel in a soft, delicate fabric, like the human body—a fabric composed for the most part of mere fluids—a fabric which might be easily scorched by excess of heat or damaged by excess of cold? Does it not seem strange that a stove should have flesh for its walls, veins for its flues, and skin for its covering? Yet here is an apparatus which, as if by magic, produces a steady stream of heat;—not trickling 'penuriously from its fountains, but flowing on day and night, winter and summer, without a moment's cessation, from January to December.

Carry this splendid machine to the coldest regions on the globe, set it up where the frosts are so crushing that nature seems to be trampled dead,—still it pours out its 'mysterious supplies with unabated profusion. It is an apparatus, too, which does its work unwatched, and in a great measure unaided. The very fuel, which is thrown into it in random heaps, is internally sifted and sorted, so that the true combustible 'elements are conveyed to their place and applied to their duty with unerring 'precision.

No hand is needed to trim its fires, to temper its glow, to remove its ashes. Smoke there is none, spark there is none, flame there is none. All is so delicately managed that the fairest skin is neither shrivelled nor blackened by the burning within. Is this apparatus placed in circumstances which rob it too fast of its heat? Then the appetite becomes clamorous for food, and in satisfying its demands the fleshy stove is silently 'replenished. Or, are we placed in peril from superabundant warmth? Then the

tiny flood-gates of perspiration are flung open, and the surface is laid under water until the fires within are reduced to their wonted level.

Assailed on the one hand by heat, the body resists the attack, if resistance be possible, until the store of moisture is dissipated; assailed on the other by cold, it keeps the enemy at bay until the hoarded fuel is expended. Thus protected, thus provisioned, let us ask whether these human hearths are not entitled to rank among the standing marvels of creation; for is it not startling to find, that, let the climate be mild or rigorous, let the wind blow from the sultry desert or come loaded with polar sleet, let the fluctuations of temperature be as violent as they may without us, there shall still be a calm, unchanging, undying summer within us?

GEORGE WILSON.

annoy'ance, uneas'iness.
augment', increase.
constitutes, forms.
defraud', cheat.
dissipated, dispersed.
elements, constituents.
endeav'ours, attempts'.
enthusias'tically, ear-
nestly.
eschews', shuns.
expenditure, out'lay.
extraor'dinary, unusual.
extreme'y, excessive'y.
fabric, frame.
fluctua'tions, chang'es.
humorous, amu'sing.
inappro'priate, unfit'.

indig'nant, an'gry.
inflam'matory, excit'ing
ingen'ious, skil'ful.
intense', severe'.
intense'y, ear'nestly.
intercept'ed, cut off.
in'teresting, pleas'ing.
inva'riably, u'niformly.
invi'tation, request'.
irregular'ities, disor-
ders.
myste'rious, hid'den.
par'ticles, atoms.
penn'iously, sting'ly.
perspira'tion, sweat.
preci'sion, ac'curacy.
present'ed, served up.

procure', obtain'.
produc'tion, genera'tion.
profu'sion, abund'ance.
proposi'tion, asser'tion.
quench'ing, reduc'ing.
replen'ished, refilled'.
resist'ance, opposi'tion.
respira'tion, breath'ing.
rig'orous, severe'.
saga'ciously, shrewd'y.
sentenced, condemned'.
subsist', live.
tem'perature, degree of
heat.
ter'minates, expres'.
ul'timate, final.
ver'itable, actual.

¹ Cap'illaries, the minute hair-like vessels in which the arteries terminate and the veins originate. [Lat. *capillus*, a hair; from *caput*, the head.]

² Epic'ure, one fond of good living. [Gr. *Epikeuros*, Epicurus, a philosopher who taught that pleasure was the highest good.]

³ Es'quiman (*Es-ke-mo*), an inhabitant of the Arctic regions.

⁴ Intu'itively, instinctively; without reasoning.

⁵ Hi'bernate, pass the winter in a

state of torpor. [Lat. *hiberno*, to go into winter quarters; from *hiems*, winter.]

⁶ Jerbo'a, a small animal of the rat kind, with long hind legs like a kangaroo. One species is found in Egypt, another at the Cape of Good Hope.

⁷ Mar'mot, also an animal of the rat kind, but in size resembling the rabbit. Found in Europe and the north of Asia and live in large societies.

⁸ Dor'mouse, the sleeping mouse; so called because it hibernates.

* Let
tethe, f
10 Br
bear is
mal. f

QUE
from?
fore b
countr
Why c
hibern
What f
does it

* Leth'argy, state of torpor. [Gr. *lethe*, forgetfulness; *argos*, idle.]

¹⁸ Bru'in, the name under which the bear is personified; *lit.* the brown animal. [Du. *bruin*, Ger. *braun*, brown.]

¹¹ Un'guent, ointment. That here referred to is "bear's grease." [Lat. *unguo*, I anoint.]

¹² Appara'tus, machinery. [Lat. *ad*, to; *paratus*, prepared.]

QUESTIONS.—How is animal heat produced? Where does the carbon come from? When does the combustion take place? To what may our bodies there-fore be compared? What is their fuel? Which is the best fuel? In what countries is it the chief food? What does the native of the tropics prefer? Why can a stout man survive without food longer than a lean man? What are hibernating animals? Give examples. How are they sustained during winter? What is perhaps the most striking feature in our heat-producing apparatus? How does it intimate that more fuel is required? How is excessive heat reduced?

DAVID'S LAMENT FOR ABSALOM.

THE pall was settled. He who slept beneath
 Was 'straightened for the grave; and, as the folds
 Sank to the still proportions, they betrayed
 The 'matchless 'symmetry of Absalom.¹
 His helm was at his feet: his banner, soiled
 With 'trailing through Jerusalem, was laid
 'Reversed, beside him: and the jewelled hilt,
 Whose diamonds lit the passage of his blade,
 Rested, like 'mockery, on his covered brow.
 The soldiers of the king trod to and fro,
 Clad in the garb of battle; and their chief,
 The mighty Joab, stood beside the bier,
 And gazed upon the dark pall 'steadfastly,
 As if he feared the slumberer might stir.
 A slow step startled him. He grasped his blade,
 As if a trumpet rang; but the bent form
 Of David entered, and he gave command,
 In a low tone, to his few followers,
 And left him with his dead.—The king stood still
 Till the last echo died; then, throwing off
 The sackcloth² from his brow, and laying back
 The pall from the still features of his child,
 He bowed his head upon him, and broke forth
 In the 'resistless eloquence of woe:—

'Alas, my noble boy! that thou shouldst die!
 Thou, who wert made so beautifully fair;—

DAVID'S LAMENT FOR ABSALOM.

That Death should settle in thy glorious eye,
 And leave his stillness in this 'clustering hair!
 How could he mark thee for the silent tomb,
 My proud boy, Absalom?

"Cold is thy brow, my son! and I am chill,
 As to my bosom I have tried to press thee!
 How was I wont to feel my pulses thrill,
 Like a rich harp-string, 'yearning to caress thee,
 And hear thy sweet '*My father!*' from those dumb
 And cold lips, Absalom!

"The grave hath won thee! I shall hear the gush
 Of music, and the voices of the young;
 And life will pass me in the 'mantling blush,
 And the dark tresses to the soft winds flung;—
 But thou no more with thy sweet voice shalt come
 To meet me, Absalom!

"And oh! when I am 'stricken, and my heart,
 Like a bruised reed, is waiting to be broken,
 How will its love for thee, as I depart,
 Yearn for thine ear to drink its last deep token!
 It were³ so sweet, amid death's gathering gloom,
 To see thee, Absalom!

"And now, farewell! 'Tis hard to give thee up,
 With death so like a gentle slumber on thee!—
 And thy dark sin!⁴—oh! I could drink the cup,
 If from this woe its 'bitterness had won⁵ thee.
 May God have called thee, like a wanderer, home,
 My lost boy, Absalom!"

He covered up his face, and bowed himself
 A moment on his child; then, giving him
 A look of melting 'tenderness, he clasped
 His hands convulsively,⁶ as if in prayer.
 And, as if strength were given him of God,
 He rose up calmly, and composed the pall⁷
 Firmly and 'decently,—and left him there,
 As if his rest had been a breathing sleep.

N. P. WILLIS.*

bit' terness
 clus' tering
 de'cently,
 man' tling
 match' les

¹ Ab'sa
 King Dav
 against hi
 river Jor
 crossed th
 but he w
 wood of F
 battle. W
 he said, "
 my son A
 died for t
 son'" (2 S
² Sack'
 ment wor
 mourning

THE re
 and 'in
 tion of
 visits
 busy w
 feet w
 breath
 incredi
 away,
 the mi
 we bel
 deserv

As
 tinue t
 impres
 the str
 barber
 casion

bit'terness, sharp ness.
 clus'tering, gath'ering.
 de'cently, becom'ingly.
 man'tling, flush'ing.
 match'less, une'qualled.

mock'ery, deri'sion.
 resist'less, irresist'ible.
 reversed', invert'ed.
 stead'fastly, fix'edly.
 straight'ened, laid out.

strick'en, smit'ten.
 sym'metry, regular'ity.
 ten'derness, love.
 trall'ing, drag'ging.
 yearn'ing, long'ing.

¹ **Ab'salom.**—Absalom was son of King David of Israel. He rebelled against his father, who fled across the river Jordan into Gilead. Absalom also crossed the Jordan, with a large army; but he was defeated by Joab in the wood of Ephraim, and slain after the battle. When David heard of his death, he said, "O my son Absalom, my son, my son Absalom! would God I had died for thee, O Absalom, my son, my son!" (2 *Samuel*, xviii. 33.)

² **Sack'cloth**, coarse cloth; a garment worn by the Israelites in time of mourning.

³ **It were**—it would be.

⁴ **Thy dark sin**—his rebellion against David.

⁵ **Had won**—could have won.

⁶ **Convul'sively**, with violent shaking or agitation.

⁷ **Composed the pall**—arranged the shroud, or covering of the dead body.

⁸ **N. P. Willis**, a modern American poet and essayist; born at Portland, Maine, in 1817; began to write in 1857; became Secretary of the American Legation at Paris; best known work, *Pencilings by the Way*, an account of his travels in Europe; died in 1867.

SCENES IN CANTON.

THE recently arrived stranger naturally 'manifests surprise and 'incredulity on being told that the 'estimated population' of Canton exceeds a million. When, however, he visits the close streets, with their dense population and busy wayfarers, huddled together in lanes from five to nine feet wide, where Europeans could scarcely 'inhale the breath of life, the greatness of the number no longer appears incredible. After the first feelings of novelty have passed away, 'disappointment, rather than admiration, occupies the mind. On leaving the open space before the factories, we behold an endless succession of narrow 'avenues, scarcely deserving the name of streets.

As the visitor pursues his course, narrow lanes still continue to succeed one another, and the 'conviction is gradually impressed on the mind that such is the general character of the streets of the city. Along these, busy traders, mechanics, barbers, venders, and porters, make their way; while occasionally the noisy abrupt tones of 'vociferating coolies¹

remind the traveller that some materials of bulky dimensions are on their transit, and suggest the expediency of keeping at a distance, to avoid collision. Now and then the monotony of the scene is relieved by some portly mandarin,² or merchant of the higher class, borne in a sedan



SEDIAN CHAIR.

chair³ on the shoulders of two, or sometimes four men. Yet, with all this hurry and din, there seldom occurs any accident or interruption of good nature.

On the river the same order and regularity prevail. Though there are probably not fewer than 200,000 denizens of the river, whose hereditary domains are the watery element that supports their little dwellings, yet harmony and good feeling are conspicuous in the accommodating manner with which they make way for each other. These aquatic tribes of the human species show a most philosophic spirit of equanimity, and contrive in this way to strip daily life of many of its little troubles; while the fortitude and patience with which the occasional injury or destruction of their boats is borne are remarkable.

To return from the wide expanse of the river population to the streets in the suburbs, the same spirit of contented

adaptat
and it i
narrow
family
Their
streets.
wares,-



These
dicular
kinds o
artists
these
some i
Many

adaptation to external things is everywhere observable ; and it is difficult which to regard with most surprise—the narrow abodes of the one, or the little boats which serve as family residences to the other.

There is something of romance in the effect of Chinese streets. On either side are shops, decked out with native wares,—furniture and manufactures of various kinds.



A STREET IN CANTON.

These are adorned by pillar sign-boards, rising perpendicularly, and inscribed from top to bottom with the various kinds of saleable articles which may be had within. Native artists seem to have lavished their ingenuity on several of these inscriptions, in order to give, by their calligraphy,⁴ some idea of the superiority of the commodities for sale. Many of these sign-boards contain some fictitious emblem,

adopted as the name of the shop—similar to the practice prevalent in London two centuries ago.

On entering, the proprietor, with his assistants or partners, welcomes a foreigner with sundry salutations; sometimes advancing to shake hands, and endeavouring to make the most of his scanty knowledge of English. They will show their goods with the utmost patience, and evince nothing of disappointment if, after gratifying his curiosity, he depart without purchasing.

At a distance from the factories, where the sight of a foreigner is a rarity, crowds of idlers, from fifty to a hundred, rapidly gather round the shop, and frequent embarrassment ensues, from an imperfect knowledge of their language. In these parts, the shopkeepers know no language but their own, are more moderate in their politeness, and, as a compensation, put a smaller price on their wares. To write one's name in Chinese characters is a sure method of securing their favour.

Sometimes no fewer than eight or ten blind beggars find their way into a shop, and there they remain, singing a melancholy, dirge-like strain, and most perseveringly beating together two pieces of wood. At length the weary shopman takes compassion on them, and provides for the quiet of his shop by giving a copper *cash* to each; on receiving which they depart, and repeat the same experiment elsewhere.

The streets abound with these blind beggars, who are seldom treated with indignity. A kindly indulgence is extended to them, and they enjoy a prescriptive right of levying a copper *cash* from every shop or house they enter. It is said that this furnishes a liberal means of livelihood to an immense number of blind persons, who in many instances are banded together in companies or societies, subject to a code of rules, on breach of which the transgressor is expelled the community.

In every little open space there are crowds of travelling

doctors,
and hea
sale. C

with cu
his 'de
him, an
some ta
out, fro
closing
reward

At a
and y
'quant
noisy
gamble
'clamo

doctors, haranguing the multitude on the wonderful powers and healing virtues of the medicines which they expose for sale. Close by, some cunning fortune-teller may be seen,



CHINESE FORTUNE-TELLER.

with crafty look, explaining to some awe-stricken simpleton his destiny in life, from a number of books arranged before him, and consulted with due solemnity. In another part some tame birds are exhibiting their clever feats, in singling out, from amongst a hundred others, a piece of paper enclosing a coin, and then receiving a grain of millet^o as a reward of their cleverness.

At a little distance are some fruit-stalls, at which old and young are making purchases, casting lots for the quantity they are to receive. Near these, again, are noisy gangs of people, pursuing a less equivocal course of gambling, and evincing, by their excited looks and clamour, the intensity of their interest in the issue. In

another part may be seen disposed the apparatus of some Chinese tonsor,⁷ who is performing his skilful vocation on the crown of some fellow-countryman unable to command the attendance of the artist at a house of his own.

ALBERT SMITH.⁸

av'ennes, pas'sages.
clam'our, out'cries.
commu'nity, soci'ety.
compensa'tion, re'com-
pense.
conspic'uous, prom'inent
convic'tion, ass'urance.
curios'ity, inquis'itive-
ness.
den'izens, inhab'itants.
des'tiny, doom.
disappoint'ment, dis-
satisfac'tion
ensues', fol'lows.

equanim'ity, compo'sure
es'timated, comput'ed.
evin'cing, display'ing.
expe'diency, propri'ety.
grat'ifying, induig'ing.
harang'uing, address-
ing
hered'itary, ances'tral.
incredu'lity, dis'belief.
indig'nity, dishon'our.
inhale', draw in.
inten'sity, depth.
interrup'tion, disturb-
ance.

lav'ished, squan'dered.
lev'ying, exact'ing.
man'ifests, exhib'its.
monot'ony, same'ness.
persev'eringly, persist-
ently.
quan'tity, amount'.
res'idences, dwell'ings.
saluta'tions, greet'ings.
solemn'ity, grav'ity.
sub'urbs, out'skirts.
transgress'or, offend'er.
voca'tion, call'ing.
vocif'erating, shout'ing.

¹ Cool'ies, porters or carriers. [Hind.
kali, a labourer.]

² Mandarin', a public officer; the
governor of a province. The name is
of Portuguese origin, from which we
must infer that it was first given to the
Chinese officials by Portuguese traders.
[Port. *mandarin*; Lat. *mando*, I com-
mand.]

³ Sedan' chair, a portable covered
chair, carried on poles by two men;
so called from Sedan, a town in France,
where it was first made. That gener-
ally used in India and China is called a
palanquin' (*palangkeen*), which is in the
form of a covered couch suspended from

poles, by which it is borne on the shoul-
ders of four carriers.

⁴ Call'igraphy, beautiful writing.
[Gr. *kalos*, beautiful; *graphē*, writing.]

⁵ Prescrip'tive right, right acquired
by long usage.

⁶ Mil'let, a kind of grain much culti-
vated in the East, where it forms an
important article of food.

⁷ Ton'sor, barber. *Tonsor* is a Latin
word, from *tondere*, to shear or shave,
and has reference to the operation. *Bar-
ber* is from Lat. *barba*, the beard and
has reference to the part operated on.

⁸ Albert Smith, novelist and humor-
ist; born 1816, died 1860.

QUESTIONS.—What is the estimated population of Canton? What is the
general character of its streets? How many of the inhabitants live on the river?
What spirit is generally observable among them? Describe the sign-boards of
Chinese shops. How do the shopkeepers treat foreigners? How are poor blind
persons supported in Canton? What people pursue their callings in the open
air?

[ALL
which fal
play of c
all the 'P
act as a
seven pri
indigo, b
falling sh
visible to



THE RAINBOW.

[ALL 'transparent bodies have the power of 'decomposing the light which falls on them. A soap-bubble, for example, exhibits a beautiful play of colours on its surface; and so is it with that most beautiful of all the 'phenomena of the atmosphere, the rainbow. The drops of rain act as a prism, and separate the white light of the solar rays into the seven prismatic colours of which sunlight is composed—namely, violet, indigo, blue, green, yellow, orange, and red; the dark cloud behind the falling shower acting as a screen, on which the brilliant arch is made visible to the spectator.]

TRIUMPHAL arch, that fill'st the sky
 When storms prepare to part!
 I ask not proud 'philosophy
 To teach me what thou art:
 Still seem, as to my childhood's sight,
 A midway station given

For happy spirits to alight
Betwixt the earth and heaven.

Can all that optics¹ teach 'unfold
Thy form to please me so,
As when I dreamt of gems and gold
Hid in thy 'radiant bow!

When science from Creation's face
'Enchantment's veil withdraws,
What lovely visions yield their place
To cold 'material laws!

And yet, fair bow, no fabling dreams,
But words of the Most High,
Have told why first² thy robe of beams
Was woven in the sky.

When o'er the green 'undeluged earth
Heaven's cov'nant thou didst shine,
How came the world's gray fathers forth
To watch thy sacred sign!

And when its yellow 'lustre sm'led
O'er mountains yet untrod,
Each mother held aloft her child,
To bless the bow of God.

Methinks thy jubilee³ to keep,
The first-made anthem⁴ rang
On earth, 'delivered from the deep,
And the first poet sang.

Nor ever shall the Muse's eye
Unraptured greet thy beam:
Theme of primeval⁵ prophecy,
Be still the poet's theme.

The Earth to thee her 'incense yields,
The lark thy welcome sings,
When, glittering in the freshened fields,
The snowy mushroom springs.

decomp
deliv'ere
enchant
faith fu
gir'dle,
gl'riou
horiz on

¹ Op'ti
the laws

² Why
nant Go
should
stroy th

³ Ju't
interval
Jews we
every fift
jubilee
III. en
reign, i
'An

GREY
petur
least
exter
with

How 'glorious is thy 'girdle, cast
O'er mountain, tower, and town ;
Or 'mirrored in the ocean vast,
A thousand fathoms down !

As fresh in yon 'horizon dark,
As young thy beauties seem,
As when the eagle from the ark
First 'sport'd in thy beam.

For, 'faithful to its sacred page,
Heaven still rebuilds thy span,
Nor lets the type grow pale with age
'That first spoke peace to man.

THOMAS CAMPBELL.

decompōs'ing, resolv'ing
deliv'ered, released.
enchant'ment, mag'ic.
faith'ful, constant.
girdle, belt.
glō'rious, magnificent.
horiz'on, sky'-line.

in'cense, offerings.
lus'tre, brightness.
mat'erial, physical.
mir'rored, reflect'ed.
phenom'ena, appear'-
ances.
philos'ophy, sci'ence.

ra'diant, shin'ing.
sport'ed, played.
theme, sub'ject.
transpa'rent, clear.
undel'uged, freed from
the Flood.
unfold', explain.

¹ Op'tics, the science which treats of the laws of light and sight.

² Why first—as a token of the covenant God made with Noah, that there should not any more be a flood to destroy the earth. (See *Gen.* ix. 8-17.)

³ Ju'bilee, a festival held at certain intervals; generally fifty years. The Jews were commanded to keep a jubilee every fiftieth year. There was a national jubilee in England, on account of George III. entering the fiftieth year of his reign, in 1809.

⁴ An them, a sacred song; *lit.* sung

by alternate voices. [*Gr. anti*, in return; *phonè*, voice.]

⁵ Prime'val, earliest; belonging to the first ages. [*Lat. primum*, first; *ævum*, an age.]

⁶ Thomas Campbell, poet; born at Glasgow in 1777; author of *The Pleasures of Hope*, and *Gertrude of Wyoming*; best known by his lyrics, *Hohenlinden*, *Lord Ullin's Daughter*, *The Battle of the Baltic*, and *Ye Mariners of England*; edited *Specimens of the British Poets*, with critical and historical essays; died in 1844.

GREENLAND.

PART I.

GREENLAND¹ is a vast island, or cluster of islands 'perpetually joined together by ice, forming a continent at least four times as large as the British Isles; but its exact extent is not known, as its northern limit, which lies far within the Arctic Ocean, has never been 'explored.

The American expedition² of 1853, under the command of the celebrated Dr. Kane,³ reached a point on the western coast of Greenland farther north than had previously been attained. It was within six hundred miles of the North Pole. Here they discovered an immense glacier,⁴ since named the Humboldt⁵ Glacier, which, as described by Dr. Kane, rose like a solid glassy wall, three hundred feet above the level of the water! He considers this great glacier to be the northern termination of a vast ice ocean, which occupies the interior of nearly the whole of Greenland.

Attempts were made by one of Dr. Kane's sledge parties to climb the glacier; but, though provided with apparatus, they failed in all their efforts to scale the stupendous mass. Another party, pushing northward and keeping parallel to the glacier, at a distance of about six miles from it, came in sight of a vast open sea,⁶ extending as far as the eye could reach. This sea abounded with seals, bears, and all kinds of Arctic birds. It would thus seem as if the limit of the icy barrier had been reached, and that probably round the pole itself there exists an open sea, in which animal life is abundant.

The native inhabitants of Greenland are true Esquimaux; and from them, indeed, our earliest knowledge of the Esquimaux race was obtained. The habits of these people have been made familiar to us by the accounts given to the world by Danish colonists and missionaries⁷ hundreds of years ago; and, in later times, by the Arctic explorers and whale fishers who have visited the frozen regions of the North.

They inhabit a vast territory, extending from Greenland to the shores of the Pacific; and yet the whole Esquimaux race is supposed to number only about fifty thousand, or not much more than the population of such a town as York! The average stature of the Esquimaux is far below that of European nations. The common



height
six feet

The
ice; but
stone c
In the
uncom
smalles
with fis
every s

The
animal
walrus
year.
strait



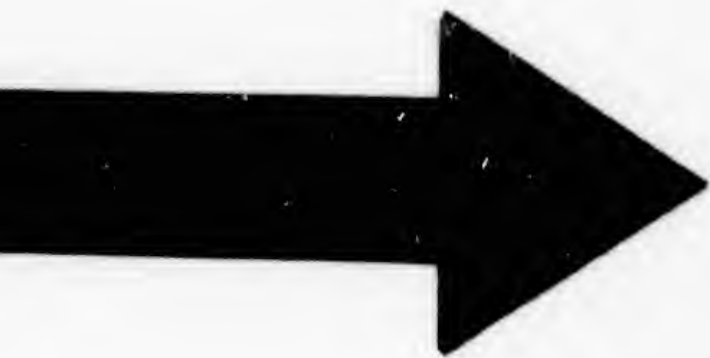
ESKIMAU HOUSES.

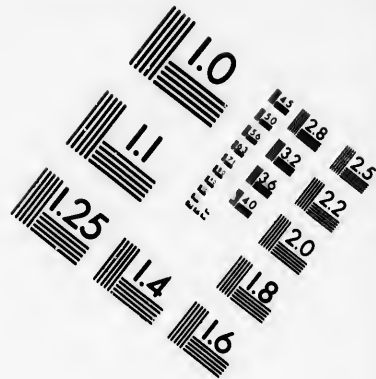
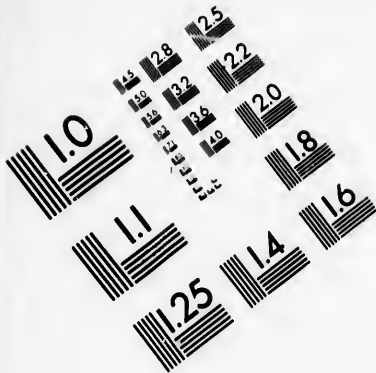
height is little more than five feet, and an Eskimau of six feet would be a giant among his people.

The northern Eskimaux live in houses built of snow or ice; but the huts in the south of Greenland are made of stone or wood, and covered with brush, turf, and earth. In the summer they live in tents made of skins. It is not uncommon to find several families crowded together in the smallest possible space, where they eat, drink, and sleep, with fish and flesh lying all around, and dogs reposing on every side.

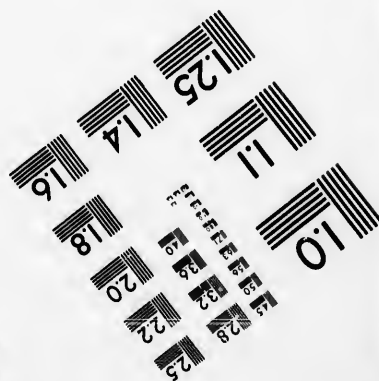
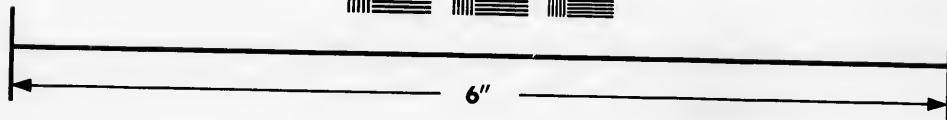
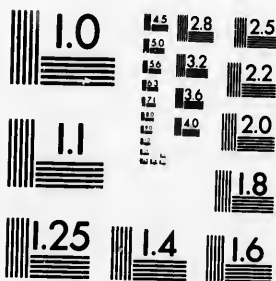
The food of the Eskimaux includes almost every animal found within their region, but the seal and the walrus are their principal support for nine months of the year. Their improvidence often reduces them to terrible straits. Captain Parry⁸ speaks of meeting with some







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
1.1
1.5
2.0
2.5
3.2
4.0
5.0
6.3
8.0
10.0

1.1
1.5
2.0
2.5
3.2
4.0
5.0
6.3
8.0
10.0

who had no food, and who, to keep themselves from starvation, were devouring the very skins which composed their clothes!

The children are carried about by the mother very carefully on her back, in a fur hood, until they are two or three years of age, and then they take care of themselves, being expected to imitate what they see their elders do. A boy very early has a bow and arrows put into his hands, that he may practise shooting at a mark. Towards his tenth year his father provides him with a kayak,⁹ that he may initiate him in the arts of rowing, rising, oversetting and coming up again, fowling, fishing, and all those dexterous feats in which he is himself skilled. In his sixteenth year he is expected to accompany his father in seal-catching; and his first seal is made the occasion of great festivity. The girls at fourteen years of age are required to sew, cook, and dress leather; and two or three years later they must learn to row the woman's boat, and build houses!

The traffic of the Greenlanders is, of course, limited to a very small number of articles. They not unfrequently load their sledges and boats with various commodities, and start off with their families on a trading expedition. They often stay away for a year or more, during which time they build a house in the neighbourhood of some settlement.

They rarely cheat, much less rob, each other; but they think it fair, and even to the credit of their shrewdness, to cheat Europeans, or steal from them all they can! The blubber and skins which they sell to them are in exchange for almost any article manufactured from iron or steel. They are ignorant of the value of gold, which they do not prize more than tin or brass; but iron, in any shape, is invaluable to them.

The Esquimaux are not without their festivities. The chief of these is called the Sun Feast, at the winter

sols
ren
the
thei

T
as t
'sca
any
bui
for
mer

abu
acco
av'e
cel'e
.com
cons
emu
encl
ag
expl
exte

1
by a
color
forge
cove
Dan
it ea
2 A

the
John

2 P
eller
appo
Unit
and
regio
died

4 C
Glac
leys
in S
Fren
glac

2 P
fame

solstice,¹⁰ to celebrate the reëpppearance of the sun, and the renewal of hunting and fishing opportunities. Throughout the country they assemble together in companies, and do their best in the way of entertainment.

The perfection to which the Esquimaux carry such work as they attempt is quite wonderful, when we consider the 'scarcity of material and the want of 'emulation and of any division of labour among them. Their houses are built with mathematical regularity, and are well adapted for securing warmth and protection against the 'encroachments of the weather.

abun'dant, plen'tiful.
accom'pany, go with.
av'rage, me'dium. [ed.
celebrated, distin'guish-
commod'ities, wares.
consid'ers, believes'.
emula'tion, ri'valry.
encroachments, rav'-
ages.
explored', exam'ined.
extend'ing, stretch'ing.

festiv'ities, entertain'-
ments.
festiv'ity, rejoic'ing.
im'itate, copy.
improv'idence, thought'-
lessness.
includes', embrac'es.
inval'uable, pré'cious.
obtained', derived'.
perpet'ually, contin'u-
previously, before'. fally.

provid'ed, furn'ished.
repos'ing, rest'ing.
scâr'city, ra'rity.
shrewd'ness, clev'erness
stat'ure, height.
straits, hard ships.
stupen'dous, amaz'ing.
supposed', believed'.
termina'tion, lim'it.
ter ritory, ré'gion.
uncom'mon, unu'sual.

¹ Greenland was first discovered by a Norwegian in 981 A.D. and was colonized from Iceland. After being forgotten for centuries, it was rediscovered by Davis in 1587; and the Danes reopened communication with it early in the following century.

² American expedition, sent out to the Arctic regions to search for Sir John Franklin.

³ Dr. Kane, a famous American traveller, born at Philadelphia in 1822; appointed an assistant-surgeon in the United States Navy; travelled in India and Africa, and twice visited the Arctic regions; author of *Arctic Explorations*; died in 1857.

⁴ Glac'ier, a mass or field of ice. Glaciers accumulate in the upper valleys of lofty mountains; for example, in Switzerland and Piedmont. It is a French word, derived from the Latin, *glacies*, ice.

⁵ Hum'boldt.—So called after the famous Baron von Humboldt, a dis-

tinguished German traveller and natural philosopher; born at Berlin 1769; travelled in South America, Mexico, and Central Asia; author of *Kosmos*, or *A Physical Description of the Universe*, and of numerous scientific treatises; died in 1859.

⁶ Open sea.—Recent explorations have cast doubts on this account of the Polar Sea. What Kane's party saw is said to be merely a broad channel.

⁷ Mis'sionaries.—Many of the natives have been converted to Christianity by Moravian missionaries. The Moravians are a sect of Christians which sprang up in Moravia and Bohemia (Austria) about the middle of the fifteenth century.

⁸ Parry, Sir William, an eminent navigator, born at Bath in 1790. He made five expeditions to the Arctic regions, four of which were under his command. The object of most of them was to ascertain the existence of a north-west passage from the Atlantic to the

Pacific. He published interesting journals of all his expeditions. Died 1855.

⁹ Kay'ak, the man's boat.

¹⁰ Winter solstice, the 21st December, the shortest day, when the sun,

reaching the point in the ecliptic farthest from the equator, appears to stand still. [Lat. sol, the sun; sisto, I make to stand.] The summer solstice is the 21st June, the longest day.

QUESTIONS.—What is Greenland? Who reached the most northerly point in it that has ever been attained? When? What did they discover? What did a party going still further north discover? Who are the natives of Greenland? How many do the Esquimaux number in all? Of what are their houses built? What does their food include? At what age are their boys taught to manage a boat? What is their man's boat called? For what purpose do the Esquimaux often go on distant expeditions? What metals do they prize most highly? What is their chief festivity?

GREENLAND.

PART II.

THE kayak, or man's boat, has a canoe-shaped framework, from eighteen to twenty feet in length, tapering to



KAYAK.

a point at the head and stern, so that it is shaped like a weaver's shuttle. The breadth at the centre is from one

foot and a half to two feet, and the depth about one foot. The interior of the vessel is hollowed just enough to allow a person to sit with his feet extended on the bottom; and as each man is his own boat-builder, it is always constructed with a nice adaptation to his particular size and weight. When completed, the whole weight of the vessel is not more than sixty pounds, and it can be easily carried on the head without the assistance of the hands.

In front of the kayaker lies his line, rolled up on a little raised seat made for it; and behind him rests his seal-skin bladder—an air-tight sack, which is always kept inflated and fastened to the sealing-line. This is said to answer the double purpose of a buoy and a brake or drag to retard

the motion of the prey after it has been struck. The double-bladed oar or paddle is about seven feet in length. It is made of solid red deal, if that can be procured, with inlaid bone at the sides. The kayak is covered with new seal-skin once a year, and is so 'expeditious and convenient that the Danish authorities of Greenland use this kind of boat as an express for 'communication between different posts.

The oomiak, or woman's boat, is usually about twenty feet long, five feet broad, and three feet deep. It is sometimes built so as to 'accommodate twenty persons. It is made of slender laths, fastened with whalebone, and covered with dressed seal-skin. These boats are generally 'managed by three or four women together; and in fair weather they row them very rapidly. In any danger, a man with his kayak keeps them in sight, to aid them if required.

The next object of importance to the Esquimau is the sledge, which finds 'occupation during at least three-fourths of the year. A native who possesses both a kayak and a sledge is considered a person of property.

The best sledges have their runners made of the jaw-bones of the whale; the upper part consisting of bones, pieces of wood, or deer horns lashed across. Sledge-runners are sometimes made of frozen walrus skin. By an 'ingenious 'contrivance they are also formed out of seal-skin. Cases of this skin are filled with earth and moss, a little water is added, and the whole soon becomes frozen into a solid piece. The length of a bone sledge is from four to fourteen feet, and the breadth about twenty inches.

Scarcely any coasts in the world teem more abundantly with animal life than the 'sterile and ice-bound shores of the Arctic regions. From Greenland westward, along the northern coasts of America, thousands of bears, seals, walruses, foxes, dogs, and other Arctic mammals,¹ and

millions of gulls, geese, auks, and other far-flying aquatic birds, are continually passing to and fro, some through the air, and others upon vast fields of ice, either fixed or moving.

The animals found in these frozen regions have a double interest to the voyager; for besides supplying him with nourishing food, they interrupt the intense solitude of that vast and silent land. Vegetable life grows more scant and stunted as he advances north; but animal life is larger and more abundant in development, although seen in less variety. The Arctic animals show less beauty of colouring than those of warmer climates; white and different shades of brown principally supplying the place of the more brilliant tints.

There is nothing more wonderful than the adaptation of the clothing of creatures to their natural condition. In warm latitudes the quadrupeds have thin and short hair, but those of the polar regions are supplied with the thickest furs. The aquatic birds, also, are protected by a coat of oily feathers, so that they can plunge securely into the icy waters.

Almost all Arctic animals are beasts and birds of prey; and they derive their sustenance mainly from the sea, the land furnishing very scanty means of supporting life. The ultimate source from which the food of all these animals comes—and which, from its abundance, is the cause of life being so extremely prolific in all those regions—is to be found in the vast number of *medusæ* or jelly-fishes with which the seas in those latitudes are filled.

Some of the species have a sort of fringe of hairs, like little snakes, which hang from the margin of the cup-shaped disc that is formed by their bodies, and float writhing and twisting in the water as the cup, by alternate expansions and contractions, forces its way along. It is from this circumstance that they have received their name of *medusæ*—*Medusa*² having been a

fabled
with sn

Many
luminous
sometim
ous tha
surface
glows
night, a
were
liquid fi

The d
vary ex
in form
Some a
as not
the nak
sequenc
often
curious
ing the
of the
with th
they pr
water w
the ship

Other
They s
magnit
substan
like a n
time to
disappe
web.

Anim
the nor

fabled monster of ancient times whose head was adorned with snakes instead of hair.

Many of the medusæ are phosphorescent;³ and these luminous species are sometimes so numerous that the whole surface of the ocean glows with them at night, as if the waves were undulations of liquid fire.

The different species vary extremely, both in form and in size. Some are so minute as not to be seen by the naked eye; in consequence of which it often happens that curious persons, seeing the whole surface of the sea glowing with the light which

they produce, are surprised to find nothing visible in the water when they draw up a bucketful of it to the deck of the ship in order to ascertain the cause.

Others of the medusæ are of great size and strength. They sometimes seize and devour fishes of considerable magnitude; and yet their bodies contain so little substance, that when drawn up on the beach, they look like a mere mass of jelly. On being exposed for a short time to the sun and air, they almost entirely dry up and disappear, leaving nothing behind them but a thin filmy web.

Animals of this class swarm in countless millions in all the northern seas. So dense are the shoals sometimes,



that the whole colour of the sea for hundreds of miles is changed by them! They furnish, of course, immense quantities of food for whales and other cetaceous⁴ animals, and also for fishes of all kinds; which in their turn give sustenance to bears, seals, walruses, and 'multitudes of other animals.

accommodate, contain.	devel'opment, growth.	occupa'tion, employ- ment.
adapta'tion, suit'able- ness	expan'sion, wid'enng.	prolif'ic, produc'tive.
alter'nate, by turns.	expedi'tious, speed'y.	quad'rupeds, four-footed an'imals.
aquat'ic, water.	extend'ed, stretched.	sol'itude, lone'liness.
ascertain', deter'mine.	fil'my, cob-web-like.	ster'ile, unfruit'ful.
circumstance, fact.	infla'ted, distend'ed.	surprised', aston'ished.
communica'tion, in'ter- course.	ing'e'nious, cleve'r.	sus'tenance, nour'ish- ment.
construct'ed, made.	inte'rior, in'side.	ta'pering, dimin'ishing.
contra'ction, nar'rowing	lu'minous, shin'ing.	undula'tions, waves.
contriv'ance, device'.	mag'nitude, great'ness.	writh'ing, twist'ing.
count'less, num'berless.	man'aged, guid'ed.	
	mul'titudes, hosts.	
	nour'ishing, whole'some	

¹ Mam'mals, animals that suckle their young; the chief of the *Back-boned* animals. [Lat. *mamma*, a breast.]

² Medu'sa, one of the fabled Gorgons, who had serpents entwined in their hair, and eyes so terrible that

they turned to stone every one who looked upon them.

³ Are phosphorescent—have the power of giving out light.

⁴ Ceta'ceous, whale-like. All sea-mammals belong to the order *Cetacea*.

QUESTIONS.—What is the usual length of a kayak? And its weight? With what is it propelled? What is the length of the oomiak? Of what are the best sledges made? With what do the Arctic regions abound? What difference is noticed between Arctic animals and those of warmer regions? Mention instances of the adaptation of the clothing of animals to their condition. What is the chief source of food for animal life in the Arctic regions? What is the origin of the name? What is the cause of the luminous appearance which some of them give the sea?

HYMN OF THE HEBREW MAID.

[This hymn is intended to glance at some of the chief events in the history of the Israelites; in particular, the coming out of Egypt, and the Babylonish Captivity.]

WHEN Israel, of the LORD beloved,
Out of the land of 'bondage¹ came,
Her fathers' God before her moved,
An 'awful guide,² in smoke and flame.

accept'e
aston'ish
aw'ful, i
bond ag

¹ The l
² An a
went bef
a cloud,
night in
light; to
xiii. 21.)
³ Per t

By day, along the 'astonished lands
 The cloudy pillar 'glided slow ;
 By night, Arabia's crimsoned sands
 'Returned the fiery column's glow.

Then rose the 'choral hymn of praise,
 And trump and timbrel answered keen ;
 And Zion's daughters poured their lays,
 With priest's and warrior's voice between.

No portents³ now our foes amaze,
 'Forsaken Israel wanders lone ;—
 Our fathers would not know THY ways,
 And THOU hast left them to their own.

But, present still, though now unseen,
 When brightly shines the 'prosperous day,
 Be thoughts⁴ of THEE a cloudy screen
 To temper the 'deceitful ray !

And, oh ! when stoops on Judah's path
 In shade and storm the frequent night,
 Be THOU, long-suffering, slow to wrath,
 A burning and a shining light !

Our harps were left by Babel's streams,⁵
 The tyrant's 'jest, the Gentile's scorn ;
 No censer⁶ round our altar beams,
 And mute are timbrel, trump, and horn ;
 But THOU hast said⁷ the blood of goat,
 The flesh of rams, I will not prize ;
 A 'contrite heart, an humble thought,
 Are MINE 'accepted sacrifice.

SIR WALTER SCOTT (1771-1832).

accept'ed, wel'comed.
 aston'ished, amazed'.
 aw'ful, impres'sive.
 bond'age, ser'vitude.

cho'ral, harmo'nious.
 con'trite, pen'itent.
 deceit'ful, treach'erous.
 forsâk'en, foriorn'.

glid'ed, moved.
 jest, butt.
 pros'perous, auspi'cious.
 returned', reflect'ed.

¹ The land of bondage—Egypt.
² An awful guide.—"And the LORD went before them by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the way ; and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light ; to go by day and night." (*Exodus*, xiii. 21.)

³ For tents, signs or tokens, generally

omens of evil ; but here, the miraculous tokens of God's presence with, and care over. His chosen people.

⁴ Be thoughts.—The construction is, "Let thoughts of Thee be present still (always) as a cloudy screen to temper the deceitful ray."

⁵ Our harps, &c.—Compare with

the first four lines of this stanza the opening verses of *Psalms* cxxxvii. : "By the rivers of *Babylon*, there we sat down, yea, we wept, when we remembered *Zion*. We hanged our harps upon the willows in the midst thereof. For there they that carried us away captive required of us a song; and they that wasted us required of us mirth, saying, Sing us one of the songs of *Zion*. How shall we sing the Lord's song in a strange land?"

'Cen'ser, a vessel in which incense

is burned. The word is abridged from "incenser." [Lat. *incensorium*; from *incendo*, I kindle.]

⁷ Thou hast said.—Compare with the last four lines *Isaiah*, i. 11: "I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of lambs, or of he-goats;" and *Psalms* li. 16, 17: "For thou desirest not sacrifice; else would I give it: thou delightest not in burnt-offering. The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit: a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise."

ICELAND, AND THE GEYSERS.

ICELAND is an island somewhat larger than Ireland. It is situated in the Atlantic Ocean, on the confines of the Arctic Circle, amid regions of ice and snow; yet it gives abundant evidence of the volcanic fires¹ which are slumbering beneath its surface.

Among its most remarkable features are its hot springs, which in some places throw up a column of water to the height of a hundred feet. These springs abound on many parts of the coast, as well as in the interior of the island; and in some cases the waters of the ocean are sensibly heated by their action.

The most celebrated of these hot springs are the Geysers,² situated in the north of the island, where, within the space of a few acres, more than fifty of them may be seen.

The Great Geyser rises from a mound of flinty earth, deposited by the water, about thirty feet in height, and extending about two hundred feet across. On the top of this mound is a basin sixty feet wide and seven feet deep, in the centre of which is the opening through which the water rises.

A visit to the Geysers is thus described by Lord Dufferin in his book entitled "Letters from High Latitudes," giving an account of a voyage and visit to Iceland:—

"As the baggage-horses with our tents and beds had

not yet
Geyse
our ve
groun
towar
ser,
the g
sion.

reach
ever, t
and al
a sligh
ment

"I
alarm
aveng
ing an
Strok
churn

is an
with
over
stoma

a rise
ever y
is nec
a qua
throw
nel.

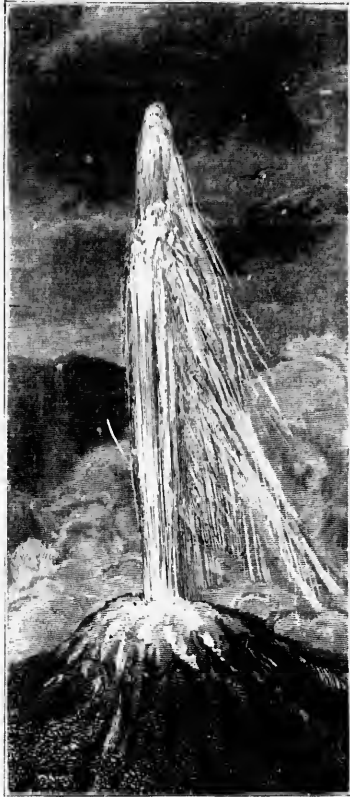
to pr
these
appro
of the
the w

"I
minis

not yet arrived, we sat quietly down to coffee brewed in Geysers' water, when suddenly it seemed as if, beneath our very feet, a number of cannon were going off under ground. The whole earth shook. We set off at full speed toward the Great Geyser, 'expecting to see the grand water 'explosion. By the time we reached its brim, however, the noise had ceased, and all we could see was a slight 'trembling movement in the centre.

"Irritated by this false alarm, we determined to avenge ourselves by going and 'tormenting the Strokr. Strokr, or *the churn*, you must know, is an unfortunate Geyser, with so little command over his temper and his stomach that you can get a *rise* out of him whenever you like. All that is necessary is to collect a quantity of sods, and throw them down his funnel. As he has no basin to protect himself from these liberties, you can approach to the very edge of the pipe, about five feet in 'diameter, and look down at the water, which is perpetually boiling at the bottom.

"In a few minutes the dose of turf you have just 'administered begins to disagree with him. He works him-



self up into an awful passion. Tormented by the qualms of sickness, he groans, and hisses, and boils up, and spits at you with 'malicious 'vehemence, until at last, with a roar of mingled pain and rage, he throws up into the air a column of water forty feet high, which carries with it all the sods that have been cast in, and scatters them scalded and half digested at your feet.

"So irritated has the poor thing's stomach become by the 'discipline it has undergone, that even long after all foreign matter has been thrown off, it goes on retching and sputtering, until at last nature is 'exhausted, when, sobbing and sighing to itself, it sinks back into the bottom of its den.

"As the Great Geyser explodes once in forty hours or more, it was, of course, necessary that we should wait his pleasure—in fact, our movements entirely depended on his. For the next two or three days therefore, like 'pilgrims round an ancient shrine, we patiently kept watch; but he scarcely deigned to favour us with the slightest 'manifestation of his latent 'energies. Two or three times the cannonading we had heard immediately after our arrival recommenced, and once an eruption to the height of about ten feet 'occurred; but so brief was its duration, that by the time we were on the spot, although the tent was not eighty yards distant, all was over.

"At length, after three days' watching in languid 'expectation of the eruption, our desire was gratified. A cry from the guides made us start to our feet and rush toward the basin. The usual 'underground thunders had already commenced; a violent 'agitation was disturbing the centre of the pool. Suddenly a dome of water lifted itself to the height of eight or ten feet, then burst and fell; immediately after which a shining liquid column, or rather a sheaf of columns, 'wreathed in robes of vapour, sprang about seventy feet into the air, and, in a 'succession of jerking leaps, each higher than the former, flung their silvery crests against

the sky.
then all
The uns
purpose,
sucked
sprung.'

admin'ist
agita'tion
celebrate
column,
con'fines,
depos'itee
diam'eter
across.
dis'ciplin
en'ergies
ev'idence

'Evide
mal tract
up by vol
every dlre
dred mile
sand, and
volcanic
and from
end of th

QUESTI
What are
of the St
explode?

the sky. For a few minutes the fountain held its own, then all at once it seemed to lose its ascending energy. The unstable waters faltered, drooped, fell, 'like a broken purpose,' back upon themselves, and were immediately sucked down into the 'recesses from which they had sprung."

admin'istered, supplied.	exhaust'ed, tired out.	pil'grims, wan'derers.
agita'tion, commo'tion.	expecta'tion, anticipa'tion.	recess'es, cav'ities.
celebrated, fa'mous.	expect'ing, hop'ing.	sen'sibly, percep'tibly
col'umn, pil'lar.	explo'sion, erup'tion.	sit'uated, placed.
con'fines, bor'ders.	extend'ing, meas'uring.	succes'sion, se'ries.
depos'ited, laid down.	ir'ritated, enraged.	torment'ing, har'assing.
diam'eter, meas'urement	mal'icious, mis'chievous.	trem'bling, vi'brating.
across.	manifesta'tion, indica'tion.	un'derground, subterra'nean.
dis'cipline, treat'ment.	occurred', hap'pened.	ve'hemence, vi'olence.
en'ergies, pow'ers.		wreathod, envel'oped.

¹ Evidence of volcanic fires.—Dis-mal tracts of lava (melted rock thrown up by volcanoes) traverse the island in every direction. A deep valley, one hundred miles in width, covered with lava, sand, and ashes, and studded with low volcanic cones, stretches across the island from sea to sea. At the southern end of this valley stands the celebrated volcano Mount Hecla, 5200 feet high, and covered with perpetual snow.

² Geysers (*Geysers*).—The Geysers are supposed to be caused by the collection of heated vapours in large cavities of the earth, which at length acquire sufficient force to expel the waters subject to their pressure. The word *geyser* signifies, in the Icelandic dialect, "fury."

QUESTIONS.—Where is Iceland situated? What slumber beneath its surface? What are the most celebrated of the hot springs called? What is the peculiarity of the *Strokr*? What does the name mean? How often does the Great Geyser explode? How high does it send its column of water?

LADY CLARE.

It was the time when 'lilies blow,
And clouds are highest up in air,
Lord Ronald brought a lily-white doe
To give his cousin, Lady Clare.

I trow they did not part in scorn;¹
Lovers long 'betrothed were they:
They two will wed the morrow morn;
God's 'blessing on the day.

"He does not love me for my birth,
Nor for my lands, so broad and fair;—
He loves me for my own true worth,
And that is well," said Lady Clare.

In there came old Alice the nurse;
Said, "Who was this that went from thee?"—
"It was my cousin," said Lady Clare;
"To-morrow he weds with me."²

"O God be thanked!" said Alice the nurse,
"That all comes round so just and fair;—
Lord Ronald is heir of all your lands,
And you are not the Lady Clare."

"Are ye³ out of your mind, my nurse, my nurse,"
Said Lady Clare, "that ye speak so wild?"—
"As God's above," said Alice the nurse,
"I speak the truth—you are my child."

"The old Earl's daughter died at my breast—
I speak the truth, as I live by bread!
I 'buried her like my own sweet child,
And put my child in her 'stead."

"Falsely, falsely have ye done,
O mother," she said, "if this be true;
To keep the best man under the sun
So many years from his due."

"Nay, now, my child," said Alice the nurse;
"But keep the 'secret for your life,
And all you have will be Lord Ronald's
When you are man and wife."

"If I'm a beggar born," she said,
"I will speak out, for I dare not lie;—
Pull off, pull off the 'brooch of gold,
And fling the 'diamond 'necklace by!"

"Nay, now, my child," said Alice the nurse;
"But keep the secret all ye can."—
She said, "Not so; but I will know
If there be any 'faith in man."

"Nay, now, what faith!" said Alice the nurse;

"The man will 'cleave unto his right."—

"And he shall have it," the lady 'replied,
"Though I should die, to-night!"

"Yet give one kiss to your mother dear!

Alas, my child, I sinned for thee."—

"O mother, mother, mother," she said,

"So 'strange it seems to me.

"Yet here's a kiss for my mother dear,—

My mother dear, if this be so;

And lay your hand upon my head,

And bless me, mother, ere I go."

She clad herself in a russet gown;⁴

She was no longer Lady Clare:

She went by dale, and she went by down,⁵

With a single rose in her hair.

The lily-white doe Lord Ronald had brought,

Leapt up from where she lay,

Dropt her head in the maiden's hand,

And followed her all the way.

Down stept Lord Ronald from his tower:

"O Lady Clare, you shame your worth!

Why come you drest like a village maid,

That are the flower of the earth?"

"If I come drest like a village maid,

I am but as my 'fortunes are;

I am a beggar born," she said,

"And not the Lady Clare."

"Play me no tricks," said Lord Ronald,

"For I am yours in word and deed;—

Play me no tricks," said Lord Ronald;

"Your 'riddle is hard to read."

O, and 'proudly stood she up!

Her heart within her did not fail;

She looked into Lord Ronald's eyes,

And told him all her nurse's tale.

He laughed a laugh of 'merry 'scorn ;
 He turned and kissed her where she stood :
 " If you are not the 'heiress born,
 And I," said he, " the next in blood—
 " If you are not the heiress born,
 And I," said he, " the 'lawful heir,
 We two will wed to-morrow morn,
 And you shall^o still be Lady Clare."

ALFRED TENNYSON.

betrothed', affianced.	false'ly, wrong'ly.	proud'ly, no'by.
bless'ing, benedic'tion.	for'tunes, fate.	replied', an'swered.
brooch, or'nement.	heir'ess, a fe'male heir.	rid'dle, puzzle.
bur'ied, interred'.	law'ful, right'ful.	scorn, contempt'.
cleave, adhere'.	lil'ies, flow'ers.	se'cret, mys'tery.
di'amond, pre'cious stone	mer'ry, jo'vial.	stead, place.
faith, sincer'ity.	neck lace, string of gems.	strange, inex'plicable.

¹ I trow they did not part in scorn.—This is the poet's way of telling us that the lovers had parted before Alice the nurse came in and told her story. *I trow* is, I trust, I believe. *True, trust, trow*, and *troth* are all from the same root,—a Gothic word meaning *sure, reliable*.

² Weds with me.—Notice the precise use of the word *wed* in this poem, as applied to the joint act of the two persons concerned. "*They two will wed the morrow morn;*" "*He weds with me.*" A *wed* is literally a pledge, and *wedding* is an exchange of pledges—a mutual plighting of troth.

³ Are ye.—Ye is often used colloquially, that is, in common conversation, for *you* with a singular meaning, as in "Howd'ye do?" This form of expression

has probably arisen from the corruption of *you* by rapid pronunciation.

⁴ Russet gown—a dress of a reddish-brown colour, but also with the idea of coarseness; "drest like a village maid," as Lord Ronald describes her in the 17th stanza.

⁵ By dale...and by down—by valley and by hill. *Down* is the Old Eng. *din*, a hill. It is used as a proper name in the North and South *Downs*, hills in the south of England.

⁶ You shall.—Observe the change from *will* to *shall*,—"We two *will*... and you *shall*." In both cases the speaker (Lord Ronald) expresses his own wish or determination. For this purpose *will* is used in the first person (*we*), and *shall* in the second (*you*).

THE BATTLE OF THE NILE.

'Tis an old story now, that Battle of the Nile;¹ but a brave story can never die of age.

The Bay is wide, but 'dangerous from shoals: the line of deep blue water, and the old castle of Aboukir,² map out the position of the French fleet on the 1st of August 1798. Having landed Buonaparte and his army. the

French Admiral moored his fleet in the form of a crescent close along the shore. His vastly superior force, and the strength of his position (protected towards the north by dangerous shoals, and towards the west by the castle and batteries), made him consider that position impregnable; and on the strength of this conviction he wrote to Paris that Nelson³ had purposely avoided him.

Was he undeceived when Hood,⁴ in the *Zealous*, made signal that the enemy was in sight, and a cheer of triumph burst from every ship in the British fleet?—that fleet which had been sweeping the seas with bursting sails for six long weeks in search of its formidable foe, and which now bore down upon him with fearless exultation. The soundings of that dangerous bay were unknown to Nelson; but he knew that where there was room for a French ship to swing, there must be room for an Englishman to anchor at either side of him,—and the closer the better!

As his proud and fearless fleet came on, he hailed Hood, to ask whether the action should commence that night; then receiving the answer he longed for, the signal for “close battle” flew from his mast-head. The delay thus caused to the *Zealous* gave Foley⁵ the lead. He showed the example of leading *inside* the enemy’s lines,⁶ and anchored by the stern alongside the second ship; thus leaving to Hood the first. The latter, putting his own generous construction on an accident, exclaimed, “Thank God, he has nobly left to his old friend still to lead the van!”

Slowly and majestically, as the evening fell, the remainder of the fleet came on beneath a cloud of sails, receiving the fire of the castle and the batteries in portentous silence, only broken by the crash of spars, or the boatswain’s whistle; each ship furling her sails calmly, as a sea-bird might fold its wings, and gliding tranquilly onward till she found her destined foe. Then the anchor dropped astern, and the fire burst from her blood-stained decks with a

vigour that showed how sternly it had been repressed till then.

The leading ships passed between the enemy and the shore; but when the Admiral came up, he led the remainder of the fleet along the seaward side, thus doubling on the Frenchman's line, and placing it in a defile of fire.

The sun went down soon after Nelson anchored; and his rearward ships were guided through the darkness and the dangers of that formidable bay only by the Frenchman's fire flashing fierce welcome, as each enemy arrived and went hovering along the lines. He coolly scrutinized how he might draw most of that fire upon himself. The *Bellerophon*, with reckless gallantry, fastened on the gigantic *Orient*, by whose terrible artillery she was soon crushed, and scorched into a wreck. Then she drifted helplessly to leeward. But she had already done her work,—the *Orient* was on fire, and through the terrible roar of battle a whisper went for a moment that paralyzed every eager heart and hand. During that dread pause the fight was suspended; the very wounded ceased to groan: yet the burning ship still continued to fire broadsides from her flaming decks; her gallant crew alone unawed by their approaching fate, and shouting their own death-song.

At length the terrible explosion came; and the column of flame, that shot upwards into the very sky, for a moment rendered visible the whole surrounding scene, from the red flags aloft to the reddened decks below; the wide shore with all its swarthy crowds, and the far-off glittering seas with the torn and dismantled fleets. Then darkness and silence came again, broken only by the shower of blazing fragments in which that brave ship fell upon the waters.

Till that moment, Nelson was ignorant how the battle went. He knew that every man was doing his duty, but he knew not how successfully. He had been wounded in the forehead, but had found his way unnoticed to the deck

in the
fitting
proud
momen
cheer o
of thei
an unsw

Morn
upon a
France.
position
ship ha
Two sh
'captur
was fly
to attac
of truce
as her c
her line
hope, th
and the

And
the shor
and his
was rev
tomb^s f
'termin

anni'hilat
ished.
approach
artillery,
capt'ulat
captured.
consider
construct
tation.
convictio
crescent,

in the 'suspense of the coming explosion. Its light was a fitting lamp for eyes like his to read by. He saw his own proud flag still floating everywhere; and at the same moment his crew 'recognized their wounded chief. Their cheer of welcome was only drowned in the renewed roar of their artillery, which continued until it no longer found an answer, and Silence had confessed 'Destruction.

Morning rose upon an altered scene. The sun had set upon as proud a fleet as ever sailed from the gay shores of France. Now only torn and blackened hulls marked the position they had then occupied; and where their Admiral's ship *had* been, the blank sea sparkled in the sunshine. Two ships of the line and two frigates escaped, only to be 'captured soon afterwards; but within the bay the tricolour⁷ was flying on only one ship. As the *Theseus* approached to attack her, attempting to 'capitulate she hoisted a flag of truce. "Your battle-flag or none!" was the stern reply, as her enemy rounded to, and the mutes glimmered over her line of guns. Slowly and 'reluctantly, like an expiring hope, that pale flag fluttered down from her lofty spars, and the next that floated was that of England.

And now the battle was over—India was saved upon the shores of Egypt—the career of Buonaparte was checked, and his navy 'annihilated. Seven years later that navy was revived, to perish utterly at Trafalgar—a fitting hec-tomb⁸ for the obsequies⁹ of Nelson, whose life, it seemed, 'terminated as his mission was accomplished.

WARBURTON.

anni'hilated, demol'-
ished.
approach'ing, com'ing.
artil'lery, can'non.
capit'ulate, surren'der.
cap'tured, secured'.
consid'er, deem.
construc'tion, interpre-
ta'tion.
convic'tion, belief.
cres'cent, sem'i-circle.

dān'gerous, per'fious.
des'tined, appoint'ed.
destruc'tion, demol'ition
disman'tled, destroyed'.
explo'sion, burst'ing.
exulta'tion, delight'.
for'midable, ter'rible.
gen'eros, lib'eral.
gigan'tic, tremen'dous.
impreg'nable, invin'cible
majes'tically, grand'ly.

par'alyzed, unnerved'.
portent'ous, om'inous.
rec'ognized, discover'ed.
reluc'tantly, unwill'-
ingly.
repressed', restrained'.
scrūt'inized, cal'culated.
suspense', anx'ety.
ter'minated, closed.
undeceived', enlight-
ened.

¹ **Battle of the Nile.**—The object of Buonaparte's secret expedition to Egypt was to seize upon that approach to India, and ultimately to wrest that possession from the hands of England. He started from Toulon on the 19th of May 1798, and, having stayed to capture Malta on his way, he landed on the shores of Egypt on the 30th of June. Nelson, meantime, was cruising up and down the Mediterranean in eager search of the French fleet, little dreaming that at one time a fog-bank off Candia was all that lay between them. The French had seventeen ships, of which thirteen were first-rates. The English had the same number of first-rates, but only one frigate.

² **Abou kir** (*A-boo'-keer*), a bay, point, and castle, about twelve miles north-east of Alexandria.

³ **Nelson.**—See LIVES OF GREAT MEN, in Appendix.

⁴ **Hood**, Viscount Samuel, a great English Admiral, was born in 1724. He distinguished himself by taking Toulon in 1793, and Corsica (where Nelson lost

his right eye) in 1794. He was made governor of Greenwich Hospital, and died in 1816.

⁵ **Fo'ley**, Sir Thomas, a distinguished naval officer and friend of Nelson, was born in 1757. He was captain of Nelson's flag-ship at Copenhagen (1801); and it was to him that Nelson made the famous remark, when Admiral Sir Hyde Parker signalled to leave off the action, "I really do not see the signal, Fo'ley;"—which was quite true, for he held the glass to his blind eye! Fo'ley died in 1831.

⁶ **Inside the enemy's lines.**—That is, between the French ships and the shore.

⁷ **Tri'colour**, the national flag of France, adopted at the first revolution. The colours are red, white, and blue.

⁸ **Hec'atomb** (*hek'-a-toom*), sacrifice; *lit.* the sacrifice of a hundred oxen [Gr. *hekaton*, a hundred; and *bous*, an ox], and hence any great number of victims.

⁹ **Ob'sequies**, funeral ceremony, because at Trafalgar Nelson was killed (1805).

QUESTIONS.—When was the Battle of the Nile fought? What account of Nelson's doings had the French Admiral sent to Paris? What had Nelson really been doing for six weeks? Who showed the example of leading inside the enemy's lines? In what position was the French fleet placed when Nelson came up? What was the turning-point of the battle? How many ships carried the French flag next morning? What were the results of the victory?

LOCHIEL'S WARNING.

Wizard. Lochiel,¹ Lochiel! beware of the day
 When the Lowlands shall meet thee in battle 'array;
 For a field of the dead rushes red on my sight,
 And the clans of Culloden² are 'scattered in fight;
 They rally, they bleed, for their kingdom and crown:
 Woe, woe to the riders that trample them down!
 Proud Cumberland³ prances, 'insulting the slain,
 And their hoof-beaten bosoms are trod to the plain.—
 But hark! through the fast-flashing lightning of war,
 What steed to the desert flies 'frantic and far?
 'Tis thine, O Glenullin!⁴ whose bride shall await,
 Like a love-lighted watch-fire, all night at the gate.

A steed
 But it
 Weep,
 Oh we
 For a
 Cullod

Lochiel
 Or, if
 Draw,
 This n

Wizard
 Proud
 Say, ru
 From l
 Lo, the
 • Comp
 But do
 Ah! he
 Wh'v fl
 Those
 'Tis the
 From l
 Oh, cre
 Whose
 Heaver
 Return
 For the
 And a

Lochiel
 Their s
 They an
 And lik
 Then w
 Let hir
 But wo
 When A
 When l
 Clanran
 All plai

A steed comes at morning: no rider is there,
 But its bridle is red with the sign of 'despair.
 Weep, Ailbyn!⁶ to death and captivity led!
 Oh weep! but thy tears cannot number the dead;
 For a 'merciless sword on Culloden shall wave,—
 Culloden, that reeks with the blood of the brave.

Lochiel. Go, preach to the coward, thou death-telling seer!
 Or, if gory Culloden so dreadful appear,
 Draw, dotard,⁶ around thy old wavering sight
 This mantle, to cover the 'phantoms of fright!

Wizard. Ha! laugh'st thou, Lochiel, my vision to scorn!
 Proud bird of the mountain, thy plume shall be torn!
 Say, rushed the bold eagle exultingly forth
 From his home in the dark-rolling clouds of the North?
 Lo, the death-shot of foemen outspeeding, he rode
 Companionless, bearing destruction abroad;
 But down let him stoop from his havoc on high!
 Ah! home let him speed—for the spoiler is nigh.—
 Why flames the far summit? Why shoot to the blast
 Those embers, like stars from the firmament east?
 'Tis the fire-shower of ruin, all dreadfully driven
 From his eyrie, that beacons the darkness of heaven.
 Oh, crested Lochiel! the peerless in might,
 Whose banners arise on the 'battlements' height,
 Heaven's fire is around thee, to blast and to burn;
 Return to thy dwelling! all lonely, return!
 For the blackness of ashes shall mark where it stood,
 And a wild mother scream o'er her famishing brood.

Lochiel. False Wizard, avaunt! I have 'marshalled my clan:
 Their swords are a thousand, their bosoms are one!
 They are true to the last of their blood and their breath,
 And like reapers descend to the harvest of Death.
 Then welcome be Cumberland's steed to the shock!
 Let him dash his proud foam like a wave on the rock!
 But woe to his kindred, and woe to his cause,
 When Albyn her claymore⁷ 'indignantly draws;
 When her bonneted 'chieftains to victory crowd—
 Clanranald⁸ the dauntless, and Moray the proud,
 All plaided and plumed in their tartan array—

Wizard. Lochiel, Lochiel, beware of the day!
 For, dark and despairing, my sight I may seal,
 Put man cannot cover what God would reveal:
 'Tis the sunset of life gives me 'mystical lore,
 And coming events cast their shadows before.
 I tell thee, Culloden's dread echoes shall ring
 With the blood-hounds that bark for thy 'fugitive King.
 Lo! 'anointed by Heaven with the vials of wrath,⁹
 Behold where he lies on his 'desolate path!
 Now in darkness and billows he sweeps from my sight:
 Rise! rise, ye wild tempests, and cover his flight!.....
 'Tis finished. Their thunders are hushed on the moors;—
 Culloden is lost, and my country 'deplores.

Lochiel. Down, 'soothless insulter! I trust not the tale:
 For never shall Albyn a destiny meet
 So black with dishonour, so foul with retreat.
 Though my perishing ranks should be strewed in their gore
 Like ocean-weeds heaped on the surf-beaten shore,
 Lochiel, 'untainted by flight or by chains,
 While the kindling of life in his bosom remains,
 Shall victor exult, or in death be laid low,
 With his back to the field, and his feet to the foe!
 And leaving in battle no blot on his name,
 Look proudly to heaven from his death-bed of fame.

THOMAS CAMPBELL.¹⁰

anoint'ed, con'secrated.
 array', or der.
 bat'lements, fortifica-
 tions.
 chief tains, lead'ers.
 compan'ionless, sol'itary
 deplores', mourns.

des'olate, desert'ed.
 despair', hope'lessness.
 fran'tic, mad.
 fu'gitive, flee'ing.
 indig'nantly, scorn'fully.
 insult'ing, out'raging.
 mar'shalled, gath'ered.

mer'ciless, pit'less.
 mys'tical, prophet'ic.
 phan'toms, spect'res.
 reveal', disclose'.
 scat'tered, dispersed'.
 sooth'less, false.
 untaint'ed, untar'nished.

¹ Lochiel.—Donald Cameron of Lochiel, the head of his clan, was the first chieftain to join the standard of the young Pretender in 1745. So important was his influence, that Prince Charles made the commencement of his enterprise dependent on his obtaining the "gentle Lochiel's" support. When Charles landed at Borrodale (Inverness-shire) Lochiel went to meet him, and attempted to turn him back, but in

vain. The *Wizard* in this poem, like one of those seers who had great reputation in the Scottish Highlands, foretells the overthrow of the Jacobites at Culloden (1746), where Lochiel was severely wounded. (See p. 205, Note 6.)

² Culloden, a moor in Inverness-shire, 8 miles north-east of Inverness.

³ Proud Cumberland.—William the Duke of Cumberland, second son of George II., commanded the Royalist

troops
 Jacobites
 he was
 "The F
 ' Gle
 called
 estates.
 ' Alb
 ' Dot
 The suff
 (See p. 1

ONE OF
 festati
 beauti
 it is in
 appear
 may be
 Polar
 Darl
 lines of
 object
 sea.

Sudd
 living g
 ling th
 golden
 are obs
 waves o

There
 ance of
 stream
 seen ha
 sion of
 series of
 Sudd
 fect still

troops at Culloden. He pursued the Jacobites with so much cruelty that he was known in the Highlands as "The Butcher."

⁴ Glenullin, that is, Lochiel; so called from the name of one of his estates.

⁵ Albyn, the Highlands of Scotland
⁶ Dotard, an old fool; a driveller.
The suffix *-ard* implies nature or habit. (See p. 122, Note 1.)

⁷ Claymore, a large two-handed sword, used formerly by the Scottish Highlanders. The word is from the Gaelic, and means *great sword*.

⁸ Clanranald... Moray, two Highland chieftains who took a prominent part in the rebellion.

⁹ Vials of wrath.—See *Revelation*, xvi. 1.

¹⁰ Thomas Campbell.—See p. 89, Note 6.

THE AURORA.

ONE of the most mysterious and beautiful of Nature's manifestations is the Aurora.¹ In our own latitudes strikingly beautiful auroral displays may sometimes be witnessed; but it is in the Arctic and Antarctic regions that the phenomenon appears in its fullest beauty. The following description may be taken as an example of what is often seen in the Polar regions—the true home of the aurora:—

Darkness broods over the Polar world. Even the outlines of the mighty hills can scarcely be distinguished. No object can be seen moving over the wide expanse of frozen sea.

Suddenly from east to west appears a beautiful arch of living gold! The lights dart to and fro, their colours rivaling those of the rainbow. Beyond the arch, a stream of golden rays shoots up far above all the rest, and the stars are obscured as the "merric dancers"² sweep along in waves of light.

There is something surpassingly beautiful in the appearance of the true "auroral curtain." Fringed with coloured streamers, it waves to and fro, as if shaken by some unseen hand. Then, from end to end, there passes a succession of undulations, and the curtain seems to wave in a series of graceful curves.

Suddenly, and as it were by magic, there succeeds a perfect stillness; as if the unseen power, which had been dis-



THE AURORA IN THE POLAR REGIONS.

playin
restin
curta
of its

W
magic
the so
which
to the

At
the d
patch
the he
remain
cloud

ad'equa
corusca
gleams
descrip
display'

¹ Auro
for the
by the o
like the
was pers
the godde
name of
non des
Aurora E
dawn —
lights. I

playing the varied beauties of the auroral curtain, were resting for a moment. But even while the motion of the curtain is stilled, we see the alternate waxing and waning of its mysterious light.

While we gaze, fresh waves of disturbance traverse the magic canopy. Startling coruscations add splendour to the scene; and the noble span of the auroral arch, from which the waving curtain seems to hang, gives a grandeur to the spectacle which no words can adequately describe.

At length the luminous zone breaks up. The scene of the display becomes covered with scattered streaks and patches of ashen gray light, which hang like clouds over the heavens. Then these in turn disappear, and nothing remains of the brilliant spectacle but a dark smoke-like cloud on the horizon.

ad'equately, fitly.
coruscations, flashes, or
gleams of light.
description, account'.
displaying, unfolding.

gran'deur, splen'dour.
lu'minous, full of light.
manifestations, exhibi-
tions.
ri'valling, em'ulating.

spec'tacle, sight.
surpass'ingly, exceed-
ingly.
trav'erse, cross.
undulations, vibra'tions

¹ *Auro'ra*, is simply the Latin word for the "dawn" or "daybreak," used by the old Roman poets. Then this, like the other great aspects of Nature, was personified, and *Aurora* became the goddess of the morning. The full name of the meteorological phenomenon described in this lesson is the *Aurora Borealis*—that is, the northern dawn—or, popularly, the *northern lights*. It was formerly believed that

the aurora did not belong to the atmosphere of the Earth, but had its origin in a more distant region of the heavens. Recent experiments, however, prove beyond question that this beautiful phenomenon is occasioned by the passage of electric discharges through the upper regions of the atmosphere, where the air is highly rarefied.

² *Merrie Dancers*.—So the northern lights are called in Shetland

THE BATTLE OF THE BALTIC.

(A. D. 1801.)

OF Nelson¹ and the North²
Sing the glorious day's renown,
When to battle fierce came forth
All the might of Denmark's crown,
And her arms along the deep proudly shone;

By each gun the lighted brand
 In a bold 'determined hand,
 And the Prince of all the land³
 Led them on.

Like 'leviathans afloat,
 Lay their bulwarks on the brine;
 While the sign of battle flew
 On the lofty British line;
 It was ten of April morn by the chime:
 As they drifted on their path,
 There was silence deep as death;
 And the boldest held his breath
 For a time.

But the might of England flushed
 To 'anticipate the scene;
 And her van the fleetest rushed
 O'er the deadly space between.
 "Hearts of oak!" our captains cried, when each gun
 From its adamant⁴ lips
 Spread a death-shade round the ships,
 Like the 'hurricane 'eclipse
 Of the sun!

Again! again! again!
 And the 'havoc did not slack,
 Till a feeble cheer the Dane
 To our cheering sent us back.
 Their shots along the deep slowly boom'd—
 Then cease—and all is wail,
 As they strike the 'shattered sail;
 Or, in 'conflagration pale,
 Light the gloom!

Out spoke the Victor then,
 As he hailed them o'er the wave:
 "Ye are brothers!⁵ ye are men!
 And we conquer but to save!
 So peace, instead of death, let us bring:—

antic'ipate,
 condole's, sy
 confagra'ti
 deter'minod

¹ Nelson.
 MEN, in APR
² The North
 sia, Sweden,
 maritime co

But yield, proud foe, thy fleet,
With the crews, at England's feet,
And make 'submission meet
To our King."

Then Denmark blessed our Chief,
That he gave her wounds repose ;
And the sounds of joy and grief
From her people wildly rose,
As Death withdrew his shades from the day :
While the Sun looked smiling bright
O'er a wide and woful sight,
Where the fires of funeral light
Died away !

Now joy, Old England, raise !
For the tidings of thy might,
By the festal cities' blaze,
While the wine-cup shines in light ;—
And yet, amidst that joy and uproar,
Let us think of them that sleep,
Full many a fathom deep,
By thy wild and stormy steep,
Elsinore !⁶

Brave hearts ! to Britain's pride
Once so faithful and so true,
On the deck of fame that died,
With the 'gallant, good Riou !⁷
Soft sigh the winds of heaven o'er their grave !
While the billow mournful rolls,
And the mermaid's song 'condoles,
Singing glory to the souls
Of the brave !

THOMAS CAMPBELL.⁸

antic'ipate, forestall.
condoles', sympathiz'es.
conflagra'tion, flame.
deter'mined, res'olute.

eclipse', obscura'tion.
gal'lant, brave.
hav'oc, devasta'tion.
hur'ricane, tempes'tuous

levi'athan's, mon'sters.
renown', fame.
shat'tered, shiv'ered.
submis'sion, surren'der.

¹ Nelson. — See LIVES OF GREAT MEN, in Appendix.

² The North. — In 1800, Russia, Prussia, Sweden, and Denmark, formed a maritime confederacy, or northern

league, against Britain. A fleet of eighteen sail, under Sir Hyde Parker and Admiral Nelson, was despatched to the Baltic to break it up. Nelson undertook, with his squadron, to reduce

the batteries of Copenhagen. During the cannonade, Parker signalled to Nelson to stop firing; but Nelson put his telescope to his blind eye, and ordered his own signal for "close action" to be nailed to the mast.

³ The Prince of all the land.—The Prince Regent of Denmark commanded the Danish forces. He had been declared Regent in 1784, when his father, Christian VII., became deranged. In 1801 he succeeded to the throne as Frederick VI.

⁴ Adamantine, diamond; impenetrable.

⁵ Ye are brothers.—When some of

the Danish ships which had struck their colours fired upon the boats sent to take possession of them, Nelson wrote to the Crown Prince: "The brave Danes are the brothers, and should never be the enemies, of the English;" referring to their common Teutonic origin.

⁶ Elsinore, a town and sea-port of Denmark, on the western side of the Sound.

⁷ Riou.—Captain Riou, justly styled "the gallant and good" by Lord Nelson in his despatches, was killed in the battle.

⁸ Thomas Campbell.—See p. 89, Note 6.

TRIUMPHS OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

Now gather all our Saxon bards, let harps and hearts be strung,
To 'celebrate the 'triumphs of our own good Saxon tongue;
For stronger far than hosts that march with battle-flags 'un-
furl'd,

It goes with FREEDOM, THOUGHT, and TRUTH, to rouse and rule
the world.

Stout Albion¹ learns its 'household lays on every surf-worn
shore,

And Scotland hears its echoing far as Orkney's breakers roar—
From Jura's² crags and Mona's³ hills it floats on every gale,
And warms with 'eloquence and song the homes of Innisfail.⁴

On many a wide and swarming deck it scales the rough wave's
crest,

Seeking its 'peerless 'heritage—the fresh and fruitful West:
It climbs New England's⁵ rocky steeps as victor mounts a throne;
Niagara knows and greets the voice, still mightier than its own.

It spreads where Winter piles deep snows on bleak Canadian
plains,

And where on Essequibo's⁶ banks eternal Summer reigns:
It glads Acadia's⁷ misty coasts, Jamaica's glowing isle,
And bides where, gay with early flowers, green Texan⁸ prairies
smile:

It tracks the loud swift Oregon,⁹ through sunset valleys rolled,
And soars where Californian brooks wash down their sands of
gold.

It sounds in Borneo's¹⁰ camphor groves, on seas of fierce Malay,
In fields that curb old Ganges' flood, and towers of proud Bom-
bay :

It wakes up Aden's¹¹ flashing eyes, dusk brows, and 'swarthy
limbs ;

The dark Liberian¹² soothes her child with English cradle
hymns.

Tasmania's¹³ maids are wooed and won in gentle Saxon speech ;
Australian boys read Crusoe's life¹⁴ by Sydney's 'sheltered
beach ;

It dwells where Afric's southmost capes meet oceans broad and
blue,

And Nieuveld's¹⁵ rugged mountains gird the wide and waste
karroo.¹⁶

It 'kindles realms so far apart, that, while its praise you sing,
These may be clad with Autumn's fruits, and *those* with flowers
of Spring ;

It 'quickens lands whose 'meteor lights flame in an Arctic sky,
And lands for which the Southern Cross¹⁷ hangs its orb'd fires
on high.

It goes with all that prophets told, and 'righteous kings de-
sired,—

With all that great apostles taught, and glorious Greeks ad-
mired,—

With Shakespeare's¹⁸ deep and 'wondrous verse, and Milton's¹⁹
loftier mind,—

With Alfred's²⁰ laws, and Newton's²¹ lore,—to cheer and bless
mankind.

Mark, as it spreads, how deserts bloom, and error flies away,
As 'vanishes the mist of night before the star of day !
Put grand as are the victories whose 'monuments we see,
These are but as the dawn, which speaks of noontide yet to be.

Take heed, then, heirs of Saxon fame! take heed, nor once 'dis-
 grace,
 With deadly pen or spoiling sword, our noble tongue and race.
 Go forth 'prepared in every clime to love and help each other,
 And judge that they who 'counsel strife would bid you smite—
 a brother.

Go forth, and jointly speed the time, by good men prayed for
 long,
 When Christian States, grown just and wise, will scorn 'revenge
 and wrong;
 When Earth's oppressed and savage tribes shall cease to pine or
 roam,
 All taught to prize these English words—FAITH, FREEDOM,
 HEAVEN, and HOME.

J. G. LYONS.

celebrate, commemor- ate.	kin'dles, excites'. me'teor, flash'ing.	right'eous, up'right. shel'tered, protect'ed.
coun'sel, advis'. disgrace', debase'.	mon'uments, memor'ials	swarth'y, dus'ky.
el'ogence, oratory.	peer'less, une'qualed.	tri'umpha, vict'ories.
her'itage, inheritance.	prepared', equip'ped'.	unfurled', unrolled'.
house'hold, famil'iar.	quick'ens, enliv'ens.	van'ishes, disappears'.
	revenge', retaliation.	won'drous, mar'vel'lous.

¹ *Al'bion*, the earliest name by which Great Britain is mentioned by ancient writers. The name is probably derived from the same Celtic root as *Alp*, which signifies a height or mountain.

² *Ju'ra*, an island, one of the Inner Hebrides, on the west of Scotland.

³ *Mo'na*, the Isle of Man.

⁴ *Innisfall'*, on the coast of Ireland.

⁵ *New England*, the name given to the earliest British Colonies in North America; still applied to the six Eastern States of the Union.

⁶ *Essequi'bo*, the principal river of British Guiana, in South America.

⁷ *Acadia*, the former name of Nova Scotia. The French called the country *Acadie*, from, it is supposed, a native word *cadie*, or *kaddy*, signifying "abundance."

⁸ *Tex'an prairies*.—Texas, the wide region stretching from the Mississippi westward to Mexico, belonged to the latter country till 1836. It was independent from 1836 till 1845, when it

was annexed to the United States. It is now the largest State in the Union.

⁹ *Oregon*, the Columbia, or Oregon river, in the west of the United States.

¹⁰ *Bor'neo*, the central island of Malaysia (East Indies), and the second largest island on the globe.

¹¹ *A'den*, a town and sea-port on the south-west coast of Arabia. It has belonged to Britain since 1839, and is the chief coaling station on the steam-boat passage to India.

¹² *Libe'ria*, on the west coast of Africa, formerly a dependency of the United States, was recognized as an independent republic in 1848.

¹³ *Tasma'nia*, an island south of Australia, one fourth the size of Great Britain. It was formerly called Van Diemen's Land. Its present name is derived from Tasman, a Dutch navigator, who discovered it in 1642.

¹⁴ *Crusoe's life*—*Robinson Crusoe*, by Daniel de Foe, first published in 1719. It is supposed to have been

founded
 Seikiri
 been p
 Fernar
 raiso),
 years a
¹⁵ N
 Cape C
 the hei
¹⁶ Ka
 ing the
 tains in
 roos.

founded on the incident of Alexander Selkirk, a Scotch adventurer, having been put ashore on the island of Juan Fernandez (400 miles west of Valparaiso), where he lived alone for four years and four months.

¹² Nieu veld, a mountain range of Cape Colony (South Africa), rising to the height of 7000 feet above the sea.

¹⁶ Karroos'.—The wide plains occupying the terraces between the lofty mountains in South Africa are called karroos.

¹⁷ The Southern Cross, the most brilliant and striking constellation in the Southern Hemisphere.

¹⁸ Shakespeare, the great English Dramatist, author of *Hamlet*, *King Lear*, *The Tempest*, &c. (A. D. 1564-1616).

¹⁹ Milton, the author of *Paradise Lost* (A. D. 1608-1674).

²⁰ Alfred, Alfred the Great, King of Wessex (reigned A. D. 871-901).

²¹ Newton, Sir Isaac Newton, the great philosopher who discovered the law of gravitation (A. D. 1642-1727).

YOUNG LOCHINVAR.

Oh, young Lochinvar is come out of the west ;
Through all the wide Border his steed was the best :
And save his good broad-sword he ' weapons had none ;
He rode all unarmed, and he rode all alone.
So faithful in love, and so ' dauntless in war,
There never was knight like the young Lochinvar.

He stayed not for brake, and he stopped not for stone,
He swam the Esk river where ford there was none ;
But, ere he alighted at Netherby gate,
The bride had ' consented—the ' gallant came late :
For a laggard in love and a dastard¹ in war
Was to wed the fair Ellen of brave Lochinvar.

So boldly he entered the Netherby hall,
Among bridesmen, and ' kinsmen, and brothers and all :
Then spoke the bride's father, his hand on his sword,
(For the poor ' craven bridegroom said never a word),
" Come ye in peace here, or come ye in war,
Or to dance at our ' bridal, young Lord Lochinvar."

" I long wooed your daughter, my suit you denied ;—
Love swells like the Solway, but ebbs like its tide—
And now am I come, with this lost love of mine
To lead but one measure, drink one cup of wine.
There are maidens in Scotland, more lovely by far,
That would gladly be bride to the young Lochinvar."

The bride kissed the 'goblet; the knight took it up,
 He 'quaffed off the wine, and he threw down the cup;
 She looked down to blush, and she looked up to sigh,
 With a smile on her lips and a tear in her eye.
 He took her soft hand, ere her mother could bar,—
 "Now tread we a measure!" said young Lochinvar.

So 'stately his form, and so lovely her face,
 That never a hall such a galliard² did grace;
 While her mother did¹ fret, and her father did fume,
 And the bridegroom stood 'dangling his bonnet and plume;
 And the bride-maiden³ 'whispered, "Twere better by far
 To have 'matched our fair cousin with young Lochinvar."

One touch to her hand, and one word in her ear,
 When they reached the hall door, and the 'charger stood near;
 So light to the croupe³ the fair lady he swung,
 So light to the saddle before her he sprung!—
 "She is won! we are gone, over bank, bush, and scaur!⁴
 They'll have fleet steeds that follow!" quoth young Lochinvar.

There was mounting 'mong Græmes of the Netherby clan;
 Forsters, Fenwicks, and Musgraves, they rode and they ran;
 There was racing and chasing on Cannobie lee,
 But the lost bride of Netherby ne'er did they see!
 So 'daring in love and so 'dauntless in war,
 Have ye e'er heard of 'gallant like young Lochinvar?

SIR WALTER SCOTT (1771-1832.)

brī'dal, wed'ding.
 char'ger, steed.
 consent'ed, agreed'.
 cra'ven, cow'ardly.
 dan'gling, swing'ing.

dā'r'ing, bold.
 daunt'less, fear'less.
 gal'lant, lov'er.
 gob'let, cup.
 kins'men, relatives.

matched, mar'ried.
 quaffed, drank.
 state'ly, dignified.
 weap'ons, arms.
 whis'pered, hint'ed.

¹ Lag'gard...das'tard. — Examples of words ending in the suffix *-ard*, signifying nature or habit. A *laggard* is one who is in the habit of lagging; a *dastard* is one whose nature it is to shrink or be frightened. So *drunk-ard* is one who frequently drinks to excess. *Dot-ard*

and *dull-ard* are other examples. *Braggart* and *sweet-heart* exhibit other forms of the same suffix.

² Gall'iard, a gay, lively dance. It is the French *gaillard*, from *gai*, gay.

³ Croupe, the place behind the saddle.

⁴ Scaur, cliff; steep bank. [5c.]

able, 1
 Abel,
 accide
 of in
 accide
 adze, s
 adds, s
 aloud,
 allowe
 ark, N
 arc, a
 ascent
 assent
 assista
 assista
 bacon,
 baken,
 baize,
 cloth
 bays, 1
 bald, w
 bawled
 barren
 baron,
 base, fo
 bass, th
 music
 beetle,
 beetle,
 beetle,
 betel, a
 bell, for
 belle, a
 bit, a m
 bit, for
 bite, to
 teeth.
 bight, a
 bodice,
 bodies,

WORD LESSONS.

WORDS PRONOUNCED NEARLY ALIKE.

- able, having power.
 Abel, a man's name.
 accident, the doctrine of inflections.
 accidents, mishaps.
 adze, a tool.
 adds, does add.
 aloud, in a loud voice.
 allowed, did allow.
 ark, Noah's vessel.
 arc, a curve; arch.
 ascent, going up.
 assent, agreement.
 assistance, help.
 assistants, helpers.
 bacon, swine's flesh salted.
 baked, fired in an oven.
 baize, coarse woollen cloth.
 bays, laurel leaves.
 bald, without hair.
 bawled, did bawl.
 barren, sterile.
 baron, a noble.
 base, foundation.
 bass, the lowest part in music.
 beetle, an insect.
 beetle, a mallet.
 beetle, to project.
 betel, an Indian shrub.
 bell, for ringing.
 belle, a young lady.
 bit, a morsel.
 bit, for a horse's mouth.
 bite, to selze with the teeth.
 bight, a small bay.
 bodice, stays.
 bodies, pl. of *body*.
 bold, brave.
 bowled, played at bowls.
 border, edge.
 boarder, one who boards.
 breaches, openings.
 breeches, trousers.
 breast, front of the body.
 Brest, a town in France.
 broach, to tap a cask.
 brooch, an ornament.
 bruise, to crush.
 brews, does brew.
 burrow, a rabbit-hole.
 borough, a corporate town.
 candid, open, honest.
 candied, conserved with sugar.
 cane, a strong reed.
 Cain, brother of Abel.
 canvas, coarse cloth.
 canvass, to ask for votes.
 capital, chief city.
 Capitol, a temple at Rome.
 carrot, a root.
 carat, a jeweller's weight.
 caret, a mark to show that words are left out, \wedge .
 cellar, a room under ground.
 seller, one who sells.
 censer, a pan to burn incense.
 censor, a critic.
 cereal, relating to grain.
 serial, periodical.
 session, a giving up.
 session, act of sitting.
 chagrin, vexation.
 shagreen, leather made of the skin of a fish.
 chaste, pure.
 chased, hunted.
 close, end.
 clothes, dress.
 cobble, to mend.
 coble, a small boat.
 coin, metal money.
 coigne, an angle in a building.
 quoin, a wedge.
 collar, for the neck.
 cholera, anger.
 compliment, act of civility.
 complement, full number.
 concert, musical performance.
 consort, spouse.
 cooly, an East Indian porter.
 coolly, without heat.
 coral, in "coral-island."
 choral, pertaining to a choir.
 corvette, a small warship.
 curvet, a leap; a bound.
 cozen, to cheat.
 cousin, a relation.
 creak, to make a harsh noise.
 creek, a small bay.
 cue, a hint.
 cue, a billiard-stick.
 queue, a tail of hair.
 Kew, a village near London.
 cymbal, a musical instrument.
 symbol, a type.

cypress, a tree.
 Cyprus, an island.
 cygnet, a young swan.
 signet, a seal.
 dependent, resting on.
 dependant, one who is dependent.
 depository, a store.
 depositary, a storekeeper.
 descent, going down.
 descent, genealogy.
 dissent, disagreement.
 deference, regard.
 difference, contention.
 dire, dreadful.
 dyer, one who dyes cloth.
 divers, several.
 diverse, different.
 doom, fate.
 dome, a cupola.
 draft, a bill of exchange.
 draught, act of drinking.
 dram, a small portion of spirits.
 drachm, the eighth part of an ounce.
 dust, small grains.
 dost, 2nd. sing. of *do*.
 errand, a message.
 errant, wandering.
 eruption, a bursting forth, as of a volcano.
 irruption, a bursting in, as of an army.
 ether, the upper air.
 either, one of two.
 fawn, a young deer.
 fawn, to flatter.
 faun, a rural deity.
 fellow, a partner.
 fellow, a piece in the circumference of a wheel.
 few, not many.
 feu, land held for rent.
 fisher, one who fishes.
 fissure, a chasm.
 flea, an insect.
 flee, to run away.

frecc, does free.
 freeze, to congeal.
 frieze, coarse cloth.
 frieze, part of a building.
 furs, skins.
 firs, fir-trees.
 furze, bushes.
 gage, a pledge.
 gauge, a measure.
 gall, the bile.
 Gaul, ancient France.
 gamble, to play for money.
 gambol, to frisk.
 gild, to cover with gold.
 guild, a company.
 gluttonous, greedy.
 glutinous, gluey.
 goer, one that goes.
 gore, blood.
 gore, to stab.
 gore, a gusset.
 grease, melted fat.
 Greece, a country.
 greaves, armour for the legs.
 grieves, does grieve.
 grisly, frightful.
 grizzly, of a gray colour.
 grocer, a dealer in tea, &c.
 grosser, greater.
 group, a crowd.
 grope, to feel one's way.
 guest, a stranger.
 guessed, did guess.
 haven, shelter for ships.
 heaven, the abode of the blessed.
 hide, to conceal.
 hide, skin.
 hied, hastened.
 hoard, a store.
 horde, a wandering tribe.
 idle, lazy.
 idol, a false god.
 indite, to compose.
 indict, to accuse.

jam, conserve of fruit.
 jamb, side-piece of a door.
 jester, one who jests.
 gesture, motion of the body.
 juggler, a conjurer.
 jugular, pertaining to the throat.
 jury, men sworn to try cases.
 Jewry, Judea.
 kernel, the seed inside the shell.
 colonel, commander of a regiment.
 knot, hard part of wood.
 not, particle of negation.
 lac, a resin.
 lac, of rupees (100,000).
 lack, want.
 lade, to load.
 laid, placed.
 lair, bed of a wild beast.
 layer, stratum.
 lapse, to glide.
 laps, does lap.
 lax, loose.
 lacks, does lack.
 lacs, of rupees.
 least, smallest.
 leased, let out on lease.
 levy, to raise troops.
 levee, a royal reception.
 limb, of the body.
 limn, to draw.
 liniment, ointment.
 lineament, feature.
 literal, by the letter.
 littoral, on the shore.
 load, a burden.
 lode, a vein of metal.
 lowed, bellowed.
 lore, learning.
 lower, more low.
 magnate, a grandee.
 magnet, lodestone.

mare, female horse.
 mayor, chief magistrate.
 mark, token.
 marque, plunder.
 matin, used in the morning.
 matting, woven mat.
 maze, a labyrinth.
 maize, Indian corn.
 mead, a meadow.
 meed, a reward.
 metal, iron.
 mettle, spirit.
 missal, the book of prayers.
 missile, a thing thrown.
 mist, fine rain.
 missed, lost.
 mood, temper.
 mode, manner.
 mowed, did mow.
 more, greater.
 mower, one who mows.
 monitory, admonitory.
 monetary, money.
 need, to want.
 knead, to work.
 pact, a contract.
 packed, bound.
 pæan, song of praise.
 peon, an Indian.
 palace, a royal residence.
 Pallas, Minerva.
 palate, roof of the mouth.
 pallet, a low bed.
 palette, a painter's board.
 pastor, a shepherd.
 pasture, ground for cattle.
 pearl, a gem.
 peril, danger.
 purl, to murmur.
 pencil, for writing.
 pensile, hanging.

- mare, female horse.
 mayor, chief magistrate.
 mark, token; proof.
 marque, a license to plunder.
 matin, used in the morning.
 matting, woven rushes.
 maze, a labyrinth.
 maize, Indian wheat.
 mead, a meadow.
 meed, a reward.
 metal, iron, gold, &c.
 mettle, spirit; courage.
 missal, the mass-book.
 missile, a weapon for throwing.
 mist, fine rain.
 missed, lost.
 mood, temper.
 mode, manner.
 mowed, did mow.
 more, greater.
 mower, one who mows.
 monitory, admonishing.
 monetary, relating to money.
 need, to want.
 knead, to work dough.
 pact, a contract.
 packed, bound up.
 pæan, song of triumph.
 peon, an Indian soldier.
 palace, a royal residence.
 Pallas, Minerva.
 palate, roof of the mouth.
 pallet, a low bed.
 palette, a painter's colour-board.
 pastor, a shepherd.
 pasture, grazing for cattle.
 pearl, a gem.
 peril, danger.
 purl, to murmur as water.
 pencil, for writing with.
 pensile, hanging.
- pendent, hanging.
 pendant, that which hangs.
 plaintiff, the complainer in a law-suit.
 plaintive, mournful.
 place, position.
 plaice, a fish.
 poplar, a tree.
 popular, pleasing the people.
 populace, the common people.
 populous, full of people.
 president, one who presides.
 precedent, example.
 prophecy, a foretelling.
 prophesy, to foretell.
 quartz, a mineral.
 quarts, parts of a gallon.
 radical, thorough.
 radicle, a little root.
 ravin, to plunder.
 ravine, a mountain pass.
 relic, a memorial.
 relict, a widow.
 rest, to be still.
 wrest, to take by violence.
 rheum, a discharge from the lungs or the nostrils.
 room, space.
 riot, uproar.
 ryot, an Indian peasant.
 sailor, a seaman.
 sailer, a ship.
 satire, ridicule.
 satyr, a silvan deity.
 shear, to clip.
 sheer, unmingled.
 sine, a line in geometry.
 sign, a token.
 slight, to neglect.
 sleight, dexterity.
- species, kind.
 specious, plausible.
 spacious, roomy.
 staid, sober; grave.
 stayed, did stay.
 step, a pace.
 steppe, a barren plain.
 succour, help.
 sucker, the piston of a pump.
 subtler, more cunning.
 sutler, a victualler following an army.
 suite, retinue.
 sweet, pleasant to the taste.
 suitor, a wooer.
 suture, a seam or joining.
 surplice, the white vest of a clergyman.
 surplus, excess.
 tacked, did tack.
 tact, feeling; skill.
 ton, a weight.
 tun, a large cask.
 tract, a region.
 tract, a small book.
 tracked, traced.
 urn, a vase.
 earn, to gain by labour.
 vial, a small bottle.
 viol, a stringed instrument.
 wain, a waggon.
 wane, to decrease.
 wave, of the sea.
 waive, to put off.
 whirl, to revolve rapidly.
 whorl, a circle of leaves.
 wield, to manage.
 weald, a wood or forest.
 with, by means of.
 withe, a twig.
 wort, an infusion of malt.
 wert, "thou wert."
 wean, to withdraw.
 ween, to think.

WORDS PRONOUNCED NEARLY ALIKE.

For convenience of revision, and in order to make the list of Homonyms in the present Book complete, the following list has been reprinted from Book IV.

all, to be sick.	berth, sleeping-place in a ship.	check, to restrain.
ale, malt liquor.	birth, coming into life.	cheque, an order for money.
air, the atmosphere.	blew, did blow.	choir, of singers.
ere, before.	blue, a colour.	quire, of paper.
e'er, ever.	boar, a male pig.	claws, of an animal.
heir, an inheritor.	bore, to pierce.	clause, of a sentence.
all, the whole.	bow, to bend.	climb, to ascend.
awl, a sharp tool.	bough, a branch.	clime, climate.
altar, for worship.	boy, a male child.	coarse, not fine.
alter, to change.	buoy, a float.	course, a running.
ant, an insect.	brake, a thickset.	cord, string.
aunt, a relative.	break, to shatter.	chord, in music.
ate, did eat.	bread, food.	core, the heart.
eight, four and four.	bred, brought up.	corps, a body of men.
ought, anything.	bridal, a wedding.	council, an assembly.
ought, is bound.	bridle, of a horse.	counsel, to advise.
bad, evil.	Britain, the country.	crews, sailors.
bade, did bid.	Briton, an inhabitant.	cruise, to sail about.
bag, a package.	but, except.	cruse, a small cup.
bail, surety.	butt, a target.	currant, a small fruit.
ball, a round body.	butt, a cask.	current, stream.
bawl, to shout.	by, near.	dear, costly.
bare, uncovered.	buy, to purchase.	deer, an animal.
bear, an animal.	bye, in good-bye.	desert, merit.
be, to exist.	calendar, an almanac.	dessert, after dinner.
bee, an insect.	calender, to press cloth.	dew, moisture.
beach, sea-coast.	cannon, a great gun.	due, owed.
beech, a tree.	canon, a rule.	die, a stamp.
bean, the seed of a plant.	cask, a barrel.	die, to expire.
been, part. of <i>be</i> .	casque, a helmet.	dye, to change the colour.
beat, to strike.	cede, to give up.	doe, a female deer.
beat, a plant.	seed, part of a plant.	dough, paste for baking.
bean, a fop.	ceiling, of a room.	done, finished.
bow, a weapon.	sealing, with wax.	dun, a colour.
beer, malt liquor.	cell, a small room.	dying, expiring.
bier, a frame for bearing the dead.	sell, to give for money.	dyeing, changing the colour.
berry, a small fruit.	cent, a hundred.	ewe, a female sheep.
bury, to inter.	scent, perfume.	yew, a tree.
	sent, did send.	you, the person addressed.

ewer, a
 your, o
 faint, e
 fame, a
 feign, a
 faint, f
 feint, a
 fair, a
 fair, be
 fare, fo
 feat, an
 feet, of
 find, to
 fined, p
 flew, di
 flue, a c
 flour, gr
 flower, a
 fool, a st
 full, com
 fore, in
 four, tw
 forth, at
 fourth, a
 foul, not
 fowl, a b
 fur, of an
 fir, a tree
 gait, mar
 gate, a d
 gilt, cov
 guilt, wi
 grate, fo
 great, lar
 groan, a
 grown, in
 hail, to ac
 hail, froze
 hale, heal
 hair, of th
 hare, an a
 hall, a lar
 haul, to p
 hart, a de
 heart, the

- ewer**, a jug.
your, of you.
fain, eager.
fane, a temple.
feign, to sham.
faint, feeble.
feint, a pretence.
fair, a market.
fair, beautiful.
fare, food.
feat, an exploit.
feet, of the body.
find, to discover.
fined, punished in money.
few, did fly.
flue, a chimney.
flour, ground grain.
flower, a blossom.
fool, a stupid person.
full, complete.
fore, in front.
four, two and two.
forth, abroad.
fourth, after third.
foul, not clean.
fowl, a bird.
fur, of an animal.
fir, a tree.
gait, manner of walking.
gate, a door.
gilt, covered with gold.
guilt, wickedness.
grate, for fire.
great, large.
groan, a deep moan.
grown, increased.
hail, to accost.
hail, frozen rain.
hale, healthy.
hair, of the head.
hare, an animal.
hall, a large room.
haul, to pull.
hart, a deer.
heart, the seat of life.
- heal**, to cure.
heel, of the foot.
hear, to listen.
here, in this place.
heard, did hear.
herd, a flock.
hew, to cut down.
hue, colour.
hie, to go; hasten.
high, lofty.
him, a person referred to.
hymn, a sacred song.
hire, wages.
higher, loftier.
hole, an opening.
whole, entire.
holy, pure; sacred.
wholly, altogether.
I, the person speaking.
eye, the organ of vision.
in, into.
inn, a tavern.
isle, an island.
aisle, wing of a church.
key, for a lock.
quay, a wharf.
kill, to slay.
kiln, for burning lime.
knead, to work dough.
need, to require.
lain, reclined.
lane, an alley.
lea, a meadow.
lee, the sheltered side.
leak, a hole in a ship.
leek, a plant.
led, did lead.
lead, a metal.
lessen, to make less.
lesson, instruction.
liar, one who tells lies.
lyre, a musical instrument.
links, of a chain.
lynx, an animal.
- lo!** look.
low, not high.
loan, something lent.
lone, solitary.
made, did make.
maid, a young woman.
mail, a bag of letters.
mail, armour.
male, a he-animal.
main, chief.
main, the ocean.
mane, of an animal.
manner, method.
manor, domain.
mantel, a chimney-piece.
mantle, a cloak.
marshal, to arrange.
martial, warlike.
mean, low.
mean, to intend.
mien, manner.
meat, food.
meet, to encounter.
mete, to measure.
medal, a coin.
meddle, to interfere.
meter, a measure.
metre, verse.
might, power.
mite, an insect.
miner, one who mines.
minor, junior; smaller.
moan, a deep sigh.
mown, cut down.
mote, a particle.
moat, a ditch.
muscle, of the body.
mussel, a shell-fish.
muse, to meditate.
mews, stables.
mews, cries as a cat.
nave, of a wheel.
nave, of a church.
knave, a rogue.
neigh, as a horse.
nay, no.

- new**, not old.
knew, did know.
night, time of darkness
knight, a title of rank.
no, negative.
know, to understand.
none, no one.
nun, a female monk.
nose, of the face.
knows, does know.
not, negative.
knot, a tie.
oar, for a boat.
ors, metal.
o'er, over.
ode, a short poem.
owed, did owe.
oh! exclamation.
owe, to be indebted.
one, a number.
won, gained.
our, of us.
hour, sixty minutes.
pail, for milk.
pale, white.
pain, suffering.
pane, of glass.
pair, a couple.
pare, to cut.
pear, a fruit.
pause, a stop.
paws, of an animal.
peace, quietness.
piece, a part.
peak, the top.
per, ill-will.
peal, a loud sound.
peel, to pare.
peas, in number.
pease, in quantity.
peer, a nobleman.
pier, of a bridge.
phrase, mode of speech.
frays, quarrels.
plain, level ground.
plane, a joiner's tool.
plait, to fold.
plate, a dish.
please, to delight.
pleas, excuses.
plum, a fruit.
plumb, a leaden weight.
pole, a measure.
pole, a piece of wood.
poll, the head.
pore, an opening.
pore, to study closely.
pour, to empty out.
practice, a custom.
practise, to do habitually.
praise, renown.
prays, entreats.
preys, plunders.
pray, to entreat.
prey, plunder.
pries, looks into closely.
prize, a reward.
principal, chief.
principle, rule.
profit, gain.
prophet, one who foretells.
rain, water from the clouds.
reign, to rule.
rein, of a horse.
raise, to lift up.
rays, of the sun.
raze, to overthrow.
rap, to knock.
wrap, to infold.
read, to peruse.
reed, a plant.
reck, to care.
wreck, ruin.
red, a colour.
read, did read.
right, not wrong.
rite, a ceremony.
write, with a pen.
wright, a workman.
rime, hoar-frost.
rhyme, in verse.
ring, a circle.
ring, to sound a bell
wring, to twist.
road, a way.
rode, did ride.
rowed, did row.
root, of a plant.
route, line of march.
rose, a flower.
rose, did rise.
rows, does row.
rote, memory.
wrote, did write.
rough, uneven.
ruff, for the neck.
row, a line.
row, to row a boat.
roe, a female deer.
rye, a grain.
wry, crooked.
sale, the act of selling.
sail, of a ship.
scene, a view.
seen, beheld.
sea, the ocean.
see, domain of a bishop.
see, to behold.
seams, joinings.
seems, appears.
sear, to burn.
seer, a prophet.
seer, faded.
sees, beholds.
seize, to take hold of.
sew, to make a seam.
sow, to scatter seed.
so, thus.
site, situation.
sight, vision.
size, bulk.
sighs, moans.
sloe, a berry.
slow, not fast.
soar, to mou .
sore, painful.

soared, d
sword, a
sold, did
soled, m

some, a p
sum, and
son, a m
sun, that

soul, spir
sole, of t

stair, a f
stare, to

stake, a
steak, a

stationa
stationer
 writing.

steal, to
steel, me

stile, a s
style, me

straight
strait, n

tale, a st
tail, of a

tare, a w
tear, to r

Let the
 each day's
 same sent

re
 re
 pr
 pr

The pup
 of the wo
 This wi

soared , did soar.	tax , a charge.	use , to employ.
sword , a weapon.	tacks , small nails.	ewes , female sheep.
sold , did sell.	team , of horses.	vain , conceited.
soled , my boot is soled.	teem , to be full of	vein , a blood-vessel.
some , a portion.	tear , from the eye.	vane , a weather-cock.
sum , amount.	tier , a row.	vale , valley.
son , a male child.	tease , to annoy.	veil , for the face.
sun , that shines.	teas , kinds of tea.	wade , to walk in water.
soul , spirit.	their , of them.	weighed , did weigh.
sole , of the foot.	there , in that place.	waist , of the body.
stair , a flight of steps.	threw , did throw.	waste , to destroy.
stare , to gaze.	through , from side to side.	wait , to stay.
stake , a post.	throne , a royal seat.	weighed , heaviness.
steak , a slice of beef.	thrown , cast.	ware , goods.
stationary , fixed.	tide , a current.	wear , to put on.
stationery , materials for writing.	tied , made fast.	weather , state of the air.
steal , to take by theft.	time , season.	wether , a sheep.
steel , metal.	thyme , a plant.	week , seven days.
stile , a step in a fence.	to , unto.	weak , feeble.
style , manner of writing.	too , also.	weigh , to find the weight of.
straight , not crooked.	two , one and one.	way , a road.
strait , narrow.	toe , of the foot.	wood , a forest.
tale , a story.	tow , coarse flax.	would , past of <i>will</i> .
tail , of an animal.	told , narrated.	yoke , a chain.
tare , a weed.	toll , rang.	yolk , of an egg.
tear , to rend.	trait , feature.	
	tray , vessel.	

DICTIONATION EXERCISES.

Let the teacher frame short sentences, introducing the words prescribed for each day's lesson—either a separate sentence for each word, or two words in the same sentence. Thus:—

red.....The officer wore a *red* cloak.
read.....I have *read* the book three times.
principal...The *principal* cause of his failure has been his want
principle of *principle*.

COMPOSITION EXERCISES.

The pupils are to be required to write short sentences, showing the right use of the words in each day's lesson.

This will be a thorough test, also, of their knowledge of the verbal distinctions.

WORD LESSONS.

WORDS RELATED IN MEANING.

1. TIME.

É'ra, a fixed point of time.
 É'poch, a great division of time.
 Antiq'uity, ancient times.
 Tem'porary, for a limited time.
 Simulta'neous, at the same time.
 Futu'rity, time to come.
 Eter'nity, unlimited duration.
 In'terim, in the meantime.
 Diu'r'nal, daily.
 Di'ary, an account of daily events.
 An'nual, lasting one year.
 Bien'nial, lasting two years.
 Cent'ury, one hundred years.
 Dec'a'de, a period of ten years.
 Cy'cle, a round of years.
 Ju'bilee, a season of joy.
 Minor'ity, being under age.
 Major'ity, being over age.
 Senior'ity, superiority in age.
 Tradi'tion, opinions handed down
 from age to age.
 An'nals, account of events.

2. SPACE.

Ae'rial, belonging to air.
 Barom'eter, a weight-measurer of air.
 Thermom'eter, a heat-measurer of air.
 At'mosphere, the air around the earth.
 Terres'trial, belonging to the earth.
 Earth quake, a convulsion of the earth.
 Subterra'nean, underground.
 Min'eral, a body found in the earth.
 Equa'tor, the greatest circle passing
 round the globe.
 Hori'zon, the line that bounds the view.
 Arc'tic, relating to the north pole.
 Ru'ral, relating to the country.
 Peas'ant, a countryman.
 Pa'triot, a lover of country.
 Hus'bandman, one who tills the land.
 Ar'able, fit for tillage.
 Ag'riculture, the art of cultivating
 land.
 Isth'mus, a neck of land.
 Mount'ainous, hilly.

Al'pine, full of high mountains.
 Volca'no, a burning mountain.
 Ice'berg, a floating mountain of ice.
 Riv'ulet, a small river.
 Chan'nel, the bed of a river.
 Es'tuary, the mouth of a river.
 Ba'sin, the country drained by a river.
 Wa'tershed, the ridge between two
 basins.
 Cat'aract, a rapid waterfall.
 Cascade', a small cataract.
 Mar'itime, belonging to the sea.
 Submarine', under the sea.
 Tid'al, belonging to the tides.
 Aquat'ic, pertaining to water.
 A'queous, watery.
 Res'ervoir, a water tank.
 Ir'rigate, to water land.
 Aqu'educt, a water bridge.
 Sluice, a flood-gate.
 Breeze, a gentle wind.
 Zeph'yr, a soft breeze.
 Monsoon', a periodic Indian wind.
 Mun'dane, belonging to the world.
 U'niverse, all creation.

3. ANIMAL LIFE.

Nativ'ity, time or place of birth.
 In'fantile, like an infant.
 Pu'erile, like a boy.
 Hu'man, pertaining to man.
 Mankind', the human race.
 Philan'tropy, love of mankind.
 Pop'ular, belonging to the people.
 Vul'gar, pertaining to the common
 people.
 Dem'agogue, a leader of the people.
 Con'sort, a wife or husband.
 Cel'ibacy, single life.
 Effem'inate, like a woman.
 Rel'ict, a widow.
 Her'oine, a brave woman.

Menag'erie, a collection of wild ani-
 mals.
 In'stinct, natural impulse.
 Quad'ruped, a four-footed animal.

Bl'ped, a
 Ru'minat
 Carniv'or
 Gramini
 Amphib'i
 Grega'rio
 Nes'tling
 Cove'y, a
 A'viary,
 Ey'ry, an
 Fal'conry
 Aqua'rium
 An'gler, a
 Shoals, flo
 Ceta'ceous
 Chrys'alid
 pillar an
 Cer'vine, p
 Ant'l'ers, l
 Can'ine, p
 Ken'nel, a
 Vul'pine, p
 Vix'en, a s
 Bur'row, a
 Lep'orine,
 Lev'eret, a
 E'quine, po
 Eques'tria
 Far'rier, o
 Jock'ey, on
 Cavalcade'
 Eq'urry,
 prince.

4. V.

Flo'ral, relat
 * Bou'quet
 † Parterre
 Gar'land, a
 Chap'let, a h
 Fruit'erer,
 Or'chard, a
 Exot'ics, fo
 Conser'vato
 Vin'ery, a h
 Nurs'ery, a
 Fo'liage, th
 Ar'bour, a s

5.

Ar'teries, b
 Conges'tion
 * Boo-ka

Bl'ped, a two-footed animal.
 Ru minating, cud-chewing.
 Carniv'orous, flesh-eating.
 Graminiv'orous, grass-eating.
 Amphib'ious, living in air or water.
 Grega'rious, living in flocks.
 Nes'tling, a young bird.
 Covey, a brood of birds.
 A'viary, a bird-house.
 Ey'ry, an eagle's nest.
 Fal'conry, hunting with hawk.
 Aqua'rium, a fish preserve.
 An'gler, a rod-fisher.
 Shoals, flocks of fishes.
 Ceta'ceous, whale-like.
 Chrysa'lis, the state between caterpillar and moth.
 Cer'vine, pertaining to the deer.
 Ant'lers, branches of a deer's horns.
 Can'ine, pertaining to the dog.
 Ken'nel, a house for dogs.
 Vul'pine, pertaining to the fox.
 Vix'en, a she-fox.
 Bur'row, a fox- or rabbit-hole.
 Lep'orine, pertaining to the hare.
 Lev'eret, a young hare.
 E'quine, pertaining to the horse.
 Eques'trian, a horseman.
 Far'rier, one who shoes horses.
 Jock'ey, one who rides a race-horse.
 Cavalcadé', a procession on horseback.
 Eq'uey, master of the horse to a prince.

4. VEGETABLE LIFE.

Flo'ral, relating to flowers.
 * Bou'quet, a nosegay.
 † Parterre', a flower-garden.
 Gar'land, a flower-wreath.
 Chap'let, a wreath for the head.
 Fruit'erer, one who trades in fruit.
 Or'chard, a garden of fruit-trees.
 Exot'ics, foreign plants.
 Conser'vatory, a large greenhouse.
 Vin'ery, a hothouse for vines.
 Nurs'ery, a plantation of young trees.
 Fo'liage, the leaves of trees.
 Ar'bour, a summer-house.

5. THE BODY.

Ar'teries, blood-vessels.
 Conges'tion, accumulation of blood.

* Boo-kay.

† Par-tare.

Corpo'real, having a body.
 Immat'e'rial, spiritual.
 Organ'ic, having organs.
 Lig'ament, that which binds the bones.
 Dis'locate, to put out of joint.
 Mor'tal, liable to death.
 Obit'uary, a list of the dead.
 Sep'ulchre, a tomb.
 Cem'etery, a graveyard.
 Crypt, a burial vault.
 Post'humous, after death.
 Auric'ular, pertaining to the ear.
 Oc'ular, pertaining to the eye.
 Pro'file, a side view of the face.
 Complex'ion, colour of the face.
 Tress'es, locks of hair.
 Peruke', a wig of false hair.
 Man'ual, for the hand.
 Sin'ister, on the left hand.
 Can'opy, a covering over the head.
 Decap'itate, to behead.
 Palpita'tion, beating of the heart.
 Polled, without horns.
 U'nicorn, an animal with one horn.
 Vi'tal, pertaining to life.
 Longev'ity, great length of life.
 Cuta'neous, pertaining to the skin.
 Pel'try, fur-skins of animals.
 Cu'ticle, the outer skin.
 Dor'mant, in a sleeping state.
 Dor'mitory, a sleeping room.
 Soporif'ic, a sleep-producer.
 Somnam'bulist, a sleep-walker.
 Fra'grant, sweet-smelling.
 Gas'tric, belonging to the stomach.
 Diges'tion, the process of dissolving food.
 Insip'id, tasteless.
 Mas'ticate, to grind with the teeth.
 Inci'sors, the cutting teeth.
 Enam'el, the hard surface of the teeth.
 Vo'cal, uttered by the voice.
 Gut'tural, throat sound.
 La't'ial, lip sound.
 Dent'al, tooth sound.
 Neigh'ing, the voice of a horse.
 Screech'ing, the voice of an owl.
 Bleat'ing, the voice of a lamb.
 Low'ing, the voice of cattle.
 Mor'bid, diseased.
 Chron'ic, of long continuance.
 Epidem'ic, affecting large numbers.
 Conval'es'cence, recovery from disease.
 Medic'inal, belonging to medicine.

An **antidote**, that which counteracts poison.
 An **apothecary**, one who sells drugs.
 A **dispensary**, a place where drugs are given out.
 A **surgeon**, an operator on the body.
 An **empiric**, an experimenter; a quack.

6. FORM.

A **square**, having four equal sides at right angles.
 A **triangle**, a three-sided figure.
 A **quadrangle**, a four-sided figure.
 A **polygon**, a many-sided figure.
Symmetry, regularity of form.
Deformity, want of form.
Angular, full of angles.
Perpendicular, straight up and down.
Curvature, the bending of a line.
Circularity, roundness.
 A **labyrinth**, a maze.
Cylindrical, cylinder-shaped.
Convex, curved outwards.
Concave, curved inwards.
Spherical, globe-shaped.
 A **diameter**, measurement through a circle.
Radius, half a diameter.
Circumference, the outline of a circle.

7. COLOUR.

Chromatic, relating to colour.
Pigment, colouring matter.
Emblazon, to adorn with colours.
Cerulean, sky-coloured.
Ultramarine, of a blue colour.
Livid, black and blue.
Verdant, green.
Grizzly, of a gray colour.
Florid, of a red colour.
Sallow, of a yellow colour.
Tawny, of a brownish-yellow colour.
Piebald, of various colours.
Azure, of a blue colour.

8. PROPERTIES OF BODIES.*

Adhesive, sticking together.
Acrid, of a biting taste.

* The words in this division, besides being used as spelling-lessons, will be

Astringent, drawing together.
Artificial, made by art.
Brittle, easily broken.
Combustible, easily burned.
Ductile, that may be drawn into wire.
Elastic, springing back.
Edible, that may be eaten.
Fibrous, consisting of threads.
Fragrant, sweet-smelling.
Fusible, easily melted.
Flexible, easily bent.
Inflammable, easily burned.
Impresible, able to be marked.
Incombustible, not able to be burned.
Inodorous, without smell.
Mal'leable, able to be beaten out.
Nutritious, nourishing.
Odorous, having smell.
Opaque, that cannot be seen through.
Porous, full of pores.
Pungent, sharp in smell or taste.
Reflective, able to throw back light or sound.
Soluble, able to be melted.
Solid, that cannot be poured out.
Sonorous, sounding when struck.
Transparent, able to be seen through.
Tenacious, holding fast together.
Volatile, easily passing into air.

9. BUILDINGS.

Residence, dwelling-house.
Architect, one skilled in the art of building.
Corridor, a gallery round a building.
Capital, the highest part of a column.
Hotel, a large inn.
Palace, a royal residence.
Castle, a fortified residence.
Temple, a house for religious worship.
Crescent, houses ranged in a curve.
Hamlet, a small village.
Metropolis, the chief city in a country.

available for two kinds of exercises: 1. Let the teacher ask each pupil to name a body that is *adhesive, acrid, brittle, or elastic*, &c. 2. Let the teacher name bodies such as *glue, leather, sponge, ink, sugar, glass*, and ask each pupil to name one or other of their properties.

Dra'per,
Mer'cer,
Clóth'ier,
Manufac'
 in quant
Accou'tre
Nankeen
Mus'lin, f
Cal'ico, co
Jám'bric,
Cash'mere
Dam'ask,
Worst'ed,
Mer'ino, s
Alpac'a, a
Rib'bon, s
Sat'in, a g
Sarce'net,
Vel'vet, si
 face
Velveteen
Grape, silk
Moroc'co,
Chá'mois,

Mer'chand
Whole'sale
 ties.
Retail, de
Commis'si
 agent for
Dis'count,
 chaser for
Debt'or, on
Cred'itor, o
Bank'rupt,
 debts.
Cus'toms,
 ported or
Excise, du
 at home.
In'terest, r
 money.
Investment
 terest.
Cap'ital, m
 ploys in b
Ar'arice, g
Us'ury, ille

10. CLOTHING.

Dra'per, a cloth dealer.
Mer'cer, a silk dealer.
Clóth'ier, one who sells cloth.
Manu'facturer, one who makes goods in quantities.
Accou'trements, military dress.
Nankeen', a yellow cotton.
Mus'lin, fine cotton.
Cal'ico, cotton cloth.
Sam'bric, fine linen.
Cash'mere, fine woollen cloth.
Dam'ask, figured linen.
Worst'ed, woollen yarn.
Mer'ino, a fine woollen cloth.
Alpac'a, a fine woollen cloth.
Rib'bon, silk in bands.
Sat'in, a glossy silk.
Sarce'net, a fine thin silk.
Vel'vet, silk cloth with pile on surface.
Velveteen', cotton velvet.
Grape, silk gauze.
Moroc'co, a fine leather.
Cha'mois, goat-skin leather.

11. COMMERCE.

Mer'chandise, goods bought or sold.
Whol'e'sale, dealing in large quantities.
Retail', dealing in small quantities.
Commis'sion, allowance made to an agent for buying or selling.
Dis'count, allowance made to a purchaser for cash payment.
Debt'or, one who owes money.
Cred'itor, one to whom money is due.
Bank'rupt, one who cannot pay his debts.
Cus'toms, duties levied on goods exported or imported.
Excise', duties levied on goods made at home.
In'terest, money paid for the use of money.
Invest'ment, money laid out at interest.
Cap'ital, money which a trader employs in business.
Av'arice, greed of gain.
Us'ury, illegal interest.

12. MANUFACTURES.

Fac'tory, where goods are made.
Forge, where metal is hammered.
Found'ry, where metal is cast.
Fur'nace, a great fire for manufacturing purposes.
Mechanic, a skilled workman.
Machin'ist, one who makes machines.
Op'erative, one who works in a factory.
Employ'ë, one who is employed.
Appren'tice, one bound to a master to learn a trade.
Jour'neyman, a hired workman.
Op'verseer, a superintendent.
Tex'tile, woven (fabrics).
Metal'lic, pertaining to metals.
Hard'ware, goods made of iron, steel, &c.
Pot'tery, earthenware.
Smelt'ing, melting the ore to extract the metal.
Anneal'ing, tempering by heat, as glass or iron.
In'dustry, diligence in one's employment.
Punctual'ity, adherence to exact time.
Pow'er-loom, a weaving-frame worked by artificial power, as steam.
Wa'ter-loom, a loom worked by water-power.
Spin'ning-jenny, a machine for spinning a number of threads at one time.
Turn'ing-lathe, a machine for turning or shaping wood, &c.

13. NAVIGATION.

Nau'tical, relating to ships or sailors.
Flotil'la, a fleet of small ships.
Sloop, a ship with one mast.
Schoon'er, a ship with two masts.
Bark, a ship with three masts.
Frig'ate, a war-vessel smaller than ship of the line.
Privateer', a private ship armed for plunder.
Cruis'er, an armed watch-ship.
Star'board, the right side of a ship.
Lar'board, the left side of a ship.
Found'ering, the sinking of a ship.

Embark'ing, going on board a ship.
Bal'ast, weight to steady a ship.
Rig'ging, all the sails and tacklings of a ship.
Cord'age, all the ropes and lines of a ship.

14. THE ARMY.

Mar'tial, relating to war.
Bellig'erent, carrying on war.
Ar'mistice, a truce.
Mil'itary, relating to soldiers.
Inf'antry, foot soldiers.
Cav'alry, horse soldiers.
Bar'racks, where soldiers are lodged.
Mer'cenaries, hired soldiers.
Fur'lough, leave of absence.
Gar'ison, the occupants of a castle.
Campa'ign, the time an army is in the field.
Ar'senal, a military store.
Skir'mish, a partial battle.
Rencoun'ter, a sudden fight.
Sor'tie, a sally.
Tac'tics, the art of planning a battle.
Artil'lery, great guns.
Cal'ibre, the bore or size of a gun.
Ord'nance, cannons, mortars, &c.
Ammuni'tion, powder and shot.
Cor'poral, the lowest non-commissioned officer.
Ser'geant, a non-commissioned officer next above a corporal.
Commis'sion, appointment to a command.
Promo'tion, advance to a higher rank.
En'sign, a standard-bearer.
Lieuten'ant, an officer next below a captain.

15. LANGUAGE.

Lin'guist, one learned in languages.
Di'lect, the language of a province.
Flu'ency, readiness of speech.
Harangu'e, a passionate oration.
Di'ologue, a conversation.
Verbose, wordy.
Ambig'uous, of a doubtful meaning.
Syn'onims, words of similar meaning.
Ant'onims, words of opposite meaning.
Verba'tim, word for word.
Vocab'ulary, a collection of words.

Dic'tionary, a book in which words are explained.
Gloss'ary, a dictionary of obscure words.
Vi'vâ vo'cê, by the living voice, not in writing.
Met'rical, in verse.
Pros'ody, the rules of verse.
Didac'tic, instructive.
Lit'erature, the writings of a nation.
Dram'atist, a writer of dramas.
Es'sayist, a writer of essays.
Crit'ic, a judge in literature, art, &c.
Critique, the written opinion of a critic.

16. GOVERNMENT.

Pol'itics, the science of government.
Constitu'tion, the form of government in a country.
Mon'archy, government by one.
Oli'garchy, government by a few.
Repub'lic, government by the people through representatives.
Democ'racy, government by the people directly.
Aristoc'racy, government by the nobles.
An'archy, absence of government.
Par'liament, a legislative assembly.
Adjourn'ment, suspension of a meeting from one day to another.
Proroga'tion, suspension of parliament from one session to another.
Dissolu'tion, the breaking up of a parliament.
Con'gress, the legislative assembly in the United States.
Sov'ereign, a supreme ruler.
Dyn'asty, successive sovereigns of the same family.
Re'gent, one who governs in place of a sovereign.
Vice'roy, one who governs in name of the sovereign.
Au'tocrat, an absolute sovereign.
Czar, the Emperor of Russia.
Sul'tan, the Emperor of Turkey.
Min'istry, the counsellors of state.
Prem'ier, the first minister of state.
Fran'chise, the right to vote.
Constit'ency, the body of voters in one district.

1. Sil
change,
But v

Dicta
abide
abridge
admire
agree
allure
be
believe
bridge
care
change
charge
chase
choose
close
clothe

2. A co
an accer
beth, rob
(a) Fi
trav'el, t
(b) Fir
(c) In
limit, lin

Dicta
wor
acquit
admit
allot
audit
beg
blot
blunder
cap

WORD LESSONS.

RULES FOR ADDING THE VERBAL SUFFIXES.

1. Silent *e* is dropped before *-ing*: as, *move, mov-ing*; *notice, notic-ing*; *change, chang-ing*.

But when the *e* is sounded, it is retained: as, *agree, agree-ing*.

DICTIONARY EXERCISES: Add *-ing* to each of these words:—

abide	construe	flee	lecture	reduce
abridge	deceive	forsake	love	rescue
admire	decide	free	manage	resolve
agree	decree	gauge	mangle	secure
allure	diffuse	gaze	massacre	see
be	disguise	glare	necessitate	settle
believe	drive	grieve	negotiate	taste
bridge	enforce	hate	nurse	thrive
care	engage	have	oblige	tolerate
change	enlarge	hibernate	obliterate	use
charge	ennoble	incline	observe	value
chase	entice	include	paraphrase	violate
choose	entwine	intermingle	perfume	weave
close	fence	judge	pledge	whistle
clothe	figure	league	prerogue	write

2. A consonant, after a single vowel, at the end of a monosyllable or of an accented syllable, is doubled before *-eth*, *-ed*, and *-ing*: as, *rob, rob-beth, rob-bed, rob-bing*; *commit, commit-teth, commit-ted, commit-ting*.

(a) Final *l* is doubled though the last syllable be unaccented: as, *trav'el, trav'el-ling*.

(b) Final *p* is doubled in *worship* and *kidnap*.

(c) In all other cases, the suffixes are added without change: as, *limit, limit-ing*; *sleep, sleep-ing*; *form, form-ing*; *appeal, appeal-ing*.

DICTIONARY EXERCISES: Add *-eth*, *-ed*, and *-ing* to each of these words:—

acquit	cavil	drain	form	herd
admit	clog	drop	foster	hop
allot	concur	emit	glean	jot
audit	counsel	enter	glut	kidnap
beg	credit	equal	harm	knit
blet	defer	equip	hasten	level
blunder	distil	excel	heat	limit
cap	drag	fit	hem	listen

lug	offer	prefer	repel	strap
mar	omit	proffer	revel	suffer
marshal	open	prop	rub	toil
merit	panel	quail	shun	transfer
mob	parcel	quarrel	sin	travel
model	pardon	quit	slumber	trip
murder	patrol	reap	soil	venom
need	plan	refer	squander	wag
nip	plod	render	stab	water
number	plunder	repeat	stain	worship

3. Final *y*, preceded by a consonant, is changed into *i* before all the verbal suffixes except *-ing*: as, *cry*, *cri-est*, *cries*, *cri-eth*, *cried*; *cry-ing*.

(a) Final *y*, preceded by a vowel, is not changed: as, *play*, *play-est*, *play-s*, *play-eth*, *play-ed*. Exceptions: *paid*, *said*, *said*.

(b) Final *ie* is changed into *y* before *-ing*: as, *die*, *dy-ing*.

DICTIONATION EXERCISES: Add the verbal suffixes to these words:—

annoy	employ	marry	pry	survey
apply	envy	multiply	purify	tarry
beautify	fancy	nullify	purvey	terrify
betray	fry	occupy	qualify	tie
comply	glory	outvie	rely	try
convey	imply	overjoy	reply	untie
cry	journey	pay	say	vary
deny	justify	play	slay	vie
destroy	lay	ply	stay	waylay
die	lie	portray	study	worry
dry	magnify	pray	supply	wry

SPELLING RULE FOR *ei* AND *ie*.

All words in which *ei* is sounded as *e* take the suffix *-tion*, those having *ie* do not: as, *receive*, *reception*; *believe*; *siege*.

Exceptions—*seize*, *weird*.

DICTIONATION EXERCISES:—

achieve	deceit	lief	priest	shriek
believe	deceive	liege	receive	siege
bier	field	niece	relieve	thief
brief	fiend	perceive	reprieve	tier
chief	fierce	piece	retrieve	weird
conceit	frieze	pier	seize	wield
conceive	grief	perce	shield	yield

DICTATION EXERCISES.

THESE lessons are to be prepared by the pupils at home, and written by them in the class to the master's dictation. In preparing the lessons, special attention is to be given to the words printed in *italics*, which may also be used for oral spelling.

1. WHILE *Hugh* was sliding on the lake, he fell and *sprained* his *wrist*. My sister has a blue *veil* made of *gauze*. The old woman got a *skein* of *worsted*, and began to *knit* her *stocking*. The children got *curts* and *whew*, with a little *cream*. A *dunce* does not *deserve* to have a *pony*.

2. Mary has cut the band from her *waist* with a *pair* of *scissors*. The *lawyer* made a very *awkward* mistake. The *geese* plucked some wool from the *fleece* of the sheep. The *pulpit* is *too* near the *ceiling*. The curtains are made of *chintz*, and the *quilt* is filled with *cider down*. The invalid ate a *biscuit* with his *gruel*.

3. *Two* swans and a *cygnet* were *sailing* on the lake. A *hart*, three *roes*, and four *does*, were feeding in the *vale*. On the little *isle* were some *seals* asleep: I *might* have killed a *few*, but I had not the *heart*. The cook *pierced* her arm with a *skewer*, and *bruised* a *sinew*.

4. When the gardener saw the *hare*, he *threw* down his *scythe* and gave chase; but it escaped into the *furze*. A *rogue* has often a smooth *tongue*. The *knight* gave his *niece* a *pair* of gloves, and asked her to repair the *seams*. The *ewes* and the *lambs* were put into *separate* fields.

5. He had a *piece* of *quartz* in his hand; but he let it fall amongst the *cinders*. Margaret got a work-box from her *aunt*, with *scissors*, *lodkin*, *thimble*, and *needles* in it. We have no *cauliflowers* in our garden, but we have *potatoes* and *spinach*. I will give you a *snowdrop* for that *crocus*. My *uncle* arrived on a *Wednesday* evening in *February*.

6. This *peach* is full of *juice*; let us *break* the stone and get the *kernel*. When the fire had burned the *joists*, the roof of the castle fell in. The *orphan* boy enjoyed his *coarse* bread and his *draught* of water. The *miser* spent all his *leisure* in counting his *treasure*.

7. Be careful to shun *vicious* neighbours. That house is said to have been *haunted* ever since the *plague*; but no one has ever seen the *ghost*. A railway *guard* should be an *honest* man, and should never taste *liquor*. The *hostler* is a saucy *knave*; he refused to fasten my *stirrup*. The *heir* in bad *humour* cut his *thumb* with his *knife*.

8. You cannot see *through* wood; it is *opaque*. The keeper had *salmon* to *breakfast*, and *beef-steak* to dinner. He fell from the *bough* of a *beech-tree* and broke his *thigh-bone*. This piece of *chalk* will not *weigh* half an *ounce*. A *psalm* or a *hymn* without *rhyme* is not pleasant to read from. That bunch of *thyme* has a pleasant *scent*.

9. His *guilt* is *undoubted*; and that of his *cousin*, who was in *league* with him, is suspected. They got lime from the *kiln*, and began to *repair* the *aisle* of the *church*. Do you hear the *mice gnawing* the *wainscot*? A *gnat* bit me on the *check*, and caused me *great pain*.

10. The *prisoner* would not *deign* to *kneel* before the *judge*. *Rhubarb* and *celery* grow very *plentifully* in *Surrey*. The *debtor* rose in *great wrath*, and tried to *knock* his *captor* down. The *apostle Paul* wrote many *epistles*. *Wholesome* food makes *healthy* children. The *viscount*, when *cruising* in his *yacht* off the *Isle of Wight*, saw a *wreck* on the *beach*.

11. The *rustic* drove his *plough* through the *lea*. It was *tough* work, after the *drought*; but the horses pulled with all their *might*. Tom *surpasses* his brother in *weight*, but not in *height*. Our master has a *thorough knowledge* of *accounts*. Did you hear the horse *neigh*, and the ass *bray*? Our dog has a *rough* coat and a *bushy* tail.

12. I *thought* the *question* would make you *laugh*. The *baker* must *weigh* the *dough* before he puts it in the *oven*. His *daughter* bought *eight yards* of *cloth* to make new *clothes*. The *calf* fell into the *slough*, and *could* not get out. Good advice *ought* not to be set at *naught*. The *fox* made *straight* for the *highest* part of the *hill*.

13. The *clerk* handed both the *cheque* and the *agreement* to his *master*. He seemed *anxious* to *complete* the *business* at once. The *priest* is *acquainted* with several *foreigners*. The *shepherd* found a *corpse* in the *forest*, *buried* under some *boughs*. The *villain* has no *moral character*, and is a *disgrace* to his *family*. You *owe* your *friend* an *apology*.

14. When I pointed the *muzzle* of my *gun* at him, he very *cunningly* *feigned* death. The *youth* was very *diligent*, and gained the *eighth* prize. The *sheriff* was *presented* to the *Sovereign* at the *palace* in the *beginning* of her *reign*. Most *people* know that *woollen* clothes are warmer than *linen* ones. The *surgeon* was on the point of *yielding* when the *hostess* *interfered*. George is learning *English Grammar*, and "Practise" in *Arithmetic*.

15. The *secretary* pressed the *measure* on the *attention* of *Parliament* in the most *earnest* manner. The *Saracens* laid their *swords* on the *tomb* of the *prophet*. The *monks* commended their *erring* brother to the *mercy* of the *Deity*. The *crowd* was *composed* chiefly of *violent* and *noisy* persons. The *population* of the *counties* is said to be in a *wretched* condition. While Pat was driving his *chestnut* horse, the *reins* broke.

16. My *cousin* is a *martyr* to *toothache*. He *prophesied* that there would be a *thunderstorm* before morning; but his *prophecy* was not *fulfilled*. His *career* has been most *brilliant*, but his *schemes* have not been *successful*. The *manager* has *invented* a new *system* of *telegraph-signals*. He had *scarcely* crossed the line when he was *seized* by the *policeman*. *Margaret* writes the *French language* with *great facility*.

17. A
a serje
weight
eller v
above
doctor
him be
18. V
drown
the ear
diamond
to settle
Leeds i
19. T
way fo
the ver
first riv
Russia
the pop
20. T
In Hol
worms
country
consum
heredit
every o
21. A
but pou
French
capital
the lev
visited
nessed:
22.
Cheese i
continer
fertile a
of great
of carts
the gray
of Turk
At one

17. *Philip* was a *common soldier* for seven years before he was made a *sergeant*. *Example* is better than *precept*; and *good advice* has double weight when *offered* by one who *practises* what he *advises*. The *traveller* visits the *capital* annually. The *drawing-room* is *immediately* above the *kitchen*. Does he live in the *terrace*, or in the *crescent*? The doctor arrived in a *chaise*: he felt the *patient's pulse*, and pronounced him better.

18. When *sailing* in his *canoe* on the *canal*, he was *capsized* and nearly drowned. *Osier* twigs make *excellent* baskets. *Sulphur* is dug out of the earth in *Italy* and in *South America*. The *jeweller* has lost a large *diamond*. The *Indians* are becoming more *civilized*. The *widow* called to *settle* her *account*. *Manchester* is the great *centre* of the *cotton* trade. *Leeds* is the *chief* seat of the *woollen* manufacture.

19. The *railway* system belongs to the *present* century; the first *railway* for *passenger* traffic was opened in 1825. *Newcastle* is situated in the very midst of the largest *coal-field* in *England*. The *Clyde* was the first river in the *world* on which a *steamboat* plied. There is a lake in *Russia* which *yields* 100,000 tons of salt annually. Three-fourths of the *population* of *Prussia* are employed in *agriculture*.

20. The *situation* of *Denmark* is *admirably* adapted for *commerce*. In *Holland* the *stork* is *protected* by law, because it eats the frogs and worms that would *injure* the *dikes*. *Belgium* is the most *densely* peopled country in *Europe*; yet it grows twice as much food as its *population* consumes. In 1871 the *dignity* of *Emperor* of *Germany* was declared *hereditary* in the *Prussian* royal family. The *Austrian* empire *surpasses* every other *European* country in *mineral* riches.

21. *France* is far behind *England* in the *rearing* of *cattle* and *sheep*; but *poultry* is much more *abundant* in *France* than in *England*. The *French* are *esteemed* the best *wine-makers* in the *world*. *Madrid*, the capital of *Spain*, is the *highest* capital in *Europe*, being 2000 feet above the *level* of the sea. In 1755, *Lisbon*, the capital of *Portugal*, was *visited* by the most violent *earthquake* which modern *Europe* has *witnessed*: it *destroyed* a great part of the city, and 60,000 of the *inhabitants*.

22. *Switzerland* is the most *mountainous* country in *Europe*. *Cheese* is the *principal* produce of the *Swiss dairies*. The northern or *continental* part of *Italy* is called the "*Garden of Europe*," its soil is so *fertile* and its inhabitants are so *industrious*. *Venice* is the most *silent* of great cities—*canals* taking the place of *streets*, and *barques* and boats of *carts* and *carriages*. *Greece* is *preëminently* a fruit country, the *olive*, the *grape*, and the *currant*, being the *staples*. *Constantinople*, the capital of *Turkey*, is *considered* to occupy the most *beautiful* site in the *world*. At one point, the *Danube* and the *Rhine* are only *twelve* miles apart.

23. *Ceylon*, the large pear-shaped island south of *Hindustan*, abounds with *precious* stones, more than any other part of the world. So *difficult* is it to supply the *dense* population of *China* with food, that *husbandry* is promoted by every possible means. The islands of *Japan* bristle with *mountains*, some of which are *active volcanoes*. *Africa* is *singularly destitute* of good harbours, and its *inhabitants* carry on no *foreign* commerce. The *inundation* of the *Nile* lasts from *June* to *November*.

24. The grand *characteristic* of *America* is the *enormous* size of its *natural features*. The *St. Lawrence* and the *Canadian* lakes form, during half the year, a great *highway* of commerce. Every kind of *industry* has been *developed* with *wonderful rapidity* in the *United States*; but agriculture is the *employment* of the *majority* of the people. The most *prominent* natural feature in *Brazil* is the river *Amazon*. In *Australia*, *vegetation* goes on the whole year; but scarcely any of the *vegetable products* used for food are *native* to the *soil*.

DIFFICULT WORDS FROM CIVIL SERVICE EXAMINATION PAPERS.

25. Acre, almond, ancient, answer, anxious, asthma, autumn, borough, bosom, busy, centre, chemist, chieftain, christen, circuit, colour, couple, crystal, cipher, daughter, echo, enough.

26. Fatigue, gesture, ghastly, grandeur, guinea, heifer, hostler, issue, lyric, machine, malign, marine, measles, muscle, nephew, neuter, oblique, physic, poignant, precede, proceed, prorogue, quarrel, roguish, saucer, sceptre, slaughter, surgeon, syringe, victuals.

27. Academy, aerial, almanac, ancestor, anxiety, appetite, arable, architect, audible, bayonet, business, catalogue, catechism, circular, citadel, citizen, committee, conqueror, courageous, delicacy, dilemma, diocese, disciple, dissyllable, domestic.

28. Dubiety, dynasty, eccentric, electricity, eloquence, emphasis, envelop, ethereal, etymology, exaggerate, exhibit, explicit, extraordinary, generally, genial, geography, hemisphere, hypocrisy, impossible, indolence, iniquitous, jealousy, lieutenant.

29. Mahogany, maintenance, massacre, medicine, mineral, miracle, myriad, mystery, necessitate, obediently, obstacle, omniscient, orient, oxygen, parallel, parochial, particle, patriarch, physician, political, porcelain, precipice, prevalent, privilege, prodigal, pyramid.

30. Register, residence, retinue, rheumatism, sacrifice, scholastic, scientific, separate, sepulchre, society, susceptible, telescope, terrier, theatre, tournament, tranquillity, traveller, tropical, valiant, vehicle, veteran, vicinity, vinegar, visitor.

1. V
way as
Cove
hers; a

2. U
tionary
"He p
"He p
If sev
shortest
quite ri

3. U
ample,
These
always
say, "
because

This r
4. P
hit him
back w
horse,
"As th
the nei

(B
(G
(B

(G

This r

5. L
points
sentenc
the foll
wards h

After

HOW TO WRITE LETTERS.

1. WRITE as you speak; say exactly what you feel; and in the same way as you would speak if your correspondent were beside you.

Cowper, writing to Lady Hesketh, said that he liked *talking letters*, such as hers; and her rule was to write *what comes uppermost*.

2. Use the simplest words you can find; avoid fine-sounding, dictionary words. For example, "He went home," is much better than "He proceeded to his residence;"; "He read the book," is preferable to "He perused the volume."

If several words expressing the same idea occur to you, prefer, as a rule, the shortest and commonest in the first instance. But if the idea occur again, it is quite right to choose a different word.

3. Use the *right words* to express the ideas in your mind. For example, "England and Scotland were *joined* in 1707," is incorrect. These two countries have always been joined; the land of the one has always been connected with the land of the other. But it is correct to say, "England and Scotland were united (Lat. *unus*, one) in 1707;" because then, for the first time, the two governments were made one.

This rule is one of the sources of *clearness*, which is the best quality of style.

4. Put the words and members in the *right places*. For example, "He hit him with a stick on the back," is ambiguous; "He hit him on the back with a stick," is clear. "The prisoner heard the neighing of his horse, as he lay at night by the side of one of the tents," is ambiguous; "As the prisoner lay at night by the side of one of the tents, he heard the neighing of his horse," is clear. Compare also:—

(Bad) Edward fled without drawing bridle to Dunbar.

(Good) Edward fled to Dunbar without drawing bridle.

(Bad) The Cataract of Niagara is divided by an island on its verge into two parts.

(Good) The Cataract of Niagara is divided into two parts by an island on its verge.

This rule is a second source of *clearness*.

5. Let your sentences be short. In a long sentence a number of points are presented to the mind in combination at one time. In short sentences each point is presented separately. Compare, for example, the following long sentence with the short ones into which it is afterwards broken:—

THE LONG SENTENCE.

After a brief stay with an old mechanic in Glasgow, whc, though he dignified

himself with the name of "optician," never rose beyond mending spectacles, tuning spinets, and making fiddies and fishing-tackle, Watt went at the age of eighteen to London, where he worked so hard and lived so sparingly, in order to relieve his father from the burden of maintaining him, that his health suffered, and he had to recruit it by a return to his native air.

THE SHORT SENTENCES.

Watt's first master was an old mechanic in Glasgow, who dignified himself with the name of "optician." His title to the name was very doubtful; for he never rose above mending spectacles, tuning spinets, and making fiddles and fishing-rods. Clearly there was not much to be learned there. So, at the age of eighteen, Watt went to London. He was determined that his father should no longer have the burden of maintaining him. He therefore worked very hard, and lived very sparingly. In a short time, however, his health began to suffer, and he had to recruit it by a return to his native air.

6. Never use two words, when your meaning may be fully expressed by one. For example, in the sentence, "In winter, skylarks fly about together in large flocks," the word "together" is unnecessary, as its meaning is expressed in "large flocks." In like manner, such an expression as "Extreme end" is objectionable, because both words imply the same idea.

7. Say all you wish to say on one subject before passing to another. The most convenient way of observing this rule is to divide the letter into paragraphs, each of which deals with a separate subject.

8. Attend particularly to the *form* of the letter.

EXAMPLE.

My Dear Fred,

EASTBOURNE, 2nd September 1871.

Many thanks for your letter of the 24th August. I was much interested in your story of the faithful dog. We have no copy of "Wordsworth" here; but my father has shown me a poem by Sir Walter Scott on the same subject, which I like very much. It begins—*

"I climbed the dark brow of the mighty Helvellyn."

We bathe every morning, and often go out for a row in the afternoon. We drove yesterday to Pevensey Castle—a fine old ruin.

Hoping to meet you at the old Hall on the 15th, I am, my dear Fred,
yours truly,

HARRY BUSH.

To Fred Brown.

* See "Royal Readers, No. IV.," page 73.

HYMNS FOR RECITATION.

THE following Hymns are here given in order that they may be committed to memory, and recited with proper emphasis and expression. The circumstance that hymns are written with a special view to being sung, gives them a rhythmical flow and sweetness which adapt them admirably for recitation, especially when, like those here given, they possess intrinsic poetical merit:—

THE NATIVITY.

WHEN Jordan hushed his waters still,
And silence slept on Zion hill;
When Salem's¹ shepherds through the night
Watched o'er their flocks by starry light,—

Hark! from the midnight hills around,
A voice of more than mortal sound,
In distant hallelujahs² stole,
Wild murmuring o'er the raptured soul.

Then swift to every startled eye,
New streams of glory³ gild the sky:
Heaven bursts her azure gates,⁴ to pour
Her spirits⁵ to the midnight hour.

On wheels of light, on wings of flame,
The glorious hosts to Zion came;
High Heaven with songs of triumph rung,
While thus they smote their harps and sung:—

“O Zion! lift thy raptured eye:
The long-expected hour is nigh;
The joys of nature rise again;
The Prince of Salem⁶ comes to reign.

“See Mercy, from her golden urn,
Pours a rich stream to them that mourn;
Behold, she binds, with tender care,
The bleeding bosom of Despair.

“He comes to cheer the trembling heart,
Bids Satan and his host depart;

Again the Day-star⁷ gilds the gloom,
Again the bowers of Eden bloom.⁸

"O Zion! lift thy raptured eye:
The long-expected hour is nigh;
The joys of nature rise again;
The Prince of Salem comes to reign."

THOMAS CAMPBELL.⁹

¹ Sa'lem, Jerusalem. For the reference to the shepherds, see *Luke* ii. 8-20.

² Hallelujahs (*Hal-le-loo-yas*), songs of praise: *lit.* praise to Jah or Jehovah.

³ New streams of glory.—"And the glory of the Lord shone round about them." (*Luke* ii. 9.)

⁴ Azure gates—the dark blue sky.

⁵ Her spirits—the angels. "And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God." (*Luke* ii. 13.)

⁶ The Prince of Salem.—Compare "King of Salem, which is, King of Peace" (*Hebrews* vii. 2), with "His name shall be called..The Prince of Peace." (*Isaiah* ix. 6.)

⁷ The Day-star.—"I Jesus..am the bright and morning star." (*Revelation* xxii. 16.)

⁸ The bowers of Eden bloom.—The injury done by the Fall of man in Eden is repaired

⁹ Thomas Campbell. (See p. 89, Note 6.)

THE SONG OF THE ANGELS.

It came upon the midnight clear,
That glorious song of old,
From angels bending near the Earth
To touch their harps of gold:
"Peace to the Earth, good-will to men
From Heaven's all-gracious King!"
The world in solemn stillness lay
To hear the angels sing.

Still through the cloven skies they come,
With peaceful wings unfurled;
And still their heavenly music floats
O'er all the weary world:
Above its sad and lowly plains
They bend on heavenly wing,
And ever o'er its Babel sounds
The blessed angels sing.

Yet with the woes of sin and strife
The world has suffered long;

Beneath the angel-strain have rolled
 Two thousand years of wrong ;
 And men, at war with men, hear not
 The love-song which they bring ;—
 Oh, hush the noise, ye men of strife,
 And hear the angels sing !

And ye, beneath life's crushing load
 Whose forms are bending low,—
 Who toil along the climbing way
 With painful steps and slow,—
 Look now ! for glad and golden hours
 Come swiftly on the wing :
 Oh ! rest beside the weary road,
 And hear the angels sing !

For lo ! the days are hastening on,
 By prophet-bards foretold,
 When with the ever-circling years
 Comes round the age of gold ;
 When Peace shall over all the Earth
 Her ancient splendours fling,
 And the whole world send back the song
 Which now the angels sing.

REV. E. H. SEARS (1810-1860).

THY WILL BE DONE.

My God and Father, while I stray
 Far from my home, on life's rough way,
 Oh, teach me from my heart to say,
 Thy will be done !

Though dark my path and sad my lot,
 Let me be still and murmur not,
 Or breathe the prayer divinely taught ;
 Thy will be done !

What though in lonely grief I sigh
 For friends beloved, no longer nigh ?
 Submissive still would I reply,
 Thy will be done !

Though Thou hast called me to resign
 What most I prized, it ne'er was mine—
 I have but yielded what was Thine;
 Thy will be done!

Should grief or sickness waste away
 My life in premature decay,
 My Father, still I'll strive to say,
 Thy will be done!

Let but my fainting heart be blest
 With Thy sweet Spirit for its guest,
 My God, to Thee I leave the rest;
 Thy will be done!

Renew my will from day to day;
 Blend it with Thine, and take away
 All that now makes it hard to say,
 Thy will be done!

Then when on earth I breathe no more
 The prayer, oft mixed with tears before,
 I'll sing upon a happier shore,
 Thy will be done!

CHARLOTTE ELLIOTT.

BEHOLD, THE BRIDEGROOM COMETH.

"Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. And five of them were wise, and five were foolish. They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them: but the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps. While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. . . . And the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage." (*Matthew xxv. 1-10.*)

BEHOLD, the Bridegroom cometh in the middle of the night,
 And blest is he whose loins are girt, whose lamp is burning
 bright;
 But woe to that dull servant whom the Master shall surprise,
 With lamp untrimmed, unburning, and with slumber in his
 eyes!

Do tho
 Lest th
 But see
 Cry "

That da
 t
 But lig

Who kn
 " Behol
]

Beware
 And, li
 c
 But wa
 t
 His own

¹ To m
 tion is wa
 the Gree
 forth to n
 bride." T
 scents the

" Afterwa
 he ar
 there:
 man c

L
 T

A
 T

Do thou, my soul, beware, beware, lest thou in sleep sink down ;
Lest thou be given o'er to death, and lose the golden crown ;
But see that thou be sober, with watchful eyes, and thus
Cry " Holy, holy, holy God, have mercy upon us !"

That day, the day of fear, shall come : my soul, slack not thy
toil,

But light thy lamp, and feed it well, and make it bright with
oil ;

Who knowest not how soon may sound the cry at eventide,
" Behold, the Bridegroom comes ! Arise ! go forth to meet the
Bride !"¹

Beware, my soul ; beware, beware, lest thou in slumber lie,
And, like the five, remain without, and knock and vainly
cry ;

But watch, and bear thy lamp undimmed, and Christ shall gird
thee on

His own bright wedding-robe of light,—the glory of the Son.

¹ To meet the Bride.—This variation is warranted by a reading in one of the Greek MSS. of *Matthew*: "Went forth to meet the bridegroom and the bride." The *bride* in that case represents the Church; and the parable is consistent with the Eastern custom of the bridegroom going to the house of the bride to lead her to his own home. This hymn is the "Midnight Hymn" of the Eastern Church, translated from the Greek by G. Moultrie.

TOO LATE.

"Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not. Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh." (*Matthew xxv. 11-13.*)

LATE, late, so late ! and dark the night and chill !

Late, late, so late ! but we can enter still.—

Too late, too late ! ye cannot enter now.

No light had we: for that we do repent ;
And learning this, the Bridegroom will relent.¹—

Too late, too late ! ye cannot enter now.

No light: so late! and dark and chill the night!
O let us in, that we may find the light!—
Too late, too late! ye cannot enter now.

Have we not heard the Bridegroom is so sweet?
O let us in, though late, to kiss His feet!—
No, no; too late! ye cannot enter now.

ALFRED TENNYSON.²

¹ Relent, feel compassion for; pardon. The meaning is, "When the Bridegroom learns that we repent because we had no light, he will surely have pity on us, and recall the order

which keeps the door shut;" but the answer comes,—"*Too late, too late! ye cannot enter now.*"

² Alfred Tennyson. (See p. 21. Note 5.)

THAT DAY OF WRATH!

THAT day of wrath!¹ that dreadful day,
When heaven and earth shall pass away!
What power shall be the sinner's stay?
How shall he meet that dreadful day,—

When, shrivelling like a parch'd scroll,
The flaming heavens together roll;²
And louder yet, and yet more dread,
Swells the high trump that wakes the dead?³

Oh! on that day, that wrathful day,
When man to judgment wakes from clay,
Be thou, O Christ, the sinner's stay,
Though heaven and earth shall pass away!

¹ That day of wrath.—This hymn is an adaptation and abridgment by Sir Walter Scott of the *Dies Ire* (Day of Wrath), a famous Latin medieval hymn on the Day of Judgment. The authorship of the hymn is generally ascribed to an Italian monk of the thirteenth century. Wesley's hymn, "Lo! he comes, with clouds descending," and Newton's "Day of Judgment, day of wonders," are also founded on the *Dies Ire*. It has always been a great favour-

ite with poets, and it has been frequently translated into modern languages.

² Heavens together roll.—"The heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat." (2 Peter iii. 10.)

³ The high trump that wakes the dead.—"We shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible." (1 Corinthians xv. 51, 52.)

T
IN the
a large
five or
Oceans
opening
interior
Channe
to twen
wind ar
where s
'conver
Bore, w
force.

Tidal
rivers, s
but that
all in gr
easterly
count of

"Bet
distant,
banks.
gathered
Tsien-tan
in front
of the er
"On a

PART II.

THE TIDAL BORE OF THE TSIEN-TANG.

In the open 'expanse of the Southern Ocean, as well as over a large portion of the Pacific, the tidal wave¹ rarely exceeds five or six feet in height, and in the Indian and Atlantic Oceans perhaps eight or ten. In bays and gulfs, however, opening broadly to its course, and narrowing towards their interior 'recesses—such as the Bay of Bengal, the Bristol Channel, and the Bay of Fundy in America—it may rise to twenty, thirty, or, under favourable 'circumstances of wind and season, even to fifty or sixty feet in height! And where such seas 'terminate in river-estuaries, the wave, still 'converging, forms a high head or wall of water, termed a *Bore*, which ascends the river with sudden and destructive force.

Tidal bores of considerable 'magnitude occur in many rivers, such as the Severn, Garonne, Amazon, and Hoogly; but that of the Tsién-tang in China appears to excel them all in grandeur, 'especially at spring-tides and during strong easterly gales. Dr. Macgowan gives the following 'graphic account of it in the *Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society*:—

"Between the river and the city walls, which are a mile distant, dense suburbs extend for several miles along the banks. As the hour of flood-tide 'approached, crowds gathered in the streets running at right angles with the Tsién-tang, but at safe distances. My position was a terrace in front of the *Tri-wave* Temple, which 'afforded a good view of the entire scene.

"On a sudden all traffic in the thronged mart was 'sus-

pended; porters cleared the front street of every 'description of 'merchandise, boatmen ceased lading and unlading their vessels, and put out into the middle of the stream, so that a few minutes 'sufficed to give a deserted appearance to the busiest part of one of the busiest cities of Asia. The centre of the river teemed with craft, from small boats to large barges, including the gay 'flower-boats.'

"Loud shouting from the fleet 'announced the appearance of the flood, which seemed like a 'glistening white cable stretched athwart the river at its mouth, as far down as the eye could reach. Its noise, compared by Chinese poets to that of thunder, speedily drowned that of the boatmen; and as it advanced with great rapidity—at the rate, I should judge, of twenty-five miles an hour—it assumed the appearance of an alabaster wall, or rather of a cataract four or five miles across, and about thirty feet high, moving bodily onward! Soon it reached the advanced guard of the immense 'assemblage of vessels awaiting its approach.

"Knowing that the Bore of the Hoogly—which scarcely deserves mention in connection with the one before me—invariably overturned boats which were not skilfully managed, I could not but feel 'apprehensive for the lives of the floating multitude. As the foaming wall of water dashed furiously onward they were silenced, all being 'intently occupied in keeping their prows towards the wave, which threatened to 'submerge everything afloat; but they all 'vaulted, as it were, to the summit with perfect safety.

"The spectacle was of greatest interest when the Bore had passed about half way among the craft. On one side they were quietly reposing on the surface of the 'unruffled stream, while those on the lower portion were pitching and heaving on the flood: others were scaling, with the agility of salmon, the formidable 'cascade.

"This grand and exciting scene was of but a moment's duration,—it passed up the river in an instant; but, from this point, with gradually diminishing force, size, and



'veloc
the Cl
change
slight
soon b

"A
the Bo
soon a
were o
unskill
drench
splashe
a few f



THE TIDAL BORE OF THE TSIEN-TANG.

'velocity, until it ceased to be perceptible, at a distance, say the Chinese accounts, of eighty miles from the city. The change from ebb- to flood-tide was almost 'instantaneous. A slight flood continued after the passage of the wave, but it soon began to ebb.

"A very short period 'elapsed between the passage of the Bore and the 'resumption of traffic. The vessels were soon attached to the shore again, and women and children were occupied in gathering articles which the careless or unskilful had lost in the 'confusion. The streets were drenched with spray, and a considerable volume of water splashed over the banks into the head of the Grand Canal, a few feet distant."

¹ Tidal wave.—Tides are periodical swells in the ocean, produced by the attraction of the sun and the moon. The influence of the moon in producing the tides is seven times as great as that of the sun, owing to its nearness to the Earth. A great protuberance of water, forming a tidal wave, follows the moon round the Earth; and its crest marks flood-tide, or high-water, wherever it happens to be.

This would account for one tide each day; but there are two tides in twenty-four hours,—or rather in twenty-four hours fifty minutes, the length of the lunar day; *i.e.*, the time that elapses between moon-rise and moon-rise at the same place. The two tidal waves are always at opposite sides of the globe, and as it were chase one another round the Earth.

The reason of this is, that while the moon draws the waters from the Earth on the side nearest to it, it also draws the solid Earth away from the waters on the opposite side, and causes a corresponding protuberance there.

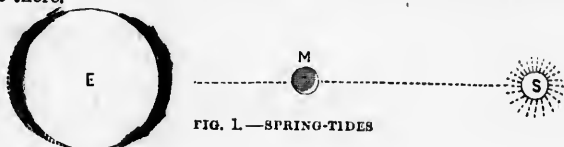


FIG. 1.—SPRING-TIDES

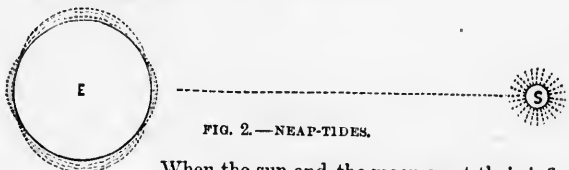


FIG. 2.—NEAP-TIDES.

When the sun and the moon exert their influence in the same direction the tides are highest, and are called *spring-tides*. (See fig. 1.) When they operate at right angles to each other, the force of the sun neutralizes to some extent that of the moon, and the tides are lowest; then called *neap-tides*.

(See fig. 2.)

afford'ed, gave.
announced', in'timated.
apprehen'sive, anx'ious.
approached', drew near.
assem'blage, collec'tion.
cascade', wa'terfall.
cir'cumstances, condi'tions.
confu'sion, tur'moil.
converg'ing, nar'rowing.

descrip'tion, kind.
elapsed', passed.
espē'cially, partic'u-
-lary.
expans'e', space.
glis'tening, shin'ing.
graph'ic, viv'id.
instanta'neous, mo'-
-mentary.
intent'ly, ea'gerly.
mag'nitude, size.

mer'chandise, commod'-
-ities.
recess'es, bays.
resump'tion, reo'pening.
submerge', overflow'.
sufficed', were enough.
suspend'ed, stopped.
ter'minate, fin'ish.
unruf'led, smooth.
vault'ed, sprang.
veloc'ity, speed.

QUESTIONS.—What is the usual height of the tidal wave in the open sea? Where does it rise to a much greater height? What is it termed in narrow

estuari
What o
At wha
spectac

estuaries? Where do tidal bores occur? Which is the most remarkable? What change did its approach make on the streets? What did the boatmen do? At what rate did it advance? What appearance did it assume? When was the spectacle of greatest interest? How long did the scene last?

THE SAXON AND THE GAEL.

THE Chief¹ in silence strode before,
 And reached that 'torrent's sounding shore,
 Which, daughter of three mighty lakes,²
 From Vennachar in silver breaks,
 Sweeps through the plain, and 'ceaseless mines
 On Bochastle³ the 'mouldering lines,
 Where Rome, the empress of the world,
 Of yore her eagle-wings unfurled.
 And here his course the Chieftain staid,
 'Trew down his target and his plaid,
 And to the Lowland warrior said:
 "Bold Saxon! to his promise just,
 Vich-Alpine⁴ has 'discharged his trust.
 This murderous Chief, this 'ruthless man,
 This head of a rebellious clan,
 Hath led thee safe through watch and ward,
 Far past Clan-Alpine's outmost guard.
 Now, man to man, and steel to steel,
 A Chieftain's vengeance thou shalt feel!
 See here, all 'vantageless I stand,
 Armed, like thyself, with single brand:
 For this is Coilantogle ford,⁵
 And thou must keep thee with thy sword."

The Saxon paused:—"I ne'er delayed,
 When foeman bade me draw my blade;
 Nay, more, brave Chief, I vowed thy death;
 Yet sure thy fair and generous faith,
 And my deep debt for life preserved,
 A better meed have well 'deserved:
 Can nought but blood our feud atone?
 Are there no means—?" "No, Stranger, none!
 And hear,—to fire thy flagging zeal,—
 The Saxon cause rests on thy steel;

For thus spoke Fate, by prophet bred
 Between the living and the dead :
 ' Who spills the foremost foeman's life,
 His party 'conquers in the strife.'—
 " Then, by my word," the Saxon said,
 " The riddle is already read.
 Seek yonder brake beneath the cliff,—
 There lies Red Murdoch,⁶ stark and stiff.
 Thus Fate has solved her 'prophecy ;
 Then yield to Fate, and not to me.
 To James, at Stirling, let us go ;
 When, if thou wilt be still his foe,
 Or if the King shall not agree
 To grant thee grace and favour free,
 I 'plight mine honour, oath, and word,
 That, to thy native strengths 'restored,
 With each advantage shalt thou stand
 That aids thee now to guard thy land."—

Dark lightning flashed from Roderick's eye—
 " Soars thy 'presumption, then, so high,
 Because a wretched kern⁷ ye slew,
 Homage to name to Roderick Dhu ?
 He yields not, he, to man nor Fate !
 Thou add'st but fuel to my hate :—
 My clansman's blood 'demands revenge.—
 Not yet prepared ! Nay, then, I change
 My thought, and hold thy valour light
 As that of some vain carpet knight,
 Who ill deserved my 'courteous care,
 And whose best boast is but to wear
 A braid of his fair lady's hair."—
 " I thank thee, Roderick, for the word !
 It nerves my heart, it steels my sword ;
 For I have sworn this braid⁸ to stain
 In the best blood that warms thy vein.
 Now, truce farewell ! and ruth begone !—
 Yet think not that by thee alone,
 Proud Chief ! can courtesy be shown ;
 Though not from copse, or heath, or cairn,
 Start at my whistle⁹ clansmen stern,

Of this small horn one feeble blast
 Would fearful odds against thee cast.
 But fear not—doubt not—which thou wilt—
 We try this ‘quarrel hilt to hilt.’”

Then each at once his ‘falchion drew
 Each on the ground his ‘scabbard threw
 Each looked to sun, and stream, and plain
 As what he ne’er might see again —
 Then foot, and point, and eye opposed
 In ‘dubious strife they darkly closed.—
 Ill fared it then with Roderick Dhu
 That on the field his targe¹⁰ he threw,
 Whose brazen studs and tough bull-hide
 Had death so often dashed aside ;
 For, trained abroad his arms to wield,
 Fitz-James’s blade was sword and shield.
 He practised every pass and ward,
 To thrust, to strike, to ‘feint, to guard ;
 While, less expert, though stronger far,
 The Gael ‘maintained unequal war.
 Three times in closing strife they stood,
 And thrice the Saxon blade drank blood ;
 No ‘stinted draught, no scanty tide—
 The gushing flood the tartans dyed.
 Fierce Roderick felt the fatal drain,
 And showered his blows like wintry rain ;
 And as firm rock, or castle-roof,
 Against the winter shower is proof,
 The foe, ‘invulnerable still,
 Foiled his wild rage by steady skill ;
 Till, at advantage ta’en, his brand
 Forced Roderick’s ‘weapon from his hand,
 And backward borne upon the lea,¹¹
 Brought the proud Chieftain to his knee !—

“ Now yield thee, or by vows oft made
 Thy very heart’s blood dyes my blade !”—

“ Thy threats, thy mercy, I defy !
 Let ‘recreant yield, who fears to die.”—

Like adder darting from his coil,
 Like wolf that dashes through the toil,
 Like mountain-cat who guards her young,
 Full at Fitz-James's throat he sprung;
 Received, but recked not of a wound,
 And locked his arms his foeman round!—
 Now, gallant Saxon, hold thine own!
 No maiden's hand is round thee thrown!
 That 'desperate grasp thy frame might feel
 Through bars of brass and triple steel!—
 They tug, they strain!—down, down they go,
 The Gael above, Fitz-James below!
 The Chieftain's gripe his throat 'compressed,
 His knee was planted on his breast;
 His clotted locks he backward threw,
 Across his brow his hand he drew,
 From blood and mist to clear his sight,
 Then gleamed aloft his dagger bright!—
 But hate and fury ill 'supplied
 The stream of life's 'exhausted tide,
 And all too late the advantage came
 To turn the odds of deadly game;
 For, while the dagger gleamed on high,
 Reeled soul and sense, reeled brain and eye.
 Down came the blow, but in the heath
 The erring blade found bloodless sheath!
 The 'struggling foe may now unclasp
 The fainting Chief's 'relaxing grasp;—
 Unwounded from the dreadful close,
 But breathless all, Fitz-James¹² arose.

SIR WALTER SCOTT (1771-1832).

cease'less, contin'ually.
 compressed', squeezed.
 con'quers, triumphs.
 court'eous, oblig'ing.
 demands', calls for.
 des'perate, vi'olent.
 discharged', fulfilled'.
 du'bious, doubtful.
 exhaust'ed, drained.
 fal'chion, sword.

feint, make a mock at-
 tack.
 invul'nerable, invin-
 cible.
 maintained', support'ed.
 moul'dering, decay'ing.
 plight, pledge.
 presump'tion, arro-gance
 proph'ecy, predic'tion.
 quar'rel, dispute'.
 rec'reant, coward.

relax'ing, loos'en'ing.
 restored', return'ed'.
 ruth'less, pit'iless.
 scab'bard, sheath.
 stint'ed, lim'ited.
 strug'gling, strain'ing.
 suppli'ed', com'pensated.
 tor'rent, river.
 van'tageless, without
 advan'tage.
 weap'on, sword.

¹ TH
 has ple
 James
² Th
 Achray
 a chair
 the stre
³ Bo
 plain,
 from V
 from Lo
 is a sr
 (Hill) o
 on the p
 ments w
⁴ Vic
 ant of
 the Clar
⁵ Coil
 river, at
 Vennack
 Glasgow
⁶ Red
 clansme
 Fitz-Jan
 slain.
⁷ Ker
 an Irish
 and shie
 as a term
 not strike
 SPEARE:
⁸ This

¹ The chief.—Roderick Dhu, who has pledged his word to conduct Fitz-James safely as far as Coilantogle ford.

² Three mighty lakes—Katrine, Achray, and Vennachar; which form a chain of lakes, from the last of which the stream in question flows.

³ Bo'chastle, a haugh, or low-lying plain, between the stream that flows from Vennachar and that which flows from Loch Lubnaig. On this plain there is a small eminence called the *Dun* (Hill) of Bochastle, where, as well as on the plain itself, are some intrincements which have been thought Roman.

⁴ Vich-Al'pine, the son, or descendant of Alpine; therefore the head of the Clan Alpine.

⁵ Coilantó'gle ford, a ford on the river, at the eastern extremity of Loch Vennachar, where the sluices of the Glasgow water-works now stand.

⁶ Red Murdoch, one of the chief's clansmen, who had attempted to decoy Fitz-James, but whom the latter had slain.

⁷ Kern, a Highland soldier; properly an Irish foot soldier armed with a sword and shield. The word is generally used as a term of contempt. Thus: "I cannot strike at wretched *kernes*."—SHAKESPEARE: *Macbeth*.

⁸ This braid.—Red Murdoch had

killed Blanche of Devan, a half-crazed young widow, with an arrow intended for Fitz-James. The knight had thereupon taken a lock of her hair, and that of her bridegroom which she wore, and, dipping them in blood, had sworn to wear no other favour till he had stained them anew in the blood of Roderick Dhu, who had slain Blanche's husband.

⁹ Start at my whistle.—In passing Lanrick Mead, by the side of Loch Vennachar, Roderick had whistled, and the glen had been in a moment garrisoned by armed men, who had concealed themselves under the bracken and bushes.

¹⁰ Targe, Old Eng. and Fr. form of *target*, a shield or buckler, made of bull-hide and covered with brass bosses. [Commonly connected with Lat. *tergus*, a hide.]

¹¹ The lea—turf, field, pasture-land. [Old Eng. *leag*, unploughed land.]

¹² Fitz-James was, according to the story of *The Lady of the Lake*, in which this passage occurs, King James V. of Scotland, who was fond of roaming the country in disguise, partly to see the condition of his people, partly to gratify his love of adventure. (See *The Scott Reader*, Nelsons' Royal School Series, p. 163, Note 40.)

THE WELL OF ST. KEYNE.

A WELL there is in the west country,
And a 'clearer one never was seen;
There is not a wife in the west country
But has heard¹ of the Well of St. Keyne.

An oak and an elm tree stand beside,
And behind does an ash tree grow;
And a willow from the bank above
Droops to the water below.

A traveller came to the Well of St. Keyne,
'Joyfully he drew nigh;
For from cock-crow he had been travelling,
And there was not a cloud in the sky.

He drank of the water so cool and clear,
 For hot and thirsty was he ;
 And he sat down upon the bank,
 Under the willow tree.

There came a man from the 'neighbouring town,
 At the Well to fill his pail ;
 By the well-side he rested it,
 And he bade the stranger hail.

"Now, art thou a 'bachelor, stranger?" quoth he,
 "For an² if thou hast a wife,
 The happiest draught thou hast drunk this day
 That ever thou didst in thy life.

"Or has thy good woman, if one thou hast,
 Ever here in Cornwall been?
 For an if she have I'll 'venture my life
 She has drunk of the Well of St. Keyne."

"I have left a good woman who never was here,"
 The stranger he³ made 'reply;

"But that my 'draught should be better for that,
 I pray you answer me why."

"St. Keyne," quoth the Cornishman, "many a time
 Drank of this crystal Well ;
 And before the angel 'summoned her
 She laid on the water a spell ;⁴—

"If the husband, of this 'gifted Well
 Shall drink before his wife,
 A happy man henceforth is he,
 For he shall be 'master for life.

"But if the wife should drink of it first,
~~Woe be to~~ the husband then!"—
 The stranger stooped to the Well of St. Keyne,
 And drank of the water again.

"You drank of the Well, I 'warrant, betimes,"
 He to the Cornishman said ;
 But the Cornishman smiled as the stranger spake,
 And 'sheepishly shook his head.

bach'e
 man.
 clear e
 draught
 gift'ed.

¹ But
 heard.

² An
 the sam
 in the
 that evi
 &c. (Ma
 an is som
 very free
³ The

WE let

'toilsor

hills co

by deep

About

line of r

flowed t

about h

flowers,

the hills

The n

of trees,

by the h

and deli

quietly g

right; w

several h

nating,³

"I hastened as soon as the wedding was done,
And left my wife in the porch;
But in truth she had been wiser than I,
For she took a bottle to church!"

ROBERT SOUTHEY.

bach'lor, un'married
man.
clear'er, pur'er.
draught, drink'ing.
gift'ed, potent.

hās'tened, hurried.
joy'fully, glad'y.
mar'ter, sup'rior.
neigh'bouring, adjoin'
ing.

reply', an'swer.
sheep'ishly, bash'fully.
sum'moned, called.
ven'ture, stake.
war'rant, engage'.

¹ But has heard.—Who has not heard.

² An—the same word as *and*, with the same meaning as *if*. *And if* occurs in the New Testament: "But *and if* that evil servant shall say in his heart," &c. (*Matthew*, xxiv. 48.) In Old English *an* is sometimes used by itself for *if*, and very frequently along with *if*, as here.

³ The stranger he.—*He* is unneces-

sary after *stranger*; but the use of the pronoun after the noun was common in old ballads, in imitation of which the poem is written.

⁴ Spell—*lit.* speech, discourse, as in "gospel" (good news); a form of words possessing and conferring magical power.

⁵ Robert Southey (1774–1843), a Lake poet, and author of *Life of Nelson*.

CAPTURING THE WILD HORSE.

WE left the buffalo camp about eight o'clock, and had a toilsome and harassing march of two hours, over ridges of hills covered with a ragged forest of scrub oaks¹ and broken by deep gullies.

About ten o'clock in the morning we came to where this line of rugged hills swept down into a valley, through which flowed the north fork of Red River. A beautiful meadow, about half a mile wide, enamelled with yellow autumnal flowers, stretched for two or three miles along the foot of the hills.

The meadow was finely diversified by groves and clumps of trees, so happily disposed that they seemed as if set out by the hand of Art. As we cast our eyes over this fresh and delightful valley, we beheld a troop of wild horses,² quietly grazing on a green lawn about a mile distant, to our right; while to our left, at nearly the same distance, were several buffaloes, some feeding, others reposing and ruminating,³ among the high, rich herbage, under the shade of a

clump of cotton-wood trees. The whole had the appearance of a broad beautiful tract of pasture-land on the highly ornamental estate of some gentleman farmer, with his cattle grazing about the lawns and meadows.

A council of war was now held, and it was determined to profit by the present favourable opportunity, and try our hand at the grand hunting manoeuvre, which is called



“ringing the wild horse.” This requires a large party of horsemen, well mounted. They extend themselves in every direction, at certain distances apart, and gradually form a ring of two or three miles in circumference, so as to surround the game. This must be done with extreme care, for the wild horse is the most readily alarmed inhabitant of the prairie, and can scent a hunter at a great distance, if to windward.

The
horses
they ap
present
way th
kept g
being
up to th
prime
strength
general,
Prep
The pac
to trees,
away.
mand of
within th
to station
edge of t
until the
men were
along the
station th
A third
line strete
connect th
Antoine, t
make a ci
part of the
forward in
the two wi
plete circle.
The fl
out of sight
stretching t
when the wi

The ring being formed, two or three ride toward the horses, which start off in the opposite direction. Whenever they approach the bounds of the ring, however, a huntsman presents himself, and turns them from their course. In this way they are checked and driven back at every point, and kept galloping round and round this magic circle, until, being completely tired down, it is easy for hunters to ride up to them and throw the lariat⁴ over their heads. The prime horses, however, of the most speed, courage, and strength, are apt to break through and escape; so that, in general, it is the second-rate horses that are taken.

Preparations were now made for a hunt of this kind. The pack horses were taken into the woods, and firmly tied to trees, lest, in a rush of wild horses, they should break away. Twenty-five men were then sent, under the command of a lieutenant, to steal along the edge of the valley, within the strip of wood that skirted the hills. They were to station themselves about fifty yards apart, within the edge of the woods, and not to advance or show themselves until the horses dashed in that direction. Twenty-five men were also sent across the valley, to steal in like manner along the river bank that bordered the opposite side, and to station themselves among the trees.

A third party, of about the same number, was to form a line stretching across the lower part of the valley, so as to connect the two wings. Beatte and our other half-breed, Antoine, together with the ever-officious Tonish, were to make a circuit through the woods, so as to get to the upper part of the valley, in the rear of the horses, and drive them forward into the kind of sack that we had formed, while the two wings should join behind them, and make a complete circle.

The flanking parties were quietly extending themselves out of sight on each side of the valley, and the residue were stretching themselves like the links of a chain across it, when the wild horses gave signs that they scented an enemy,

—snuffing the air, snorting, and looking about. At length they pranced off slowly toward the river, and disappeared behind a green bank.

Here, had the regulations of the chase been observed, they would have been quietly checked and turned back by the advance of a hunter from among the trees; 'unluckily, however, we had our wild-fire, Jack-o'-lantern,⁵ little Frenchman to deal with. Instead of keeping quietly up the right side of the valley, to get above the horses, the moment he saw them move toward the river he broke out of the covert of woods, and dashed 'furiously across the plain in 'pursuit of them. This put an end to all system. The half-breeds and half a score of rangers joined in the chase.

Away they all went over the green bank. In a moment or two the wild horses reappeared, and came thundering down the valley, with Frenchman, half-breeds, and rangers galloping and 'bellowing behind them. It was in vain that the line drawn across the valley attempted to check and turn back the fugitives—they were too hotly pressed by their pursuers; in their panic they dashed through the line, and 'clattered down the plain.

The whole troop joined in the headlong chase; some of the rangers without hats or caps, their hair flying about their ears; and others with handkerchiefs tied round their heads. The 'buffaloes, which had been calmly ruminating among the herbage, heaved up their huge forms, gazed for a moment at the tempest that came scouring down the meadow, then turned and took to heavy rolling flight. They were soon overtaken. The 'promiscuous masses were pressed together by the contracting sides of the valley, and away they went, pell mell, hurry skurry, wild buffalo, wild horse, wild huntsman, with clang and clatter, and whoop and halloo, that made the forests ring.

At length the buffaloes turned into a green brake on the river bank, while the horses dashed up a narrow 'defile of the hills, with their pursuers close at their heels. Beatto

passed
nee⁶ he
back.

Amc
'scramb
sprang
muzzle.
'assistan
ing, and
over her

It was
and plun
The two
lariats, w
on each s
ever she s
other. I

As to T
'precipitar
having 'm
about sever
up with its
was beside
see him wi
struggle to
neck, wrest
'antics as a

Nothing
how soon th
freedom of
In the cours
with the lea

an'tics, ca'pers.
assist'ance, help
bel'lowing, roar'
buf'faloes, wild c

passed several of them, having fixed his eye upon a fine Pawnee^o horse, that had his ears slit and saddle-marks upon his back. He pressed him gallantly, but lost him in the woods.

Among the wild horses was a fine black mare, which, in scrambling up the defile, tripped and fell. A young ranger sprang from his horse and seized her by the mane and muzzle. Another ranger dismounted, and came to his assistance. The mare struggled fiercely, kicking and biting, and striking with her fore feet; but a noose was slipped over her head, and her struggles were in vain.

It was some time, however, before she gave over rearing and plunging and lashing out with her feet on every side. The two rangers then led her along the valley by two strong lariats, which enabled them to keep at a sufficient distance on each side to be out of the reach of her hoofs; and whenever she struck out in one direction, she was jerked in the other. In this way her spirit was gradually subdued.

As to Tonish, who had marred the whole scheme by his precipitancy, he had been more successful than he deserved, having managed to catch a beautiful cream-coloured colt, about seven months old, that had not had strength to keep up with its companions. The mercurial⁷ little Frenchman was beside himself with exultation. It was amusing to see him with his prize. The colt would rear and kick, and struggle to get free, when Tonish would take it round the neck, wrestle with it, jump on its back, and cut as many antics as a monkey with a kitten.

Nothing surprised me more, however, than to witness how soon these poor animals, thus taken from the unbounded freedom of the prairie, yielded to the dominion of man. In the course of two or three days the mare and colt went with the lead horses, and became quite docile.

WASHINGTON IRVING.

an'tics, ca'pers.
assist'ance, help.
bel'lowing, roar'ing.
buf'faloes, wild oxen.

cir'cuit, round'-about
route.
circum'ference, meas-
urement around.

clat'tered, rattled
compan'ions, fel'lows.
complete'ly, ut'terly.
defile', ravine'.

direction, way; line.
 disposed', arranged'.
 diversified, varied.
 do'cile, tractable.
 dominion, rule.
 enamelled, inlaid'.
 exultation, delight'.
 flank'ing, side.
 furiously, violently.
 gallantly, bravely.

grad'ually, by degrees'.
 inhabitant, denizen.
 lieutenant, officer be-
 low captain.
 man'aged, contrived'.
 manoeuv're, tactics.
 opportunity, occasion.
 ornamental', embel-
 lished.
 precipitancy, rash'ness.

preparations, arrange'-
 prime, first'-rate. [ments.
 promiscuous, mixed.
 pursuit', chase.
 repos'ing, rest'ing.
 res'idue, remainder.
 scent'ed, smelled.
 scam'bling, strugg'ling.
 toil'some, laborious. (ly.
 unluck'ily, unfortunate.

¹ Scrub oaks, low brush-wood of oak.

² Wild horses are not indigenous to America, but were introduced—those in North America by the English settlers, those in South America by the Spaniards. They frequent the open plains, not the forests, of both continents, in droves sometimes numbering thousands of horses alone, sometimes mixed with other animals.

³ Ruminating, chewing the cud

⁴ Lariat, the lasso, a long cord or thong of leather with a noose attached.

⁵ Jack-o'-lantern, lively, flighty; one of the popular names of the *ignifatuus*, or marsh wild-fire; supposed to be caused by the decomposition of animal and vegetable matter, producing an inflammable gas; called also *Will-o'-the-Wisp*.

⁶ Paw'nee, a well-known tribe of North American Indians.

⁷ Merc'urial, sprightly; lively; like the god Mercury, or like quicksilver.

⁸ Washington Irving, a popular American author (1783-1859).

QUESTIONS.—How is the manoeuvre of "ringing the wild horse" performed? Why did the plan fail on this occasion? By what means the wild horses joined in their flight? Where did the buffaloes turn aside? Where did the horses go? How was the black mare captured? How was she killed along the valley? What had the Frenchman captured? What was the most surprising thing in the case of the captives?

ELEGY WRITTEN IN A COUNTRY CHURCHYARD.

The curfew¹ tolls the knell of parting day,
 The lowing herd winds slowly o'er the lea,²
 The ploughman homeward plods his weary way,
 And leaves the world to darkness and to me.

Now fades the 'glimmering' landscape on the sight,
 And all the air a solemn stillness holds,
 Save where the beetle wheels his 'drowsy' flight,
 And drowsy tinklings lull the distant choir —

Save that from yonder ivy-mantled tower
 The 'moping owl' does to the moon complain
 Of such as, wandering near her secret bower,
 'Molest her ancient solitary reign.

Beneath those rugged elms, that yew tree's shade,
 Where heaves the turf in many a mouldering heap,
 Each in his narrow cell for ever laid,
 The rude forefathers of the hamlet³ sleep.

The breezy call of incense-breathing morn,
 The swallow twittering from the straw-built shed,
 The cock's shrill clarion, or the echoing horn,
 No more shall rouse them from their lowly bed.

For them no more the blazing hearth shall burn,
 Or busy housewife ply her evening care :
 No children run to lisp their sire's return,
 Or climb his knees the envied kiss to share.

Oft did the harvest to their sickle yield,
 Their furrow⁴ oft the stubborn glebe⁵ has broke ;
 How jocund⁶ did they drive their team a-field !
 How bowed the woods beneath their sturdy stroke !

Let not Ambition mock their useful toil,
 Their homely joys, and destiny obscure ;
 Nor Grandeur hear with a disdainful smile
 The short and simple annals of the poor.

The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
 And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
 Await alike the inevitable hour :—
 The paths of glory lead but to the grave.

Nor you, ye proud, impute to these the fault,
 If Memory o'er their tomb no trophies raise,
 Where through the long-drawn aisle and fretted vault
 The pealing anthem⁷ swells the note of praise.

Can storied urn⁸ or animated⁹ bust
 Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath ?
 Can Honour's voice provoke the silent dust,
 Or Flattery soothe the dull cold ear of Death ?

Perhaps in this neglected spot is laid
 Some heart once pregnant with celestial fire ;
 Hands that the rod of empire might have swayed,
 Or waked to ecstasy the living lyre.

But Knowledge to their eyes her ample page,
 Rich with the spoils of time, did ne'er unroll;
 Chill Penury¹⁰ 'repressed their noble rage,
 And froze the genial current of the soul.

Full many a gem, of purest ray serene,
 The dark 'unfathomed caves of ocean bear:
 Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,
 And waste its sweetness on the desert air.

Some village Hampden,¹¹ that with dauntless breast
 The little tyrant of his fields withstood;
 Some mute 'inglorious Milton,¹² here may rest,—
 Some Cromwell,¹³ guiltless of his country's blood.

The 'applause of listening senates to command,
 The threats of pain and ruin to despise,
 To scatter plenty o'er a smiling land,
 And read their history in a nation's eyes,

Their lot forbade:¹⁴ nor 'circumscribed alone
 Their growing virtues, but their crimes confined;—
 Forbade to wade through slaughter to a throne,
 And shut the gates of Mercy on mankind;

The struggling pangs of 'conscious truth to hide,
 To quench the blushes of ingenuous¹⁵ shame,
 Or heap the shrine of Luxury and Pride
 With incense kindled at the Muse's flame.

Far from the madding crowd's 'ignoble strife,
 Their sober wishes never learned to stray;
 Along the cool 'sequestered vale of life
 They kept the noiseless tenor of their way.

Yet even their bones from insult to protect,
 Some frail memorial still erected nigh,
 With uncouth¹⁶ rhymes and shapeless sculpture decked,
 'Implores the passing tribute of a sigh.

Their name, their years, spelt by the lettered Muse,
 The place of fame and elegy¹⁷ supply;
 And many a holy text around she strews,
 That teach the rustic moralist to die.

For who to dumb Forgetfulness a prey,
 This pleasing, anxious being, e'er 'resigned ;
 Left the warm 'precincts of the cheerful day,
 Nor cast one longing, lingering look behind !

On some fond breast the parting soul relies,
 Some pious drops the closing eye requires ;
 Even from the tomb the voice of Nature cries,—
 Even in our ashes live their 'wonted fires.

For thee, who, mindful of the unhonoured dead,
 Dost in these lines their artless tale 'relate ;
 If chance, by lonely 'Contemplation led,
 Some kindred spirit shall inquire thy fate,

Haply some hoary-headed swain may say,
 " Oft have we seen him at the peep of dawn
 Brushing with hasty steps the dews away,
 To meet the sun upon the upland lawn.

" There, at the foot of yonder nodding beech,
 That wreathes its old 'fantastic roots so high,
 His 'listl's length at noontide would he stretch,
 And pore¹⁸ upon the brook that babbles by.

" Hard by yon wood, now smiling as in scorn,
 Muttering his 'wayward fancies he would rove ;
 Now drooping, woful, wan,¹⁹ like one forlorn,
 Or crazed with care, or crossed in hopeless love.

" One morn I missed him on the 'accustomed hill,
 Along the heath and near his 'favourite tree ;
 Another came, nor yet beside the rill,
 Nor up the lawn, nor at the wood was he ;

" The next, with 'dirges due, in sad array,
 Slow through the church-way path we saw him borne :
 'Approach and read (for thou canst read) the lay
 Graved on the stone beneath yon aged thorn."

THE EPITAPH.²⁰

*Here rests his head upon the lap of Earth,
 A youth to Fortune and to Fame unknown ;
 Fair Science 'frowned not on his humble birth,
 And Melancholy marked him for her own.*

Large was his 'bounty, and his soul sincere ;
 Heaven did a 'recompense as largely send ;
 He gave to Misery all he had, a tear ;
 He gained from Heaven ('twas all he wished), a friend.

No further seek his merits to disclose,
 Or draw his 'frailties from their dread abode,
 (There they alike in trembling hope repose),—
 The bosom of his Father and his God.

THOMAS GRAY.²¹

accus'tomed, u'sual.
 ambi'tion, desire of
 honour.
 applaus'e, cheers.
 approach, draw near.
 boun'ty, generos'ity.
 circumscribed', con-
 clar'ion, note. [fined'.
 consc'ious, known.
 contempla'tion, reflec'-
 des'tiny, fate. [tion.
 dir'ges, fu'neral chants.
 disdain'ful, contemp'-
 tuous.
 drōn'ing, hum'ming.

ec'stasy, joy.
 en'vied, cov'eted.
 fantas'tic, irreg'ular.
 fa'ourite, best loved.
 forefa'thers, an'cestors.
 frail'ties, weak'nesses.
 fret'ted, ornament'ed.
 frowned, scowled.
 glim'mering, fad'ing.
 igno'ble, mean.
 implores', begs.
 impute', ascribe'.
 inev'itable, unavoid'able
 inglo'rious, unhon'oured.
 land'scape, scene.

list'less, heed'less.
 molest', disturb'.
 mōp'ing, dream'y.
 pre'cincts, regions.
 preg'nant, filled.
 provoke', har'ass.
 rec'ompense, reward'.
 relate', recount'.
 repressed', restrained'.
 resigned', gave up.
 seques'tered, retired'.
 stub'born, hard. [ed.
 unfaith'omed, unsound'-
 way'ward, perverse.
 wont'ed, accus'tomed.

¹ Cur'few, the evening bell; *lit.* cover-fire, a bell having been rung in Norman England at eight o'clock in the evening as a signal for putting out all fires and lights. [Fr. *couvre-feu*, cover fire.]

² Lea, meadow; pasture land.

³ Ham'let, a small village. [Old Eng. *ham*, a dwelling; *let*, little.]

⁴ Fur'row, ploughshare; properly the trench made by the plough.

⁵ Glebe, soil; land for cultivating.

⁶ Joc'und, mirthful; cheerful. [Lat. *jocondus*; from *jocus*, a joke.]

⁷ An'them, sacred song; *lit.* sung by alternate voices. [Gr. *anti*, in return; *phonē*, voice.]

⁸ Sto'ried urn.—When the ancients burned the ashes of the dead, they placed the bones in urns; hence an *urn* is the emblem of death, and is here put for the tomb. *Storied* means bearing a story or inscription, setting forth the virtues of the deceased.

⁹ An'imated, life-like.

¹⁰ Pen'ury, want. Note that Ambition, Grandeur, Memory, Honour,

Flattery, Knowledge, Penury, &c., are all spoken of in the poem as if they were living beings; that is, they are personified.

¹¹ Hamp'den.—John Hampden, the famous patriot, who was tried in 1636 for resisting the payment of ship-money. The verdict of the judges against him made him a popular hero. He died on Chalgrove Field, in the Civil War, in 1643. Born in 1594.

¹² Mil'ton.—John Milton, the author of *Paradise Lost*, the finest epic poem in the English language. He was Latin secretary to Oliver Cromwell during the Commonwealth. He died in 1674. Born in 1608.

¹³ Crom'well.—Oliver Cromwell, Lord Protector of England, 1653–1658. He was the chief leader of the Parliamentary party against Charles I.; hence the poet blames him, and not the king, for shedding "his country's blood."

¹⁴ Their lot 'rbade.—Notice that the things which *their lot forbade* are mentioned in the preceding stanza: "To command the applause of senates," &c.

18 I
 19 U
 unfam
 17 E
 lit. a c
 18 P
 19 W
 20 E
 tomb.

THE
 marke
 The pa
 than t
 plan v
 fortune
 plain, c
 of fight
 tary str
 men al
 the wis
 hopeful
 cent str
 strife st
 prospect
 sight of
 and soli
 beauty.
 Quebe
 left bank
 ward fro
 of the h
 Plains of
 winding v
 For miles

- ¹⁶ Ingen'uous, frank, honourable.
¹⁶ Un'couth, rough; *lit.* unknown, unfamiliar; hence strange, odd.
¹⁷ El'egy, a funeral song or oration; *lit.* a cry of woe.
¹⁸ Pore, gaze earnestly.
¹⁹ War', pale.
²⁰ Epitaph, inscription; *lit.* on a tomb. (Gr. *epi*, on; *taphos*, a tomb.)

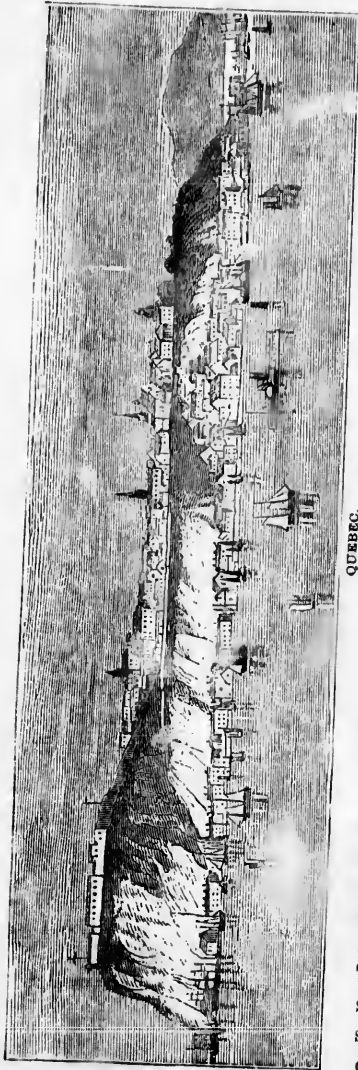
²¹ Thomas Gray, poet; born at London in 1716; educated at Eton and Cambridge; spent most of his life at the latter, where he became Professor of History in 1763; author of the above *Elegy* (by which he is best known), *The Progress of Poesy*, and *The Bard*; one of the most classic and highly finished of English poets; died in 1771.

THE SIEGE OF QUEBEC.

(A. D. 1759.)

THE closing scene of French 'dominion in Canada¹ was marked by circumstances of deep and 'peculiar interest. The pages of 'romance can furnish no more striking episode² than the Battle of Quebec. The skill and daring of the plan which brought on the combat, and the success and fortune of its execution, are 'unparalleled. A broad, open plain, offering no advantages to either party, was the field of fight. The contending armies were nearly equal in military strength, if not in numbers. The chiefs of both were men already of honourable fame. France trusted firmly in the wise and 'chivalrous Montcalm:³ England trusted hopefully in the young and heroic Wolfe.⁴ The magnificent stronghold which was staked upon the issue of the strife stood close at hand. For miles and miles around, the prospect extended over as fair a land as ever rejoiced the sight of man—mountain and valley, forest and waters, city and solitude, grouped together in forms of almost ideal beauty.

Quebec stands on the slope of a lofty 'eminence on the left bank of the St. Lawrence. A table-land extends westward from the citadel for about nine miles. The portion of the heights nearest the town on the west is called the Plains of Abraham. Wolfe had discovered a narrow path winding up the side of the steep 'precipice from the river. For miles on either side there was no other possible access



QUEBEC.

to the heights. Up this narrow path Wolfe decided to lead secretly his whole army, and make the plains his battle-ground!

The 'extraordinary daring of the enterprise was its safety. The wise and cautious Montcalm had guarded against all the probable chances of war; but he was not prepared against an attempt for which the pages of romance can scarcely furnish a parallel.

Great preparations were made throughout the fleet and the army for the 'decisive movement; but the plans were still kept secret. A wise caution was observed in this respect; for the treachery of a single deserter might have imperilled the success of the expedition had its exact object been known. At nine o'clock at night, on the 13th of September, 1759, the first division of the army, 1600 strong, silently removed into flat-bottomed boats. The soldiers were in high spirits: Wolfe led in person. About an hour before day-light, the flotilla⁵ dropt

dov
ligh
S
Wo
the
wat
wor
mid
peat
"E
the
rath
B
the
upon
hur
(now
lead
H
hund
Thes
were
a wo
face.
fro, s
W
dashe
rocks
shone
won,
silenc
captai
his mu
In a
at han
out, fir

down with the ebb-tide. "Weather favourable; a star-light night."

Silently and swiftly, 'unchallenged by the French sentries, Wolfe's flotilla dropped down the stream in the shade of the overhanging cliffs. The rowers scarcely stirred the waters with their oars; the soldiers sat motionless. Not a word was spoken, save by the young general. He, as a midshipman on board of his boat afterwards related, repeated, in a low voice, to the officers by his side, Gray's "Elegy in a Country Churchyard;"⁶ and as he concluded the beautiful verses, he said, "Now, gentlemen, I would rather be the author of that poem than take Quebec!"

But while Wolfe thus in the poet's words gave vent to the intensity of his feelings, his eye was constantly bent upon the dark outline of the heights under which he was hurrying. He recognised at length the appointed spot (now called Wolfe's Cove), and leaped ashore. Some of the leading boats, conveying the light company of the 78th Highlanders, had, in the meantime, been carried about two hundred yards lower down by the strength of the tide. These Highlanders, under Captain Donald MacDonald, were the first to land. Immediately over their heads hung a woody precipice, without path or track upon its rocky face. On the summit, a French sentinel marched to and fro, still 'unconscious of their presence.

Without a moment's 'hesitation, MacDonald and his men dashed at the height. They scrambled up, holding on by rocks and branches of trees, guided only by the stars that shone over the top of the cliff. Half the ascent was already won, when, for the first time, "*Qui vive?*"⁷ broke the silence of the night. "*La France,*" answered the Highland captain, with ready self-possession, and the sentry shouldered his musket and pursued his round.

In a few minutes, however, the rustling of the trees close at hand alarmed the French guard. They hastily turned out, fired one 'irregular volley down the precipice, and fled

in panic. The captain, M. de Vergor, alone, though wounded, stood his ground. When summoned to surrender, he fired at one of the leading assailants, but was instantly overpowered. In the meantime, nearly five hundred men landed and made their way up the height. Those who had first reached the summit then took possession of the intrenched post at the top of the path which Wolfe had selected for the ascent of his army.

Wolfe, Monckton, and Murray landed with the first division. As fast as each boat was cleared, it put back for reinforcements to the ships, which had now also floated down with the tide to a point nearly opposite that of disembarkation. The battalions formed on the narrow beach at the foot of the winding path; and as soon as completed, each ascended the cliff, when they again formed upon the plains above.

The boats plied busily; company after company was quickly landed; and as soon as the men touched the shore, they swarmed up the steep ascent with ready alacrity. When morning broke, the whole disposable force of Wolfe's army stood in firm array upon the table-land above the cove. Only one gun, however, could be carried up the hill; and even that was not got into position without incredible difficulty.

Montcalm was already worsted as a general: it was still, however, left him to fight as a soldier. His order of battle was steadily and promptly made. He commanded the centre column in person. His total force engaged was 7520, besides Indians. Wolfe showed only a force of 4828 of all ranks; but every man was a trained soldier.

The French attacked. After a spirited advance made by a swarm of skirmishers, their main body, in long unbroken lines, was seen approaching Wolfe's position. Soon a murderous and incessant fire began. The British troops fell fast. Wolfe, at the head of the 28th, was struck in the wrist, but was not disabled. Wrapping a handkerchief round

the
ing
En
the
arm
the
com
V
fort
long
a si
the
non
had
M
min
battl
man,
the l
them
doub
his c
Me
oppor
order
move
payin
but so
strain
rushin
living
Wo
his su
a ball
on one
served

the wound, he hastened from one rank to another, exhorting the men to be steady and to reserve their fire. No English soldier pulled a trigger: with matchless endurance they sustained the trial. Not a company wavered: their arms shouldered as if on parade, and motionless, save when they closed up the ghastly gaps, they waited the word of command.

When the head of the French attack had reached within forty yards, Wolfe gave the order to "fire." At once the long row of muskets was levelled, and a volley, distinct as a single shot, flashed from the British line. For a moment the advancing columns still pressed on, shivering like pennons in the fatal storm; but a few paces told how terrible had been the force of the long-suspended blow.

Montcalm commanded the attack in person. Not fifteen minutes had elapsed since he had first moved on his line of battle, and already all was lost! But the gallant Frenchman, though ruined, was not dismayed. He rode through the broken ranks, cheered them with his voice, encouraged them by his dauntless bearing, and, aided by a small redoubt, even succeeded in once again presenting a front to his enemy.

Meanwhile Wolfe's troops had reloaded. He seized the opportunity of the hesitation in the hostile ranks, and ordered the whole British line to advance. At first they moved forward with majestic regularity, receiving and paying back with deadly interest the volleys of the French; but soon the ardour of the soldiers broke through the restraints of discipline—they increased their pace to a run, rushing over the dying and the dead, and sweeping the living enemy off their path.

Wolfe was then wounded in the body; but he concealed his suffering, for his duty was not yet accomplished. Again a ball from the redoubt struck him on the breast. He reeled on one side; but at the moment that was not generally observed. "Support me," said he to a grenadier's officer who

was close at hand, "that my brave fellows may not see me fall." In a few seconds, however, he sank, and was borne a little to the rear.



THE DEATH OF WOLFE.

The brief struggle fell heavily upon the British, but was ruinous to the French. They wavered under the carnage: the columns which death had disordered were soon broken and scattered. Montcalm, with a courage that rose above the wreck of hope, galloped through the groups of his stubborn veterans, who still made head against the enemy, and strove to show a front of battle. His efforts were vain. The head of every formation was swept away before that terrible 'musketry. In a few minutes the French gave way in all directions. Just then their gallant general fell with a mortal wound: from that time all was utter rout.

While the British troops were carrying all before them, their young general's life was ebbing fast away. From

time
the
seem
of li

M
all d
thos
the
'arou
"The
every
Wolf
with
retrea
on his
given

W

tion
admir
of the
the la
the lit
been
her on

Wo

'conve
state t
death a
His re
honour
mast h
coffin o
wich, a
but a f

After
of Can

time to time he tried, with his faint hand, to clear away the death-mist that gathered on his sight; but the efforts seemed vain, for presently he lay back, and gave no signs of life beyond a heavy breathing and an occasional groan.

Meantime the French had given way, and were flying in all directions. A grenadier officer seeing this, called out to those around him, "See! they run!" The words caught the ear of the dying man. He raised himself, like one aroused from sleep, and asked eagerly, "Who run?" "The enemy, sir," answered the officer; "they give way everywhere." "Go, one of you, to Colonel Burton," said Wolfe: "tell him to march Webbe's (the 48th) regiment with all speed down to the St. Charles river, to cut off the retreat." His voice grew faint as he spoke, and he turned on his side, as if seeking an easier position. When he had given this last order, his eyes closed in death.

When the news reached England, triumph and lamentation were strangely intermingled. Astonishment and admiration at the splendid victory, with sorrow for the loss of the gallant victor, filled every breast. Throughout all the land were illuminations and public rejoicings, except in the little Kentish village of Westerham, where Wolfe had been born, and where his widowed mother now mourned her only child.

Wolfe's body was embalmed, and borne to the river for conveyance to England. The army escorted it in solemn state to the beach. They mourned their young general's death as sincerely as they had followed him in battle bravely. His remains were landed at Plymouth with the highest honours: minute-guns were fired, flags were hoisted half-mast high, and an escort with arms reversed received the coffin on the shore. They were then conveyed to Greenwich, and buried beside those of his father, who had died but a few months before.

After further successes of the British in other parts of Canada, under Generals Amherst, Haviland, and Sir

William Johnson, the French cause became utterly hopeless. On the 8th of September, 1760, a British force of 16,000 men assembled before Montreal; and on the same day a 'capitulation was signed which severed Canada from France for ever.

One of the most 'momentous political questions that have ever moved the human race was decided in this struggle. When a few English and French emigrants first landed among the Virginian and Canadian forests it began: when the British flag was hoisted on the citadel of Quebec it was decided. From that day Providence pointed out to the Anglo-Saxon race that to them was henceforth 'intrusted the destiny of the New World.

WARBURTON.

alac'rity, liveliness.	exhort'ing, encouraging.	mus'ketry, fire.
ardour, eagerness.	extraor'dinary, uncom-	pecul'iar, strange.
aroused, awakened.	mon, on.	prec'ipice, cliff.
assail'ants, enemies.	capitulation, delay.	regular'ity, order.
capitulation, surrender.	endanger'ed.	reinforce'ments, fresh
chiv'alous, heroic.	cease'less.	troops.
command'ed, headed.	incred'ible, not to be be-	repeat'ed, recit'ed.
conceal'ed, hid.	lieved.	romance', fiction.
convey'ance, carriage.	inten'sity, high strain.	ru'inous, destructive.
decis'ive, final. [ing.]	intermin'gled, mixed.	surren'der, yield.
disembarka'tion, land-	intrenched', fortified.	sustained', bore.
dismayed', disheart'ened.	intrust'ed, commit'ted.	unchal'enged, unques-
dispōs'able, available.	irreg'ular, indiscrimi-	tioned.
domin'ion, suprem'acy.	inate.	uncon'scious, ignorant.
em'inance, height.	lamenta'tion, sorrow.	unpar'alleled, unequal-
escort'ed, accompanied.	moment'ous, important.	led

¹ French dominion in Canada extended from the founding of Quebec by Champlain, in 1603, till the fall of Quebec, in 1759. The first European who set foot on Canada was a Frenchman, Jacques Cartier, who, in 1535, sailed up the St. Lawrence as far as where Montreal now stands.

² Ep'isode, a digression, or incidental narrative. [Gr. *epi*, upon; *episodos*, a coming in.]

³ Mont'calm, Louis Joseph, Marquis de Montcalm, was born in 1712. He went to Canada as Field-Marshal of the French Army in 1756, and was successful in opposing the English till his death at Quebec in 1759.

⁴ Wolfe, James, was born in Kent in 1726. He served with distinction in the Continental war which terminated with the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748. He gained fresh laurels at the Battle of Minden, and in the taking of Louisburg. Pitt selected him for the command of the expedition against Quebec, in which he was killed (1759).

⁵ Flotil'ia, a fleet of small ships; *tit*, a little fleet. [Dim. of Sp. *flota*, a fleet; Old Eng. *steotan*, to float; Lat. *fluo*, to flow.]

⁶ "Elegy in a Country Church-yard," a well known poem by Thomas Gray. (See p. 164.)

⁷ "Qui vive?" (*ke-viv*)— Who goes

there
pass-
tain
"G
dler
1085,
with
bomb
given
men,

QU
What
depend
did W
now c
deceiv
By wh
was it
Which
ance c
give w
Montc
calm?
Where

there? The form of demanding the pass-word; which the Highland captain gave correctly, "La France."

⁸ **Grenadier**.—Originally the Grenadier corps, established in England in 1685, was a company of soldiers armed with pouches of hand-*grenades*, or bomb-shells. Afterwards the name was given to the company of tall, powerful men, which led each battalion. Lastly,

the name has been given to one of the regiments of Guards attached to the Court.

"Who run?"—Another version of this incident concludes thus: "Who run?" cried Wolfe. "The enemy," replied the officer. "Then God be praised!" said Wolfe; "I shall die happy." And with these words he expired.

QUESTIONS.—Where does Quebec stand? Where are the Plains of Abraham? What plan did Wolfe form for reaching them? How did the safety of the plan depend upon its daring? At what time did the expedition start? What poem did Wolfe repeat as they floated down? What is the place where he leaped ashore now called? Where were the 78th Highlanders carried? How did their captain deceive the sentry? What did the soldiers who first reached the summit do? By what time had Wolfe his army marshalled on the table-land? How strong was it? How many were in the French army? Who commanded the latter? Which began the attack? What order did Wolfe give which tried the endurance of his men? What was the result of this plan? What order did Wolfe give when the French wavered? What happened to him soon after? What did Montcalm do when the French ranks were broken? What happened to Montcalm? What was Wolfe's last order? How was the news received in England? Where was Wolfe buried?

THE DESERTED VILLAGE.

SWEET Auburn!¹ loveliest village of the plain,
 Where health and plenty cheered the 'labouring swain;²
 Where smiling Spring its earliest visit paid,
 And parting Summer's 'lingering blooms delayed;
 Dear lovely bowers of innocence and ease,
 Seats of my youth, when every sport could please;
 How often have I loitered o'er thy green,
 Where humble happiness 'endeared each scene!
 How often have I paused on every charm;—
 The sheltered cot, the cultivated farm,
 The never-failing brook, the busy mill,
 The decent church that topped the neighbouring hill;
 The hawthorn bush, with seats beneath the shade,
 For talking age and whispering lovers made!
 How often have I blessed the coming day,
 When toil, 'remitting, lent its turn to play;
 And all the village train, from labour free,
 Led up their sports beneath the spreading tree;

While many a pastime³ circled in the shade,
 The young 'contending, as the old 'surveyed;
 And many a 'gambol frolicked o'er the ground,
 And sleights⁴ of art and feats of strength went round;
 And still, as each repeated pleasure tired,
 Succeeding sports the mirthful band 'inspired:—
 The dancing pair, that simply sought renown
 By holding out to tire each other down;
 The swain, mistrustless⁵ of his smutted face,
 While secret laughter tittered round the place;
 The 'bashful virgin's sidelong looks of love;
 The matron's glance that would those looks 'reprove;—
 These were thy charms, sweet village! sports like these,
 With sweet succession, taught e'en toil to please.

Sweet was the sound, when oft, at evening's close,
 Up yonder hill the village murmur rose;
 There as I passed, with careless steps and slow,
 The mingling notes came softened from below:—
 The swain, 'responsive as the milk-maid sung;
 The sober herd, that lowed to meet their young;
 The noisy geese, that gabbled o'er the pool;
 The playful children, just let loose from school;
 The watch-dog's voice, that bayed⁶ the whispering wind;
 And the loud laugh, that spoke the 'vacant mind;—
 These all, in sweet confusion, sought the shade,
 And filled each pause the nightingale had made.

OLIVER GOLDSMITH.⁷

bashful, retir'ing.
 contend'ing, striv'ing.
 endeared', made dear.
 gambol, frolic.

inspired', excit'ed. [ing.
 la'bouring, hard-work'
 lin'gering, lo't'ering.
 remit'ing, ceas'ing.

reprove', rebuke'.
 respon'sive, an'swering.
 surveyed', looked on.
 va'cant, emp'ty.

¹ Sweet Auburn.—The "village" here described is the little hamlet of Lissoy, in West Meath in Ireland, where Goldsmith spent his boyhood.

² Swain, a peasant; *lit.* a servant.

³ Pas'time, game, sport; *lit.* something to pass the time.

⁴ Sleights, tricks; clever strokes.

⁵ Mistrust'less, unsuspecting.

⁶ Bayed, barked at.

⁷ Oliver Goldsmith, born near Longford, in Ireland, in 1728; poet, novelist, essayist: author of *The Traveller* and *The Deserted Village* (poems); *The Vicar of Wakefield* (a novel); *The Bee* and *The Citizen of the World* (series of essays); *The Good-Natured Man* and *She Sloops to Conquer* (comedies); led a reckless and wandering life; died in London in 1774.

HUDSON BAY TERRITORY.

ONE of the boldest and most successful of early navigators was the celebrated Henry Hudson, discoverer of that vast inland sea now known by the name of Hudson Bay.

He first distinguished himself by making three attempts to reach China by the Arctic seas to the north of Europe; but on each occasion the solid ice arrested his progress, and at last he was convinced that a north-eastern passage did not exist. The correctness of this judgment has been established by the more accurate knowledge of these dreary regions which we now possess. Baffled in that direction, Hudson resolved to pursue his explorations in another quarter, and crossed the Atlantic to America, where, with most insignificant means, his skill and daring were destined to achieve the greatest results.

He sailed along the coast of North America, and at length was rewarded for his toils by the discovery of the bay on which New York stands, and of the magnificent river which, as he was the first to explore it, has since borne his name—the Hudson.

Soon afterwards he returned to England, and obtained the command of a vessel of fifty-five tons burden, manned by twenty-three men, and victualled for six months. In this humble craft he set sail in 1610 on what proved to be his last voyage. After touching at the Orkney Islands, and at Iceland,—where he saw Mount Hecla in violent eruption in the midst of perpetual snows,—Hudson passed the south of Greenland and reached the strait which now bears his name. Here, in addition to the ordinary difficulties and dangers of navigation among the ice, he had to struggle against a mutiny among his crew; but, in spite of all, this intrepid explorer boldly pushed on till his vessel ploughed the waters of that great inland sea now known as Hudson Bay.

He did not know for a long time that it was a bay, but

indulged the hope that he had discovered what he had so long sought—a passage by the north-west to China. Indeed the extent of its surface amply justified this expectation, since, with the exception of the Mediterranean, it is the largest inland sea in the world.

Here he was obliged to pass the winter. It is impossible to describe the hardships which the men endured. Notwithstanding all the birds, fishes, and animals serviceable for food which they could succeed in catching, they were always in dread of starvation.

When the ice broke up, Hudson prepared for the homeward voyage. The last ration of bread was dealt out to the crew on the day of their setting sail. A report that their commander had concealed a quantity of bread for his own use was readily believed by his famishing men, and a mutiny broke out.

Having put their captain, together with the sick and the frost-maimed, into the shallop,¹ the crew cast the boat adrift with its hapless freight, and stood out to sea. Doubtless, Hudson and his miserable companions found a grave in the great inland sea which he had discovered; for the boat was never seen or heard of more.

Two days after the mutineers had sailed, they encountered a violent storm, and for fourteen days were in the greatest danger from the ice. That storm was probably fatal to their intrepid commander and his forlorn party, who may thus have escaped a still more terrible death from want and exposure. Just retribution overtook the guilty mutineers. Not one of the ringleaders lived to reach the land; and the rest gained the shore only after suffering the most awful extremities of famine. None of them were ever brought to trial for their misdeeds;—probably because those who were deepest in guilt had already paid the penalty of their crime.

Sixty years after the death of Hudson, a Company² was formed in London, under the direction of Prince Rupert,

for
surr
T
head
built
the
exter
In
miles
dense
drear
of 'p
man,
of R
amid
closin
and b
varyin
you v
Territ
betwe
wilder
three
one in
there v
thirty
Compa
them,
within
United
The
again d
'influen
ous esta
The r
but the

for the purpose of prosecuting the fur trade in the regions surrounding Hudson Bay.

The first fort established by the Company was near the head of James Bay. Soon afterwards several others were built, in different parts of the country; and before long the Company spread and grew wealthy, and eventually extended their trade far beyond the chartered limits.

Imagine an immense extent of country, many hundred miles broad and many hundred miles long, covered with dense forests, expanded lakes, broad rivers, wide prairies, dreary swamps, and mighty mountains; and all in a state of primeval simplicity—undefaced by the axe of civilized man, and untenanted by aught save a few roving hordes³ of Red Indians and myriads of wild animals. Imagine amid this wilderness a number of small squares, each enclosing half-a-dozen wooden houses and about a dozen men, and between each of these establishments a space of forest varying from fifty to three hundred miles in length; and you will have a pretty correct idea of the Hudson Bay Territory, and of the number of its forts, and the distance between them. If Great Britain were converted into a wilderness and placed in the middle of Rupert's Land,⁴ three forts would be built in it—one at the Land's End, one in Wales, and one in the Highlands; so that in Britain there would be but three hamlets, with a population of some thirty men, half-a-dozen women, and a few children! The Company's posts extended, with these intervals between them, from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean, and from within the Arctic Circle to the northern boundaries of the United States.

The country was divided into four large departments; again divided into districts, each under the direction of an influential officer; and these were subdivided into numerous establishments, forts, posts, and outposts.

The name of *fort* was given to all the posts in the country, but the only two that are real, *bonâ fide* forts, are Fort



A FORT IN HUDSON BAY TERRITORY

Garry and the Stone Fort, in the colony of Red River,⁵ which are surrounded by stone walls with bastions at the corners. The others are merely defended by wooden pickets or stockades;⁶ and a few, where the Indians are quiet and harmless, are entirely destitute of defence of any kind. Some of the chief posts have a complement of about thirty or forty men; but most of them have only ten, five, four, or even two, besides the gentleman in charge.

The trade carried on in this desolate region is in peltries of all sorts: oil, dried and salted fish, feathers, quills, and ivory.

The most valuable of the furs which it produces is that of the *black fox*. This beautiful animal resembles in shape the common fox of England, but it is much larger, and jet black, with the exception of one or two white hairs along the back-bone and a pure white tuft on the end of the tail.

A
po

to
Th
It
ma
'n
wh

da
Th
wh
Re
ing
the
of
ret
exc
'sel
wish
will
his
one
esta
brin
Mar
T
hunt
'pers
whic
by o
fello
were
vious
A

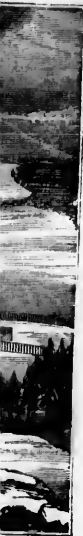
A single skin sometimes brings from twenty-five to thirty pounds in the British market! but—they are very scarce.

Beaver, in days of yore, was the 'staple fur of the Territory; but, alas! the silk hat has given it its death-blow. The most profitable fur in the country is that of the marten. It somewhat resembles the Russian sable, and generally maintains a steady price. These animals, moreover, are very numerous, particularly in the region of Mackenzie River, whence great numbers of skins are annually sent to England.

Trade is carried on with the natives by means of a standard valuation, called in some parts of the country a *castor*. This is to 'obviate the necessity of circulating money, of which there is little or none, excepting in the colony of Red River. Probably a trader tells an Indian, after looking over his furs, that he has got fifty or sixty castors; at the same time he hands to him fifty or sixty little bits of wood in 'lieu of cash, so that the latter may know, by returning these in payment of the goods for which he really exchanges his skins, how fast his funds decrease. Having 'selected the blankets, knives, and other articles which he wishes to 'purchase, to the extent that his wooden money will admit of, he packs up his goods, and departs to show his treasures to his wife. The value of a castor is from one to two shillings. The natives generally visit the trading establishments twice a year;—once in October, when they bring in the produce of their autumn hunts; and again in March, when they come in with that of the great winter hunt.

The number of castors that an Indian makes in a winter hunt varies from fifty to two hundred, according to his 'perseverance and activity, and the part of the country in which he hunts. The largest amount I ever heard of made by one man, was two hundred and sixty castors. The poor fellow was soon afterwards poisoned by his relatives, who were 'jealous of his superior 'abilities as a hunter, and envious of the favour shown him by the white men.

After the furs are collected in spring at all the different



River,⁵
 at the
 pickets
 quiet and
 kind.
 thirty
 e, four,
 eltries
 ls, and
 s that
 shape
 nd jet
 along
 e tail.

out-posts, they are packed in conveniently-sized bales, and forwarded, by means of boats and canoes, to the dépôts on the sea-coast, whence they are transported to England. The whole country in summer is, consequently, in commotion with the passing and repassing of brigades of boats laden with bales of merchandise and furs; the still waters of the lakes and rivers are rippled by the paddle and the oar; and the long silent echoes, which have slumbered in the icy embrace of a dreary winter, are now once more awakened by the merry voice and tuneful song of the hardy *voyageur*.⁷

abilities, skill.

arrested, checked.

bafl'ed, frustrated.

bastions, fortifications.

brigades, squadrons.

commotion, stir.

converted, transformed.

departments, divisions.

des'ert, devoid.

embrace, hosp.

encountered, met with.

establishments, settlements.

eventually, ultimately.

fam'ishing, starv'ing.

¹ *Shal'op*, a small boat with a lug-sail.

² *Company*.—The Hudson Bay Company obtained a charter from Charles II. in 1670. Their license expired in 1859, when their governing rights were transferred to the British Crown.

³ *Horde*, a wandering tribe.

⁴ *Ru'pert's Land*, the central and principal division of the Hudson Bay Territory; named after Prince Rupert,

indulged, cherished.

influen'tial, import'ant.

insignif'icant, inconsid'erable.

in'tervals, spaces.

intrep'id, fear'less.

jeal'ous, en'vious.

jus'tified, war'ranted.

lieu, place.

magnif'icent, splen'did

mis'erable, wretch'ed.

mu'tiny, insurrec'tion.

myr'iads, immense'

num'bers. [by sea.

nav'igators, explor'ers

R. M. BALLANTYNE.

nu'merous, plen'tiful.

ob'viate, prevent.

pelt'ries, furr'y skins.

persev'erance, applica'tion.

prai'ries, mead'ows.

prime'val, prist'ine. [on

pros'ecuting, carry'ing

pur'chase, buy.

retribu'tion, pun'ish-

select'ed, cho'sen. [ment

ser'viceable, avail'able.

sta'ple, stand'ard.

transport'ed, conveyed.

vict'ualled, provisioned.

the cousin of Charles II., being the son of Elizabeth (the daughter of James I.), who married the Elector Palatine.

⁵ *Red River*, south of Lake Winni-peg.

⁶ *Pick'ets or Stockades*—stakes sharpened at the top and fixed in the ground side by side to form a paling or breast-work.

⁷ *Voy'ageur* (*vo-yahj-ür*), traveller. [Fr. *voie*, Lat. *via*, a way.]

QUESTIONS.—From whom is Hudson's Bay named? How did Hudson first distinguish himself? In what year did he set out on his last voyage? What places did he touch at on his way to America? What did he suppose Hudson Bay to be? From what did his crew suffer during the winter? What did they do on the homeward voyage? Why were not the survivors brought to trial? When was the Hudson Bay Company established? Where was their first fort built? How many stations would be built in an area equal to Great Britain? In what articles did the Company trade? Which is the most valuable fur? Which used to be the staple? Why has it gone down? Which is the most profitable fur? What is a castor? How many castors does an Indian usually make in a winter hunt?

back
begu
car
char
decli

THE FOUR ERAS.¹

The lark has sung his 'carol in the sky;
 The bees have hummed their noon-tide 'harmony;
 Still in the vale the village bells 'resound,
 Still in Llewellyn Hall the jests 'resound:
 For now the caudle-cup² is circling there;
 Now, glad at heart, the gossips³ breathe their prayer,
 And, crowding, stop the cradle to admire
 The babe, the sleeping 'image of his sire.

A few short years, and then these sounds shall hail
 The day again, and gladness fill the vale;
 So soon the child a youth, the youth a man,
 Eager to run the race his fathers ran.
 Then the huge ox shall yield the broad 'sirloin;
 The ale, new-brewed, in floods of amber shine;
 And, 'basking in the chimney's ample blaze,
 'Mid many a tale told of his boyish days,
 The nurse shall cry, of all her ills 'beguiled,
 " 'Twas on these knees he sate so soft, and smiled."
 And soon again shall music swell the breeze;
 Soon, issuing forth, shall glitter through the trees
 'Vestures of 'nuptial white; and hymns be sung,
 And violets 'scattered round; and old and young,
 In every cottage porch, with 'garlands green,
 Stand still to gaze, and, gazing, bless the scene;
 While, her dark eyes 'declining, by his side
 Moves in her virgin-veil the gentle bride.

And once, alas! nor in a 'distant hour,
 Another voice shall come from yonder tower;
 When in dim 'chambers long black weeds are seen,
 And weepings heard where only joy has been;
 When by his children borne, and from his door
 Slowly 'departing, to return no more,
 He rests in holy earth with them that went before.

SAMUEL ROGERS.⁴

bask'ing, luxuriating.

beguiled, deprived.

car'ol, song.

cham'bers, rooms.

declin'ing, cast'ing down.

depart'ing, withdraw'ing.

dis'tant, remote.

gar'lands, wreaths.

har'mony, mu'sic.

im'age, picture.

nup'tial, wed'ding.

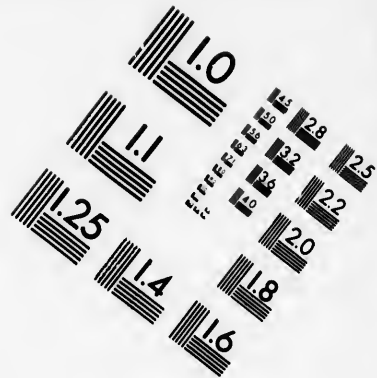
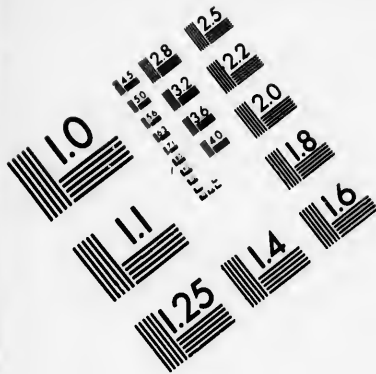
resound', ech'o.

scat'tered, sprin'kled.

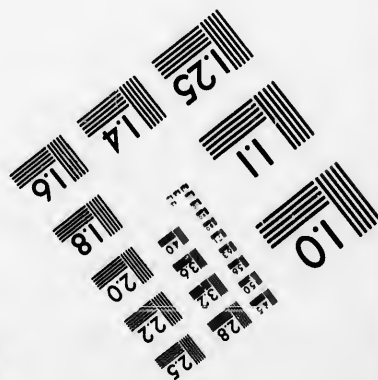
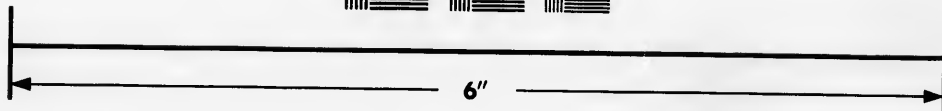
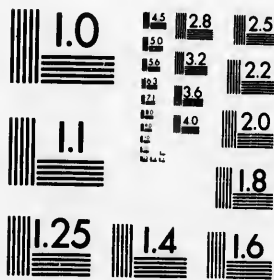
sir'loin, loin of beef.

ves'tures, garments.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
1.4
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50

¹ The Four Eras are, Birth, Coming of Age, Marriage, and Death.

² *Cau'dle-cup*, a warm drink, made of wine and other ingredients.

³ *Gos'sips*, idle talkers; *lit.* a god-

relative,—god-father or -mother. [Old Eng. *god-sib*, god-relative.]

⁴ Samuel Rogers, poet; born in 1763; became a wealthy banker; author of *The Pleasures of Memory*; died in 1855.

THE SKATER AND THE WOLVES.

[The following remarkable account of an escape from wolves in America, during the winter of 1844, is related by Mr. Whitehead.]

I HAD left my friend's house one evening just before dusk, with the intention of skating a short distance up the noble river which glided directly before the door. The night was beautifully clear. A peerless moon rode through an occasional fleecy cloud, and stars twinkled from the sky and from every frost-covered tree in millions. Light also came glinting from ice, and snow-wreath, and encrusted branches, as the eye followed for miles the broad gleam of the river, that like a jewelled zone¹ swept between the mighty forests on its banks. And yet all was still. The cold seemed to have frozen tree, and air, and water, and every living thing. Even the ringing of my skates echoed back from the hill with a startling clearness; and the crackle of the ice, as I passed over it in my course, seemed to follow the tide of the river with lightning speed.

I had gone up the river nearly two miles, when, coming to a little stream which empties into the larger, I turned into it to explore its course. Fir and hemlock² of a century's growth met overhead, and formed an archway radiant with frost-work. All was dark within; but I was young and fearless, and as I peered into an unbroken forest that reared itself on the borders of the stream, I laughed with very joyousness.

My wild hurrah rang through the silent woods, and I stood listening to the echo that reverberated³ again and again, until all was hushed. Suddenly a sound arose—it seemed to me to come from beneath the ice; it was low

and 'tremulous at first, but it ended in one long wild yell! I was 'appalled. Never before had such a noise met my ears. Presently I heard the brushwood on shore crash, as though from the tread of some animal. The blood rushed to my forehead—my 'energies returned, and I looked around me for some means of escape.

The moon shone through the opening at the mouth of the creek by which I had entered the forest, and, 'considering this the best means of escape, I darted toward it like an arrow. It was hardly a hundred yards distant, and the swallow could scarcely have 'excelled me in flight; yet, as I turned my head to the shore, I could see several dark objects dashing through the brushwood at a pace nearly double in speed to my own. By their great speed, and the short yells which they occasionally gave, I knew at once that these were the much dreaded gray wolves.

The bushes that skirted the shore flew past with the 'velocity of lightning as I dashed on in my flight to pass the narrow opening. The outlet was nearly gained—a few seconds more and I would be 'comparatively safe; but in a moment my pursuers appeared on the bank above me, which here rose to the height of ten feet. There was no time for thought—I bent my head and dashed madly forward. The wolves sprang, but, 'miscalculating my speed, fell behind, while their intended prey glided out upon the river!

Nature turned me toward home. The light flakes of snow spun from the iron of my skates, and I was some distance from my pursuers, when their fierce howl told me I was still their 'fugitive. I did not look back; I did not feel afraid, or sorry, or glad; one thought of home, of the bright faces awaiting my return, and of their tears if they never should see me,—and then all the energies of body and mind were 'exerted for escape.

I was perfectly at home on the ice. Many were the days that I had spent on my good skates, never thinking that they would thus prove my only means of safety.

Every half minute a furious yelp from my fierce 'attendants made me but too certain that they were in close pursuit. Nearer and nearer they came,—at last I heard their feet pattering on the ice—I even felt their very breath and heard their snuffing scent! Every nerve and muscle in my frame was stretched to the utmost tension.⁴



SKATER CHASED BY WOLVES.

The trees along the shore seemed to dance in an 'uncertain light, and my brain turned with my own breathless speed; yet still my pursuers seemed to hiss forth their breath with a sound truly horrible, when an 'involuntary motion on my part turned me out of my course. The wolves, close behind, unable to stop, and as unable to turn on the smooth ice, slipped and fell, still going on far ahead.

Their tongues were lolling out; their white tusks were gleaming from their bloody mouths; their dark shaggy breasts were fleeced with foam; and as they passed me their eyes glared, and they howled with fury. The thought flashed on my mind that by this means I could avoid them,—namely, by turning aside whenever they came too near; for, by the formation of their feet, they are unable to run on ice except in a straight line.

I immediately acted upon this plan. The wolves having regained their feet, sprang directly towards me. The race was renewed for twenty yards up the stream; they were already close at my back, when I glided round and dashed directly past them. A fierce yell greeted my evolution,⁵ and the wolves, slipping on their haunches, sailed onward, presenting a perfect picture of helplessness and baffled rage. Thus I gained nearly a hundred yards at each turning. This was repeated two or three times, the animals becoming more excited and baffled every moment.

At one time, by delaying my turning too long, my sanguinary antagonists came so near that they threw their white foam over my dress as they sprang to seize me, and their teeth clashed together like the spring of a fox-trap! Had my skates failed for one instant,—had I tripped on a stick, or had my foot been caught in a fissure of the ice,—the story I am now telling would never have been told.

I thought over all the chances. I knew where they would first seize me if I fell. I thought how long it would be before I died; and then of the search for my body, that would already have had its tomb; for oh! how fast man's mind traces out all the dread colours of death's picture, only those who have been near the grim original can tell.

At last I came opposite the house, and my hounds—I knew their deep voices—roused by the noise, bayed furiously from their kennels. I heard their chains rattle; how I wished they would break them!—then I should have had

endants
pursuit.
their feet
with and
in my



ncer-
hless
their
itary
The
turn
head.

*protectors to match the fiercest *denizens of the forest. The wolves, taking the hint conveyed by the dogs, stopped in their mad career, and after a few moments turned and fled.

I watched them until their forms disappeared over a neighbouring hill; then, taking off my skates, I wended my way to the house, with feelings which may be better *imagined than described. But even yet I never see a broad sheet of ice by moonlight without thinking of that snuffing breath, and those fearful things that followed me so closely down that frozen river.

Such is the strange tale of escape from the winter wolves of America. In Russia they are no less *dreaded; and the traveller, even when flying over the snow in his swift sledge, often finds the speed of his horses barely sufficient to *rescue him from the hungry pack. On such occasions their merciless *rapacity often proves his means of escape; for no sooner does he shoot down one of the foremost, than the whole pack crowd round it and tear it to pieces! By such means time is gained, and the *affrighted horses, fleeing at their utmost speed, at length dash with the sledge into the shelter of the long wished-for station.

affright'ed, ter'rified.
antag'onists, foes.
appalled', dismayed'.
attend'ants, pursu'ers.
compar'atively, rel'a-
tively.
consid'ering, deem'ing.
den'izens, inhab'itants.
dread'ed, feared. [frost.
encrust'ed, coated with
en'ergies, pow'ers.
excelled', surpassed'.

exert'ed, put forth.
forma'tion, construc'tion
fu'gitive, object pursued
fu'riously, wild'y.
help'lessness, fee'bleness
imag'ined, fan'cied.
inten'tion, pur'pose.
invo'luntary, uninten'-
tional.
joy'ousness, glad'ness.
miscal'culating, not al-
low'ing for.

orig'inal, real'ity.
protec'tors, guard'ians
ra'diant, lus'trous.
rapac'ity, greed'iness.
regained', recovered.
res'cue, deliv'er. [thirsty.
sa'n'guinary, blood'-
start'ling, surpris'ing.
trem'ulous, quiv'ering.
twi'n'kled, glit'tered.
uncer'tain, wa'vering.
veloc'ity, swift'ness.

¹ Zone, belt or girdle.
² Hem'lock, the Canadian fir-tree, which grows to the height of eighty feet; not the poisonous herb.

³ Rever'berated, resounded; *lit.* beat back. [Lat. *re*, again; *verbero*, I beat; from *verber*, a lash.]

⁴ Ten'sion, stiffness; state of being strained to the utmost. [Lat. *tendo*, I stretch.]

⁵ Evolu'tion, clever movement. *Evo-lutions* is applied to the tactical movements of troops. [Lat. *evolveo*, from *e*, out, and *volvō*, I roll.]

QUESTIONS.—Where did this incident occur? At what time? How far up the river had the skater gone when he turned into the forest? Of what kind were the wolves that pursued him? Why did they miss him when they sprang from the bank? By what plan did he at last escape from them? What made them stop and return to the forest? By what means do travellers often escape from Russian wolf-packs?

THE VILLAGE PREACHER.

NEAR yonder copse,¹ where once the garden smiled,
And still where many a garden flower grows wild,
There, where a few torn shrubs the place disclose,
The village preacher's modest mansion rose.

A man he was to all the country dear,
And passing² rich with forty pounds a year;
Remote from towns he ran his godly race,
Nor e'er had changed, nor wished to change, his place.
Unskilful he to fawn, or seek for power,
By doctrines fashioned to the varying hour;
Far other aims his heart had learned to prize,
More bent to raise the wretched than to rise.
His house was known to all the vagrant train;
He chid their wanderings, but relieved their pain.
The long-remembered beggar was his guest,
Whose beard descending swept his aged breast;
The ruined spendthrift,³ now no longer proud,
Claimed kindred there, and had his claim allowed;
The broken soldier, kindly bade to stay,
Sat by his fire and talked the night away,
Wept o'er his wounds, or, tales of sorrow done,
Shouldered his crutch, and showed how fields were won!
Pleased with his guests, the good man learned to glow,
And quite forgot their vices, in their woe;
Careless their merits or their faults to scan,
His pity gave, ere charity began.

Thus to relieve the wretched was his pride,
And even his failings leaned to virtue's side;
But, in his duty prompt at every call,
He watched and wept, he prayed and felt for all:
And, as a bird each fond endearment tries
To tempt her new-fledged offspring to the skies,

He tried each art, reproved each dull delay,
 Allured to brighter worlds, and led the way.

Beside the bed where parting life was laid,
 And sorrow, guilt, and pain, by turns dismayed,
 The reverend champion¹ stood. At his control,
 Despair and anguish fled the struggling soul;
 Comfort came down² the trembling wretch to raise,
 And his last faltering accents whispered praise.

At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
 His looks adorned the venerable place;
 Truth from his lips prevailed with double sway;
 And fools, who came to scoff, remained to pray.
 The service past, around the pious man,
 With ready zeal, each honest rustic ran;
 Even children followed with endearing wile,
 And plucked his gown, to share the good man's smile:
 His ready smile a parent's warmth expressed,
 Their welfare pleased him, and their cares distressed;
 To them his heart, his love, his griefs were given,
 But all his serious thoughts had rest in heaven:
 As some tall cliff, that lifts its awful form,
 Swells from the vale, and midway leaves the storm;³
 Though round its breast the rolling clouds are spread,
 Eternal sunshine settles on its head.

OLIVER GOLDSMITH.⁷

allowed', acknow'edged.
 allured', enticed'.
 an'guish, torment.
 char'ity, aims-giving.
 descend'ing, flow'ing
 disclos'e, reveal'. [down.

distressed', grieved.
 endear'ment, caress'.
 fail'ings, frailties.
 fal'tering, inarticulate.
 fash'ioned, adapt'ed.
 man'sion, dwell'ing.

relieved', alle'viated.
 unaff'ect'ed, nat'ural.
 unskil'ful, unqual'ified.
 va grant, begg'ing.
 ven'erable, sa cred.
 wile, sly art'ifice.

¹ Cops'e, also *cop'pice*, a wood of small trees, periodically cut down for their bark or timber. [Fr. *couper*, to cut.]
² Pass'ing, exceedingly. The *Village Preacher* is a portrait of the Rev. Charles Goldsmith, the poet's father. "Forty pounds a year" was actually his income at the time when the poet was born.

³ Spend' thrift, one who recklessly spends his *thrift*, or gains.

⁴ Cham'pion, defender (of the faith).

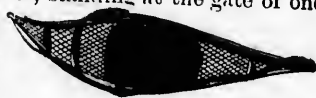
⁵ Came down—that is, from heaven.

⁶ Midway leaves the storm—that is, the storm does not reach more than half way up the cliff.

⁷ Oliver Goldsmith. — See p. 178, Note 7.

AN INDIAN'S TRAPS.

SUPPOSE yourself, gentle reader, standing at the gate of one of the forts in Hudson Bay, watching a savage arranging his snow-shoes, 'preparatory to entering the gloomy forest.



SNOW-SHOE.

Let us walk with this Indian on a visit to his traps.

The night is very dark, as the moon is hid by thick clouds; yet it occasionally breaks out sufficiently to illumine our path to the Indian's wigwam, and to throw the shadows of the neighbouring trees upon the pale snow, which, owing to the intense cold, crunches under our feet as we advance. The tent, at which we soon arrive, is pitched at the foot of an immense tree, which stands in a little hollow where the willows and pines are luxuriant enough to afford a shelter from the north wind. Suddenly the deer-skin robe that covers the entrance to the wigwam is raised, and a bright stream of warm light gushes out, tipping the dark green points of the opposite trees, and mingling strangely with the paler light of the moon—and the Indian stands erect in front of his 'solitary home.

He is in his usual hunting costume. A large leathern coat, very much overlapped in front, and fastened round his waist with a scarlet belt, protects his body from the cold. A small rat-skin cap covers his head, and his legs are cased in the ordinary blue cloth leggins. Large moccasins,² with two or three pairs of blanket socks, clothe his feet; and fingerless mittens, made of deer-skin, complete his costume.



MOCCASIN.

After a few minutes passed in 'contemplation of the heavens, the Indian prepares himself for the walk. First he sticks a small axe in his belt, serving as a 'counterpoise to a large hunting-knife and fire-bag³ which depend from the other side. He then slips his feet through the cords of his snow-shoes, and throws the line of a small hand-sledge over his shoulder. Having attached the sledge to his back, he stoops to receive his gun from his faithful squaw,⁴ who has been watching his 'operations through a hole in the tent; and throwing it on his shoulder, strides off, without 'uttering a word, across the moonlit space in front of the tent, turns into a narrow track that leads down the dark 'ravine, and disappears in the shades of the forest.

The forest is now almost dark, the foliage overhead having become so dense that the moon 'penetrates through it only in a few places, rendering the surrounding masses darker by contrast. The outline of an old snow-shoe track, at first faintly seen, is soon no longer visible; but still the Indian moves forward with rapid, noiseless step, as sure of his way as if a broad beaten track lay before him. In this manner he moves on for nearly two miles, sometimes stooping to 'examine closely the newly-made track of some wild animal, and occasionally giving a glance at the sky through the openings in the leafy canopy⁵ above him. Suddenly a faint sound in the bushes ahead brings him to a full stop.

He listens 'attentively, and a noise, like the rattling of a chain, is heard proceeding from the 'recesses of a dark, wild-looking hollow, a few paces in front. Another moment, and the rattle is again distinctly heard. A slight smile of 'satisfaction crosses the Indian's dark visage; for one of his traps is set in that place, and he knows that something has been caught. Quickly descending the slope, he enters the bushes whence the sound proceeds, and pauses when within a yard or two of his trap, to peer through the gloom.

A cloud passes off the moon, and a faint ray reveals, it may be, a beautiful black fox caught in the snare. A slight blow on the snout from the Indian's axe-shaft kills the unfortunate animal; in ten minutes more it is tied on his sledge, the trap is re-set and again covered over with snow, so that it is almost impossible to tell that anything is there; and the Indian pursues his way.

The steel-trap used by the Indians is very similar to the ordinary rat-trap of England, with this difference, that it is a little larger, is destitute of teeth, and has two springs in place of one.



A TRAP.

A chain is attached to one of the springs, for the purpose of fixing a weight to the trap, so that the animal caught may not be able to drag it far from the place where it has been set. The track in the snow enables the hunter to find his trap again. It is generally so set that the jaws, when spread out flat, are exactly on a level with the snow.

The chain and weight are both hid, and a thin layer of snow is spread on the top of the trap. The bait (which generally consists of chips of a frozen partridge, rabbit, or fish) is then scattered around in every direction; and, with the exception of this, nothing distinguishes the spot.

Foxes, beavers, wolves, lynxes,⁶ and other animals, are caught in this way, sometimes by a fore-leg, sometimes by a hind-leg, sometimes by two legs at once, and occasionally by the nose. Of all these ways the Indians prefer catching by two legs, as there is then not the slightest possibility of the animal escaping.

When foxes are caught by one leg, they often *eat it off* close to the trap, and escape on the other three! I have

frequently seen this happen; and I once saw a fox caught which had evidently escaped in this way, as one of its legs was gone and the stump healed up and covered again with hair. When they are caught by the nose they are almost sure to escape, unless taken out of the trap very soon, as their snouts are so sharp or wedge-like that they can pull them from between the jaws of the trap without much difficulty.

Having described this machine, we shall now rejoin the Indian, whom we left on his way to his next trap. There he goes, moving swiftly over the snow, mile after mile, as if he could not feel fatigue; turning aside now and then to visit a trap, and giving a short grunt when nothing is in it; or killing the animal when caught, and tying it on the sledge.

Toward midnight, however, he begins to walk more cautiously, examines the priming of his gun, and moves the axe in his belt, as if he expected to meet some enemy suddenly. The fact is, that close to where he now stands are two traps which he set in the morning close to each other, for the purpose of catching one of the formidable coast wolves.

These animals are so sagacious that they will scrape all round a trap, let it be ever so well set, and, after eating all the bait, walk away unhurt. Indians, consequently, endeavour in every possible way to catch them, and, among others, by setting *two* traps close together; so that while the wolf scrapes at one, he may perhaps put his foot in the other. It is in this way that our Indian friend's traps are set, and he now proceeds cautiously towards them, his gun in the hollow of his left arm.

Slowly he advances, peering through the bushes; but nothing is visible. Suddenly a branch crashes under his snow-shoe, and with a savage growl a large wolf bounds toward him, landing almost at his feet! A single glance, however, shows the Indian that both traps are on its legs,

and the
his gun
advance

It is
fierce
strains
eyes gl
blood-r
grinnin
its furt
Indian,
backwa
animal,
and tea
and the
out succ

At la
apparen
lightnin
ning 'vi
five min

attached',
atten tive
cautious
contempla
.os' tume,
coun' terpo
differenc
distin' gnis
endeav' our
ev' idently,
exam' ine,
fatigue', w

¹ Wig' wa
cal in shape
matting. T
ruption of t
² Moc' cas
deer-skin, o
soles. [Ind
³ Fire' ba

and that the chains prevent its further advance. He places his gun against a tree, draws the axo from his belt, and advances to kill the animal.

It is, however, an undertaking of some difficulty. The fierce brute, which is larger than a Newfoundland dog, strains every nerve and sinew to break its chains, while its eyes glisten in the uncertain light, and foam curls from its blood-red mouth. Now it retreats as the Indian advances, grinning horribly the while; and anon,⁷ as the chains check its further retreat, it springs with fearful growl toward the Indian, who slightly wounds it with his axe, as he jumps backward just in time to save himself from the infuriated animal, which catches in its fangs⁸ the flap of his leggin, and tears it from his limb. Again the Indian advances, and the wolf retreats and again springs on him, but without success.

At last, as the wolf glances for a moment to one side—apparently to see if there is any way of escape—quick as lightning the axe flashes in the air, and descends with stunning violence on its head; another blow follows, and in five minutes more the animal is bound to the sledge.

R. M. BALLANTYNE.

attached', fast'ened.
atten'tively, intent'ly.
cau'tiously, war'ily.
contempla'tion, stud'y.
cos'tume, dress.
coun'terpoise, off'set.
dif'ference, excep'tion.
distinguishes, marks.
endeav'our, strive.
ev'idently, appa'rently.
exam'ine, inspect.
fatigue', wea'riiness.

fre'quently, oft'en.
illu'mine, light.
infu'riated, enraged'.
luxu'riant, exu'berant.
occa'sionally, some'times.
opera'tions, proceed'ings
or'dinary, com'mon.
pen'etrates, pier'ces.
possibil'ity, chance.
prepar'atory, introduc'tory.

proceeds', advan'ces.
ravine', pass.
recess'es, depths.
retreats', retires'.
saga'cious, shrewd.
satisfac'tion, pleas'ure.
slight'ly, trif'lingly.
solitary, loné'ly.
undertak'ing, work.
unfor'tunate, luck'less.
ut'tering, speak'ing.
vi'olence, force.

¹ Wig'wam, hut or cabin. It is conical in shape, and covered with bark or matting. The word is an English corruption of the Indian name for a house.

² Moc'casins, Indian shoes made of deer-skin, or other soft leather, without soles. [Indian, *makisîn*.]

³ Fire'bag, a bag containing mate-

rials for kindling fire from a spark; corresponding with a tinder-box.

⁴ Squaw, wife. [Indian, *squaw*, a woman.]

⁵ Can'opy, a covering over a throne or bed; *lit.* a net to keep off gnats. [Gr. *kônôpeion*, a mosquito-curtain. from *kônôps*, a gnat.]

^s *Lynx*, a wild animal of the cat kind, remarkable for its brilliant eyes; hence supposed to be sharp-sighted (*lynx-eyed*).
 ANON, presently; soon after; *lit.*

in one (moment). [Old Eng. *on*, *in*; *an*, *one*.]

^s *Fangs*, long pointed teeth. [Old Eng. *fang*; from *fon*, to seize; Ger. *fangen*.]

QUESTIONS.—Where had the Indian pitched his tent? Why there? What covered the entrance to the hut? How was the Indian dressed? How was he armed? What brought him to a full stop in his round? What did the sound resemble? What did it tell the Indian? How did he kill the animal? What difference is there between the Indian's steel-trap and an English rat-trap? With what is it baited? What do foxes often do, when caught by one leg? Why had the Indian set two traps close together in one place? What was the result? What risk did he run, in attempting to kill the wolf? What moment did he seize for striking it with his axe?

VIRGINIA.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH spent a large fortune in attempting to 'colonize Virginia.¹ He succeeded in directing the attention of his countrymen to the region which had kindled his own 'enthusiasm. But his colonies never prospered. Sometimes the colonists returned home disgusted by the hardships of the wilderness. Once they were 'massacred by the Indians. When help came from England, the infant settlement was in ruins. The bones of unburied men lay about the fields; wild deer strayed among the 'untenanted houses. Once a colony wholly disappeared. To this day its fate is unknown.

Sir Walter was enduring his long captivity in the Tower,² writing his "History of the World," and moaning 'pitiously over the havoc which prison-damps had wrought upon his handsome frame. The time had now come, and his labours were about to bear fruit. The history of Virginia was about to open. It opened with 'meagre promise. In 1606 A.D. a charter from the King established a Company whose 'function was to colonize—whose 'privilege was to trade.

The Company sent out an expedition, which sailed in three small vessels. It consisted of one hundred and five men. Of these, one half were gentlemen of broken fortune.

Some
 few
 fitted
 exper
 'diss
 able
 little
 Bu
 bate
 had
 His
 have
 the r
 stron
 boyh
 searc
 'exch
 Re
 was
 pulse
 he be
 'relu
 comp
 becar
 Smit
 Th
 Jame
 a litt
 the K
 in A
 clima
 on w
 Bu
 be 'el
 men
 ment

Some were tradesmen ; others were footmen. Only a very few were farmers, or mechanics, or persons in any way fitted for the life they sought. Morally, the aspect of the expedition was even more 'discouraging. "An hundred 'dissolute persons" were on board the ships. The 'respectable portion of the expedition must have gone into very little space.

But, happily for Virginia, there sailed with these 'reprobate founders of a new empire a man whom Providence had highly gifted with fitness to govern his fellow-men. His name was John Smith. No writer of romance would have given his hero this name. But, in spite of his name, the man was truly heroic. He was still under thirty, a strong-limbed, deep-chested, massively-built man. From boyhood he had been a soldier—roaming over the world in search of 'adventures, wherever hard blows were being 'exchanged.

Returning to England when the passion for colonizing was at its height, he caught at once the 'prevailing impulse. He joined the Virginian expedition. Ultimately he became its chief. His fitness was so manifest, that no 'reluctance on his own part, no jealousies on that of his companions, could bar him from the highest place. Men became kings of old by the same process which now made Smith a chief.

The "dissolute persons" sailed in their ships up the James river. Landing there, they proceeded to 'construct a little town, which they named Jamestown,³ in honour of the King. This was the first colony which struck its roots in American soil. The colonists were charmed with the climate, and with the luxuriant beauty of the wilderness on whose 'confines they had settled.

But as yet it was only a wilderness. The forest had to be 'cleared that food might be grown. The exiled gentlemen laboured manfully, but under grievous discouragements. "The axes so oft blistered their tender fingers,

that many times every third blow had a loud oath to drown the echo." Smith was a man upon whose soul there lay a becoming reverence for sacred things. He devised how to have every man's oaths numbered; "and at night, for every oath, to have a can of water poured down his sleeve." Under this treatment the evil was assuaged.

The emigrants had landed in early spring. Summer came with its burning heat. Supplies of food ran low. "Had we been as free from all sins as from gluttony and drunkenness," Smith wrote, "we might have been canonized as saints." The colonists sickened and died. From those poor blistered fingers dropped for ever the unaccustomed axe. Before autumn every second man had died. But the hot Virginian sun, which proved so deadly to the settlers, ripened the wheat they had sowed in the spring, and freed the survivors from the pressure of want. Winter brought them a healthier temperature and abundant supplies of wild-fowl and game.

When the welfare of the colony was in some measure secured, Smith set forth with a few companions to explore the interior of the country. He and his followers were captured by the Indians. The followers were summarily butchered. Smith's composure did not fail him in the worst extremity. He produced his pocket-compass, and interested the savages by explaining its properties. He wrote a letter in their sight—to their infinite wonder. They spared him, and made a show of him in all the settlements round about. He was to them an unfathomable mystery. He was plainly superhuman. Whether his power would bring to them good or evil, they were not able to determine.

After much hesitation they chose the course which prudence seemed to counsel. They resolved to extinguish powers so formidable, regarding whose use they could obtain no guarantee. Smith was bound and stretched upon the earth, his head resting upon a great stone. The mighty

club
a m
chief
year
man
she s
him
was
Fi
lishm
He h
"one
love
the l
Jame
A
peara
since
forest
her v
ness.
races.
wife
races
nativ
band
W
the v
left, a
return
work
arriva
The
ment
men"
of the

club was uplifted to dash out his brains. But Smith was a man who won golden opinions from all. The Indian chief had a daughter, Pocahontas, a child of ten or twelve years. She could not bear to see the pleasing Englishman destroyed. As Smith lay waiting the fatal stroke, she seized him in her arms and interposed herself between him and the club. Her intercession prevailed, and Smith was set free.

Five years later, "an honest and discreet" young Englishman called John Rolfe loved this young Indian girl. He had a sore mental struggle about uniting himself with "one of barbarous breeding and of a cursed race." But love triumphed. He laboured for her conversion, and had the happiness of seeing her baptized in the little church of Jamestown. Then he married her.

After a time he took her home to England. Her appearance was pleasing; her mind was acute; her piety was sincere; her manners bore picturesque evidence of her forest upbringing. The English King and Court regarded her with lively interest as the first-fruits of the wilderness. Great hopes were founded on this union of the two races. She is the brightest picture—this young Virginian wife and mother—which the history of the doomed native races presents to us. But she did not live to revisit her native land. Death parted her very early from her husband and her child.⁴

When Smith returned from captivity the colony was on the verge of extinction. Only thirty-eight persons were left, and they were preparing to depart. With Smith hope returned to the despairing settlers. They resumed their work, confident in the resources of their chief. Fresh arrivals from England cheered them.

The character of these reinforcements was no improvement upon that of their predecessors. "Vagabond gentlemen" formed still a large majority of the settlers—many of them, we are told, "packed off to escape worse destinies

at home." The colony, thus composed, had already earned a very bad reputation: so bad, that some, rather than be sent there, "chose to be hanged, *and were.*"

Over these most undesirable subjects Smith ruled with an authority which no man dared or desired to question. But he was severely injured by an accidental explosion of gunpowder. Surgical aid was not in the colony. Smith required to go to England, and once more hungry ruin settled down upon Virginia. In six months the five hundred men whom Smith had left had dwindled to sixty. These were already embarked and departing when they were met by Lord Delaware,⁵ the new governor. Once more the colony was saved.

Years of quiet growth succeeded. Emigrants—not wholly now of the dissolute sort—flowed steadily in. In 1688 the population of Virginia had increased to 50,000; and within a few years of the settlement, the Virginians had a written Constitution, according to which they were ruled.

ROBERT MACKENZIE.

abundant, plentiful.	dwindled, fallen.	privilege, right.
adventures, enterprises	enthusiasm, ardent zeal	properties, peculiarities
assuaged, diminished.	exchanged, given and	reluctance, backward-
barbarous, savage.	taken.	ness.
canonized, enrolled.	explaining, describing.	reprobate, profligate.
cleared, freed of trees.	extinction, annihilation	reputation, character.
colonize, make settle-	extinguish, quench.	resources, powers of
ments.	function, duty.	contrivance.
companions, associates.	guarantee, security.	respectable, moral.
composure, self-possession	intercession, mediation	reverence, veneration.
confident, trustful. (sion	mas sacred, murdered.	succeed ed, followed.
confines, borders.	meagre, scanty.	summarily, quickly.
construct, build.	picturesque, quaint.	unfathomable, incom-
departing, leaving.	pitifully, grievously.	prehensible.
destinies, fates. (ing.	predecessors, precur-	untenanted, uninhab-
discouraging, dispiriting.	sors. (nant.	ited.
disolute, vicious.	prevailing, predomi-	wilderness, forest.

¹ Virginia, the first British settlement in North America, was taken possession of by Raleigh in 1584, and named after the virgin queen, Elizabeth.

² Long captivity in the Tower—thirteen years. In 1603 he had been condemned on a charge of being ac-

cessory to a plot to place Arabella Stuart on the throne. He was reprieved, but remained a prisoner in the Tower till 1616. An expedition which he undertook to South America failed, and gave offence to Spain. On his return, James, to please the Spanish

minist
the se
—1618
Ja
This, t
was fo
1607.
'H
famili
from t
Que
When
emigr
lish to
what
autum
interic
In wh
he cor
arrival

minister, sent Raleigh to the block on the sentence passed fifteen years before—1618.

² Jamestown, named after James I. This, the first English town in America, was founded by Captain Newport in 1607. It is now in decay.

⁴ Her child.—Many of the leading families in Virginia trace their descent from the son of Pocahontas.

⁵ Lord Delaware.—Lord De la War had been appointed governor for life in 1609, but sickness prevented his going out till the following year. He was soon compelled by ill health to return to England. In 1617, though still delicate, he set sail again for Virginia, but died at the mouth of the bay which has ever since borne his name.

QUESTIONS.—Who first attempted to colonize Virginia? With what success? When was a company chartered to colonize it? What was the character of the emigrants? Who became the chief of the expedition? What was the first English town in America? How did Smith put down the vice of swearing? From what did the settlers suffer in their first summer? How many died before autumn? What brought them relief? What befell Smith when exploring the interior? How was his life saved? What subsequently became of Pocahontas? In what state was the colony when Smith returned from captivity? Why was he compelled to return to England? Whom did Lord Delaware meet on his arrival? What was the population of Virginia in 1688?

WATERLOO.

THERE was a sound of 'revelry by night,
 And Belgium's capital¹ had gathered then
 Her beauty and her chivalry, and bright
 The lamps shone o'er fair women and brave men :
 A thousand hearts beat happily ; and when
 Music arose with its 'voluptuous swell,
 Soft eyes looked love to eyes which spake again,
 And all went merry as a marriage bell ;
 But hush ! hark ! a deep sound strikes like a rising
 'knell.

Did ye not hear it ?—No ; 'twas but the wind,
 Or the car rattling o'er the stony street ;
 On with the dance ! let joy be 'unconfined ;
 No sleep till morn, when youth and pleasure meet,
 To chase the glowing hours with flying feet :—
 But hark ! that heavy sound breaks in once more,
 As if the clouds its echo would 'repeat ;
 And nearer, clearer, deadlier than before !—
 Arm ! arm ! it is—it is—the cannon's opening roar !

Within a windowed niche of that high hall
 Sate Brunswick's fated chieftain :² he did hear
 That sound the first amidst the 'festival,
 And caught its tone with death's 'prophetic ear ;
 And when they smiled because he deemed it near,
 His heart more truly knew that peal too well
 Which stretched his father on a bloody bier,
 And roused the 'vengeance blood alone could quell :
 He rushed into the field, and foremost fighting fell.

Ah ! then and there was hurrying to and fro,
 And gathering tears, and tremblings of distress,
 And cheeks all pale, which but an hour ago
 Blushed at the praise of their own 'loveliness ;
 And there were sudden partings, such as press
 The life from out young hearts ; and choking sighs
 Which ne'er might be repeated ;—who could guess
 If ever more should meet those mutual eyes ?³
 Since upon night so sweet such awful morn could rise.

And there was mounting in hot haste : the steed,
 The 'mustering squadron, and the clattering car
 Went pouring forward with 'impetuous speed,
 And swiftly forming in the ranks of war ;
 And the deep thunder, peal on peal afar ;
 And near, the beat of the 'alarming drum
 Roused up the soldier ere the morning star ;
 While thronged the citizens with terror dumb,
 Or whispering, with white lips—"The foe ! They come !
 they come !"

And wild and high the "Camerons' gathering"⁴ rose !
 The war-note of Lochiel, which Albyn's⁵ hills
 Have heard—and heard, too, have her Saxon foes.
 How in the noon of night that pibroch thrills,
 Savage and shrill ! but with the breath which fills
 Their mountain-pipe, so fill the 'mountaineers
 With the fierce native daring which 'instils
 The stirring 'memory of a thousand years :
 And Evan's, Donald's fame,⁶ rings in each clansman's ears :

alarm'
 blent,
 fes' tiv'
 impet'
 inan' in
 instils'
 knell, c

¹ Belg
 a great
 of Rich
 June 18
 of the
 Durling
 Napoleo
 was mar
 were su
 and ma
 day, 18
 Bras an
 was not
² Brun
 William
 fell at C
 advance
 His fath
 in this s

And Ardennes⁷ waves above them her green leaves,
 Dewy with Nature's tear-drops, as they pass,
 Grieving, if aught 'inanimate e'er grieves,
 Over the unreturning brave—alas!
 Ere evening to be trodden like the grass,
 Which now beneath them, but above shall grow
 In its next verdure, when this fiery mass
 Of living 'valour, rolling on the foe,
 And burning with high hope, shall moulder cold and low.

Last noon beheld them full of lusty life;
 Last eve in beauty's circle proudly gay;
 The midnight brought the signal-sound of strife;
 The morn, the 'marshalling in arms; the day,
 Battle's magnificently stern array!
 The thunder-clouds close o'er it, which,⁸ when rent,
 The Earth is covered thick with other clay,
 Which her own clay shall cover,—heaped and pent,
 Rider and horse, friend, foe, in one red burial 'blent!

LORD BYRON (1788-1824).

alarm'ing, warn'ng.
 blent, mix'gled.
 fes'tival, ban'quet.
 impet'uous, tu'r'lous.
 inan'imate, life'less.
 instils', pours in.
 knell, death'-sgnal.

love'liness, beau'ty.
 mar'shalling, array'ng.
 mem'ory, recollec'tion.
 mountaineers', high-
 landers.
 mus'tering, assem'bling.
 prophet'ic, portent'ous.

repeat', return'.
 rev'elry, festivity.
 unconfined', unbound'ed.
 val'our, cour'age.
 ven'geance, revenge'ful-
 ness.
 volup'tuous, deli'cious.

¹ Belgium's capital—Brussels, where a great ball was given by the Duchess of Richmond, on the night of the 15th June 1815, which was attended by many of the officers of the allied armies. During the evening, news arrived that Napoleon had crossed the frontier, and was marching on Brussels. The officers were summoned from the ball-room, and marched before daybreak. Next day, 16th June, engagements at *Quatre-Bras* and *Ligny* were fought. *Waterloo* was not fought till the 18th.

² Brunswick's fated chieftain.—William-Frederick, Duke of Brunswick, fell at *Quatre-Bras*, when leading the advanced guard of Wellington's army. His father, to whom allusion is made in this stanza, was a great general, and

was killed at the battle of Auerstädt in 1806.

³ Mutual eyes—eyes exchanging loving or sympathetic looks.

⁴ "Cameron's gathering"—theibroch or war-note of the Cameron Highlanders (79th regiment), raised by Allan Cameron of Erroch in 1793. It is called "The war-note of Lochiel," because the Camerons of Lochiel were the chiefs of their clan. The reference in "Heard, too, have her Saxon foes," is made to the part taken by the Camerons on more than one occasion in support of the Stuarts.

⁵ Al'byn's hills—the Highlands of Scotland.

⁶ Evan's, Donald's fame.—Sir Evan Cameron of Lochiel, who was remark-

able for his personal valour and his integrity, fought under Claverhouse at Killiecrankie (1689). On his death in 1719, he was succeeded by his grandson Donald. The latter was the first to join the standard of the young Pretender in 1745. He was severely wounded at Culloden (1746). He afterwards escaped to France with Prince Charles Edward, entered the French service, and died abroad in 1748.

⁷ Ar'dennes.—The wood of Soignies, which lies between Waterloo and Brus-

sels, is supposed to be a remnant of the Forest of Ardenne, which traversed the hilly region so called in the south of Belgium. The Forest of Ardenne is famous as the imaginary scene of Shakespeare's *As You Like It*.

⁸ Which.—This word has no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence. The phrase is plainly an imitation of the Latin construction called the ablative absolute; but the English equivalent of that is, "which being rent."

THE SLAVE'S DREAM.

BESIDE the ungathered rice he lay, his sickle in his hand ;
His breast was bare, his 'matted hair was buried in the sand.
Again, in the mist and shadow of sleep, he saw his native land.

Wide through the 'landscape of his dreams the lordly Niger¹
flowed ;

Beneath the palm-trees on the plain once more a king he strode,
And heard the tinkling 'caravans descend the mountain-road.

He saw once more his dark-eyed queen among her children stand ;
They clasped his neck, they kissed his cheeks, they held him by
the hand !—

A tear burst from the sleeper's lids, and fell into the sand.

And then at 'furious speed he rode along the Niger's bank ;
His bridle-reins were golden chains, and, with a 'martial clank,
At each leap he could feel his 'scabbard of steel smiting his
'stallion's flank.

Before him, like a blood-red flag, the bright flamingoes² flew ;
From morn till night he followed their flight, o'er plains where
the tamarind³ grew,
Till he saw the roofs of Caffre huts, and the ocean rose to view.

At night he heard the lion roar, and the hyena scream, [stream ;
And the river-horse, as he crushed the reeds beside some hidden
And it passed, like a 'glorious roll of drums, through the
triumph of his dream.

The f
Aud

That

He di
For d

A wor

car'ava
fet ter,
fu'rious
gl'o'riou

¹ Ni'g
Africa t
land" of
been a k

² Flam
bright s
neck an
smaller t
nearly fi

QUEST
did he dr

THE n
prepara
now inc
yet has
ments,
and sta
defence
their fo
comman
or the

The forests, with their myriad⁴ tongues, shouted of 'liberty ;
 And the blast of the desert cried aloud, with a voice so wild
 and free,
 That he started in his sleep and smiled at their 'tempestuous
 glee.

He did not feel the driver's whip, nor the burning heat of day ;
 For death had 'illuminated the land of sleep, and his lifeless
 body lay

A worn-out 'fetter that the soul had broken and thrown away.
 LONGFELLOW.

car'avans, companies of	illu'mined, light'ed.	mat'ted, tan'gled.
fet'ter, chain [trav'ellers.	land'scape, scene.	scab'bard, sheath.
fu'rious, wild.	lib'erty, free'dom.	stal'ion, horse [ous.
glo'rious, grand.	mar'tial, war'like.	tempest'u'ous, bois'ter-

¹ Ni'ger, the great river in Western Africa flowing through the "native land" of the slave, where he had once been a king.

² Flamin'go, a web-footed bird, of a bright scarlet colour, with very long neck and legs. Though its body is smaller than that of the stork, it stands nearly five feet high. It inhabits the

warm regions of Asia, Africa, and America. [Lat. *flamma*, flame.]

³ Tam'arind, a tropical pod-bearing tree, prized for its rich fruit and pleasant shade; *lit.* the Indian date. [It. *tamarindo*; Arab. *tamr hindt*, Indian dates.]

⁴ Myr'iad, countless; *lit.* ten thousand. [Gr. *myrioi*, ten thousand.]

QUESTIONS.—Where was the slave lying? What had he once been? What did he dream? How did the dream end?

THE SIEGE OF TORQUILSTONE.

PART I.

THE noise within the castle, 'occasioned by the defensive preparations, which had been considerable for some time, now increased into tenfold bustle and clamour. The heavy yet hasty step of the men-at-arms 'traversed the battlements, or resounded on the narrow and winding passages and stairs which led to the various bartisans¹ and points of defence. The voices of the knights were heard 'animating their followers, or directing means of defence, while their commands were often drowned in the clashing of armour, or the 'clamorous shouts of those whom γ addressed.

‘Tremendous as these sounds were, and yet more terrible from the awful event which they presaged, there was a sublimity mixed with them which Rebecca’s high-toned mind could feel even in that moment of terror. Her eye kindled, although the blood fled from her cheeks; and there was a strong mixture of fear with a thrilling sense of the sublime as she repeated, half whispering to herself, half speaking to her companion, the sacred text—“The quiver rattleth—the glittering spear and the shield—the noise of the captains and the shouting!”

But Ivanhoe was, like the war-horse of that sublime passage, glowing with impatience at his own inactivity, and with an ardent desire to mingle in the affray of which these sounds were the introduction. “If I could but drag myself,” he said, “to yonder window, that I might see how this brave game is like to go;—if I had but bow to shoot a shaft, or battle-axe to strike were it but a single blow for our deliverance! It is in vain—it is in vain; I am alike nerveless and weaponless!”

“Fret not thyself, noble knight,” answered Rebecca; “the sounds have ceased of a sudden—it may be they join not battle.”

“Thou knowest naught of it,” said Wilfred impatiently. “This dead pause only shows that the men are at their posts on the walls, and expecting an instant attack. What we have heard was but the distant muttering of the storm—it will burst anon in all its fury. Could I but reach yonder window!”

“Thou wilt but injure thyself by the attempt, noble knight,” replied his attendant. Observing his extreme solicitude, she firmly added, “I myself will stand at the lattice,² and describe to thee as I can what passes without.”

“You must not—you shall not!” exclaimed Ivanhoe. “Each lattice, each aperture, will be soon a mark for the archers; some random shaft—”

“It shall be welcome,” murmured Rebecca, as with firm

pace
dow
“I
no m
death
occasi
ler, a
may b
Fol
of Iv
large
part o
hersel
castle,
assail
tion v
for th
main
beyond
a view
‘medit
It v
streng
which
Bœuf,
from t
taken,
main l
the out
of the
palisad
men p
enterta
muster
to the
selected
(411)

pace she ascended two or three steps which led to the window of which they spoke.

"Rebecca! dear Rebecca!" exclaimed Ivanhoe, "this is no maiden's pastime—do not expose thyself to wounds and death, and render me for ever miserable for having given occasion; at least cover thyself with yonder ancient 'buckler, and show as little of thy person at the lattice as may be."

Following with wonderful 'promptitude the directions of Ivanhoe, and availing herself of the protection of the large ancient shield, which she placed against the lower part of the window, Rebecca, with tolerable 'security to herself, could witness part of what was passing without the castle, and report to Ivanhoe the preparations which the assailants were making for the storm. Indeed the situation which she thus obtained was 'peculiarly favourable for this purpose; because, being placed on an angle of the main building, Rebecca could not only see what passed beyond the 'precincts of the castle, but could also command a view of the outwork likely to be the first object of the 'meditated assault.

It was an exterior fortification of no great height or strength, intended to protect the postern³ gate, through which Cedric had been recently dismissed by Front-de-Beuf.⁴ The castle moat⁵ divided this species of barbican⁶ from the rest of the fortress; so that, in case of its being taken, it was easy to cut off the 'communication with the main building by withdrawing the 'temporary bridge. In the outwork was a sally-port,⁷ corresponding to the postern of the castle; and the whole was surrounded by a strong palisade.⁸ Rebecca could observe, from the number of men placed for the defence of this post, that the besieged entertained 'apprehensions for its safety; and from the mustering of the assailants in a direction nearly opposite to the outwork, it seemed no less plain that it had been selected as a 'vulnerable point of attack.

These appearances she hastily communicated to Ivanhoe, and added, "The skirts of the wood seem lined with archers, although only a few are advanced from its dark shadow."

"Under what banner?" asked Ivanhoe.

"Under no 'ensign of war which I can observe," answered Rebecca.

"A singular 'novelty," muttered the knight, "to advance to storm such a castle without pennon or banner displayed!—Seest thou who they be who act as leaders?"

"A knight clad in sable armour is the most 'conspicuous," said the Jewess. "He alone is armed from head to heel, and seems to assume the direction of all around him."

"What 'device does he bear on his shield?" replied Ivanhoe.

"Something 'resembling a bar of iron and a padlock, painted blue on the black shield."

"A fetterlock and shacklebolt azure,"^o said Ivanhoe. "I know not who may bear the device, but well I ween it might now be mine own. Canst thou not see the motto?"

"Scarce the device itself at this distance," replied Rebecca; "but when the sun glances fair upon his shield, it shows as I tell you."

"Seem there no other leaders?" exclaimed the 'anxious inquirer.

"None of mark and 'distinction that I can behold from this station," said Rebecca; "but, doubtless, the other side of the castle is also 'assailed. They appear even now preparing to advance.....What a dreadful sight! Those who advance first bear huge shields, and defences made of plating; the others follow, bending their bows as they come on. They raise their bows!".....

Her description was here suddenly 'interrupted by the signal for assault, which was given by the blast of a shrill bugle, and at once answered by a flourish of the Norman

trun
deep
drum
enem
din, t
land!
battle

It
be dec
met l
besieg
to the
'appro
that r
part o

By
sharp
individ
embras
every
post o
tained
and sev

"An
claimec
or deat
the win
are not
more, a

an'imati
anx'ious,
ap'erture
apprehen
appro'pri
assailed,
augment'
buck'ler,
clam'orous

trumpets from the battlements, which, mingled with the deep and hollow clang of the makers (a species of kettle-drum), retorted in notes of defiance the challenge of the enemy. The shouts of both parties augmented the fearful din, the assailants crying, "St. George for merry England!" and the Normans answering them with their battle-cries.

It was not, however, by clamour that the contest was to be decided, and the desperate efforts of the assailants were met by an equally vigorous defence on the part of the besieged. The archers, trained by their woodland pastimes to the most effective use of the long-bow, shot—to use the appropriate phrase of the time—so "wholly together," that no point at which a defender could show the least part of his person escaped their cloth-yard shafts.

By this heavy discharge, which continued as thick and sharp as hail, while, notwithstanding every arrow had its individual aim, they flew by scores together against each embrasure¹⁰ and opening in the parapet,¹¹ as well as at every window where a defender either occasionally had post or might be suspected to be stationed—by this sustained discharge two or three of the garrison were slain, and several others wounded.

"And I must lie here like a bed-ridden monk!" exclaimed Ivanhoe, "while the game that gives me freedom or death is played out by the hands of others. Look from the window once again, kind maiden; but beware that you are not marked by the archers beneath. Look out once more, and tell me if they yet advance to the storm."

animating, encouraging
anxious, eager.
aperture, opening.
apprehensions, fears.
appropriate, proper.
assailed, attacked.
augmented, increased.
buckler, shield.
clamorous, noisy.

communication, con-
mencement.
conspicuous, prominent
deliverance, freedom.
desperate, stupendous.
device, emblem.
distinction, particular-
en sign, standard. [ity.
impatience, fretfulness.

instant, immediate.
interrupted, broken off.
meditated, intended.
novelty, new custom.
occasioned, caused.
peculiarly, singularly.
precincts, boundaries.
presaged, foretold.
promptitude, readiness.

ran'dom, chance.
resem'bling, like.
retort'ed, answered.
secu'rity, safe'ty.

soliçi'tude, anx'iety.
sublim'ity, gran'deur.
suspect'ed, supposed'.
tem'porary, prov'isional.

trav'ersed, crossed.
tremen'dous, terrif'ic.
vig'orous, energe'tic.
vul'nerable, weak.

¹ Bar'tisan, a small overhanging turret projecting from the angle of a tower or wall.

² Lat'tice, the framework of laths or bars with which the window was filled.

³ Post'ern gate—back or private gate. [Lat. *post*, after.]

⁴ Front-de-Bœuf: pronounce *Fron-de-Bœuf*.

⁵ Moat, a trench surrounding a castle; often filled with water.

⁶ Bar'bican, an outwork or detached fort, defending the entrance to a castle.

⁷ Sal'y-port, a port or gate through which the garrison made *sallies*, or sudden attacks on the besiegers.

⁸ Palisade', a fence formed of stakes pointed at the top.

⁹ A fet'terlock and shac'klebolt a'zure.—This is what Rebecca called "a bar of iron and a padlock painted blue," translated into the language of heraldry by Ivanhoe. *Fetterlocks* were fastened on the feet, *shacklebolts* on the wrists. *Azure* indicates that the device was painted blue; and it was on a black ground—*field-sable*, as Ivanhoe afterwards expresses it.

¹⁰ Embra'sure, loop-hole through which arrows were shot; now an opening in a wall through which cannon are fired.

¹¹ Par'apet, the wall which screened the soldiers of the garrison from the besiegers; *lit.* a breast-work; a work of earth or stone rising breast-high.

QUESTIONS.—Why was Ivanhoe unable to witness the assault? Who was tending him in prison? How was he made aware of what went on? What point was expected to be attacked first? What separated the barbican from the fortress? Who was the most conspicuous of the besiegers? What was the device upon his shield?

THE SIEGE OF TORQUILSTONE.

PART II.

WITH patient courage, strengthened by the interval which she had employed in mental devotion, Rebecca again took post at the lattice; sheltering herself, however, so as not to be visible from beneath.

"What dost thou see, Rebecca?" again demanded the wounded knight.

"Nothing but the cloud of arrows flying so thick as to dazzle mine eyes, and to hide the bowmen who shoot them."

"That cannot endure," said Ivanhoe. "If they press not right on to carry the castle by pure force of arms, the archery may avail but little against stone walls and bul-

warks. Look for the Knight of the Fetterlock, fair Rebecca, and see how he bears himself; for as the leader is, so will his followers be."

"I see him not," said Rebecca.

"Foul craven!" exclaimed Ivanhoe; "does he blench from the helm when the wind blows highest?"

"He blenches not! he blenches not!" said Rebecca; "I see him now. He leads a body of men close under the outer barrier of the barbican. They pull down the piles and palisades; they hew down the barriers with axes. His high black plume floats abroad over the throng, like a raven over the field of the slain. They have made a breach in the barriers—they rush in—they are thrust back! Front-de-Bœuf heads the defenders; I see his gigantic form above the press. They throng again to the breach, and the pass is disputed hand to hand, and man to man. It is like the meeting of two fierce tides—the conflict of two oceans moved by adverse winds!"

She turned her head from the lattice, as if unable longer to endure a sight so terrible.

"Look forth again, Rebecca," said Ivanhoe, "mistaking the cause of her retiring; "the archery must in some degree have ceased, since they are now fighting hand to hand. Look again; there is now less danger."

Rebecca again looked forth, and almost immediately exclaimed, "Ah! Front-de-Bœuf and the Black Knight fight hand to hand in the breach, amid the roar of their followers, who watch the progress of the strife—Heaven strike with the cause of the oppressed and of the captive!" She then uttered a loud shriek, and exclaimed, "He is down!—he is down!"

"Who is down?" cried Ivanhoe; "tell me which has fallen."

"The Black Knight," answered Rebecca, faintly; then instantly shouted, with joyful eagerness—"But no!—but no!—he is on foot again, and fights as if there were twenty

men's strength in his single arm. His sword is broken!—he snatches an axe from a yeoman—he presses Front-de-Bœuf with blow on blow. The giant stoops and totters like an oak under the steel of the woodman—he falls!—he falls!”

“Front-de-Bœuf?” exclaimed Ivanhoe.

“Front-de-Bœuf!” answered the Jewess. “His men rush to the rescue, headed by the haughty Templar—their united force compels the champion to pause—they drag Front-de-Bœuf within the walls.”

“The assailants have won the barriers, have they not?” said Ivanhoe.

“They have!—they have!” exclaimed Rebecca; “and they press the besieged hard upon the outer wall. Some plant ladders, some swarm like bees, and endeavour to ascend on the shoulders of each other. Down go stones, beams, and trunks of trees upon their heads; and as fast as they bear the wounded to the rear, fresh men supply their places in the assault. Great God! hast thou given men thine own image that it should be thus cruelly defaced by the hands of their brethren?”

“Think not of that,” said Ivanhoe; “this is no time for such thoughts. Who yield?—who push their way?”

“The ladders are thrown down,” replied Rebecca, shuddering; “the soldiers lie grovelling under them like crushed reptiles—the besieged have the better.”

“Ah!” exclaimed the knight; “do the false yeomen give way?”

“No!” exclaimed Rebecca; “they bear themselves right yeomanly. The Black Knight approaches the postern with his huge axe; the thundering blows which he deals,—you may hear them above all the din and shouts of the battle. Stones and beams are hailed down on the bold champion—he regards them no more than if they were thistle-down or feathers!”

“Ha!” said Ivanhoe, raising himself joyfully on his

couch, "methought there was but one man in England² that might do such a deed!"

"The postern gateshakes," continued Rebecca; "it crashes—it is 'splintered by his blows—they rush in—the outwork is won! O God!—they hurl the defenders from the battlements—they throw them into the moat. O men, if ye be indeed men, spare them that can resist no longer!"

"The bridge—the bridge which communicates with the castle—have they won that pass?" exclaimed Ivanhoe.

"No," replied Rebecca; "the Templar has 'destroyed the plank on which they crossed. A few of the defenders have escaped with him into the castle—the shrieks and cries which you hear tell the fate of the others. Alas! I see it is even more 'difficult to look upon victory than upon battle."

"What do they now, maiden?" said Ivanhoe; "look forth yet again—this is no time to faint at bloodshed."

"It is over for the time," answered Rebecca. "Our friends 'strengthen themselves within the outwork which they have mastered; and it affords them so good a shelter from the foemen's shot, that the garrison only 'bestow a few bolts on it from time to time, as if rather to 'disquiet than 'effectually to injure them."

"Our friends," said Wilfred, "will surely not 'abandon an 'enterprise so gloriously begun and so happily attained. Oh, no! I will put my faith in the good knight whose axe hath rent heart-of-oak and bars of iron. Singular," he again muttered to himself, "if there be two who can do a deed of such *derringdo*!³ A fetterlock and shackle-bolt on a field-sable—what may that mean?⁴ Seest thou naught else, Rebecca, by which the Black Knight may be 'distinguished?"

"Nothing," said the Jewess; "all about him is black as the wing of the night raven. Nothing can I spy that can mark him further;—but having once seen him put forth his strength in battle, methinks I could know him again

among a thousand warriors. He rushes to the fray as if he were 'summoned to a banquet. There is more than mere strength,—there seems as if the whole soul and spirit of the champion were given to every blow which he deals upon his enemies. God forgive him the sin of bloodshed!—it is fearful, yet 'magnificent, to behold how the arm and heart of one man can triumph over hundreds."

SIR WALTER SCOTT.⁵

aban'don, give up.
ad'verse, contrary.
bar'rier, fence.
bestow', deliver.
bul'warks, ram'parts.
cham'pion, he'ro.
defaced', disfig'ured.
destroyed', bro'ken down
dif'ficult, try'ing.
disput'ed, contest'ed.

disqui'et, disturb'.
disting'uish'd, rec'og-
nised.
ea'germess, alac'rity.
effec'tually, se'riously.
endure', last.
en'terprise, advent'ure.
gigan'tic, g'ant-like.
grov'elling, pros'trate.
joy'fully, glad'y.

magnif'icent, splen'did.
mistak'ing, misunder-
stand'ing.
oppressed', afflict'ed.
shel'tering, protect'ing
shud'dering, trem'bling.
splin'tered, shat'tered.
strength'en, fortify.
sum'moned, called.
yeo'manly, brave'ly.

¹ Blench, become pale from fear; shrink. The meaning of Ivanhoe's question is, "Does he shrink from guiding the ship when the storm is at its height, and there is most need of a strong hand?"

² But one man in England.—Ivanhoe refers to King Richard I.

³ Der'ringdo, desperate valour.

⁴ What may that mean?—Ivanhoe here hints his belief that the Black Knight can be no other than King

Richard himself, whose long imprisonment has plainly suggested the badge, or cognizance, on his shield.

⁵ Sir Walter Scott, poet and novelist—born at Edinburgh in 1771—became a lawyer: chief poems, *Lay of the Last Minstrel*, *Marmion*, *The Lady of the Lake*, and *The Lord of the Isles*: author of the *Waverley Novels*: the above extract is from *Ivanhoe*, the most popular of his novels.—Lived at Abbotsford on the Tweed; died there in 1832.

QUESTIONS.—With whom did the Black Knight fight hand to hand in the breach made in the palisade? With what result? What advance did the besiegers then make? Who beat down the postern gate? What did Ivanhoe say when he heard of his valour? To whom did he refer? Why did not the besiegers reach the fortress? But what had they gained?

PENNSYLVANIA.

It was not till the year 1682 that the 'uneventful but quietly 'prosperous career of Pennsylvania¹ began. The Stuarts were again upon the throne of England. They had learned nothing from their exile; and now, with the hour of their final rejection at hand, they were as wickedly 'despotic as ever.

William Penn was the son of an admiral² who had gained victories for England, and enjoyed the favour of the royal family as well as of the eminent statesmen of his time. The highest honours of the State would in due time have come within the young man's reach, and the brightest hopes of his future were 'reasonably entertained by his friends.

To the dismay of all, Penn became a Quaker.³ It was an unspeakable 'humiliation to the well-connected admiral. He turned his son out of doors, trusting that hunger would subdue his 'intractable spirit. After a time, however, he relented, and the youthful heretic was restored to favour. His father's influence could not shield him from persecution. Penn had suffered fine, and had lain in the Tower for his opinions.

Ere long the admiral died, and Penn succeeded to his possessions. It deeply grieved him that his brethren in the faith should endure such wrongs as were continually 'inflicted upon them. He could do nothing at home to 'mitigate the severities under which they groaned. Therefore he formed the great design of leading them forth to a new world. King Charles II. had owed to the admiral a sum of £16,000 of arrears, and this doubtful 'investment had descended from the father to the son. Penn offered to take payment in land, and the king readily bestowed upon him a vast region stretching westward from the river Delaware.⁴

Here Penn proposed to found a State free and self-governing. It was his noble ambition "to show men as free and as happy as they can be." He 'proclaimed to the people already settled in his new 'dominions that they should be governed by laws of their own making. "Whatever sober and free men can reasonably desire," he told them, "for the security and 'improvement of their own happiness, I shall heartily comply with." He was as good as his word. The people appointed representatives, by

whom a Constitution was framed. Penn confirmed the arrangements which the people chose to adopt.

Penn dealt justly and kindly with the Indians, and they requited him with a reverential love such as they evinced to no other Englishman. The neighbouring colonies waged bloody wars with the Indians who lived around them—now inflicting defeats which were almost exterminating—now sustaining hideous massacres. Penn's Indians were his children and most loyal subjects. No drop of Quaker blood was ever shed by Indian hand in the Pennsylvania territory.

Soon after Penn's arrival, he invited the chief men of the Indian tribes to a conference. The meeting took place beneath a huge elm-tree. The pathless forest has long ago given way to the houses and streets of Philadelphia,⁵ but a marble monument points out to strangers the scene of this memorable interview. Penn, with a few companions, unarmed, and dressed according to the simple fashion of their sect, met the crowd of formidable savages.

They met, he assured them, as brothers "on the broad pathway of good faith and good will." No advantage was to be taken on either side. All was to be "openness and love." And Penn meant what he said. Strong in the power of truth and kindness, he bent the fierce savages of the Delaware to his will. They vowed "to live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." They kept their vow. Long years after, they were known to recount to strangers, with deep emotion, the words which Penn had spoken to them under the old elm-tree.

The fame of Penn's settlement went abroad in all lands. Men wearied with the vulgar tyranny of kings heard gladly that the reign of freedom and tranquillity was established on the banks of the Delaware. An asylum was opened "for the good and oppressed of every nation." Of these there was no lack. Pennsylvania had nothing to attract such "dissolute persons" as had laid the foundations of

V
P
as

we
ple
qu
Jac
ye
por
hur
bef
w

abl
Fri
war

asy
con
cont
desp
dim
the
domi
om'i
exte
lat

1 Pe
sylva
2 A
Sir W
Engli
from
also I
Dutch
in 167
3 Q
Frien
1650.
been g
whom
at the

Qu
Why d
State v

firm the ar-

ans, and they
they evinced
olonies waged
ound them—
erminating—
ians were his
Quaker blood
ian territory.
of men of the
g took place
has long ago
elphia,⁵ but a
scene of this
panions, un-
hion of their

on the broad
vantage was
openness and
rong in the
ce savages of
live in love
as the moon
vow. Long
angers, with
oken to them

in all lands.
heard gladly
s established
was opened
." Of these
ng to attract
andations of

Virginia.⁶ But grave and God-fearing men from all the Protestant countries sought a home where they might live as conscience taught them.

The new colony grew apace. Its natural advantages were tempting. Penn reported it as "a good land, with plentiful springs, the air clear and fresh, and an immense quantity of wild-fowl and fish;—what Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob would be well contented with." During the first year, twenty-two vessels arrived, bringing two thousand persons. In three years Philadelphia was a town of six hundred houses. It was half a century from its foundation before New York attained equal dimensions.

When Penn, after a few years, revisited England, he was able truly to relate that "things went on sweetly with Friends in Pennsylvania; that they increased finely in outward things and in wisdom."

ROBERT MACKENZIE.

asy'lum, refuge.
con'fession, interview.
contented, satisfied.
despot'ic, tyrann'ical.
dimen'sions, propor-
tions.

domin'ions, territory.
em'inent, distinguished.
exter'minating, annihilating.

for'midable, terrible.
hid'eous, dread'ful.
humilia'tion, mortifica-
tion.

improve'ment, advance-
ment.

indict'ed, imposed'.
intract'able, perverse.
invest'ment, out'lay.
mem'orable, celebrated.

mit'igate, reduce'.
proclaim'ed, announced'.
pros'perous, success'ful.
ren'ouably, warrant-
ably.

recount, repeat'.
requi'ted, reward'ed.
tempt'ing, attrac'tive.
tranquil'ity, peace.
unevent'ful, uniform.

¹ Pennsylvania, from *Penn*, and Lat. *sylvanus*, woody; from *sylva*, a wood.

² An admiral.—This was Admiral Sir William Penn, who commanded the English fleet at the taking of Jamaica from the Spaniards in 1655. He fought also in the great action in which the Dutch were defeated in 1665. He died in 1670.

³ Quāk'er, a member of the Society of Friends, founded by George Fox about 1650. The name Quakers is said to have been given to them by an English judge whom Fox had admonished to "quake at the word of the Lord."

⁴ River Delaware, flowing into Delaware Bay; which was named after Lord De la War, Governor of Virginia, who died on board ship at the mouth of the bay in 1617. (See p. 293, Note 5.)

⁵ Philadelphia, the second city of the United States in point of population. It was the capital or seat of the Congress till 1800, when Washington became the capital. The name—which originally belonged to Philadelphia in Lydia, one of the "seven churches" in Asia—means brotherly love. [Gr. *phélos*, loving; *aielphos*, a brother.]

⁶ Virginia.—See p. 198.

QUESTIONS.—In what year was Pennsylvania founded? Who was its founder? Why did his father quarrel with Penn? How did he get the land on which his State was founded? What did he proclaim to the people already settled there?

How did he deal with the Indians? Where did he hold an interview with their chiefs? What did the latter vow? For whom was Pennsylvania an asylum? How many vessels arrived during the first year? How many persons? How soon did Philadelphia become a town of six hundred houses? How long was it before New York attained equal dimensions?

THE SKY-LARK.

BIRD of the 'wilderness,
 'Blithesome and 'cumberless,
 Sweet be thy 'matin o'er 'moorland and 'lea!
 'Emblem of happiness,
 Blest is thy dwelling-place—
 O to abide in the desert with thee!

Wild is thy lay and loud,
 Far in the downy cloud;
 Love gives it 'energy, love gave it birth.
 Where, on thy dewy wing,
 Where art thou 'journeying?
 Thy lay is in heaven, thy love is on earth.

O'er 'fell and fountain 'sheen,
 O'er moor and mountain green,
 O'er the red streamer that 'heralds the day;
 Over the 'cloudlet dim,
 Over the rainbow's rim,
 Musical 'cherub, soar, singing, away!

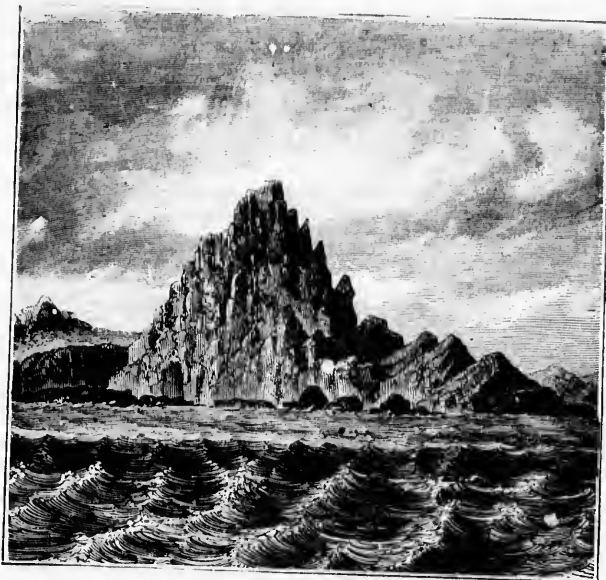
Then, when the 'gloaming comes,
 Low in the heather blooms
 Sweet will thy welcome and bed of love be!
 Emblem of happiness,
 Blest is thy dwelling-place—
 O to abide in the desert with thee!

JAMES HOGG.¹

blithe'some, spright'y.	en'ergy, strength.	lea, mead'ow.
cher'ub, an'gel.	fell, rocky hill.	mat'in, morn'ing song.
cloud'let, little cloud.	gloom'ing, twi'light.	moor'land, marsh'y
cum'berless, free from	her'alds, announc'es.	sheen, bright ground.
em'blem, to'ken. [care.	jour'neying, trav'elling.	wil'derness, des'ert.

¹ James Hogg, poet; born in Selkirkshire in 1770: he was a farmer, hence called the Ettrick Shepherd, but he was more successful as a poet; author of *The Queen's Wake*, containing the beautiful fairy ballad, "Kilmeny;" wrote also songs and novels: the friend of Scott, Wilson, and Jeffrey: died in 1835.

THE f
 where
 island
 Cape L
 pany p
 is so n
 Atlant
 covere
 off wh
 the isl
 Sele



CAPE HORN.

WEATHERING CAPE HORN.

The first introduction of my reader to the good ship *Wales*, whereby we pass to the Pacific, is as she is lying at the islands called Foul Weather Group, or the Falkland Islands.¹ Cape Horn² weather here begins, and the ship and her company put on their Cape Horn suit. This group of islands is so near the gate of the Pacific, though belonging to the Atlantic side, that an account of a ramble over the moss-covered rocks and penguin³ roosts of the uninhabited land off which we now lie is no inappropriate introduction to the island world⁴ we are just entering.

Selecting a small indentation or bight in the cliff as a

review with their
 nia an asylum?
 persons? How
 How long was it

! 'lea!

h.

lay;

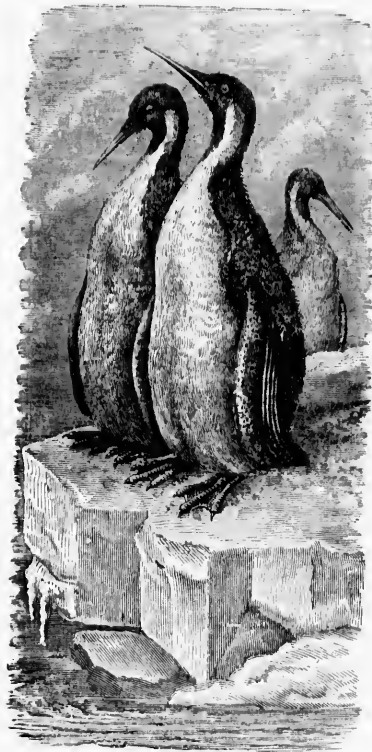
be!

JAMES HOGG.¹

ow.
 orn'ing song.
 marsh'y
 ht. ground.
 S, des'ert.

ke, containing
 , "Kilmenny;"
 s: the friend of
 : died in 1835.

landing-place, what was our surprise to find what we had thought a facing of white stone to be 'innumerable penguins, standing erect, in the rank and file of battle array,



PENGUINS.

'awkward manner 'conceivable. When going down a declivity, the centre of gravity is often thrown too far forward, and away they tumble, and scramble, and roll, till they get to the sea, in which they dive and swim with great 'celerity.

upon the 'declivity of the rocks, and occupying at least two acres, in dense columns, away back to the moss and grass !.....

To those who have never seen a picture of the penguin, it would be impossible to convey an idea by description of this odd amphibious⁵ creature. It has the head, bill, and two web-feet of a bird, and stands erect on land, sometimes two and a half or three feet in height. Penguins have no wings, nor proper feathers, but a covering 'intermediate between fur and feather, and two fins or flippers like the seal. Their motion on land is by successive hops, in the most

7
out
hur
obje
stan
of t
pen
ting
with
bird
A
day
all t
spen
off C
on t
our
escap
rema
W
Cape
than
One
witho
warfa
and th
Janei
the be
doned
A f
uncom
four o
'predo
that a
While
are su

They are often seen singly, or two or three together, far out at sea. Their cry or bark is like the inarticulate human voice; and when all is clear and calm, and no object can be seen around the horizon, it will sometimes startle and appal one, sounding as it does, from the surface of the ocean, like the cry of a man in distress. Near the penguin quarter of this island were thousands of ducks sitting upon their eggs, which sailors and passengers destroyed with remorseless cruelty, shooting and knocking down the birds by hundreds in barbarous sport.....

A month from the Falkland Islands, and this is the first day of smooth sea and warm sun we have enjoyed during all that time! Long and cold have been the days we have spent battling with the rough winds and mountainous seas off Cape Horn. Between south-west and south-east gales on the one side of the Cape, and north-west on the other, our course has been zig-zag and slow. Happily we have escaped injury, except the loss of a jib-boom,⁶ and our ship remains tight in spite of all the straining.

We congratulate ourselves on having weathered the Cape in less time than it often takes, though it was more than is sometimes the fortune of the Cape Horn navigator. One of our seamen had twice before tried the passage, but without success; and after fifty-four days of most fatiguing warfare with contrary winds, his brig opened at the bow, and the crew were compelled to put about and run for Rio Janeiro,⁷ where the damaged vessel and cargo were sold for the benefit of the underwriters,⁸ and the voyage was abandoned.

A frigate was once fifty days off the Cape; yet it is not uncommon for vessels to make the Cape once, and after four or five weeks' sailing, to make it again. Hope is predominant that our tempestuous weather is over, and that a fortnight at the utmost will bring us to port. While the inmates of the cabin, like birds after a storm, are sunning themselves on deck, let those of my readers

who purpose traversing with me the ISLAND WORLD take a leisurely survey of our first fortnight in the Pacific.

We little thought that doubling Cape Horn in summer would be so full of difficulty. Now we doubt whether it would be worse in mid-winter. It would seem as if the genii of storms ruled the realm. The ancients, had they known it, would have located the cave of Æolus⁹ at the end of Tierra del Fuego,¹⁰ in the side of one of those burning mountains. Auster¹¹ and Eurus, and Boreas and Euroclydon, and all the intermediate winds of the thirty-two points of the compass, seem to have arranged their forces so as most advantageously to dispute every inch of the way with the bold navigator.

Four other ships, which we caught sight of at different times, were contesting the passage in like manner with ourselves, through cold, and sleet, and opposing seas. All of us, we argued, cannot be baffled, and our own chance is as good as any. Patience held out with most. At every abatement of the gale, and interval of sunshine, the sailors would cheerfully hang up their sea-soaked clothes, joke over the perils of the storm, and equip themselves anew for reefing and tacking.¹²

It was truly pitiable, sometimes, at the hours for changing watches, to see the top of a sea break over the bow or quarter, and wet them all while pulling at the ropes; so that the watch just called must stay wet during their four hours of duty, and the watch going below must turn in dripping. A landsman could hardly help trembling for their safety, when they were ordered aloft to furl, while the ship was rolling so violently, and the wind blowing in such gusts of fury, that it seemed almost impossible for the topmasts and yards to sustain the shocks.

For several days we were reduced to close-reefed fore and main topsails, the ship meantime rolling so tremendously that a man incurred no small risk of broken bones who should attempt to cross the deck, or stand for a

the
a t
an
dr
an
we
nar
an
low

abar
abat
arg
arra
awk
baf
celer
com
conce
nat
congr
men
crea

¹ F
about
ated a
easter
of Sou
from
popula
sisting
Buenos
south s
ments
² Cap
Tierra
point o
³ Per
ing to
tion, se
name h
ness of
⁴ Isla
abound
stance
given to
nesos, at
⁵ Am
(411)

moment anywhere without being firmly braced, or having a rope to hold by.

We did not get sight of the 'redoubtable Cape, but were driven off to the parallel of 60°, near the South Shetlands,¹³ and afterwards made the land of Cape Desolation, on the western side of Tierra del Fuego. Discoverers have rightly named it, for we thought land had never seemed so bleak and 'desolate, snow lying between the hills and in the hollows of the mountains in this July of the South.

CHEEVER.

aban'doned, given up.
 abate'ment, mitigation.
 ar'gued, reasoned.
 arranged', disposed'.
 awk'ward, clumsy.
 baff'led, defeat'ed
 celer'ity, quick'ness.
 com'pany, pas'sengers.
 conceiv'able, imagin-
 able.
 congrat'ulate, compli-
 ment'.
 crea'ture, animal.

decliv'ity, slope.
 des'olate, lonely.
 doub'ling, sail'ing round.
 fatig'uing, exhaust'ing.
 hori'zon, sky-line.
 inappro'priate, unsuit-
 able.
 inartic'ulate, indistinct'.
 incurred', ran.
 indenta'tion, bay. [less.
 innu'merable, number-
 interme'diate, interven-
 ing.

leis'urely, deliberate.
 locat'ed, placed.
 moun'tainous, billowy.
 predom'inant, in the as-
 cendant.
 ram'ble, excursion.
 redoubt'able, formi-
 dable.
 reef'ing, taking in sail
 remorse'less, relent'less
 tempest'uous, storm'y.
 tremen'dously, fright-
 fully.

¹ Falkland Islands, a group of about two hundred small islands situated about three hundred miles from the eastern coast of Patagonia, in the south of South America, and the same distance from Tierra del Fuego. There is a population of nearly six hundred, consisting chiefly of British colonists from Buenos Ayres. Ships frequenting the south seas generally call at these settlements for fresh water and provisions.

² Cape Horn, on an island south of Tierra del Fuego, the southernmost point of the New World.

³ Pen guin, a web-footed bird belonging to the Auk family. For description, see the third paragraph. The name has reference to the extreme fatness of the birds. [Lat. *penguinis*, fat.]

⁴ Island world.—The South Pacific abounds in islands; from which circumstance the name Polynesia has been given to the region. [Gr. *polys*, many; *nēsos*, an island.]

⁵ Amphib'ious, double-lived; ca-
 (411)

pable of living both on land and in water. [Gr. *amphi*, both; *bios*, life.]

⁶ Jib-boom, the spar which is run out from the extremity of the bowsprit, to stretch the jib-sail; which is so called because it *jibs* or shifts of itself with the wind. *Boom* is the same word as *beam*.

⁷ Ri'o Janei'ro (*Reco Jānaro*), the capital of Brazil, and the largest and most important city in South America; situated on the eastern coast, on a magnificent bay.

⁸ Underwriter, one who underwrites (subscribes) a policy of insurance on a ship, or on its cargo; hence an insurer.

⁹ E'olus, the god or ruler of the winds. He had his abode in the islands to the north of Sicily, called the Lipari or E'olian Islands.

¹⁰ Tier'ra del Fue'go, a group of islands off the southern point of South America, from which it is separated by the Strait of Magellan. The name

means Land of Fire, and has reference to the volcanoes with which these islands abound.

¹¹ *Auster*, *Eu'rus*, *Bo'reas*, *Euroclydon*—classical names for the winds. *Auster* is the south wind; hence *Australia*. *Eurus* is the south-east wind. *Boreas* is the north wind; hence *hyperborean*, an inhabitant of the far north. *Euroclydon* is a tempestuous easterly wind which prevails in the Mediterranean Sea. By this wind St. Paul was shipwrecked on his voyage to

Rome (Acts xxvii. 14). [*Lat. Eurus*, Gr. *Euros*, the south-east wind; *kludōn*, a wave.]

¹² *Tack'ing*, changing the direction or *tack* in which the ship is sailing. The *tack* is properly the rope which *tacks* or fastens the lower corner of a square sail to the windward side, when sailing obliquely to the wind.

¹³ *South Shetlands*, a group of islands about five hundred miles south-east of Cape Horn, not far from the Antarctic Circle.

QUESTIONS.—What birds are found in large numbers on the Falkland Islands? On what element are penguins most at home? How do they move on land? What does their cry resemble?

ON THE DOWNFALL OF POLAND.

Oh, sacred Truth! thy triumph ceased a while,
 And Hope,¹ thy sister, ceased with thee to smile,
 When 'leagued Oppression² poured to Northern wars
 Her whiskered pandoors³ and her fierce 'hussars;
 Waved her dread standard to the breeze of morn;
 Pealed her loud drum, and twanged her trumpet-horn:
 'Tumultuous Horror brooded o'er her van;
 Presaging wrath to Poland—and to man!

Warsaw's last champion⁴ from her height 'surveyed
 Wide o'er the fields a waste of ruin laid:
 "O Heaven!" he cried, "my bleeding country save!
 Is there no hand on high to shield the brave?
 Yet, though Destruction sweep those lovely plains,
 Rise, fellow-men! our country yet 'remains!
 By that dread name we wave the sword on high!
 And swear for her to live!—with her to die!"

He said; and on the rampart-heights arrayed
 His trusty warriors,—few, but 'undismayed;
 Firm-paced, and slow, a horrid front they form,
 Still as the breeze, but dreadful as the storm;
 Low, 'murmuring sounds along their banners fly,
 "Revenge or death!"—the watchword and reply;
 Then pealed the notes, 'omnipotent to charm,
 And the loud tocsin⁶ tolled their last alarm!

atone,
 car'nag
 gen'erot
 hussars
 leagued
 mur mu
 nervele

¹ Hope
 Treasures
 work.

² Leag
 Poland h
 by civil

In vain, alas!—in vain, ye gallant few!
 From rank to rank your volleyed thunder flew:—
 Oh, bloodiest picture in the book of Time!
 Sarmatia⁶ fell, unwept, without a crime!
 Found not a 'generous friend, a 'pitying foe,
 Strength in her arms, nor mercy in her woe!
 Dropped from her 'nerveless grasp the shattered spear,
 Closed her bright eye, and curbed her high career:
 Hope, for a season, bade the world farewell.
 And Freedom 'shrieked—as KOSCIUSKO fell!

The sun went down, nor ceased the 'carnage there,—
 Tumultuous Murder shook the midnight air;
 On Prague's proud arch⁷ the fires of Ruin glow,
 His blood-dyed waters murmuring below;
 The storm prevails—the rampart yields a way—
 Bursts the wild cry of horror and dismay!
 Hark! as the 'smouldering piles with thunder fall,
 A thousand shrieks for hopeless mercy call!
 Earth shook! red meteors flashed along the sky!
 And conscious Nature 'shuddered at the cry!

Departed spirits of the mighty dead!
 Ye that at Marathon⁸ and Leuctra⁹ bled!
 Friends of the world! 'restore your swords to man,
 Fight in his sacred cause, and lead the van!
 Yet for Sarmatia's tears of blood 'atone,
 And make her arm 'puissant as your own!
 Oh! once again to Freedom's cause return
 The 'patriot TELL¹⁰—the BRUCE¹¹ of Bannockburn!

THOMAS CAMPBELL.

atone', make amends'.	omnipotent, all-powerful.	shrieked, screamed.
car'nage, slaughter.	pa'triot, lover of country	shud'dered, trem'bled.
gen'eros, kind.	pit'ying, compassionate.	smoul'dering, slowly
hussars, cav'alry.	puiss'ant, powerful.	burn'ing.
leagued, confederated.	remains', abides'.	surveyed', observed'.
mur'muring, whispering	restore', return'.	tumult'uous, tur'bulent
nerveless, fee'ble.		undismayed', fear'less.

¹ Hope.—This poem is from *The Pleasures of Hope*, Campbell's great work.

² Leagued Oppression.—In 1772, Poland having been greatly weakened by civil strife, Russia, Austria, and

Prussia formed a league for its partition. They seized one-third of Poland, and divided it among them. Over the remainder, the real authority was in the hands of a Russian envoy, resident at Warsaw, the capital. In 1793,

Russia and Prussia took advantage of the disturbed state of Europe to effect a further partition of Poland. The Poles rose in arms under Kosciusko, to recover their independence. After several successes they were defeated, and Kosciusko was taken prisoner. Warsaw was captured, and the patriots were massacred at the bridge of Praga. This led to the final partition of Poland in 1795. Campbell's poem was published in 1799. In 1832, Poland, as an independent State, was abolished, and swallowed up in Russia, by an edict of the Czar.

³ Pan'doors.—Austrian light-armed infantry; so called from Pandour, a village in Hungary.

⁴ Warsaw's last champion.—General Kosciusko, referred to in Note 2. On his accession, the Emperor Paul restored him to liberty, and handed him his sword; which Kosciusko declined, saying, "I have no more need of a sword, as I have no longer a country."

He afterwards lived abroad—chiefly in France. He died in 1817.

⁵ Toc'sin, an alarm-bell.

⁶ Sarmatia, ancient name for Poland.

⁷ Prague's proud arch.—The bridge of Praga, a town east of Warsaw (not Prague in Bohemia), where the Polish patriots were cruelly massacred.

⁸ Mar'athon, a village and plain, twenty-five miles from Athens, memorable for the defeat of the Persian hordes by the Greeks under Miltiades, B. C. 490.

⁹ Leuc'tra, a village of Bœotia in Greece, where the Thebans, under Epaminondas, shattered the power of the Spartans, B. C. 371.

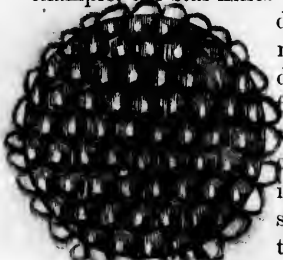
¹⁰ Tell, the national hero of Switzerland; but, like that of King Arthur in England, much, if not the whole, of his history, is now given up as mythical.

¹¹ Bruce.—Robert the Bruce, King of Scotland, who delivered his country from the English yoke at the battle of Bannockburn, A. D. 1314.

THE EYE.

PART I.

It is one of the prerogatives¹ of man to have eyes. Many living creatures have none. The eyes, which others—for example, the star-fishes—have, are mere sensitive points, dimly conscious of light and darkness, but not perceiving colours or distinguishing forms. The eyes of flies² are hard horny lanterns, which cannot be moved about like our restless eyes, but look always in the same direction; whilst spiders, having many more things to look after than one pair of such lanterns will suffice for, have eyes stuck all over their heads, and can watch a trapped gnat with one eye, and peer through a hole in their webs with another.



A FLY'S EYE (MAGNIFIED).

We are much better provided for than any of these creatures, although we have but two small orbs to see with. Think, first, how beautiful the human eye is, 'excelling in beauty the eye of every creature. The eyes of many of the lower animals are doubtless very beautiful. You must have admired the bold, fierce, bright eye of the eagle; the large, gentle, brown eye of the ox; the 'treacherous green eye of the cat, waxing and waning³ like the moon, as the sun shines upon it or deserts it; the pert eye of the sparrow; the sly eye of the fox; the peering little bead of black enamel in the mouse's head; the gem-like eye which redeems the toad from ugliness;⁴ and the 'intelligent, 'affectionate expression which looks out from the human-like eye of the horse and the dog.

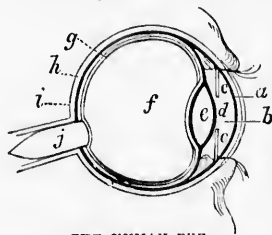
There are these and the eyes of many other animals full of beauty; there are none, indeed, which are not beautiful; but there is a glory which excelleth in the eye of man. We realize this fully only when we gaze into the faces of those we love. It is their eyes we look at when we are near them, and recall when we are far away. The face is a blank without the eye; and the eye seems to 'concentrate every feature' in itself. It is the eye that smiles, not the lips; it is the eye that listens, not the ear; it that frowns, not the brow; it that mourns, not the voice. Every sense and every 'faculty seems to flow towards it, and find expression through it—nay, to be lost in it: for all must at times have felt as if the eye of another were not his, but he; as if it had not merely a life, but also a 'personality of its own; as if it were not only a living thing, but also a thinking being.

But apart from this source of beauty, in which man's eye must excel that of all other creatures as much as his spirit excels in 'endowments theirs; it is in itself, even when life has departed from it, and the soul no longer looks through its window, a beautiful and a very wonderful thing. Its beauty is, perhaps, most 'apparent in the eye of

an infant, which, if you please, we shall suppose not dead, but only asleep with its eyes wide open. How large and round they are; how pure and pearly the white is, with but one blue vein or two marbling its surface; how beautiful the rainbow ring, opening its 'mottled circle wide to the light!

How sharply defined the pupil,⁵ so black and yet so clear, that you look into it as into some deep, dark well, and see a little face look back at you, which you forget is your own, whilst you rejoice that the days are not yet come for those infant eyes when "they that look out of the windows shall be darkened"! And then, the soft pink curtains which we call eyelids, with their long silken fringes of eyelashes, and the unshed tears bathing and brightening all! How 'exquisite the whole! How 'precious in the sight of God must those little orbs be, when he has 'bestowed upon them so much beauty!

But apart altogether from that beauty which delights the painter, the human eye is a wondrous construction. Let us glance for a moment at its wonderfulness.



THE HUMAN EYE.

- a. Cornea.
- b. Aqueous humour.
- c. Iris.
- d. Pupil.
- e. Crystalline lens.
- f. Vitreous humour.
- g. Retina.
- h. Choroid.
- i. Sclerotic coat.
- j. Optic nerve.

It is 'essentially a hollow globe, or small 'spherical chamber. There is no human chamber like it in form, unless we include among human dwelling-places the great hollow balls which 'surmount the Cathedral or Basilica Domes of St. Peter's and St. Paul's.

The eye is such a ball. The larger part of it, which we do not see when we look in each other's faces, forms the white of the eye, and consists of a strong, thick, tough 'membrane, something like parchment, but

more pliable. This forms the outer wall, as it were, of the chamber of the eye. It may be compared to the cup of an acorn; or to a still more familiar thing, an egg-cup; or to a round wine-glass with a narrow stem. It is strong, so that it cannot easily be injured; thick, so that light cannot pass through it; and round, so that it can be moved about in every direction, and let us see much better on all sides with a single pair of eyes than the spider can with its host of them.

In the front of the eye is a clear, transparent window,⁶ exactly like the glass of a watch. If you look at a face sideways, you see it projecting with a bent surface like a bow-window, and may observe its perfect transparency. The eyelids, which I formerly described as curtains, may perhaps be better compared to a pair of outside shutters for this window, which are put up when we go to sleep, and taken down when we awake.

But these shutters are not useless, or merely ornamental, during the day. Every moment they are rising and falling; or, as we say, winking. We do this so unceasingly, that we forget that we do it at all. But the object of this unconscious winking is a very important one. An outside window soon gets soiled and dirty; and a careful shop-keeper cleans his windows every morning. But our eye-windows must never have so much as a speck or spot upon them; and the winking eyelid is the busy apprentice who, not once a day, but all the day, keeps the living glass clean: so that, after all, we are nearly as well off as the fishes, who bathe their eyes and wash their faces every moment.

Behind this ever-clean window, and at some distance from it, hangs that beautiful circular curtain which forms the coloured part of the eye, and in the centre of which is the pupil. It is named the iris,⁷ which is only another name for the rainbow; for though we speak of eyes as simply blue, or gray, or black, because they have one pre-

vailing tint, we cannot fail to notice that the ring of the eye is always variously mottled, and flecked or streaked with colours as the rainbow is.

This rainbow curtain, or iris, answers the same purpose which a Venetian blind does.⁸ Like it, it can be opened and closed at intervals; and like it, it never is closed altogether. But it is a much more wonderful piece of mechanism than a Venetian blind, and it opens and closes in a different way.

There is nothing this iris so much resembles, both in shape and in mode of action, as that much-loved flower, the daisy.⁹ The name signifies 'literally day's eye; the flower which opens its eye to the day, or when the day dawns. Shakespeare, who saw all 'analogies, referring to the similar action of the marigold,¹⁰ in the morning song in *Cymbeline*,¹¹ tells how

"Winking Mary-buds begin
To ope their golden eyes."

The daisy and the iris agree in this, that their opening and closing are determined by their exposure to light or darkness: but they differ in this, that the daisy opens widest when the sun is at its height, and shuts altogether when the sun goes down; whilst the iris opens widest in utter darkness, and closes so as to make the pupil a mere black point when sunshine falls upon it.

If we wish to observe this in our own eyes, we need only close them for a little while before a looking-glass, so that the dropped eyelids may shut out the day, when, like shy night-birds, the living circles will stretch outwards; and the pupil of the eye, like a hole which the sun is melting in the ice, will quickly widen into a deep clear pool. If now we open our eyes, we see the rainbow-rings contract¹² as the light falls upon them, and the dark pupil rapidly narrow, like the well-head of a spring almost sealed by the frost.

But 'probably all have seen the movement I am describ-

ing
spic
iris
picio
bask
betw
pupi
spar
TH
the
their
Whe
the
cryst

affec'ti
anal'og
appa'r
appren
bestow
cir'cula
compar
concent
fo'cus.
conspic
deter'm
endow'i
essen'ti
exam'pl
excel'lin

¹ Prerog
voting b
tivous, ash
or opinio
ask. l

² The
composed
eyes, so p
ferent dire
there are f
eyes!

³ Waxi
larger and
wane is lit

⁴ Redeem
—Shakesp

ing in the eyes of a cat, where the change is more conspicuous than in our own eyes; and have noticed the broad iris spread out in twilight, till the look, usually so suspicious, softened into a mild glance; whilst when pussy is basking in the sun, as she dearly loves to do, she shows between her frequent winkings only a narrow slit for a pupil, like the chink of a shutter, or the space between the spars of a lattice-blind.

The endless motions of this living curtain, which, like the unresting sea, is ever changing its aspect, have for their object the regulation of the flow of light into the eye. When the permitted number of rays have passed through the guarded entrance, or pupil, they traverse certain crystal-like structures, which are now to be described.

affectionate, lov'ing.
analogies, comparisons.
apparent, manifest.
apprentice, assistant.
bestowed, expended.
circular, round.
compared, likened.
concentrate, bring to a focus.
conspicuous, obvious.
determined, regulated.
endowments, talents.
essentially, fundamental.
example, instance, ally.
excelling, surpassing.

exposure, subjection.
exquisite, perfect.
faculty, mental power.
familiar, well known.
intelligent, thoughtful.
literally, radically.
mechanism, machinery.
membrane, tissue.
mottled, variegated.
ornamental, decorative.
permitted, allowed.
personality, individuality.
pliable, easily bent.
precious, valuable.

prevailing, general.
probably, likely.
projecting, jut'ing out.
provided, furnished.
rapidly, quick'ly.
regulation, control.
restless, rōving.
sensitive, susceptible.
spherical, globular.
surmount, rise above.
suspicious, distrustful.
traverse, cross.
treacherous, faithless.
unceasingly, constantly
unresting, ever-moving.

¹ Prerogative, privilege, *lit.* right of voting before others. [Lat. *prærogativus*, asked before others (for a vote or opinion): from *præ*, before; *rogō*, I ask.]

² The eyes of flies.—A fly's eye is composed of a great number of little eyes, so placed as to look in many different directions. In each of a fly's eyes there are four thousand of these smaller eyes!

³ Waxing and waning—growing larger and smaller in apparent size. To *wane* is *lit.* to grow *wan*, pale, weak.

⁴ Redeems the toad from ugliness.

—Shakespeare, who extracted poetry

from the commonest objects in nature, says:—

"Sweet are the uses of adversity,
Which, like the toad, ugly and venomous,

Wears yet a precious jewel in his head."

⁵ The pupil—the dark spot in the centre of the eye. So called from the "little face" which you see in it whenever you examine it. [Lat. *pupillus*, a little boy.]

⁶ Transparent window—called the *cornea*, being tough and horn-like. [Lat. *cornu*, horn.]

⁷ The iris—the coloured ring which

surrounds the pupil, and serves the purpose of a curtain. [Lat. *iris*, the rainbow.]

⁸ Venetian blind—a window-blind, consisting of thin plates of wood set transversely in a frame, or hung in bands. The blind is closed by the plates overlapping one another.

⁹ Daisy, *lit.* day's eye, a corruption of the Old Eng. *derges edge*. Chaucer says:—

"That well by reason men call it may
The *deisie*, or else the *eye of day*."

¹⁰ Marigold, the golden flower dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*.

¹¹ *Cym'beline*, one of Shakespeare's plays.

¹² The rainbow-rings contract.— This explains also why, if we pass suddenly from a light room into a dark one, we are at first blinded completely, but by-and-by begin to distinguish objects around us. We pause for a moment till the iris has adapted itself to the amount of light in the room. Similarly, if we return suddenly to the light room, we are bewildered by the amount of light which the enlarged pupil admits, and do not feel comfortable till the iris has again contracted itself.

QUESTIONS.—What is peculiar in the eyes of flies and spiders? Mention some of the lower animals that have beautiful eyes. Why does the eye of man excel all these? When is its beauty most apparent? What part of it looks like a deep, dark well? What do you always see in it? What is the shape of the whole organ as it exists in the head? Of what does the larger part of it consist? What is there in front of the eye? What purposes do the eyelids serve? What is the iris? What purpose does it serve? What flower does it much resemble? With what great difference? How may we observe the contracting of the iris? In what animal are its changes most perceptible?

THE EYE.

PART II.

BEHIND the iris is a lens,¹ as opticians call it, or 'magnifying-glass. We are most familiar with this portion of the eye as it occurs in fishes, looking in the recently-caught creature like a small ball of glass, and changing into what resembles a ball of chalk, when the fish is boiled. This lens is enclosed in a transparent covering, which is so united at its edges to the walls of the eye that it stretches like a piece of 'crystal between them; and in front of it, filling the space dividing the lens from the watch-glass-like window, is a clear, transparent liquid,² like water, in which the iris floats.

Further: the lens is set like the jewel-stone of a ring, in what looks, when seen 'detached, like a larger sphere of crystal; but which in reality is a translucent³ liquid contained in an equally translucent membrane: so that the

greater part of the eye is 'occupied with fluid; and the chamber, after all, which it most resembles is that of a diving-bell full of water.

Lastly: all the back part of the eye has spread over its inside surface, first a thin white membrane,⁴ resembling cambric or tissue paper, and behind that a dark curtain;⁵ so that it resembles a room with black cloth hung next to the wall, and a white muslin curtain spread over the cloth. The latter curtain, or retina, seen alone, is like a flower-cup, such as that of a white lily; and, like it, ends in a stem, which anatomists⁶ name the optic nerve. The stem, in its turn, after passing through the black curtain, is planted in the brain, and is in living 'connection with it.

Altogether, then, our eye is a chamber shaped like a globe, having one large window, provided with shutters outside, and with a self-adjusting blind within. For the rest, it is filled with a glassy liquid, and has two wall papers, or curtains, one white and the other black.

How small this eye-chamber is we all know; but it is large enough. A single tent sufficed to lodge Napoleon; and Nelson guided the fleets of England from one little cabin. And so it is with the eye: it is set apart for the 'reception of one guest, whose name is Light, but also Legion; and as the 'privileged entrant counsels, the great arms and limbs of the body are set in motion.

Within our eyes, at every instant, a picture of the outer world is painted by the pencil of the Sun, on the white curtain at the back of the eye; and when it has 'impressed us for a moment, the black curtain 'absorbs and blots out the picture, and the Sun paints a new one, which in its turn is blotted out; and so the process goes on all the day long.

What a strange thing this is! We speak of seeing things held before our eyes, as if the things themselves pressed in upon us, and thrust themselves into the presence of our spirits. But it is not so. You no more, any one of you, see my face at this moment, than you ever

saw your own. You have looked at times into a mirror, and seen a something, beautiful or otherwise, which you have 'regarded as your face: yet it was but the reflection from a piece of glass you saw; and whether the glass dealt fairly with you or not you cannot tell; but this is certain, your own face you have never beheld.

And as little do you see mine. Some hundred portraits of me, no two the same, are at this moment hanging, one on the back wall of each of your eye-chambers. It is these portraits you see, not me. And I see none of you, but only certain 'likenesses, two for each of you, a right-eye portrait and a left-eye portrait, both very hasty and withal 'inaccurate sketches. And so it is with the whole visible world. It is far off from us when it seems nearest. Darkness abolishes it altogether. The mid-day sun but 'interprets it; and we know it not in the original, but only in translation.

Face to face we shall never meet this visible world, or gaze eye to eye upon it. We know only its picture, and cannot tell whether that is faithful or not; but it cannot be altogether faithless, and we must accept it, as we do the 'transmitted portraits of relatives we have never seen, or the 'sculptured heads of men who died ages before us. On those we gaze, not 'distrusting them, yet not altogether confiding in them; and we must treat the outward world in the same way.

What a strange interest thus attaches to that little darkened chamber of the eye! Into it the sun and the stars, the earth and the ocean, the glory and the terror of the universe, enter upon the wings of light, and demand 'audience of the soul. And from its 'mysterious abiding-place the soul comes forth, and in twilight they 'commune together. No one but HE who made them can gaze upon the unveiled majesty of created things. We could not look upon them and live; and therefore it is that here we see all things "through [or rather in] a glass darkly," and are

perm
diml
Th
mom
'atm
milli
by it
fied v
less I
furth
An
futu
midn
the s
suns
are sl
'imm
their
Ho
light,
we do
will e
be nu
distan
we 'a
in the

absorbs
acquire
assur'e
at mosp
an' dien
commu
concept
connec
ca'tion
crys tal
Lens
transpar
outwards

permitted only to gaze upon their shadows in one small, dimly-lighted chamber.....

The eye so triumphs over space, that it traverses in a moment the boundless ocean which stretches beyond our 'atmosphere, and takes home to itself stars which are millions of miles away ; and so far is it from being fatigued by its flight, that, as the wise king⁷ said, It "is not satisfied with seeing." Our only physical 'conception of limitless Infinity is derived from the longing of the eye to see further than the furthest star.

And its empire over time is scarcely less bounded. The future it cannot pierce ; but our eyes are never lifted to the midnight heavens without being visited by light which left the stars from which it comes untold centuries ago ; and suns which had burned out, æons⁸ before Adam was created, are shown to us as the blazing orbs which they were in those 'immeasurably distant ages, by beams which have 'survived their source through all that time.

How far we can thus glance backwards along a ray of light, and literally gaze into the deepest recesses of time, we do not know ; and as little can we tell how many ages will elapse after our sun's torch is 'quenched, before he shall be numbered among lost stars by dwellers in the sun most distant from us ; yet 'assuredly it is through the eye that we 'acquire our most vivid conception of what Eternity, in the sense of unbeginning and unending time, may mean.

GEORGE WILSON.⁹

absorbs', sucks in.
acquire', obtain'.
assur'edly, certainly.
at'mosphere, air-ocean.
au'dience, hearing.
commu'ne, converse'.
concep'tion, notion.
connec'tion, communi-
ca'tion.
cry'stal, fine glass.

detached', sep'arated.
distrust'ing, doubt'ing.
immeas'urably, incal'-
culably.
impressed', engaged'.
inac'curate, incorrect'.
inter'prets, translates'.
like'nesses, por'traits.
mag'nifying, enlarg'ing.
myste'rious, hid'den.

oc'cupied, filled.
priv'ileged, fa'voured.
quenched, extin'guished.
recep'tion, admis'sion.
regard'ed, consid'ered.
resem'bles, looks like.
sculp'tured, carved.
survived', outlived'.
transmit'ted, handed
down.

⁷ Lens, a piece of crystal or other transparent substance, convex (curved outwards) on one or both sides. The

glasses of spectacles and of telescopes are lenses. Lenses are so called from their resemblance in shape to *lentil*

seeds. This lens in the eye is called the *crystalline lens*.

¹ *Transparent liquid*, called the *aqueous humour*.

² *Translucent*, transmitting light. [Lat. *trans*, across; *luc*, *lucis*, light.] This liquid is called the *vitreous humour*, from its resemblance to melted glass. [Lat. *vitrum*, glass.]

⁴ *White membrane*—the *retina*; so called from the *net-work of nerves* of which it is composed. [Lat. *rete*, a net.]

⁵ *Dark curtain*—the jet-black surface of the *choroid*.

⁶ *Anatomists*, persons skilled in

anatomy, or the examination of the parts of the body by dissection. [Gr. *ana*, up; *temno*, I cut.]

⁷ *The wise king*—Solomon. The quotation is from Eccles. 1. 8: "The eye is not satisfied with seeing, nor the ear filled with hearing."

⁸ *Æons, ages*; incomprehensible periods of time. [Gr. *aiōn*, an age; *eis aiōn*, for ever and ever.]

⁹ *George Wilson*, chemist and natural philosopher; born at Edinburgh in 1818; appointed Professor of Technology in Edinburgh University in 1855; author of *The Five Gateways of Knowledge*; died in 1859.

QUESTIONS.—What is behind the iris? In what is the lens set? What has the back part of the eye spread over it? What is the curtain called? What connects this with the brain? What is going on every instant within our eyes? What becomes of that picture when we look at a new object? Does one person actually see another when he turns his eyes towards him? What then does he see? What, in like manner, do we know of the world? How does the eye triumph over space? What does Solomon say of it? How does it triumph over time? Of what mystery does it afford us our most vivid conception?

THE SHIPWRECK.

THERE were two fathers in this 'ghastly crew,
 And with them their two sons, of whom the one
 Was more 'robust and hardy to the view;
 But he died early: and when he was gone,
 HIS nearest messmate¹ told his sire, who threw
 One glance on him, and said, "Heaven's will be done!
 I can do nothing;" and he saw him thrown
 Into the deep, without a tear or groan.

The other father had a weaklier child,
 Of a soft cheek, and 'aspect 'delicate;
 But the boy bore up long, and with a mild
 And 'patient spirit held aloof his fate:
 Little he said, and now and then he smiled,
 As if to win a part from off the weight
 He saw increasing on his father's heart,
 With the deep, deadly thought, that they must part.

And o'er him bent his sire, and never raised

His eyes from off his face, but wiped the foam
From his pale lips, and ever on him gazed :

And when the wished-for shower at length was come,
And the boy's eyes, with the dull film half glazed,
'Brightened, and for a moment seemed to roam,
He 'squeezed from out a rag some drops of rain
Into his dying child's mouth;—but in vain !

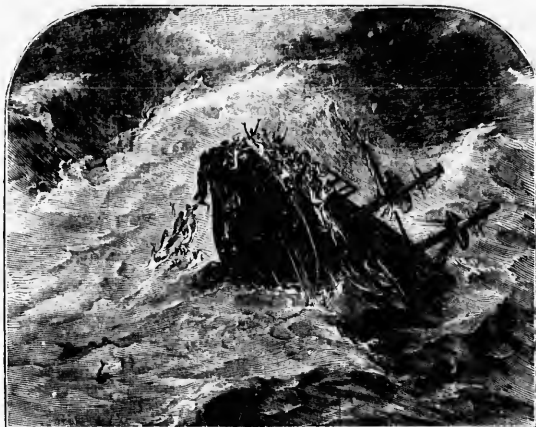
The boy 'expired. The father held the clay,
And looked upon it long; and when at last
Death left no doubt, and the dead burden lay
Stiff on his heart, and pulse and hope were past,
He watched it 'wistfully until away

'Twas borne by the rude wave wherein 'twas cast;
Then he himself sank down all dumb and 'shivering,
And gave no sign of life, save his limbs quivering.

'Twas twilight, and the sunless day went down
Over the waste of waters: like a veil,
Which, if withdrawn, would but 'disclose the frown
Of one whose hate is masked but to 'assail.
Thus to their hopeless eyes the night was shown,
And grimly 'darkled o'er their faces pale,
And the dim, desolate deep : twelve days had Fear
Been their familiar,² and now Death³ was here.

Then rose from sea to sky the wild farewell—
Then shrieked the timid, and stood still the brave—
Then some leaped overboard with dreadful yell,
As eager to 'anticipate their grave;
And the sea 'yawned around her, like a hell,
And down she sucked with her the whirling wave,
Like one who grapples with his enemy,
And strives to strangle him before he die.

And first one 'universal shriek there rushed,
Louder than the loud ocean—like a crash
Of echoing thunder; and then all was hushed,
Save the wild wind and the 'remorseless dash



Of billows; but at intervals there gushed,
 Accompanied by a 'convulsive splash,
 A solitary shriek, the bubbling cry
 Of some strong swimmer in his agony.

LORD BYRON (1788-1824).

anticipate, foretaste.
 aspect, appearance.
 assail, attack.
 brightened, gleamed.
 convulsive, spasmodic.
 darkled, grew dark.

delicate, weakly.
 disclose, reveal.
 expired, died.
 ghastly, hideous.
 patient, enduring.
 remorseless, pitiless.

robust, strong.
 shivering, trembling.
 squeezed, pressed.
 universal, general.
 wistfully, longingly.
 yawned, gaped.

¹ Mess'mate, a mate or companion,
 who eats at the same table with another.
Mess is *lit.* something served or sent up.
 [Lat. *missus*; It. *messa*.]

² Famil'iar, a demon or evil spirit,

who was supposed always to be with
 call, like a servant or attendant. [Lat
famulus, an attendant, a slave.]

³ Death, like *Fear* in the preceding
 line, is personified.

A CIRCLE
 is called
 Circle for
 able to r
 that it
 Ocean.

The la
 to the co

This d

Europe.

round th

In the

other hal

months.

magnific

thern reg

In Eur

the clima

the Atlan

a small p

The no

into a vast

Arctic Oc

Siberia; a

come mor

last they

into a vast

olate wast

and even

The Ar

nearly the

(the *Mack*

a course of

* These l
 ordinary sch
 valuable as
 and *Atlas C*

(411)

THE FIVE GREAT OCEANS.*

THE ARCTIC OCEAN.

A CIRCLE round the Earth at 1600 miles from the North Pole as a centre is called the *Arctic Circle*. All the land and sea within the Arctic Circle form what we call the *North Frigid Zone*. Man has never been able to reach the North Pole; but recent discoveries lead us to believe that it is surrounded by a vast open sea, forming part of the Arctic Ocean.

The lands around the Arctic Ocean form a vast treeless waste, exposed to the cold winds which sweep over it from the Polar Seas.

This dreary, desolate region, covers a space larger than the whole of Europe. It extends over the north of Europe, Asia, and America, round the globe.

In the Polar regions, the sun is one half of the year above and the other half below the horizon. There is but one long, dreary night, of six months. But the gloom of the Arctic winter is often relieved by the magnificent spectacle of the *Aurora Borealis*, which shines in these northern regions with a brilliancy unknown in other lands. (See page 114.)

In Europe, the north of Norway is within the Arctic Circle; but here the climate is milder, owing to the influence of the warmer waters of the Atlantic, and of the prevailing south-westerly winds. Lapland and a small part of Russia are also within the Arctic Circle.

The north of Asia lies within the Arctic Circle. Here three mighty rivers—the *Obi*, the *Lena*, and the *Yenisei*—pour their waters into the Arctic Ocean. These rivers flow through the dreary plains of Northern Siberia; and, as they come from a warmer to a colder region, they become more and more clogged with ice as they approach the ocean. At last they overflow their banks, and convert the regions around them into a vast dismal swamp, making the northern part of Asia a barren, desolate waste. There is no pasture for cattle, as in Norway and Sweden, and even the hardest grains cannot grow on these desolate shores.

The Arctic portion of North America is covered with snow and ice nearly the whole year. Here another of the giant rivers of the Earth (the *Maekenzie River*) discharges its waters into the Arctic Ocean, after a course of above 1200 miles.

* These lessons in descriptive geography, of a kind not to be met with in ordinary school-books, will be found interesting as reading lessons, and equally valuable as lessons in useful knowledge. They are taken from the *Geography and Atlas Combined*, in the Royal School Series. T. Nelson and Sons.

In winter an awful silence reigns over this vast region, as scarcely a living thing remains when the Arctic summer has ended; but in spring enormous flocks of birds come from the south, and find abundance of food in the lakes and rivers, and along the fish-teeming coasts. In some places these flocks of birds are so numerous, that they may be said to darken the sun when they fly, and to hide the sea when they swim. But as soon as the first frosts announce the approach of winter, nearly all the animals of these dreary regions hasten to the south.

The ARCTIC OCEAN forms a circle bounded by the northern coasts of Europe, Asia, and America. It is studded with islands, most of which lie along the northern coasts of America, and form a vast archipelago to the west of Greenland.

For more than three centuries, successive generations of brave and skilful navigators tried to discover a north-west passage to the Pacific through this region of ice. Of all the great enterprises of the world, not one has been so enthusiastically taken up, so ably and resolutely prosecuted, and so tardily accomplished. When at length the secret was won, the victor perished in the hour of triumph. The North-West Passage was discovered by Sir John Franklin in 1847, but not until the autumn of 1859 did the news reach England. Franklin died in 1847, and his gallant company of one hundred and thirty-four tried men all perished in those dark Arctic regions.

The largest island in the Arctic Ocean is *Greenland*. Its northern shores have never been reached, but enough of its coasts has been explored to show that it is an island at least four times the size of Britain. The west coast of Greenland is mountainous, and its valleys are blocked up with *glaciers*. (See page 89.)

A *glacier* is a river of ice. Though it does not seem to move, yet it slowly forces its way down the valley till it reaches the sea. As it pushes its way further and further into the sea, the projecting part begins to float, and the rising tide breaks it off in huge fragments. These glacier fragments are the *icebergs* which are found floating in the Arctic seas. They are of various sizes. Some of them measure only a few yards; others are miles in circumference, and sometimes hundreds of feet high. One of the sublimest spectacles that can be seen in the Arctic seas is a fleet of icebergs lighted up with the glories of the setting sun.

Many of these icebergs, formed from the glaciers of Greenland, float far away into the Atlantic, where they slowly melt as they drift towards the south.

Besides the islands on the northern coasts of America, there are, further east, *Spitzbergen* and *Nova Zembla*. *Spitzbergen* lies midway

betw
islan

It
Ocean
stanc
while
cold p
Polar
secur
the f
in the
The
alway
the se
not ex
come

A ci
Antar
Frigid
The oc
known
snow.

Lan
olate a
being,
even a
waste.
the lan
and the

Many
occupyi
an expe
He saw
containe
from the
snow an
It was se
prevente

between Norway and the North Pole. *Nova Zembla* forms a group of islands lying to the north of Russia.

It is an interesting fact that at some parts the water of the Arctic Ocean is warmer below than at the surface. This is owing to the circumstance that the warmer waters of the Atlantic are constantly flowing in, while cold currents are constantly flowing out. At the surface intense cold prevails, while the water remains warm below. The severity of the Polar winter is thus unfeared beneath, and myriads of creatures find a secure retreat against the frost which reigns supreme above. They form the food of the whale, the walrus, and other creatures which abound in the Northern seas.

Though ice covers the sea for many hundreds of miles, there are always immense spaces of open water, where the whale, the walrus, and the seal are found. Without such open spaces these creatures could not exist; for they are warm-blooded animals, and constantly require to come to the surface to breathe.

THE ANTARCTIC OCEAN.

A circle of 1600 miles round the South Pole as a centre is called the *Antarctic Circle*. All the land and sea within this circle form the *South Frigid Zone*. It is in extent exactly similar to the North Frigid Zone. The ocean within it is called the ANTARCTIC OCEAN. Very little is known about this part of the Earth's surface. It is a region of ice and snow.

Land has been discovered at various points, but it is even more desolate and barren than the lands of the Arctic regions. No human being, no land quadruped has been found; no plant of any kind, not even a moss or a lichen, has been seen—all is one dreary, uninhabitable waste. But though neither quadruped nor plant has been found on the land, there are innumerable *sea-birds*; and the *whale*, the *dolphin*, and the *seal* abound in the sea.

Many suppose that there is a vast continent in this part of the globe, occupying a large portion of the Antarctic regions. Sir James Ross, in an expedition to the Antarctic Ocean, made some interesting discoveries. He saw a lofty mountain-chain stretching away to the South Pole. It contained several volcanoes, one of which he called Mount Erebus, from the name of his ship. This mountain, towering up in a region of snow and ice, rose to a height of 12,000 feet above the level of the sea. It was seen only from a great distance, as an impenetrable barrier of ice prevented the ship from approaching the land.

THE ATLANTIC OCEAN.

The ATLANTIC OCEAN lies between the Old World and the New. On the one side are *Europe* and *Africa*, on the other side *North* and *South America*. The waters of the Atlantic extend from Greenland to the southern extremities of Africa and South America, a distance of about 9000 miles. *At the north* it unites with the Arctic Ocean, between Norway and Greenland. *At the south* it joins the Pacific, the Indian, and the Antarctic Oceans.

The Atlantic Ocean exceeds all the other oceans in the number of its seas and gulfs.

PRINCIPAL SEAS—EAST.

The principal Seas on the eastern side of the Atlantic are the *North Sea*, the *Baltic Sea*, and the *Mediterranean* with the *Black Sea*.

1. The NORTH SEA is about 600 miles from north to south. Its width varies from 100 to 400 miles.

From the mouth of the Thames to Holland it is 100 miles wide, and in this part it is comparatively shallow, and beset with sand-banks. Near the mouth of the Thames are the celebrated *Goodwin Sands*, a dangerous range of shoals. Floating lights have long been fixed here, and some lofty beacons erected; still this part of the coast is the scene of numerous shipwrecks every year. It has been more fatal to life and property than any other part of the coast of England. Sand-banks also stretch all along the coast of Holland.

Between Scotland and Denmark the North Sea is 400 miles wide. *Between Scotland and Norway*, it is 300 miles wide, and of great depth near Norway.

The parts of the Continent opposite Britain are:—

NORWAY (<i>South part</i>).....	opposite.....	North of SCOTLAND.
DENMARK	„	SCOTLAND.
HOLLAND }	„	ENGLAND.
BELGIUM }	„	ENGLAND.
FRANCE.....	„	South of ENGLAND.

The principal Seaports on the Continent, opposite Britain, are:—

<i>Rotterdam</i>	opposite.....	<i>London</i> .
<i>Amsterdam</i>	„	<i>Yarmouth</i> .
<i>Hamburg</i>	„	<i>Hull</i> .
<i>Bergen</i> (Norway).....	„	<i>Shetland Isles</i> .

In ancient times the North Sea was the scene of the exploits of the Scandinavian sea-kings, and across its waters sailed the various tribes

that successively landed on the coasts of Britain and settled in the British Islands after the breaking up of the Roman Empire.

The *Angles* came from the south of Denmark, and the *Saxons* from Northern Germany, about A.D. 449. The *Danes* came from Denmark, A.D. 787.

These tribes gradually drove back the original Celtic inhabitants; whose descendants, however, to this day occupy a considerable portion of the British Islands. The inhabitants of Wales, Ireland, and the Highlands of Scotland, are chiefly of Celtic origin.

At a later period (A.D. 1066), the *Normans*—who, like the Danes, were originally Norsemen—came from the north of France across the *English Channel*, and conquered England.

2. The BALTIC SEA lies between Russia and Sweden. It is a long narrow sea with several branches. Its northern half is called the *Gulf of Bothnia*. Its other branches are the *Gulf of Finland* and the *Gulf of Riga*. It is for the most part very shallow, and subject to severe storms. A number of large rivers flow into it, and make its waters comparatively fresh.

The Countries on the shores of the Baltic are:—RUSSIA, PRUSSIA, DENMARK, and SWEDEN. A large trade is carried on between Britain and these countries. The chief articles received from them are *timber, wheat, flax, hemp, tallow, and hides*.

The entrance to the Baltic from the North Sea is called the *Skager Rack* on the one side of Jutland, and the *Cattegat* on the other.

3. The MEDITERRANEAN SEA is, in some respects, the most interesting sea in the world. From the earliest days to the present time its shores have been the scene of many of the greatest events of history. It was the great highway of commerce among the civilized nations of ancient times. On its coasts lay ancient GREECE, ITALY, CARTHAGE, EGYPT, PHENICIA, and PALESTINE.

The entrance to the Mediterranean from the Atlantic is by the *Strait of Gibraltar*, 11 miles wide at its narrowest part. From this point to the coast of Syria the Mediterranean is nearly 2500 miles long.

The heat on the shores of the Mediterranean is very great, and the evaporation over so large a surface of water land-locked on all sides is enormous. Though many large rivers flow into it, they are not sufficient to make up the loss caused by evaporation. A strong current therefore is found to flow into it from the Atlantic at the Strait of Gibraltar, which is only partially reduced by an under-current outwards at the same place. The Mediterranean is almost a "tideless sea;" but at some places the tide rises several inches.

The principal branches of the Mediterranean are, the *Adriatic Sea*, between Italy and Greece; and the *Archipelago*, between Greece and Asia Minor. The eastern portion of the Mediterranean is called the *Lerant*. On the south of France is the *Gulf of Lions*, and at the north of Italy is the *Gulf of Genoa*.

The principal Rivers which flow into the Mediterranean are the *Rhone*, from France; the *Po*, from Italy; and the *Nile*, from Egypt. Besides these, the waters of the *Danube*, the *Dnieper*, and the *Don*, come to the Mediterranean from the Black Sea by the Sea of Marmora.

The Countries on the shores of the Mediterranean are:—

SPAIN.....	opposite.....	MAROCCHO.
FRANCE.....	”.....	ALGERIA.
ITALY.....	”.....	TUNIS.
GREECE.....	”.....	TRIPOLI.
ASIA MINOR.....	”.....	EGYPT.

Syria, including Palestine, forms the *eastern shore of the Mediterranean*.

The principal Islands in the Mediterranean are, *Corsica*, *Sardinia*, *Sicily*, *Candia*, and *Cyprus*. Besides these, there is a large number of smaller islands; one of which, *Malta*, to the south of Sicily, belongs to Britain. It lies about midway between Gibraltar and Egypt.

The Mediterranean is separated from the Red Sea by the narrow *Isthmus of Suez*. A great ship-canal across the isthmus has, after ten years of labour, been constructed by a French engineer named Lesseps. The waters of the two seas are united, and ships can now sail from Europe to India, China, Australia, &c., without having to pass either round the south of Africa or round Cape Horn.

4. The BLACK SEA lies between Russia and Turkey-in-Asia. It is connected with the Mediterranean by the Bosphorus, Sea of Marmora, and the Dardanelles.

On the north of the Black Sea is the *Crimea*, a peninsula of Russia, famous for the siege of *Sebastopol*, the chief city of the Crimea, and, at the time of the war (1854-56), a great naval station of Russia.

At the entrance to the Black Sea is the *Golden Horn*, on which stands the city of Constantinople, the capital of the Turkish Empire.

Three great Rivers flow into the Black Sea: the *Danube*, from Austria and Turkey; and the *Dnieper* and the *Don*, from Russia.

The Countries on the shores of the Black Sea are:—RUSSIA, TURKEY-IN-EUROPE, and TURKEY-IN-ASIA.

Large quantities of wheat, grown in the *south of Russia* and in the *countries of the Danube*, are exported by way of the Black Sea.

PRINCIPAL SEAS—WEST.

The principal Seas on the western side of the Atlantic are *Davis Strait* and *Baffin Sea*, *Hudson Bay*, *Gulf of St. Lawrence*, *Gulf of Mexico*, and the *Caribbean Sea*.

1. DAVIS STRAIT and BAFFIN SEA (named after two great English navigators, who discovered them) lie between Greenland and the northern coasts of America. Through these seas nearly all the expeditions to the Polar regions have passed. *Baffin Sea* is now the principal resort of the whaling ships in the North Atlantic.

In a long narrow channel to the north of Baffin Sea is the nearest point to the North Pole ever reached. Here, in 1854, were discovered the shores of an open sea free of ice, stretching away to the Pole as far as the eye could reach.

2. HUDSON BAY is named from the celebrated Henry Hudson, one of the boldest and most successful of the early English navigators. It was discovered by him in 1609, and here that brave seaman perished. A mutiny broke out among his men, and he and several sick sailors were put into a small boat and cast adrift. The carpenter of the ship alone refused to remain with the mutineers, nobly preferring to share the fate of his brave commander. The boat was never seen or heard of more.

Hudson Bay forms a vast inland sea in the very heart of British America. Its shores are covered with ice for the greater part of the year. The principal entrance from the Atlantic is called *Hudson Strait*. (See page 179.)

3. The GULF OF ST. LAWRENCE is one of the most important inlets on the coasts of America. It is a wide bay lying between the Island of Newfoundland and Canada. At its western extremity is the mouth of the *River St. Lawrence*, the great river of Canada. During summer, steamers and vessels of all kinds are constantly crossing the gulf on the way to Quebec and Montreal, or from the St. Lawrence to Europe. In winter, owing to the ice, the navigation is closed. The fisheries in the Gulf of St. Lawrence are very extensive and valuable.

On the coast, to the south of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, is a long narrow inlet called the *Bay of Fundy*, remarkable for the great height and violence of its tides. These usually rise to a height of sixty or seventy feet, and are caused by the vast flow of water from the Atlantic forcing itself into so narrow a channel. (See page 336.)

4. The GULF OF MEXICO lies between Mexico and the United States. It is an immense sea, nearly 1000 miles long, and about 500 miles broad.

Into it flow the waters of the *Mississippi*, and many other smaller rivers from the United States and Mexico.

It gives its name to the celebrated Gulf Stream, the most remarkable ocean current in the world.

The *Gulf Stream* is a current of warm water which flows into the Atlantic from the Gulf of Mexico. Its water, heated under the burning sun of the tropics, first flows from the Atlantic along the northern shores of South America. It then enters the Caribbean Sea, and from it flows into the Gulf of Mexico: hence the name Gulf Stream. There, hemmed in, it sweeps round the gulf, and rushes with great force through the Strait of Florida back into the Atlantic.

Its course is so well marked, that at some places the bow of a ship may be in the Gulf Stream and the rest of the vessel out of it. This has been shown by noticing the difference between the temperature of the water at the bow of the vessel and that amidships. From Florida it flows northward to Newfoundland, gradually increasing in width. From Newfoundland its waters spread over the surface of the colder waters of the Atlantic, one branch turning southward, and another eastward. The southern branch encircles a great space called the *Sargasso Sea*, which is covered for hundreds of miles with thick sea-weed. The eastern branch slowly crosses the Atlantic to the shores of Europe.

The air over the Gulf Stream is loaded with warmth and moisture, and makes the climate of the British Islands much milder than it otherwise would be. On the opposite side of the Atlantic lies the coast of Labrador—a region of ice and snow. Were it not for the warm waters of the Gulf Stream, the harbours and rivers of Britain would be blocked up with ice for a great part of the year. The influence of the Gulf Stream is felt as far as the north of Norway, where it mingles with the icy waters of the Polar Seas.

5. The CARIBBEAN SEA lies south of the Gulf of Mexico, and is connected with it. The two together form the great opening between North and South America.

BED OF THE ATLANTIC.

The depths of the Atlantic have been sounded and surveyed by the British and the American navies, so that we now know, to a considerable extent, the character of its bed or bottom. Its greatest depth is about seven and a half miles. One result of these measurements is the certain knowledge we now possess that the bed of the ocean, like the land, is diversified by mountains and valleys, hills, table-lands, and plains.

Between Newfoundland and Ireland the bed of the Atlantic is re-

mark
tic C
ne h
Th
the P
(see p
Islan
The
Atlan
G
L
C
U
W
B
Sout
land of
The
constar
To th
and the
From
Atlanti
From
From
From
From
It is a
India, te
In a v
down th
across th
traffic no
Australia
In sailing
more fav
in the vo
page 221.
by the C
voyage ro
by Magel

markedly level. Here, in the still waters at the bottom, lie the *Atlantic Cabies*, by which messages are ever flashing across the ocean from one hemisphere to another.

The Atlantic contains few Islands compared with the vast number in the Pacific Ocean. The principal islands in the Atlantic are Iceland (see page 100), the British Islands, Newfoundland, and the West India Islands.

The Countries which lie opposite each other on the two sides of the Atlantic are:—

GREENLAND.....	opposite...	NORWAY.
LABRADOR.....	”	...BRITAIN.
CANADA.....	”	...FRANCE.
UNITED STATES, &c.....	”	...SPAIN and North of AFRICA.
WEST INDIES and MEXICO	”	...SAHARA.
BRAZIL, &c.....	”	...Middle and South of AFRICA.

South America extends further south than Africa, so that there is no land opposite Patagonia on its eastern side.

The Atlantic is the great highway of commerce. On its waters are constantly sailing the ships of all the maritime nations of the Earth.

To the coasts of Greenland and Labrador ships sail to hunt the *whale* and the *seal*; and they return laden with *oil*, *whalebone*, and *sealskin*.

From Canada and the other British provinces ships cross the Atlantic with *timber*, *wheat*, *flour*, *furs*, and other productions.

From the United States come *cotton*, *wheat*, *tobacco*, *rice*, *flour*, &c.

From the West Indies we get *sugar*, *coffee*, *pepper*, &c.

From Honduras we get *muhogany* and other valuable woods, and *dyes*.

From Brazil we get *coffee*, *india-rubber*, *hides*, *silver*, and *diamonds*.

From the coast of Africa we get *ivory*, *palm-oil*, *wool*, and *gums*.

It is also by the Atlantic that ships come laden with *cotton* from India, *tea* and *silk* from China, *wool* and *gold* from Australia.

In a voyage from England to India, China, or Australia, ships sail down the Atlantic, then round Africa by the *Cape of Good Hope*, and across the Indian Ocean. This is the usual route, though much of the traffic now passes through the Suez Canal; but ships can also reach Australia by sailing to the west, round South America by *Cape Horn*. In sailing eastward by the Cape of Good Hope the winds are generally more favourable, as in this region they blow chiefly from the west. But in the voyage from Australia it is usual to return by Cape Horn. (See page 221.) It thus appears that a ship going from Britain to Australia by the Cape of Good Hope, and returning by Cape Horn, makes a voyage round the world. The first voyage round the world was made by Magellan, a Portuguese navigator, in 1519-1521.

USEFUL KNOWLEDGE.

THE ATMOSPHERE, CLOUDS, RAIN, &c.

The Atmosphere.—What is the Atmosphere? The whole body of air which envelops the globe.

How far does it extend above the surface of the globe? It becomes thinner and thinner (its particles more and more distant) as it ascends; and fifty or sixty miles up it almost entirely disappears.

What instrument measures the weight of the Atmosphere? The Barometer, or weight-measurer. [Gr. *baros*, weight; *metron*, a measure.]

What instrument measures its heat? The Thermometer, or heat-measurer. [Gr. *thermos*, heat; *metron*, a measure.]

Why is the Atmosphere important to the Earth? Because nothing could live without it; nothing could burn without it; nothing could grow without it; no sound could be heard without it; there would be no blue sky without it; there would be no rain without it.

Why could nothing live without it? Because it contains oxygen gas, which is essential to animal life.

Why could nothing burn without it? Because oxygen is essential to combustion.

Why could nothing grow without it? Because it conveys to plants carbonic acid gas, which is essential to vegetation.

Why could no sound be heard without it? Because sound is conveyed by the vibration of the air.

What causes the blue sky? It is probably caused by the moisture in the atmosphere, which absorbs the red and transmits the blue rays of the sun.

Clouds.—What are Clouds? Watery vapours which rise from the earth and sea, made visible by partial condensation. They are really floating cisterns.

Why do these vapours rise? Because they are lighter than the air near the surface of the earth.

When are these vapours converted

into Clouds? When currents of different temperatures are mixed, and the atmosphere becomes saturated with vapour, or contains as much as it can hold.

Of what do the Vapours consist? Of minute watery globules, which, being hollow, float easily in the air.

At what distance from the earth are the Clouds? Usually between one and two miles; sometimes five miles; sometimes only a quarter of a mile.

Rain.—What is Rain? The clouds or moisture of the air, condensed by cold, falling upon the earth in water-drops.

When do clouds send down Rain? When they pass from a warm into a colder layer of air.

May there be Rain though no cloud is visible? Yes; the invisible vapour of the atmosphere may be condensed into water by suddenly coming into contact with a cold current.

Why does Rain fall in drops? Because the globules attract one another in their descent, and those which are nearest unite or run together.

How is the size of Rain-drops sometimes increased? By the wind blowing them together.

How does Rain purify the air? By dissolving in its descent hurtful gases gathered there.

How does Rain purify the earth? By washing away the hurtful matter collected in stagnant pools.

Why is Rain-water the most fertilizing? Because it brings with it from the air carbonic acid and ammonia, which feed plant life.

Why have islands a greater Rain-fall than continents? Because their atmosphere, from the nearness of the sea, is more frequently saturated with vapour.

Why do mountains receive more Rain

than the low lands near the coast? Because the air, striking against the sides of mountains, is carried upwards to the colder regions, and is thus rapidly condensed.

Which side of a mountain receives most Rain? That which fronts the prevalent winds, when these come from the sea.

Why does more Rain fall by night than by day? Because the cold of night condenses the vapours of the air.

Why is Rain more frequent in winter than in the other seasons? Because the atmosphere is coldest then, and its vapours are therefore more frequently condensed.

Where does the greatest quantity of Rain fall? In the tropics.

Why? Because, when the sun is vertical, the earth is intensely heated, and vapours rise in great quantities, and are condensed as soon as they reach the colder layers of air in the higher regions.

What peculiarity is there in the Rain-fall in tropical countries? There is a yearly rainy season, during which all the rain of the year falls.

Snow and Hail.—What are Snow and Hail? Snow is vapour frozen before it could be turned into rain-drops; hail is frozen rain-drops.

How is Snow caused? In snow, the watery globules are frozen into crystals before they can unite into drops; and these crystals, uniting in their descent, form snow-flakes.

How is Hail caused? In hail, the rain-drops are frozen in the course of their descent by passing through a layer of air which is below the freezing-point.

What is Sleet? It is partially melted snow.

How is it caused? By snow-flakes in their descent passing through a layer of air which is above the freezing-point.

Why does Snow keep the earth warm?

Because it is a bad conductor of heat, and therefore the warmth of the earth cannot escape through it.

How does Snow nourish the earth? By supplying it with moisture containing carbonic acid, which sinks into the soil slowly as the snow melts.

Mist.—What is Mist? It is condensed vapour, of the same nature as cloud, but formed near the surface of the earth.

What causes Mist to form there? The air near the earth being colder than the earth's surface.

When is Mist generally formed? During a calm night.

Why does it disappear at sunrise? Because the heat of the sun evaporates it again, and it is absorbed by the air.

Dew and Hoar-frost.—What is Dew? Fine watery globules deposited on grass, trees, &c.

When is Dew formed? When the earth's surface has become colder than the vapour in contact with it.

When does this happen? On a clear, calm night.

Why on a clear night? Because then substances radiate (give off) heat most freely, and become rapidly colder than the air.

Why on a calm night? Because wind either dispels the vapour, or evaporates it as soon as it is deposited.

Why is Dew not formed under trees or other shelter? Because trees, like any other kind of shelter, check the radiation of heat by the earth, and prevent the air from becoming sufficiently cool to condense the vapours.

Why is Dew deposited on some objects and not on others when equally exposed? Because some objects (as hard rocks, polished metal, woollen cloth) are bad radiators of heat, while others (as grass, leaves of plants, cultivated soil) are good radiators of heat.

What is Hoar-frost? Dew frozen, after being deposited on the ground.

Name

Taste, Smell

Name

Of sight,

of taste,

of touch,

To who

be comp

they hav

Gateway

How

through

By the n

What a

or fibres,

the whole

To what

telegraph

What is

The sense

nerves th

brain.

Is it th

No: it is

the finger

brain, or

within th

eye, hears

How ca

nerve is c

paralysis)

outward o

Sight.—

The Eye.

What is

ball, with

What is

called? T

And th

middle of

Of what

opening th

the inside

Of what

which may

as to make

When is

When the

USEFUL KNOWLEDGE.

THE SENSES.

Name the Senses.—*Sight, Hearing, Taste, Smell, and Touch.*

Name the Organs of these Senses.—*Of sight, the Eye; of hearing, the Ear; of taste, the Tongue; of smell, the Nose; of touch, the Skin.*

To what may these Organs of Sense be compared? To doors or gateways: they have been well called "The Five Gateways of Knowledge."

How is the knowledge received through them carried to the Brain? By the nerves.

What are the Nerves? Little threads or fibres, extending from the brain over the whole body.

To what may they be compared? To telegraph wires.

What happens when I burn my finger? The sense of pain is flashed along the nerves that connect my finger with the brain.

Is it the finger that feels the pain? No: it is the brain that feels it, through the finger. In like manner, it is the brain, or rather the spirit that dwells within the brain, that sees through the eye, hears through the ear, &c.

How can this be proved? When a nerve is cut or the brain injured (as in paralysis) no injury done to its associated outward organ of sense causes pain.

Sight.—What is the organ of Sight? The Eye. (See p. 228.)

What is its shape? It is a globe or ball, with a projecting window in front.

What is the coloured part of the eye called? The Iris.



And the small round spot in the middle of it? The Pupil.

Of what use is the Pupil? It is the opening through which images pass to the inside of the eyeball.

Of what use is the Iris? It is a curtain, which may be drawn or withdrawn, so as to make the pupil smaller or larger.

When is the curtain drawn close? When the light is strong. And when

the light is faint it is withdrawn, that the enlarged pupil may take in as many rays as possible.

In what animal is the change in the Pupil most noticeable? In the cat: in the bright sunshine its pupil is a mere narrow slit; see this  but in the evening it is wide open, and of this shape .

Where does the brain see the images that pass through the Pupil? On the inside wall of the eyeball is spread a network of fine nerve-fibres, called the *retina*, which is connected with the brain by the *nerve of sight*, or optic nerve.

What would happen if these nerves were destroyed or became powerless? The person would become blind. The pictures might still be received, through the pupil, upon the wall of the eyeball; but the brain could not perceive them, the wires of connection being cut.

Of what use are the Eyebrows? They form a projecting ridge for the protection of the eyes; and they prevent the sweat of the forehead from running into and irritating them.

Of what use are the Eyelids? They are outside shutters, to cover the eyes during sleep. By their constant winking, too, they keep the window of the eye clean and free from dust.

What keeps the Eye moist? A fluid called tears, which runs inside the eyelids.

When only can the sense of Sight be exercised? In the light.

What qualities of bodies are discerned by sight? Length, breadth, thickness, form, light and shade, and colour.

Hearing.—What is the organ of Hearing? The Ear.

What is that which we hear called? Sound.

What is Sound? It is the sensation caused by rapid vibrations of the air.

What makes the air vibrate? The vibration or quivering of bodies.

Give an example.—If I touch a bell

while it is sounding, I feel it quivering; this quivering of the metal makes the air around it quiver, in constantly widening waves; and these waves cause a corresponding quivering in my ear.

How can you show that the sound is caused by the quivering? When I grasp the bell, the quivering ceases, and so does the sound.

What is an Echo? A wave of sound (or vibrating air) which has struck a wall or rock and is thrown back; just as a ray of light is reflected from a mirror or polished surface.

What are the chief parts of the Ear? The external ear, which is spread out to catch the waves of sound; the drum; a chain of little bones; a second drum; the passages behind this drum, filled with fluid, and in which the nerve of hearing has its finest fibres.

What takes place every time we hear a sound? First the sounding body vibrates, then the surrounding air, then the drum of the ear, then the chain of bones, then the second drum, then the watery fluid; and the fibres of the nerve of hearing catch up the vibrations and flash them on to the brain.

What, therefore, is necessary to the exercise of the sense of Hearing? Air; just as light is necessary to seeing.

Why are deaf people generally dumb? Because speech comes only by imitation; and it cannot be imitated if it be not heard.

Taste.—Where are the organs of Taste placed? At the entrance to the stomach, on the tongue.

What is the chief purpose of this sense? To direct animals in the choice of their food: generally food that is wholesome is pleasant to the taste.

What great difference is there between the sense of Taste and those of Sight and Hearing? We can see and hear things at a distance; we can only taste what is actually put in the mouth.

What is Saliva? A fluid secreted in the glands of the mouth, and connected with the organs of taste.

Of what use is it? It partly dissolves the food, and thus helps the tongue to

taste it; and it mixes with the food and aids digestion.

Show that it helps the tongue to taste.—The dry tongue of a sick person can scarcely tell one kind of food from another.

Smell.—Where is the Nerve of Smell placed? Its fine threads are spread over the lining of the nose.

What is Smell caused by? By small particles of various substances floating about in the air which we breathe.

Do the substances which give off these particles lose weight? Doubtless they do; but a grain of musk has been known to give off scent for ten years without being appreciably lighter!

Of what use are unpleasant Smells? They very often warn us of danger. For example, an escape of coal gas is at once detected by its disagreeable odour.

With what other sense is Smell most closely related? With Taste: many things lose their flavour when the nostrils are stopped.

What takes place when you smell a rose? The air around the rose is filled with the delicate particles which the flower gives off. When I smell the rose, I draw air into my nostrils laden with some of these particles. They there come in contact with the Nerve of Smell, which telegraphs the particular sensation to the brain.

What animals have a very acute sense of Smell? The dog, the deer, and the antelope. Its sense of smell makes the dog valuable in many ways in pursuing game. The same faculty makes the deer and the antelope very difficult to approach.

Touch.—Where are the Nerves of Touch placed? In the inner or true skin of the body, to which the outer skin serves as a covering.

In what parts of the body is this sense very delicate? In the tips of the fingers, and in the lips and tongue.

What properties of bodies do we discern by Touch? Figure and size, hardness and softness, heat and cold, smoothness and roughness, wetness and dryness.

THE hu
constru
most p

The
stomac

each of
the par
in a sta

A sta
of the b
therefor

in our p

The c
state ar
light), e

Food

the mate

If you
see that
is of the
duction o

But, in
out parti
differenc

or renew
worn-out

bone and
substance

form the

Food n
body does
last. A f

bricks or
Mixed f

of these c
food. Of
ing, and
flesh is pr

HEALTH OF THE BODY.

THE human body is a machine, or system of "works," more delicately constructed than a watch, more complicated and wonderful than the most powerful steam-engine.

The "works" of the body are organs and tissues—as the heart, the stomach, the lungs, the arteries, the muscles, the nerves, the skin—each of which has a distinct function or duty to perform. When all the parts of the bodily machine are in good working order, the body is in a state of HEALTH (Old Eng. *hael*, whole).

A state of health is necessary, not only to the comfort and activity of the body, but also to the comfort and activity of the mind. It is therefore of the greatest importance that we should take every means in our power to promote bodily health.

The chief means within our power of keeping the body in a healthy state are attention to *food, cleanliness, clothing, ventilation*, (air and light,) *exercise*, and *rest*.

FOOD.

Food keeps the body in health by making it warm, and by forming the material of which every part of the bodily frame is made.

If you read the lesson called "Living Stoves," at page 73, you will see that our food is really the fuel of the bodily machine, just as coal is of the steam-engine; and that its end is combustion, and the production of animal heat. Food, therefore, is necessary to make warmth.

But, in the act of burning, the body wastes, by throwing off its worn-out particles. So does the stove of an engine; but there is this great difference between them—that while the engine-stove must be repaired or renewed by man, the body is self-repairing. It is replacing the worn-out tissues as fast as they are consumed. The blood is simply bone and muscle and brain in a fluid state, and each draws from it the substance required to renew itself. Food is therefore necessary to form the body.

Food must be nourishing; that is, it must be blood-making. If the body does not get a sufficient amount of blood-making food, it cannot last. A furnace fire would not last long if you fed it with nothing but bricks or iron.

Mixed food is best. The blood consists of different elements. Some of these elements are more abundant in vegetable, others in animal food. Of ordinary animal food, beef and mutton are the most nourishing, and are as easily digested as any other. In both respects, old flesh is preferable to young—beef to veal, and mutton to lamb.

Bread and porridge, as well as rice and barley, are vegetable food. They are generally classed with farinaceous or starchy foods, which are very important, as they supply the principal elements which are burned within the animal system. Stale bread digests more easily than new, and brown bread is more wholesome than white.

Whilst food is being cooked, it is often deprived of its saline and mineral elements, which are as necessary to animal life as its other constituents. These elements should be supplied in the form of uncooked food, as milk, ripe fruits, such vegetables as can be eaten raw, fresh water, and common salt.

Food should be thoroughly chewed before being swallowed. This makes it digest more easily, and lightens the work of the stomach. The peculiar uneasiness in the stomach known as indigestion is frequently caused by the food having been *bolted* when imperfectly chewed. Even soft food, which does not require much chewing—as bread, rice, and corn-flour—should be retained in the mouth for some time, to allow the saliva to mix with it, whereby its starchy matter is turned into sugar, and the work of the stomach is greatly lightened.

Three meals a day are usually enough; but more important than the number of meals are the intervals between them. The process of digestion requires rest for the whole body; but it especially requires that the organs of digestion should not be disturbed during the operation. The food is changed while in the stomach into a new substance. If when it is half changed you mix fresh food with it, confusion will necessarily arise. It is as if you were to mix fresh rags with the soft pulp which is ready to be made into paper. The time which food requires for its proper digestion varies, with the nature of the food, from two to four hours. No food of any kind should be taken within two hours after a meal; and the interval between regular meals should be four hours at least. Supper should be taken two hours before going to sleep, that the stomach, as well as the other parts of the body, may have rest while we are asleep. At the same time, we should not fast too long; and we should observe regularity in the times at which we take our meals.

QUESTIONS.

<p>What is the human body? What are its "works"? Name some of them. When is the body in a state of health? Why is this state so important? By what means may it be secured? How does food keep the body in health? What does the consumption of food</p>	<p>produce? With what other machine may the body in this respect be compared? What great difference is there between them? What food is best? Of what elements is food deprived by cooking? How may these be supplied? How should food be prepared for the</p>
--	--

stomac
saliva?
enough
the num

Clean
fresh—
the bod
clean.

The s
the bloo
of sma
fluous
body.
posure
is cooled

The s
secreted

Now,
they can
itself wi
to retain
neys) wi
disease n

Washi
bath sho
every da
washed t

Sea-bat
air and
never to
into the
chilled.

What is
of the ski
ulate the
How is the
be the con

stomach? What is the use of the saliva? How many meals a day are enough? What is more important than the number of meals? Why should the body rest between meals? Why is it bad to eat between meals? Why should we sup two hours before going to sleep?

CLEANLINESS.

Cleanliness—that is, keeping the whole skin of the body pure and fresh—is a great source of health. The skin, like the internal organs of the body, has work to do, and it cannot do its work unless it is kept clean.

The skin is one means of getting rid of impure, refuse matter from the blood. For this purpose it is supplied with two or three millions of small tubes, called pores, through which it sweats out the superfluous moisture. These pores also regulate the temperature of the body. When the body gets over-heated, from violent exercise or exposure to fire, it is flooded with perspiration from these pores, and so is cooled down.

The skin, besides, is kept soft and smooth by a kind of oily matter secreted in small cells over its surface.

Now, if the pores and the oil-cells become blocked up with dirt, they cannot perform their functions. In that case, either the skin itself will become diseased, or the blood will be injured by being forced to retain its impurities; or, it may be, some other organ (as the kidneys) will have to do the work of the skin besides its own, and serious disease may follow.

Washing the skin is therefore indispensable to health. A complete bath should be taken, or at least the whole body should be well sponged, every day. The face and hands, which are most exposed, should be washed three or four times a day.

Sea-bathing is the healthiest kind of washing, as it combines fresh air and vigorous exercise with its other benefits. It is a safe rule never to bathe till at least two hours after a meal. It is unsafe to go into the water when cold, or to remain in it after you begin to feel chilled.

QUESTIONS.

What is the chief function or work of the skin? How do the pores regulate the temperature of the body? How is the skin kept soft? What will be the consequence if the skin is not kept clean? What is therefore indispensable to health? What is the healthiest kind of washing? What rules are to be observed in connection with sea-bathing?

CLOTHING.

That the skin may properly discharge its functions, it must not only be kept clean ; it must also be protected from cold as well as from heat by clothing. Clothes keep us warm by keeping in our own heat, rather than by communicating heat to us. The less clothing the body wears, the more quickly does it consume its fuel (food), and the more food does it require. Warm clothing is therefore an economizer of food. It is necessary to maintain the natural temperature of the body; for when that is reduced, the blood is driven inwards to the internal organs, which are thereby oppressed, and the health is injured. This is why we feel it necessary to put on warmer clothing at the setting in of the cold season of the year.

That is the warmest clothing which is the worst conductor of heat; hence down is warmer than wool, cotton than linen, fine cloth than coarse, light-coloured fabric than dark.* Loose garments are warmer than tight-fitting ones, because the air which the former enclose is a bad conductor of heat.

We require clothing in summer, and in hot climates, to protect the skin from the heat of the sun. Those clothes are the best for this purpose which reflect or throw off external heat most. Thus, white or light-coloured clothing is worn in summer, because it is a bad absorbent of heat. Under-clothing should be put off each night, and entirely changed once or twice a week.

Clothing should be made so as on the one hand not to restrain or cramp the action of any of the organs of the body, and so as not to expose them unduly to cold or moisture on the other.

Tightening the waist, whether by wearing stays or corsets, or by any other means, prevents full breathing, compresses the liver, and drives the blood to the extremities, besides giving the body an unnatural and ungraceful form.

Tight neck-ties and collars worn by men are equally injurious. They check the flow of blood to the head, and may bring on apoplexy.

Head-dresses should be light and airy, and should not press upon the veins of the head so as to obstruct the circulation. Baldness, so prevalent among men, is said to result in many cases from wearing heavy and tight-fitting hats. The fashion prevailing amongst women of padding the natural hair, and overloading the head with ornaments, is injurious in many ways.

* Dr. Laukester says that the people of Europe and America dress in dark-coloured clothes both in summer and in winter from motives of economy, not of comfort. It is a question of the cost of soap and washing.

The
cold, is
should
equally

What
ing? H
How is
of food?
the natu
to be red
clothing?
loose clot
ones? V

Fresh
fact air i
out air.
carbon in
body. E
certain an
supply th
acid. No
simply m
inhale bre
necessary
poison th
disease an

Yet not
together, i
air has be
consequen
and poison
few hours

The inju
gradually,
hot, crowd
Physicians
due far mor

to a cold or
All place
workshops,

The custom of exposing the legs of children, especially of infants, to cold, is a fruitful source of disease and death. Exposing the chest and shoulders of older persons in cold weather and in cold climates is equally dangerous.

QUESTIONS.

What is the purpose served by clothing? How do clothes keep us warm? How is warm clothing an economizer of food? What is the effect of allowing the natural temperature of the body to be reduced? Which is the warmest clothing? Give examples. Why are loose clothes warmer than tight-fitting ones? Why is clothing required in hot weather? What clothes are best for this purpose? What should be attended to in the making of clothes? What are the effects of tightening the waist? Why are tight neck-ties injurious? What often results from wearing heavy and tight-fitting hats? What is a frequent source of disease in the case of children?

VENTILATION.

Fresh air is as necessary to life and health as wholesome food. In fact air is food, inasmuch as our material food would be useless without air. It is the oxygen in the air we breathe, uniting with the carbon in the blood, that fits our food for warming and nourishing the body. Every time we draw air in, our lungs deprive the air of a certain amount of oxygen. Every time we send breath out, our lungs supply the place of that oxygen by a corresponding amount of carbonic acid. Now, carbonic acid acts as a poison; and breath is therefore simply more or less poisoned air. If instead of inhaling fresh air we inhale breath, we not only deprive the blood of the oxygen which is necessary to enable it to warm and support the body, but we positively poison the blood; and if we continue this process, sooner or later disease and death will ensue.

Yet nothing is more common than for crowds of people to remain together, in churches and other public places, for hours after the air has been polluted by the breathing of the assembled people. The consequence is that many people faint from the effects of the heated and poisoned air; and if they were to be forcibly confined there for a few hours longer, many would certainly die.

The injury which is thus done suddenly and evidently, is done gradually, but not less surely, to people who spend their days in hot, crowded workshops, and their nights in small, close dwellings. Physicians tell us that such diseases as consumption and scrofula are due far more to poisoned air, breathed in our houses and factories, than to a cold or changeable climate.

All places in which people assemble in large numbers—as schools, workshops, churches, lecture-halls, and theatres—should be well ven-

tilated; that is, should be supplied with the means of carrying off the breathed air, and of letting in a copious supply of fresh air. It is imperfect ventilation, or the total want of it, that so often makes people sleepy in church, and children listless in school.

Ventilation is no less necessary in small rooms occupied by a few persons. There also the air will, in course of time, become polluted, unless fresh supplies of oxygen are constantly being admitted. One man may be confined in a room so small and close, that in a short time he may be poisoned by his own breath!

Perhaps more injury is done from want of ventilation in bed-rooms than in any other places. They are kept closed for so many hours at a time, and people think it necessary to make them so completely airtight, that the occupants are generally dependent for the whole night upon the air that fills the room when they enter and close it. Long before morning, the sleepers are breathing their own or each other's breath over and over again. No wonder that crowded sleeping-rooms have so close and offensive a smell in the morning! Let any one of their occupants go into the fresh air for five minutes, and then return to the room in which he has spent the night, and he will in many cases be shocked if not stifled by the air on which he has been living for hours!

The air may be contaminated by other means besides the carbonic acid emitted from the lungs. The stone-cutter may inhale minute particles of stone; the iron-grinder may inhale metallic particles; the cotton-spinner, particles of cotton; and these settling on the lungs, often produce disease and death.

But the poisonous particles given off by putrefying animal and vegetable matters cause the most dangerous pollution of the air we breathe. They often produce the most fatal and destructive diseases; and such matters should never be allowed to accumulate near dwelling-houses. If they cannot be carried off by drainage, (which is the best remedy,) they should be continually disinfected with carbolic acid, or chloride of lime. There has hardly ever been an outbreak of typhoid fever in any locality which could not be traced to the diffusion of this kind of poison in the air; so true is this, that the fever referred to is now popularly called drain-fever.

The air is also frequently the medium of carrying disease from a sick person to those who are well. It is thus that small-pox, scarlet fever, and other "catching diseases," often spread in a community. It is the duty of those who have charge of the patient, in such cases to take every means to prevent the spread of the poison from the sick persons to those who are well. "It is," says Dr. Lankester, "a common practice, much to be reprehended, to send children to school

from
cough
have
Ho
fresh
condit
white
when
system
body.
consum
of the

Why
What
air? W
place of
What p
of inhal
very oft
done by
from the
What e
often see
from wa
What ta
In what
taminat

The
therefor
conditio
exercise
action o
stimulat
healthfu
Care sh
one set o
the most
but no or
and leap,
cannot ro
System
apt to att

from families where small-pox, scarlet fever, measles, and hooping-cough are prevailing; thus spreading the poison amongst those who have not been previously attacked."

Houses should be built so as to admit plenty of light as well as of fresh air. The former is not less necessary than the latter to a healthy condition of body. Just as plants, when deprived of light, become white in their stalks and leaves, so man becomes pale and unhealthy when he lives under ground. Light acts as a stimulus to the nervous system, quickens the mind, and promotes the activity of the whole body. It helps, therefore, to keep off disease; and it is a fact that consumption is often the result of living in rooms from which the light of the sun is excluded.

QUESTIONS.

Why may air be considered food? What happens every time we draw in air? What do we send out to take the place of the oxygen? What is breath? What poisons it? What is the effect of inhaling breath? Where is this done very often? Where is the same injury done by degrees? What diseases result from that? How is this to be prevented? What effects of bad ventilation are often seen? Where is most injury done from want of ventilation? Why is this? What takes place long before morning? In what other ways may the air be contaminated? What causes the most dangerous pollution of the air we breathe? How should decaying animal and vegetable matter be carried off? What diseases result from it? In what way does the air often spread disease? What should those who have the charge of patients do? What practice, in this connection, does Dr. Lankester strongly condemn? What, besides air, should be admitted into our houses? Why? What is the effect of absence of light upon plants? And upon man? How does light act upon the body? What does it help to keep off? What disease is particular?

EXERCISE AND REST.

The muscles grow and gain strength by being used. Exercise is therefore necessary to their healthy condition; and not to *their* healthy condition only, but to that of all the organs of the body. Muscular exercise accelerates the circulation of the blood; increases the healthy action of the heart, the lungs, and the skin; invigorates the nerves; stimulates the appetite; improves the powers of digestion, and carries healthful energy wherever the blood penetrates.

Care should be taken that the exercise we practise calls into play not one set only, but the whole of the muscles. Swimming is on this account the most healthful of all exercises. This cannot always be indulged in; but no one need be at a loss for invigorating exercises. Boys can run and leap, if they cannot play cricket or foot-ball; men can walk, if they cannot row or ride on horseback.

Systematic exercises, as gymnastics, are very useful; but boys are apt to attempt feats that are dangerous, and to over-tax their energies.

Young people should therefore always be superintended, while engaging in them, by an experienced person who can estimate their strength. Competition in games is most injurious, as it almost inevitably taxes the strength beyond the powers of the system, and too often causes permanent injury to the health. It is a good rule that one should never engage in any game to the extent of producing painful or continued exhaustion.

No exercise is more interesting, or more useful in quickening both mind and body, than military drill. It would be an excellent thing, both for master and scholars, if, two or three times a week, half an hour were taken from books and given to drill in the open air, under the master's leadership.

The muscles require rest as well as exercise. In this they differ from the heart and the lungs. These are always in motion, even when we are asleep; but the muscles, and the nervous system which governs the muscles, cannot work unless they have periodical seasons of total rest, during which all their functions are suspended. This rest we call sleep. We may rest the muscles to some extent while we are awake; but so long as we are awake, the brain and the nervous system, of which the brain is the seat, are at work. These latter cannot rest unless we are thrown into the state of unconsciousness called sleep.

A man usually requires to sleep eight hours out of the twenty-four. Persons whose employment does not involve much anxiety or thinking might thrive with less; but they generally take more. On the other hand, those whose brains are most active during the day, and who therefore require most rest, often obtain or allow themselves least sleep at night; but such persons are never long-lived. A young person, while growing, needs more sleep than a man; and an infant spends half its time in sleep;—which one poet calls "nature's soft nurse;" and another, "tired nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep."

Too much sleep makes us dull, as too little exercise makes us lazy, converting our muscle into fat. Too little sleep, however, is much more injurious. A man who is forcibly kept awake will ere long become insane or will die.

QUESTIONS.

Why does the body require exercise? What is its effect on the blood and the organs of the body? What is to be aimed at in the exercise we take? What exercise is, for this reason, the most healthful? What other exercises are recommended for boys? What for men? How may gymnastics be abused? What precaution should be taken against this? Why is competition in games injurious? What exercise is recommended for masters and scholars? Wherein do the muscles and the brain differ from the heart and the lungs? What is the total rest of the former called? How much sleep does a man usually require? What persons require most rest? What do young persons need? What have poets called sleep? What is the effect of too much sleep? and of too little?

The th
Plants,
the seco

The d

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

The cl
oats, and
Wheat,
chiefly, w
flour, the
then separ
of the gra
however,
than the p
but this is
nourishing
the additi
grown in K
Australia,
Barley.—
beer and c
form of po
as food for
Barley stra
produced i
North Ame
and drought
is said to b

Oats.—O

PLANTS AND THEIR USES.

THE three great classes of plants, with respect to their uses, are—*Food Plants, Industrial Plants, and Medicinal Plants*: the first *support* life, the second *protect* life, the third *preserve* life.

I.—FOOD PLANTS.

The different forms in which plants yield food or nourishment are:—

1. Grains	5. Leaves.	9. Starches.
2. Seed-pods.	6. Flowers.	10. Sugar.
3. Fruits.	7. Stems.	11. Spices.
4. Nuts.	8. Roots.	12. Beverages.

1.—GRAINS.

The chief grains produced in temperate climates are *wheat, barley, oats, and rye*.

Wheat.—Wheat is the most valuable of all grains; because from it, chiefly, we obtain the flour of which bread is made. In order to make flour, the grains of wheat are crushed between stones in a mill. It is then separated into two parts—bran and flour. *Bran* is the outer husk of the grain, which is used for fattening cattle, &c. It does no harm, however, to mix the bran with the flour; the mixture is more nourishing than the pure flour. It makes the flour and the bread darker in colour; but this is no disadvantage, for brown bread is both cheaper and more nourishing than white bread. Bread is often artificially whitened by the addition of alum and other injurious substances. Wheat is chiefly grown in France, Germany, Austria, Southern Russia, the British Isles, Australia, the United States, Canada, Egypt, and Northern Africa.

Barley.—Barley is now principally used to make malt for brewing beer and distilling spirits. It is, however, employed for food in the form of pot or pearl barley, used for thickening soups. It is also used as food for poultry. Barley meal is used for fattening pigs and turkeys. Barley straw is used as fodder for cattle and horses. Barley is chiefly produced in the northern regions of Europe, in Central Asia, and in North America. It is much hardier than wheat; it resists both heat and drought better, and may therefore be raised from poorer soils. It is said to be the most ancient food of man.

Oats.—Oats are chiefly used whole as food for horses. Ground into

meal, they are used in some countries (especially in Scotland) for making porridge and cakes. As a plant, it is extremely hardy, and grows where neither wheat nor barley could be made productive. For this reason it is a favourite crop in mountainous countries and moist climates—for example, in Scotland and Wales. It also grows luxuriantly in Australia, Northern and Central Asia, and in North America.

Rye.—Rye is chiefly cultivated in Russia and in most parts of Germany, where rye bread is the common food of the peasantry. Rye bread is dark in colour, and not very nourishing. In Sweden, a half-year's supply of rye cakes is baked at one time! Rye grows on lighter and poorer soils than other grains. In Holland, it is fermented for distillation. In Britain, it is used in a green state as food for sheep and cattle, as it is ready before the other green crops. Rye straw is much used for thatching, for stuffing horse-collars, and for making straw-plait for hats and bonnets.

The chief grains grown in warm climates are *rice*, *maize*, and *millet*.

Rice.—Rice forms the chief subsistence of the people in India, China, Japan, and other Eastern countries. Indeed, it supports more persons than any other single article of food in the world. It is chiefly cultivated in India, China, and Ceylon, in Asia; in Lombardy (Italy) and Spain, in Europe; in Egypt in Africa; in Brazil in South America; and in the Carolinas and Louisiana in North America. Its cultivation requires an immense quantity of moisture. It grows best in fields which can be inundated. Indeed, the fact that it is usually sown upon watery soil makes it probable that the expression in Ecclesiastes (xi. 1) refers to rice. In Egypt, for example it is always sown while the waters of the Nile cover the land; and it is deposited in the mud as the floods subside. A strong spirit called *arrack* is distilled from rice; and the straw is used for making plait for hats and bonnets.

Maize.—North America is the native country of maize. So much may be inferred from the fact that the Indians were cultivating it when the New World was discovered by the Spaniards in the fifteenth century: hence its name of *Indian corn*. It is now cultivated also in Southern Germany and the whole valley of the Danube, in the countries around the Mediterranean, in India, the West Indies, and Australia. In Mexico and many parts of the United States it forms the staple article of food; and in Africa it is as much used as rice. The seeds of maize are arranged in closely packed rows on a thick cylindrical pithy stem called the *cob*, which is from eight to ten inches in length. In the United States it is reduced to meal, and made into cakes called "corn bread," and into puddings and porridge. It does not make nourishing bread, because it is deficient in the strength-giving substance called

"glute
Much
The co
Mill
grow in
and the
West I
and by
feeding
and ear

QUEST
fled with
forms do
ment?
in tempe
is the mo
two subs
ated? W
and bran
alum not
In what
grown?
from barl
for food?
grown?
poorer soi
unground
meal used
crop in Se
parts of t
what coun
food of the
do they t

Seeds c
plants in
striking c
Peas.—
now grow
North Am
Beans.—
chiefly use
horses.
Lentils.

"gluten." Mixed with wheat-flour, however, it makes good bread. Much of it is imported into Britain for feeding and fattening cattle. The *cobs* are used as fuel.

Millet.—Millet is a general term for several kinds of seed which grow in the north of Africa, the United States, the West Indies, India and the East Indies, and in Southern Europe. It is used as food in the West Indies by the black population (whence its name of *negro* corn), and by the poorer people in Italy. It is used in Britain chiefly for feeding poultry. The stalks, also, are much used for making whisks and carpet-brooms.

QUESTIONS.—How are plants classified with respect to their uses? In what forms do plants yield food or nourishment? Name the chief grains grown in temperate climates. Which of these is the most valuable? Why? Into what two substances is ground wheat separated? Why should bread made of flour and bran be preferred? Why should alum not be used in whitening bread? In what countries is wheat chiefly grown? What beverages are made from barley? In what form is it used for food? Where is barley chiefly grown? Why may it be grown in poorer soils than wheat? For what are underground oats used? For what is oatmeal used? Why are oats a favourite crop in Scotland and Wales? In what parts of the world are oats grown? In what countries is rye bread the common food of the peasantry? How frequently do they bake rye bread in Sweden?

What kind of soil is suitable for growing rye? For what is rye used in Holland? For what is rye straw used? Name the chief grains grown in warm climates. Which of these supports more people than any other single article of food? Where does it form the chief food of the people? In what parts of the world is rice cultivated? In what kind of land does it grow best? When is it sown in Egypt? What spirit is distilled from rice? What is the straw used for? Of what country is maize a native? Where else is it grown? Where does it form the staple article of food? Why is Indian corn-flour not well adapted for bread-making? What is mixed with it to supply its want of gluten? For what is it much used in Britain? Where is millet grown? For what is it chiefly used in Britain? What are made from the stalks of the millet plant?

2.—SEED-PODS.

Seeds contained in a pod or shell are called **PULSE**. The chief pulse-plants in temperate climates are *peas*, *beans*, and *lentils*. Their most striking characteristic is their bright, butterfly-shaped flowers.

Peas.—The common pea is a native of the south of Europe; but it now grows in all temperate climates. North Germany and British North America export peas in large quantities.

Beans.—The bean plant originally came from the East. Beans are chiefly used—mixed with oats, bran, &c.—as food for hard-working horses. Egypt and North Germany export beans largely to England.

Lentils.—Lentils chiefly grow in the countries around the Mediter-

anean. They are used for human food in some countries, for fodder in others. They have been used since very remote times in the East. Dried lentils are still used as the best portable food for long journeys in Syria, and also in Egypt. A nourishing food for invalids is made from lentils—*Ervalenta* or *Revalenta Arabica*. It is light and easily digested.

The chief pulse-plants in warm countries are the *ground-nut*, the *carob-bean*, and the *chick-pea*.

Ground-nut.—This plant is so called because the pods thrust themselves under ground, and there come to maturity. It is cultivated in Western Africa, where it forms an important article of food; and in the Southern United States, where the seeds roasted are a favourite dainty. In its green state the plant is greedily devoured by cattle.

Carob-bean.—The carob-bean grows in the south of Europe, and on the coasts of the Levant. It is exported largely from Sicily and Naples. This bean also bears the name of St. John's bread, because it was supposed to be the locust-bean on which John the Baptist fed in the wilderness. The carob rather belongs to fruits, as the seed is not eaten, but a sweet pulp in which it is embedded in the pod.

Chick-pea.—The chick-pea grows in the south of Europe, and in the East. It is much prized by travellers in the desert, because it sustains life longer than other food in similarly small quantities, and it is easily carried. In the south of Europe it is used as a vegetable, and it is also employed to feed horses and cattle. In Turkey it is called camel corn.

QUESTIONS.—What is the common name for all seeds contained in a pod or shell? Name the chief pulse-plants grown in temperate climates. What is the shape of their flowers? Where is the common pea grown? What countries export peas in large quantities? For what are beans chiefly used? What countries export beans largely to England? Where do lentils chiefly grow? Where are they used for food?

What invalids' food is made from lentils? Name the chief pulse-plants grown in warm countries. From what circumstance does the ground-nut receive its name? Where is the ground-nut cultivated? Where is the carob-bean grown? What is its other name? What part of the plant is eaten? Where does the chick-pea grow? Why is it much prized by desert travellers? How is it used in the south of Europe?

3.—FRUITS.

Well known food-fruits are *bread-fruit*, *mango*, *banana*, *plantain*, *pine-apple*, *orange*, *lemon*, *grape*, *fig*, *date*, *plum*, *peach*, *apple*, *pear*, *strawberry*, and *gooseberry*.

The *Bread-fruit tree* is a native of the South Sea Islands, where it supplies the natives with much of their food. It has been introduced also in the West Indies, where its fruit is enjoyed as a delicacy. An-

oth
Ind
mos
T
genu
weig
they
Pi
They
the v
shape
As
Portu
count
are la
Azore
The
all wa
Citric
from a
lime, l
Grap
and th
raisins
Malaga
raisins
Islands
been th
grape, v
(see p. 2
The h
are ship
Dates
Northern
Dried
The P
cultivat
of the p
originall
Among
Pears, S

other tree belonging to the same family is the *jack-tree* of the East Indies.

The **Mango tree** is a native of the East Indies, but now grows in most tropical countries.

The **Banana and Plantain trees** are also tropical plants (of the same genus), and their sausage-shaped fruit, which hangs in bunches often weighing fifty pounds, forms the principal food of the natives wherever they grow.

Pine-apples originally came from the Bahama and Bermuda Islands. They are now reared—either naturally or artificially—in most parts of the world. They are called *pine-apples* because the fruit resembles in shape the cones of the pine-tree.

Asia is the native country of the **Orange tree**. It was brought to Portugal early in the sixteenth century; and it is now grown in most countries of the same latitude as China, in both hemispheres. Oranges are largely exported from Spain and Portugal, Italy and Sicily, the Azores and Malta.

The **Lemon tree** is also a native of Asia; but it is now cultivated in all warm countries, especially in those around the Mediterranean. *Citric acid* is derived from lemon juice, although it can be obtained from all other species of the genus *citrus*; to which belong the orange, lime, lemon, citron, &c.

Grapes are exported from Spain and Portugal, the Island of Sicily, and the north of Germany, through Hamburg. Dried grapes are called *raisins* and *currants*. The best raisins are produced at Smyrna (Turkey), Malaga and Valencia (Spain), and Damascus (Syria). Currants are the raisins or dried fruit of a small grape cultivated chiefly in the Ionian Islands. The name is a corruption of "Corinths,"—Corinth having been the chief place whence they originally came. The juice of the grape, when fermented, becomes *wine*; and if distilled, it yields brandy (see p. 273).

The best **Figs** are produced in Turkey and Greece; the finest of all are shipped from Smyrna.

Dates grow on the date-palm, which is indigenous to Arabia and to Northern Africa. The best dates come from Tunis (Africa).

Dried Plums are called prunes. They chiefly come from France.

The **Peach** is a native of Persia. There are several varieties of it in cultivation. One of them is the *nectarine*. The *apricot* is not a variety of the peach, but is a fruit belonging to a different genus, which came originally from the Levant.

Among the best known garden fruits in temperate regions are **Apples, Pears, Strawberries, and Gooseberries**, in many hundreds of varieties.

QUESTIONS.—Name the best known fruits that are used for food. Where is the bread-fruit tree native? To what extent is it there used? Into what part of the Western Hemisphere has it been introduced? Where does the mango tree grow? Where do the banana and plantain trees grow? To what extent do the natives use them for food? What is the weight of a bunch of their fruit? Where is the native home of the pine-apple? Where are pine-apples now grown? How are they reared in cold climates? Why called pine-apple? Where is the original home of the orange tree? In what countries is it now grown? What places export oranges in large quantities? Where is the lemon tree cultivated? What acid is got from lemon juice? What countries export grapes? What are raisins? What are currants? Whence do the best raisins come? What beverages are got from grapes? Where are the finest figs produced? What tree produces dates? Whence do the finest dates come? What are prunes? Whence do they come? Of what country is the peach a native? Name other fruits much like peaches in appearance. Which are the best known of our garden fruits?

4. — NUTS.

Examples of edible nuts are the *cocoa-nut*, *Brazil nut*, *walnut*, *almond*, *chestnut*, and *hazl nut*.

The *Cocoa-nut* grows on a palm tree found by the sea-side in most tropical countries; for example, in the East and West Indies, in Ceylon, and in the South Sea Islands. It is usually the first plant to establish itself on newly formed coral reefs. It was called *cocoa-nut* on account of the monkey-like face at the base of the nut, called *coco* (bug-bear) by the Portuguese. This nut contains a white fleshy kernel, and a sweet liquor called *cocoa-nut milk*. *Cocoa-nut* palms are most abundant in Ceylon, where they and their products form important exports. The products of the *cocoa-nut* palm are *coir* (p. 276), *coperah* (p. 279), and *arrack* (p. 274). The stems of the *cocoa-nut* palm are used for posts in building, and for water-pipes; while the leaves are used for thatching and wicker-work.

Walnuts are exported from Germany, France, and Italy.

Chestnuts are most abundant in Spain; hence they are usually called Spanish chestnuts.

5. — LEAVES.

Examples of plants the leaves of which are used for food, are *Cabbages* of various kinds, *Rhubarb*, *Lettuce*, *Parsley*, *Spinach*, *Sea-kale*, and *Celery*.

6. — FLOWERS.

Examples of plants the flowers of which are used for food, are *Artichokes*, *Broccoli*, and *Cauliflowers*.

Plan
Angel

Exa
turnip,
the ho
garlic.

The
into th
Althou
under-g

The
winter
Mangel

In th
tion of
being a

In Eu
Spain a
however
favourite

QUEST
edible n
cocoa-nut
is found
Of what
leaves of
countries
countries
Name pla

Starch
specially
fruits, an
oca, sago,

Arrow-
is now gr
made fro

7.—STEMS.

Plants the stems of which are used for food, are *Asparagus* and *Angelica*.

8.—EDIBLE ROOTS.

Examples of plants of which the roots are edible are the *potato*, the *turnip*, the *carrot*, the *parsnip*, the *beet*, the *mangel-wurzel*, the *radish*, the *horse-radish*, the *Jerusalem artichoke*, the *onion*, the *leek*, and the *garlic*.

The *Potato* is a native of South America, whence it was introduced into the British Isles in the sixteenth century by Sir Walter Raleigh. Although generally called roots, potatoes are swollen portions of the under-ground stem, and not roots proper.

The field *Turnip* is chiefly used as food for cattle, especially during winter; but for this purpose farmers also grow large quantities of *Mangel-wurzel*,—a German name, meaning “beet-root.”

In the name *Jerusalem Artichoke*, the word *Jerusalem* is a corruption of the Italian word *girasole*, meaning turning with the sun, it being a species of sun-flower.

In Europe, plants of the *Onion* kind grow in greatest perfection in Spain and Portugal, where the summers are long and warm. They, however, are grown abundantly in most parts of the world, and form a favourite article of food. They are not really roots, but enlarged stems.

QUESTIONS.—Name six kinds of edible nuts. What tree produces the cocoa-nut? Where does it grow? What is found in the inside of the kernel? Of what use are the stems and the leaves of the cocoa-nut palm? What countries export walnuts? In what countries are chestnuts most abundant? Name plants whose leaves are used for food. Name plants whose flowers are used for food. Name two plants whose stems are used for food. Name plants whose roots are used for food. Where is the native home of the potato? Who first brought it to this country? Where do plants of the onion kind grow in greatest perfection? What are they in reality?

9.—STARCHES.

Starch is a substance found in nearly all plants; but the name is specially applied to the fine white flour prepared from mealy seeds, fruits, and roots. The chief starches used for food are *arrow-root*, *tapioca*, *sago*, and *corn-flour*.

Arrow-root.—The arrow-root plant is a native of South America, but is now grown in both the East and the West Indies. The starch is made from the fleshy under-ground stem, erroneously called the root.

This, when thoroughly cleansed, is pounded in water, which becomes milk-white, and is then poured off. The white sediment, when dried, is the arrow-root. It was called arrow-root because the root was supposed to be an antidote to the poisoned arrows of the Indians.

Tapioca.—Tapioca is the finest part of the starch made from the root of the mandioc or cassava plant. This plant grows chiefly in Brazil. The root resembles a large turnip or mangel-wurzel; and though it yields food so nourishing, it is remarkable that its sap is so poisonous that the Indians poison their arrows with it. The poison is expelled by heating the starch over a slow fire.

Sago.—Sago is another starch, made from the pith of the trunk of several species of palm. It is produced in the East Indies, but chiefly in the islands of the Indian Archipelago. By the natives sago-powder is used for making bread, and forms an important article of food. The great depôt for the export of sago is Singapore, in the Malay States. A large amount of spurious sago, made from potatoes, is sent into the European market from German manufactories, and can hardly be distinguished from the real East Indian sago.

The common laundry *Starch* is made from wheat, rice, and potatoes. *Macaroni* and *Vermicelli* are made from a mixture of wheat flour and water, pressed through moulds of different shapes. They are produced largely in Italy, where they are favourite articles of food.

QUESTIONS.—Name the chief starches used for food. Whence does arrow-root come? From what part of the plant is the starch got? From what plant is tapioca got? Where does this plant grow? What does its root resemble in shape? What is remarkable about the sap of this root? From what kind of tree is sago got? From what part of the tree? In what parts of the world is this tree grown? For what purpose is the powder used by the natives? From what town is sago chiefly exported? From what is spurious sago made? Whence is it sent into the European market? From what is laundry starch made? What are macaroni and vermicelli? In what country are they chiefly produced? For what are they used?

10.—SUGAR.

The chief sugar-yielding plants are the *sugar cane*, *bect-root*, the *sugar maple*, and the *date palm*.

Sugar cane.—The sugar cane grows chiefly in the West Indies, the Southern United States, Brazil, India, and China. In order to obtain sugar from the canes, the ripe stems are crushed between iron rollers; the juice is then cleared and boiled till it forms into crystals. It is then strained by being put into hogsheds having holes in the bottom, which are placed over a large cistern. The liquid part strained from

the sugar is called *molasses*, or treacle. The sugar in the hogsheads is called *muscovado*, or brown sugar. Loaf sugar is brown sugar clarified and refined by sugar-refiners. Sugar is made from *beet-root* on the Continent of Europe, especially in France. In North America it is extracted from the maple. It is also made from the date palm in India by boiling the juice which flows from the flower-stems when they are tapped.

<p>QUESTIONS.—Name the chief sugar-yielding plants. Where is the sugar cane chiefly grown? What is done with the canes after they are cut? What is then done with the juice? Into what kind of casks is the moist sugar put?</p>	<p>What is the liquid called which drains from it? What is loaf sugar? In what country is beet-root sugar chiefly made? From what tree is sugar extracted in North America? From what tree in India?</p>
--	--

11.—SPICES.

The chief spice plants are *cinnamon*, *nutmeg*, *mace*, *clove*, *pepper*, *ginger*, *vanilla*, and *mustard*.

Cinnamon is the inner bark of a species of laurel, which grows chiefly in Ceylon.

Nutmeg is the kernel of a fruit resembling a pear, which grows in the islands of Malaysia. It is enclosed in a dark-brown glossy shell.

Mace is the husk or membrane which covers the shell of the nutmeg

Cloves are the dried flower-buds of a tree that grows in the East and the West Indies and in South America. The best cloves are produced in the Molucca Islands, of which the tree is a native. The name is a corruption of the French word *clou*, meaning nail, which the buds very much resemble.

The different kinds of **pepper** are *Jamaica pepper* (called also allspice and pimento), *black pepper*, *white pepper*, and *Cayenne pepper*.

Jamaica pepper is the unripe berry of an evergreen shrub dried in the sun. The plant, which resembles a myrtle, is a native of the West Indies, and is largely cultivated in Jamaica.

Black pepper is the dried berry of a climbing vine indigenous to the East Indies.

White pepper is obtained from black pepper-corns by removing the outer skin.

Cayenne pepper is prepared from capsicum berries, or chillies, by drying them and reducing them to powder.

Ginger is the dried root-stock of a dwarf plant, cultivated in the East and the West Indies and in Western Africa. Preserved ginger is the undried ginger, whilst young, boiled in sirup.

Vanilla is the dried pod or fruit of a climbing plant, a parasitic orchid, a native of Mexico and Brazil. It is much used by the Spaniards to flavour chocolate.

Mustard is the flour or powder obtained by crushing and sifting the seeds of the *mustard* plant.

QUESTIONS.—Name the chief spice plants. What is cinnamon? Whence does it chiefly come? What is nutmeg? Whence does it come? What is mace? What are cloves? Where are the best cloves obtained? Name the different kinds of pepper. Of what part of the world is Jamaica pepper a native? Of what part black pepper? What is white pepper? What is cayenne pepper? What is ginger? How is the confection called preserved ginger made? What is vanilla? Of what countries is it a native? For what is it much used? What is mustard?

12.—BEVERAGES.

The chief plants that are used in preparing beverages are *tea*, *coffee*, *cocoa*, *grape-vine*, *hop-bine*, *barley*, and other grains.

Tea.—The tea plant grows in China, Japan, and India; but it is most successfully cultivated in Southern China. It is a hardy evergreen, from three to six feet in height, somewhat like a privet. The leaf is the part of the plant of which tea is made. The difference in the quality of tea is owing partly to the district in which it is grown, partly to the time at which it is gathered. There are four gatherings in the year—in April, May, June, and August. The first gathering is confined to the choicest leaves only, and is the finest; the last gathering is the lowest quality. The first very rarely leaves China. The only difference between green tea and black is in the mode of preparation. In the case of black tea, the fresh leaves are piled up in heaps, and allowed to “heat” or ferment partially before being dried. This gives them their black colour. In China, tea is often adulterated by colouring it with Prussian-blue, and by mixing other leaves with it. In the countries into which it is imported it is adulterated by mixing with it leaves of common shrubs, and old tea-leaves re-dried! Tea is now extensively cultivated in the warm, moist valleys of the Himalayah Mountains, in Assam, and also in Brazil. Paraguay tea is a different plant entirely from the tea plant of China, being in fact a kind of holly. It is gathered in branches; and the twigs as well as the leaves are dried, and rubbed into a coarse powder.

Coffee.—The coffee-plant grows in Arabia, the East and the West Indies, and Brazil. The seeds of the fruit, which is about the size of a small cherry, are the parts of the plant which yield coffee, and are

called
bia;
Amer
caffei
Coffe
weed
Coc
Indie
in poc
contat
After
simpl
flavour
Gra

the ge
are en
which
the pr
the va
drawn
When
are du
tain;
climat
chief v
many.
gary, C
mentio
i.e., so
the aim
beer (n
last is

Hop-
Hollan
are the
fire. T
stops it
Barle
kinds o
fillatio
The pr
moistur

called coffee-beans. The best coffee comes from Mocha in South Arabia; and the largest supply from Ceylon, the West Indies, and South America. Coffee owes its nourishing properties to an element called *caffeine*, which is identical with the active principle in tea and cocoa. Coffee is often adulterated by the addition of chicory, the root of a weed a little like a dandelion.

Cocoa.—This is the seed of the cacao tree, which grows in the West Indies and in several parts of South America. The seed is contained in pods about five inches long, somewhat like a cucumber. Each pod contains from forty to fifty seeds or beans, packed together in rows. After being dried, the kernels of the seeds are ground. Chocolate is simply the ground cocoa-seeds made into a paste with sugar, and flavoured in various ways, but chiefly with vanilla.

Grape-vine.—All beverages made from grapes are included under the general name of *wines*. Wine is made as follows: The ripe grapes are emptied into a tub with holes in the bottom, called the *wine-press*; which is placed over a larger tub, called the *wine-vat*. The grapes in the press are then crushed by being trodden; and the juice flows into the vat, where it ferments. After fermentation ceases, the wine is drawn off into casks, when a second but slight fermentation takes place. When this ceases the casks are closed. The differences between wines are due to the proportions of sugar, alcohol, and acid which they contain; and these are regulated by peculiarities of soil, differences of climate and exposure, and degrees of skill in the manufacture. The chief wine-producing countries are France, Spain, Portugal, and Germany. Of secondary importance are Sicily, Italy, Switzerland, Hungary, Greece, and Turkey. Two secondary products of wine may be mentioned:—*brandy*, which is a spirit distilled from wine; and *vinegar*, *i. e.*, sour wine [Fr. *vinaigre*], which is made by exposing weak wine to the air till it turns sour. Vinegar is also made, however, from weak beer (malt vinegar), cider, and British wines, sugar, and wood. The last is distilled vinegar.

Hop-bine.—The hop-bine grows chiefly in the south of England, in Holland, Belgium, and North America. The hops used in brewing are the female flowers or catkins of the hop-bine dried over a charcoal fire. The addition of hops to beer gives the latter a bitter flavour, and stops its fermentation.

Barley, &c.—The beverages produced from barley are the different kinds of beer by brewing, and ardent spirits (whisky, gin, &c.) by distillation. Barley prepared for brewing and distilling is called malt. The process of malting is very simple. The barley is softened by moisture till it sends out small roots; and its germination is then

checked by drying. The effect of this germinating process is to convert the starch in the grain into sugar. The sugar afterwards ferments and becomes alcohol. The scum or froth of malt liquors during fermentation is called *beerm* or *yeast*. It is used to raise the dough in bread-making, so as to make the bread lighter and more wholesome. Malt is made from other grains besides barley; for example, from wheat, maize, and rye.

Rum is a spirit made from the sugar-cane, or from the molasses, which, as before said, drains from the sugar. The finest is made in Jamaica.

Arrack is the spirit distilled from rice, and also from palm juice. The latter, however, is more correctly called by its native Indian name, *toddy*, which has been adopted into our language.

QUESTIONS.—Name plants from which beverages are got. Describe the tea plant. In what countries is it cultivated? To what is the difference in the quality of tea owing? When are the finest leaves gathered? What causes the difference between green and black tea? What kind of plant produces Paraguay tea? Where does the coffee plant grow? What part of the plant yields coffee? Whence does the best coffee come? With what is coffee often adulterated? What is cocoa? Where does the cacao tree grow? How many seeds are there in each pod? What is chocolate? What beverages are

made from grapes? In wine making, what is first done to the grapes? What happens to the juice while in the vat? To what are the different qualities of wine owing? Name the chief wine-producing countries. What is brandy? From what is vinegar made? For what are hops used? Where is the hop-bine chiefly grown? What beverages are produced from barley? Describe the process of malting. What chemical change does barley undergo in the process of malting? What is yeast? For what do bakers use it? What is rum? Where is the finest rum made? From what is arrack distilled?

II.—INDUSTRIAL PLANTS.

The different forms in which plants yield industrial materials are:—

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Fibres for Weaving, &c. | 4. Vegetable Dyes. |
| 2. Timber. | 5. Gums, Resins, &c. |
| 3. Vegetable Oils. | 6. Tanning Materials. |

1.—FIBRES.

The chief fibre-yielding plants are *flax*, the *cotton-plant*, the *hemp-plant*, and the *jute-plant*.

Flax.—The *flax-plant* yields the fine fibres of which linen is made. It is an annual, growing to the height of two feet, and bearing blue flowers. It is now cultivated in nearly every country in Europe, as

well
in wa
then
then
twist
made
tow.
woun
lawn,
Dama
woven
noted
are ma
meal,
New
which
comm
Cott
cotton
an ann
of cott
Americ
and E
strengt
of dow
seeds b
bales a
again,
seats o
Bolton,
fabrics
ception,
the fabr
Moussu
fustian,
words—
naturall
Hemp
thern I
in North
fibres fo
way as

well as in Egypt and India. The stems, after being dried, are soaked in water, to destroy their green outer bark. The interior fibres are then dried and beaten, to separate the threads completely. They are then hackled, or combed out, when they are ready to be spun, or twisted into yarn, which is then bleached. The finer kinds of flax are made by repeated hackling. The rough and broken fibres are called tow. *Lint* is linen scraped into a soft woolly substance, to lay on wounds. The chief varieties of linen fabrics are damask, cambric, lawn, and lace. *Damask* is so called because it was first made at Damascus in Syria. Its peculiarity is that it has figures and flowers woven in it. *Cambric* takes its name from Cambray in France, once noted for its manufacture. From linen rags the finest kinds of *paper* are made; and from the seeds of the flax-plant we get linseed oil and meal, and oil-cake with which cattle are fed.

New Zealand flax is a plant indigenous to New Zealand, the leaves of which yield a fibre much stronger than that obtained from the stem of common flax. It is used for the manufacture of cordage.

Cotton.—Cotton is the soft down that grows in the seed-pod of the cotton-plant. The chief variety of the plant is the herbaceous cotton, an annual, three or four feet in height, which yields the largest supply of cotton. The chief varieties of cotton used in manufactures are North American (which is the best), South American, East Indian, Levant, and Egyptian. Its commercial value depends on the length and strength of the fibre. In preparing cotton, the seeds, enclosed in balls of down, are sent to a mill, where the hairs are separated from the seeds by an apparatus called a *gin*. The cotton is then compressed into bales and sent to the spinners. The seeds are either kept for sowing again, or are used in making oil, and oil-cake for cattle. The chief seats of the cotton manufacture are at Manchester, Preston, Wigan, Bolton, Bury, Oldham, and Glasgow. The chief varieties of cotton fabrics are calico, muslin, gingham, dimity, and fustian. With one exception, these names are derived from the names of the places where the fabrics were first made: *calico*, from Calicut in India; *muslin*, from Moussul in Mesopotamia; *gingham*, from Guingamp in Brittany; and *fustian*, from Fostat (Cairo) in Egypt. *Dimity* comes from two Greek words—*di*, twice, and *mitos*, a thread. Nankeen is a cotton cloth, naturally of a yellow colour, first made at Nankin.

Hemp.—The hemp-plant was originally a native of Persia and Northern India, but it is now extensively cultivated in Russia, as well as in North America and Africa. The part of the plant which yields the fibres for manufacturing is the stem, which is treated in much the same way as that of the flax-plant. Of hemp we make canvas, sail-cloth,

process is to con-
wards ferments
uors during fer-
se the dough in
more wholesome.
example, from

m the molasses,
nest is made in

rom palm juice,
ve Indian name,

In wine making,
the grapes? What
e while in the vat?
ferent qualities of
e the chief wine-

What is brandy?
r made? For what
ere is the hop-bine
at beverages are
ey? Describe the
What chemical
ndergo in the pro-
hat is yeast? For
it? What is rum?
rum made? From
ded?

materials are:—

Dyes.

ins. &c.

Materials.

plant, the *hemp*-

h linen is made.
and bearing blue
ry in Europe, as

sacking, twine, ropes, and cables. Old ship-ropes, which are saturated with tar, form, when untwisted, *oakum*, an invaluable material in ship-building. It is chiefly used in "calking;" that is, it is stuffed tightly between the planks to prevent leakage. Old ropes, free from tar, are made into brown paper. Hemp-seed is used in making oil, and for feeding birds. Russia is the largest hemp-exporting country.

Jute.—Jute is the fibre obtained from the inner bark of an East Indian annual plant, which grows to the height of twelve or fourteen feet. It is prepared in the same way as flax and hemp. It is chiefly used for making *gunny*, a coarse canvas, in which cotton, rice, sugar, and other goods are packed.

Coir.—Coir is the fibre of the husk of the cocoa-nut, when spun into yarn. It is used in making ropes, mats, &c.

QUESTIONS.—What are the different forms in which plants yield industrial materials? Name the chief fibre-yielding plants. Describe the flax-plant. Where is it cultivated? Why are the stems soaked in water? Why beaten? In what way are the longer fibres separated from the shorter? Name the chief varieties of linen fabrics. What is lint? What is made from linen rags? What is made from the seeds of the flax-plant? What is

made from New Zealand flax? What part of the cotton-plant yields cotton? Where is the best cotton produced? Which are the principal seats of the cotton manufacture? Name the chief varieties of cotton fabrics. Where is the hemp-plant extensively cultivated? Name the different articles made from hemp. What are old ropes made into? For what is oakum used? For what is hemp-seed used? What is gunny? Where is jute got? What is coir?

2.—TIMBER.

The plants which yield material for building purposes and for furniture are forest trees.

These may for convenience be classed as follows:—

The woods of **Cone-bearing trees**, including the different species of *pine*, *fir*, and *cedar*.

Pine is light, soft, easily worked, and durable. It is used for building purposes—for roofs, floors, and doors of houses; and it is well adapted for making the masts of ships, as it is straight in the trunk, and elastic. When cut into planks it is called deal. The best deal is produced in Canada, and in the countries around the Baltic Sea. The white pine of Canada is that most extensively used. It is valued for its large size and its extreme lightness. The most valuable kind of pine is the red pine of the Baltic, or Riga fir. Pine is generally conveyed from the forest to the sea by being floated down rivers in single logs or in rafts. The Australian pine is an evergreen, yielding excellent timber.

Coe
in god
Leban
timber
not ol
Far
ash, a
The
ity.
iron w
interio
buildin
non ba
frames
cause i
especia
Europ
winter,
The
its com
that res
Malaba
from A
The
by char
making
now ger
Beech
bed-post
Ash is
ments.
The h
wood of
blocks an
Soft W
Lime-a
makers.
Willow
Fancy
ebony, wa
The ch
fine color

Cedar-wood is remarkable for its great durability: it has been found in good preservation after being in use for two thousand years! Mount Lebanon, in Syria, was famous for its cedar trees. Thence came the timber employed in Solomon's Temple at Jerusalem. Pencil-cedar is not obtained from this tree; it is the wood of an American juniper tree.

Familiar examples of **Hard Woods** are—*oak, elm, beech, birch, and ash*, and others which are mentioned as fancy woods below.

The chief qualities of *oak* are hardness, toughness, and great durability. Hence it was at one time greatly used for building ships, before iron was applied to that purpose; and ship-builders still use it for the interior fittings of ships, and for boats. Oak was well adapted for building ships of war, because it did not splinter when struck by a cannon ball. It is much used for making furniture, doors, and window-frames. It is preferred to other woods for making casks and tubs, because its close grain resists moisture. The best oak grows in England, especially in Sussex. But it also grows in France and Germany in Europe, and in North America. It is best to cut down the oak in winter, during the stagnation of the sap.

The *teak* tree has been called the Indian oak. It is highly valued for its combined strength and lightness. It is, also, the only Indian wood that resists the white ant. The best teak grows on the table-lands of Malabar, in the south-west of India. An inferior kind is exported from Africa.

The most valuable quality of *elm* is, that it is but slightly affected by changes of moisture and dryness. It is therefore much used in making water-wheels, ship planks, pipes, and pumps; but the last are now generally made of iron.

Beech is chiefly used for turning on the lathe. Bowls and trenchers, bed-posts and legs of chairs and tables, are made of it.

Ash is used for tool-handles, wheel-spokes, and agricultural implements.

The hardest and heaviest wood known is *lignum vite*,—that is, the wood of life,—which grows chiefly in Jamaica, and of which ship blocks and pulleys are made.

Soft Woods.—Examples of soft woods are—*lime, willow, and alder*.

Lime-wood is used by turners, carvers, and musical instrument makers.

Willow-twigs are plaited into baskets and all kinds of *wicker-work*.

Fancy Woods.—Examples of fancy woods are—*mahogany, rosewood, ebony, walnut, and maple*.

The chief qualities of *mahogany* are firmness and durability, and its fine colour and smoothness when polished. It is used very extensively

for household furniture—both solid and in thin layers called veneers, fastened upon less expensive woods. Mahogany grows abundantly in Central America (Honduras mahogany), and in the West Indies and the Spanish Main (Spanish mahogany).

Rose-wood is so called because when fresh cut it has the odour of a rose. It is used for drawing-room furniture, and very extensively for pianoforte cases. The best rose-wood comes from Brazil.

Ebony is used for inlaying and turnery. It grows on the west coast of Africa; and another species in India and Ceylon. It is remarkable for its hardness, weight, black colour, and high polish. The blackest ebony, of which the keys of pianos are made, comes from Ceylon and the East India Islands.

Walnut-wood is used for the stocks of all kinds of fire-arms, and for furniture. It is a light and durable wood, and richly marked or veined. It grows chiefly in Central Europe.

Maple is used for ornamental cabinet-work, generally in veneers. It grows in North America from Canada to Georgia. Besides its timber, it is valuable for the sugar which it yields when tapped in early spring.

Bird's-eye Maple is so called because it is full of little knotty spots, resembling bird's eyes.

QUESTIONS.—Why is pine well adapted for building purposes? Why for masts of ships? Which is the best kind of pine? Which kind is most extensively used? How are pine logs generally conveyed from the forests to where they are shipped? What is the most remarkable property of cedar-wood? Whence came the cedar used in building Solomon's Temple? What is pencil-cedar? Name several kinds of hard woods. What properties make oak well adapted for ship-building? Of what material are ships now generally constructed? Name various things often made of oak. In what countries is oak grown? When should it be cut down? Where does the best teak grow? Name some of its most valu-

able properties. What is the most valuable quality of elm? For what purposes is it therefore well adapted? What household articles are made of beech? What is ash used for? Which is the hardest and heaviest of all woods? For what is it used? By whom is lime-wood used? What are made of willow-twigs? Name several kinds of fancy woods. What are the chief qualities of mahogany? In what two forms is it used in the manufacture of household furniture? Whence does mahogany come? For what is rose-wood used? Whence does the best rose wood come? For what is ebony used? Whence does it come? For what is walnut used? In what form is maple generally used?

3.—VEGETABLE OILS.

The chief industrial uses of oil are—for burning in lamps, for lubricating machinery, for making candles and soap, in the manufacture of paints and varnishes, and in wool-dressing. The two kinds of oils are

those
disti
Fi
oil,
Pe
man
Co
calle
but i
It co
Th
State
of Fr
oliver
or sal
what
The r
cattle
Rap
such a
in lam
Germa
Lin
in the
purpos
sure to
The
Othe
nut, &
Esse
or othe
essentia
plants.
attar of
Persia
use are
oil of or
—as, oi

QUEST
dustrial
given to
What na

those obtained by pressure, called *fixed* oils; and those obtained by distillation, called *essential* oils.

Fixed Oils.—The chief fixed oils are—*palm* oil, *cocoa-nut* oil, *olive* oil, *rape-seed* oil, *linseed* oil, &c.

Palm oil is made on the western coast of Africa. It is used in the manufacture of yellow soap; but the negroes use it for food.

Cocoa-nut oil is made from the ground kernel of the *cocoa-nut*, called *coperah*. It is principally used for making stearine for candles, but in the West Indies the coolies eat it with bread instead of butter. It comes chiefly from Ceylon and Malacca.

The olive tree is a native of Palestine, Greece, and the Barbary States in Africa; but it is now abundant in Italy, Spain, and the south of France. *Olive* oil is obtained from the fruit by pressure. The same olives are pressed three times: the first or virgin oil is called Florence or salad oil; the second may also be used for the table; the third is what is used for industrial purposes—for soap-making and as lamp-oil. The residuum, called the *marc*, is used either as manure or as food for cattle.

Rape-seed or *Colza* oil is specially adapted for lubricating machinery, such as locomotives and marine engines. It is also used for burning in lamps. The rape-plant grows extensively in England, France, and Germany.

Linseed oil is used for mixing with painters' colours, for burning, and in the making of printing-ink. It is particularly suitable for painting purposes, because it is a drying oil. It soon becomes hard on exposure to the air.

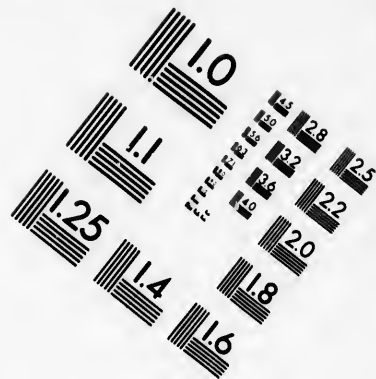
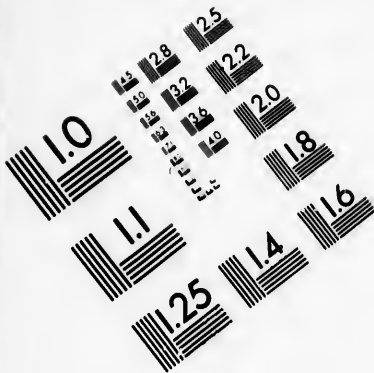
The watch-maker generally uses *hazel-nut* oil, or oil of almonds.

Other plants that yield fixed oils are hemp-seed, cotton-seed, ground-nut, &c.

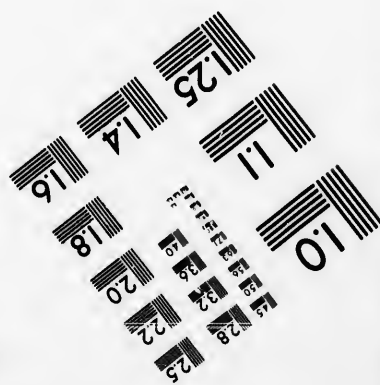
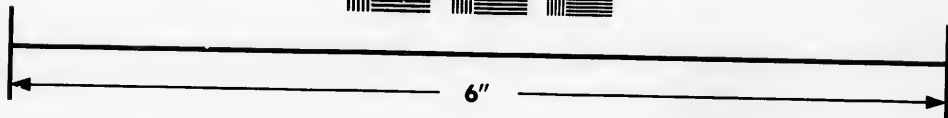
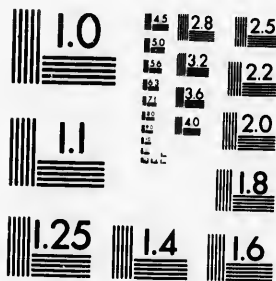
Essential Oils.—Essential oils are obtained from the leaves, flowers, or other parts of sweet-scented plants, by distillation. They are called *essential* because they contain the essence, or concentrated virtue of the plants. The most valuable of the essential oils is the oil of roses, called *attar* or *otto* of roses—the finest perfume in the world. It is made in Persia and other Eastern countries. Other essential oils in common use are—oil of lavender, oil of thyme, oil of peppermint, oil of lemons, oil of orange flowers. Some essential oils also are obtained from spices—as, oils of cinnamon, caraway, clove, cassia, and pimento.

QUESTIONS.—What are the chief industrial uses of oil? What name is given to oils obtained by pressure? What name is given to oils obtained by distillation? Name the chief fixed oils. Whence does palm oil come? For what is it used in this country? For what is it used by the negroes?





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
16
8
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

10
15
20
25
30
35
40

From what part of the cocoa-nut is cocoa-nut oil got? For what is it chiefly used in this country? For what is it used by the cocles in the West Indies? Whence does it chiefly come? What other name has it? From what part of the olive tree is olive oil got? For what are the finer kinds of olive oil used? For what is the coarsest kind used? In what countries is the olive tree grown? For what purposes is rape-seed or colza oil used? In what countries is the rape-seed plant grown extensively? For what purposes is linseed oil used? Why is it particularly suitable for painting purposes? What oils do watchmakers use? Name some other plants that yield fixed oils. From what parts of sweet-scented plants are essential oils got? Why are they called *essential*? Which is the most valuable of the essential oils? In what countries is attar of roses made? Name other essential oils in common use. Name some essential oils obtained from spices.

4.—VEGETABLE DYES.

The most common vegetable dyes are *logwood*, *madder*, *indigo*, *saffron*, *annatto*, and *sumach*. These dyes are largely used for dyeing the different kinds of woven fabrics, leather, &c., as well as in painting; and in colouring dairy produce and confectionery. The colours are made permanent in the fabrics to which they are applied by the use of mordants (such as alum, lime, tin), which act chemically both upon the dye-stuff and upon the cloth. Besides making the colours permanent, mordants make them more brilliant; and different mordants acting on the same dye produce different colours. For example—the water in which logwood is boiled is dark red; the addition of an acid produces a bright red; the addition of an alkali produces a dark blue or purple.

Logwood is the heart-wood of a middle-sized tree that grows in Central America, chiefly in Honduras. It is so called because it is imported in large blocks or logs. These logs are broken up and ground to powder, for the dyer's use. This dye is used in producing various shades of red, blue, purple, and black.

The colours obtained from **Madder** are chiefly varieties of red; but also brown, purple, and lilac. Madder is obtained from the root of a small creeping shrub, cultivated in France, Southern Europe, the Levant, and India.

The principal blue dye is **Indigo**; so called from *Indicum*, the Latin word for Indian, the plant being a native of India. To obtain the dye, the plants are cut down when they begin to flower, and are steeped in water until they slightly ferment. When the fermentation ceases, the water is drawn off and violently agitated. It is then allowed to settle, and a thick sediment forms at the bottom. This sediment, drained and dried, is the indigo of commerce. Indigo is also produced in Egypt,

Centra
the bl
Wood
and C
Flande
Saffr
crocus,
used fo
cheese
is obta
commo
Suma
Europe
colours
low; w

QUEST
common
various p
must be
make it
good effe
a colour
different
dye prod
water in w
change is
to it? W
adding a
the logwo
are produ
it produc
What col
der? Wh
tivated?

These a
the stems
soluble in
similar so
One of
from the
that state,
Gum-Ar

Central America, and Brazil. It has now almost superseded *Woad*, the blue dye used by the ancient Britons for staining their bodies. *Woad* is procured from the leaves of a plant indigenous to England and Germany, and still much cultivated in Austria, France, and Flanders.

Saffron dyes yellow. It comes from the stigmas of the common *crocus*, which grows in England, France, Spain, and Sicily. It is much used for colouring confectionery, varnishes, and sometimes butter and cheese; but for the last purpose it is now supplanted by *Annotto*, which is obtained from the pulp surrounding the seeds of an evergreen tree common in South America.

Sumach, the powdered leaves of a plant which grows in the south of Europe, chiefly in Sicily, also yields a yellow dye. Very different colours may be produced from it. With a mordant of tin it yields yellow; with iron, a gray or black; with zinc, a brownish yellow.

QUESTIONS. — Which are the most common vegetable dyes? For what various purposes are they used? What must be used along with the dye to make it a fast colour? What other good effect does a mordant produce on a colour besides fixing it? What do different mordants acting on the same dye produce? What is the colour of water in which logwood is boiled? What change is produced by adding an acid to it? What change is produced by adding an alkali to it? Where does the logwood tree grow? What colours are produced from logwood? How can it produce such a variety of colours? What colours are obtained from madder? Where is the madder plant cultivated? From what part of the plant

is the dye got? What is the principal blue dye? Where is indigo grown? From what part of the plant is the dye got? What other blue dye was much used? What use did the ancient Britons make of woad? In what countries is it cultivated? From what part of the plant is the dye got? What colour does saffron dye? From what plant, and from what part of the plant, is it got? In what countries is it grown? What materials is it much used for colouring? What other dye is used for colouring butter and cheese? Whence is *annotto* obtained? From what part of the tree is it got? What different colours are produced from *sumach*? Whence does *sumach* come? From what part of the plant is it got?

5.—GUMS, RESINS, &c.

These are peculiar secretions of plants, which generally exude from the stems of trees, and harden on exposure to the air. Gums are soluble in water; but resins are only soluble in alcohol, naphtha, or similar solvents.

One of the commonest of resins is that called *Rosin*, which flows from the various pine and fir trees in a liquid state. If collected in that state, and distilled, it yields spirit of *Turpentine* and *rosin*.

Gum-Arabic is the juice of certain kinds of the *acacia* tree, which

grow in Arabia, Africa, and India. It flows naturally from the stem and branches, and hardens on exposure to the air; and in this state it is gathered by the natives. It is used in many ways, especially as an adhesive for cementing materials; in confectionery; for stiffening and glazing woven fabrics—as silk, muslin, crape. It is also used in calico-printing, in painting, and in the manufacture of ink. The gum used for making paper adhesive—as postage-stamps, envelopes, and labels—is called British gum. It is made by slightly baking starch in a moderate heat.

Caoutchouc is the hardened milky juice of several trees that grow in Brazil, Central America, the East Indies, and other tropical countries. To collect the juice, incisions are made in the stem of the tree, and the juice which flows from them is received in vessels placed on the ground for the purpose. In Brazil, layer after layer of the juice is allowed to dry on the outside of clay moulds. It is then hardened in the sun, or in the smoke of a fire, which blackens it. The clay is then crushed or washed out, and the pear-shaped bottles of the caoutchouc are then ready for the market. Other names of caoutchouc are India-rubber and gum-elastic. The chief properties of India-rubber are its elasticity, flexibility, and imperviousness to water.

Gutta-percha is the hardened juice of a tall tree found in the Malayan Archipelago. The trees are felled, and the juice, which gathers between the bark and the wood, oozes into troughs, where it hardens in the air. It is extremely tough, easily softened in water and moulded into any shape, and it is impervious to water. Its most important use is for covering submarine telegraph wires.

Tar is a viscid liquid obtained from the wood—especially the roots—of the pine tree by “destructive distillation.” The roots are packed into a conical hole in the ground, generally on a bank. At the bottom of the cavity there is a cast-iron pan, with a spout projecting through the side of the bank. The hole is closely covered with turf, and the roots are set on fire. The tar runs down into the iron pan, from which it is carried into barrels by means of the spout. Russia, Norway and Sweden, and the United States export tar. *Pitch* is tar condensed, or deprived of its volatile parts, by boiling. When cold, it is solid, black, and very brittle. It is chiefly used in ship-building, to close the seams, and preserve the cordage and the wood from the effects of the air and the water.

Camphor is obtained from a species of laurel tree, indigenous to China, Japan, and the island of Formosa. The wood, cut into small pieces, is put, with water, into a still. The camphor, being volatile, rises with the steam, and is collected, in a solid form, in the upper part of the

still.
from t

QUE
uble?
What
resin t
trees?
subject
tree is
the ac
uses of
gum is
Where
got? V
from th
propert
does gu

Tann
skins o
Oak t
Gall-
ing wri
an inse
from th
Suma

Misce
the coun
the loss
operatio
when th
dred an
hence it
buoys an
Canes,
palm gr
lengths,
Coarse b

QUESTI
ning mat
For what
called Ale

still. It is used to protect cabinets of natural history, and clothes, from the depredations of insects. It is also used medicinally.

QUESTIONS.—In what are gums soluble? In what are resins soluble? What two substances are got from the resin that flows from the pine and fir trees? To what process is the resin subjected to yield these? From what tree is gum-arabic got? Where does the acacia grow? Name some of the uses of gum-arabic. What kind of gum is used in gumming envelopes? Where is caoutchouc or India-rubber got? What is the juice like as it flows from the trees? Name some of the properties of India-rubber. Whence does gutta-percha come? What is ob-

jectionable in the mode in which the natives procure it from the trees? Name some of the properties of gutta-percha. What is its most important use? From what kind of tree is tar got? From what part of the tree? By what process is it obtained? From what countries do we get tar? How is pitch made? In what is it chiefly used? From what kind of tree is camphor got? Where is the native home of this tree? By what process is camphor obtained from the tree? In what form is it produced? Name some of the uses of camphor.

6.—TANNING MATERIALS.

Tanning materials are those astringent substances used in converting skins of animals into leather.

Oak bark is one of the best.

Gall-nuts also are used in tanning, as well as in dyeing, and in making writing ink. They are excrescences, produced by the puncture of an insect, upon the young twigs of a kind of oak. They chiefly come from the ports of the Levant, whence they are called Aleppo galls.

Sumach, a dye already mentioned, is valuable also for tanning.

Miscellaneous.—**Cork** is the outer bark of a large oak which grows in the countries around the Mediterranean. The tree does not suffer from the loss of its bark, if the inner bark be not injured in the process. The operation may be repeated at intervals of eight or ten years, beginning when the tree is about twenty years old, and continuing till it is a hundred and fifty. Cork is light, elastic, and proof against most liquids; hence it is used for making stoppers of bottles and casks, net-floats, life-buoys and boats, lining of shoes, &c.

Canes, or **Ratans**, are the long slender stems of a certain species of palm growing in the forests of the East Indies. They are split into lengths, and woven into the lattice-work of the seats of chairs, &c. Coarse baskets are also made of unsplit canes.

QUESTIONS.—Which is the best tanning material? What are gall-nuts? For what purposes are they used? Why called Aleppo galls? Where does the

cork tree grow? How old is the tree when first barked? How old when last barked? Name some of the uses of cork. Name some of the uses of ratana.

III.—MEDICINAL PLANTS.

The different forms in which plants yield medicines are :—

1. Roots.	3. Leaves.	6. Barks.
2. Flowers.	4. Seeds.	7. Wood.
	5. Resins and Gums.	

1.—ROOTS.

Well known medicinal roots, or medicines derived from roots, are *rhubarb*, *liquorice*, *ginger* (see p. 271), and *ipecacuanha*.

Rhubarb grows in Russian Tartary and China. The Russian, imported through Turkey, is the most highly esteemed.

Liquorice root is exported from Spain; whence the paste made from it is called Spanish juice.

Ipecacuanha, which is a powerful emetic, is obtained from the root of a Brazilian plant about five or six inches high.

2.—FLOWERS.

The principal flowers used medicinally are *camomile flowers* and *arnica*.

The **Camomile** plant grows in England, France, Holland, and Germany. An infusion of the flowers is used as a tonic, and in fomentations.

The tincture of **Arnica** is taken as a stimulant, and it is applied to wounds and bruises.

3.—LEAVES.

The most valuable medicinal leaves are **Senna leaves**, the dried leaflets of several species of cassia. The senna plant grows in the tropical parts of Asia and Africa. The best comes from Upper Egypt and Arabia, and is called Alexandrian senna.

The leaves of **Fox-glove** are also used in medicine. An infusion of them lowers the pulse and causes weakness.

The leaf which has the most powerful narcotic or sleep-causing properties is **Tobacco**, which is used partially as a medicine, but very extensively as a luxury. The plant is indigenous to the warm parts of America. The best tobacco is produced in Cuba, and is called Havana tobacco. The chief varieties of tobacco are West Indian (Havana,

&c.),
(Port
also o

QUE
yield
medic
rhuba
liquor
theref
what
What
Nam
flowers
sion o

The
opium,
Opium
a nativ
active
ing the
then, v
rolled i
ern cou
it in pi
importa
India.
medicin

The C
Indies.
is called
Croton
is so pov
Strych
tained fr
Indies.
orange.

Well I
myrrh.

&c.), North American (Virginia, Maryland, &c.), South American (Porto Rico, Brazil, &c.), Asiatic (Manilla, Latakia, &c.). Tobacco is also cultivated in France, Germany, Spain, and Turkey.

QUESTIONS.—In what forms do plants yield medicines? Name the best known medicinal roots. Where is the best rhubarb got? From what country does liquorice root come? What name is therefore given to its juice? From what country do we get ipecacuanha? What is its chief property? Name the two principal medicinal flowers. For what purposes is an infusion of camomile flowers used? For what purposes is tincture of arnica used? Which are the most valuable medicinal leaves? Whence does the best senna come? What effect on the human system has an infusion of fox-glove leaves? What leaf has the most powerful narcotic properties? Where is the best tobacco grown? Name the chief varieties of tobacco. In what parts of Europe is tobacco grown?

4.—SEEDS.

The most important medicines derived from the seeds of plants are *opium*, *castor oil*, *croton oil*, and *strychnine*.

Opium is the thickened juice of the seed-vessels of the white poppy—a native of Persia, India, and other Eastern countries. It is the most active of narcotic or sleep-producing drugs. It is obtained by scratching the seed-vessels while still unripe, when a milky juice flows out of them, which hardens in the sun, and is then kneaded into cakes or rolled into balls, and packed in chests for export. The natives of Eastern countries smoke opium alone or with their tobacco, and they take it in pills. It is most largely consumed in China, where, although its importation is strictly prohibited, it is sent in large quantities from India. Several very useful preparations of opium are used as medicines.

The **Castor oil** plant grows in India, Italy, Africa, and the West Indies. The oil is expressed from the seeds without heat; whence it is called “cold drawn.”

Croton oil is expressed from the seeds of an East Indian plant. It is so powerful a purgative that a single drop is a full dose.

Strychnine is one of the most powerful poisons known. It is obtained from the bruised seeds of the *Nux Vomica*, a native of the East Indies. The seeds are contained in a round berry about the size of an orange.

5.—RESINS AND GUMS.

Well known medicinal gums are *aloes*, *camphor* (see p. 232), and *myrrh*.

Aloes is the hardened and bitter juice obtained from the fleshy leaves of the aloe, a plant of the lily family, which grows in Socotra, Barbadoes, and at the Cape of Good Hope.

Myrrh (lit. *bitter*) is an aromatic gum, issuing from the stem of a shrub that grows in Arabia and the East Indies.

6.—BARKS.

The chief medicinal barks are *Peruvian bark*, *oak bark*, and *cinnamon bark* (see p. 271).

Peruvian bark is obtained from various species of the cinchona tree, which grows on the slopes of the Andes in Peru. The tree was named in honour of the Countess of Cinchona, wife of a Spanish viceroy of Peru, who had been cured of a fever by its use, and introduced the bark into Spain. The chief drug extracted from the bark is called *quinine* (also derived from cinchona), the most valuable known remedy in cases of fever. It is extensively used in India. The Indian Government has sometimes expended £50,000 in one year in the purchase of quinine! Seeds and young plants have lately been introduced into British India, where large and thriving plantations are now established in many of the hilly districts.

Oak bark is prized in medicine for its strong astringent properties. It is therefore used to stop excessive bleeding.

7.—WOODS.

Quassia.—The wood of the quassia tree—of which there are two kinds—is a pure and powerful bitter, used in medicine. It is produced in South America. It is often used as a poison for flies.

QUESTIONS.—Name the most important medicines derived from seeds. What is opium? What is its chief property? Of what countries is the white poppy a native? How do the Chinese and other Orientals use it? Where does the castor oil plant grow? How is the oil obtained from the seeds? Where does croton oil come from? What quantity is a full dose? What is the character of strychnine? From what plant is it obtained?

Name the three best known medicinal gums. Where does the aloe-

plant grow? From what part of it are aloe-got? Where does myrrh grow?

Name the chief medicinal barks. From what tree is Peruvian bark got? What is the chief drug extracted from it? In what disease is it most used? In what country is it most extensively used? Where has the cultivation of the cinchona tree been recently introduced? What property of oak bark makes it useful in medicine?

Where does quassia come from? What is its chief characteristic? What animals is it used to poison?

STAR
Ande
twent
of Pas
it, in
lake,²
low th
longs
the kin
At
of 'cat
till it r
hundre
the tra
clothed
the far
the left
directio
while to
In the
be cont
stream
Europea
river, w
miles.
The v
lower ba

PART III.

THE AMAZON.

STARTING from Lima, the capital of Peru, and crossing the Andes in a north-easterly direction for one hundred and twenty miles, the traveller reaches the famous silver mines of Pasco, the most elevated city in the world. Close beside it, in the very heart of the Cordilleras,¹ there is a little lake,² nearly 14,000 feet above the sea-level, and just below the limit of perpetual snow. To this little lake belongs the honour of giving birth to the mighty Amazon,³ the king of rivers.

At first a comparatively small stream, it flows in a series of cataracts and rapids, through rocky valleys, northwards, till it reaches the frontier of Ecuador, at a distance of eight hundred miles from its source. From this point the eye of the traveller may range, in imagination, over a vast valley clothed with impenetrable forests, stretching eastwards to the far distant Atlantic. Behind him, on the west, tower the lofty peaks of the Cordilleras; on his left, in a northerly direction, appear the highlands of Venezuela and Guiana; while to the south rise the sierras⁴ and table-lands of Brazil. In the valley before him more than half of Europe might be contained; and the tributaries alone of the mighty stream which drains it, exceed in bulk of water all the European rivers put together. The length of the main river, with its windings, is not less than four thousand miles.

The valley of the Amazon is divided into an upper and a lower basin by the Rio Negro.⁵ The region of the Upper

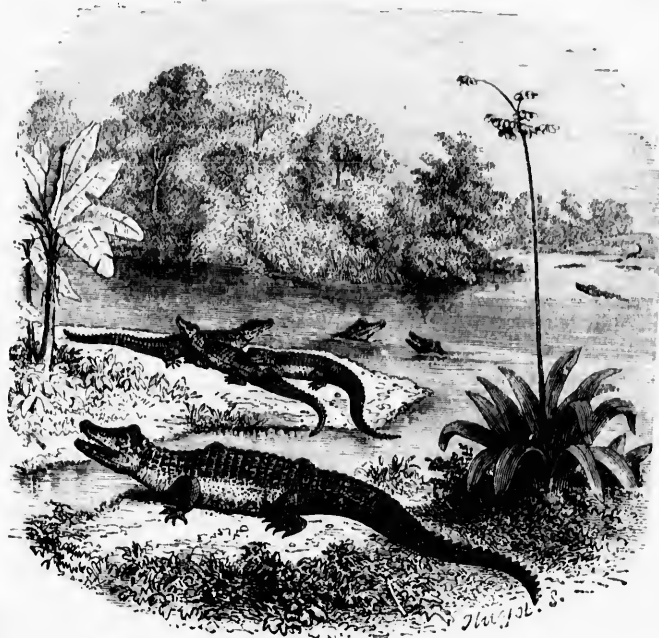
Amazon, as the great river is called above that boundary-line, is a magnificent wilderness, where civilized man as yet has scarcely obtained a footing. Though the atmosphere, from the absence of regular winds, is stagnant and sultry, the climate is wonderfully healthy; and the rich alluvial soil produces vegetation even more luxuriant than on the lower river. The Upper Amazon is navigable at all seasons by large steamers for upwards of fourteen hundred miles above the Rio Negro; but during the rainy season the navigation is dangerous, as the tearing current, one or two miles in width, bears along a continuous line of uprooted trees, and often undermines the banks, which fall into the river with a terrific crash.

The chief feature of the Lower Amazon is its vast expanse of smooth water, of a pale yellowish colour, often bearing on its bosom detached islets of floating vegetation. Sometimes the timid stag takes refuge upon one of these treacherous islands, when pursued by the fierce jaguar;⁶ and the hunter and his prey, thus entrapped, are carried out to sea together. At morn and even, flocks of parrots and yellow macaws⁷ fly backwards and forwards, uttering their hoarse cries; while all night long the screams of gulls and terns sweep over the sandy banks, where they make their home. Now and then, dolphins and sea-cows show their backs above water, as they glide up the stream. Huge alligators, with open jaws, are basking in the sun on the banks, or leisurely swimming across the river.

The Rio Negro, the largest northern tributary of the Amazon, has a course not much inferior to that of the Danube, the greatest river of Central Europe. Rising in the highlands of New Granada, and traversing the llanos⁸ of Venezuela, it has already, before reaching the Amazon, flowed over fifteen hundred miles. As one of its tributaries is an offshoot from the upper waters of the Orinoco, a complete circuit is established, uniting the basins of two mighty rivers in one vast system of interior navigation.



About
the gig
Amazon
of the
from th
as great
'occurr
more th
Thus
and on
waters f
hundred
dos, whe
this char



About sixty miles below the mouth of the Rio Negro, the gigantic Madeira—the largest southern affluent of the Amazon—unites its milky waters with the turbid stream of the main river. The whole length of this tributary, from the centre of Bolivia, where it has its source, is nearly as great as that of the Amazon itself; but owing to the occurrence of falls, it is not navigable for large vessels for more than five hundred miles above its mouth.


Thus enriched by vassal tributaries on the right hand and on the left—each a river in itself—this monarch of waters flows on between its low, forest-clad banks, till, four hundred miles from its mouth, it reaches the Strait of Obidos, where it is narrowed to two thousand paces. Through this channel its waters rush with a force so irresistible as

to have defied all efforts to fathom its depths, and with a volume sufficient to fill all the streams in Europe, and swell them to overflowing. Before it reaches the Atlantic its vast flood is fifty miles wide; and, in mid-channel, the opposite banks are entirely lost to view. Indeed, it resembles an ocean-current, or a constantly-rolling Baltic, rather than an inland river.

At its mouth a fierce struggle takes place between the giant river rolling down and the tide⁹ flowing up. Twice every day they strive for the mastery; and in the meeting of the enormous masses of water a ridge of surf and foam is raised to a height of 180 feet! Victory may be said to be fairly divided between them; for while the tide makes its way nearly five hundred miles up the river, the influence of the latter is felt three hundred miles out at sea. Hence the seaman approaching the shores of South America, when still out of sight of land, may lower his bucket, and draw up the fresh waters which have issued, it may be weeks before, from the rocky sides of the Andes!

So uniform is the level, in the plain of the Upper Amazon especially, that many of its tributaries are interlaced with it and with one another by a net-work of mazy channels, or water-paths,¹⁰ with the intricate navigation of which the natives alone are acquainted. So narrow are these water-paths in many places, that the branches of the lofty trees meet overhead, and form a canopy, which, for miles together, shelters the traveller in his canoe from the noon-day sun. Here and there, a glimpse of the sky may be obtained through the thick foliage; while birds of gay plumage flit to and fro enjoying the cool shade, or sit on the branches trimming their feathers, and uttering strange and varied cries.

Sometimes the water-path broadens into pools and lakes, filled mostly by the overflowing of the main river during the rainy season. These pools swarm with a great variety



of fishes
electric
fowl an
on the s
ing leav
and othe
The in
'availabl
sand mi
scantly



of fishes, with many kinds of turtles and alligators, with electric eels, and other curious water-creatures. Water-fowl and other aquatic birds dwell on their banks; while on the surface of their placid waters float the wide-spreading leaves and magnificent blossoms of the *Victoria Regia*,¹¹ and other lilies and water-plants.

The inland navigation of the Amazon and its tributaries is available for commerce extends to no less than fifty thousand miles. Flowing, however, through a region very scantily peopled by indolent natives and not very active



THE VICTORIA REGIA.

'colonists, there are fewer vessels upon its waters in a year than may be seen on the bosom of the Mississippi every hour of the day.

Yet there is no nobler field of 'enterprise in the world than the great valley of the Amazon—none which is richer in natural 'resources, or which holds out a more certain reward to energy and perseverance. You have only to look at the map to see that, with the exception of Chili and Patagonia, every country in South America is brought, directly or indirectly, within the range of its interior navigation.

So varied and so 'abundant are the 'products of this wide region, that it might well become the garden and the store-house of the world. There is scarcely one either of the necessaries or of the luxuries of life which, if all other sources of supply were cut off, might not be obtained from

the
the
fles
ited
mai
grap
ever
and
Y
mea
whic
the g

abun'
acqu
allu'v
appro
avail'
cat'ar
cir'cu
civ'ilia
col'oni
com'm
contin
detach
direc't
enligh
ligen
enor'm

¹ Cor
the An
dillera
chain of
western
² Litt
³ Ama
the river
by Orell
who was
course (I
noticing
the bank
Amazon,
after the
male war
⁴ Sierr
bling the
from Lat.

the valley of the Amazon in sufficient abundance to supply the wants of the whole 'habitable globe. The supply of flesh, fish, and fowl, of every description, is simply unlimited. There is plenty of coffee and cocoa and sugar; of maize and rice; of cotton and tobacco; of bananas and grapes; of spices, drugs, and dyes; of silver and gold; of every variety of fancy-wood for the finest cabinet-work, and of timber for building houses and ships.

Yet this 'prolific region remains still unused, and in great measure 'unexplored. Here, if anywhere, is a field in which modern enterprise and 'lightenment may achieve the grandest results.

abun'dant, plen'tiful.
acquaint'ed, famil'iar.
allu'vial, depos'ited.
approach'ing, going near
avail'able, prac'ticable.
cat'aracts, tor'rents.
cir'cuit, cir'cular course.
civ'ilized, refin'ed.
col'onists, set'tlers.
com'merce, trade.
contin'uous, unbro'ken.
detached', sep'arated.
direc'tion, course.
enlight'enment, intel'l'igence.
enor'mous, vast.

en'terprise, advent'ure.
entrap'ped', caught.
estab'lished, formed.
expanse', breadth
fo'liage, leaf'age.
fron'tier, bor'der.
hab'itable, fit for man.
impen'etrable, dense.
in'dolent, la'zy.
in'fluence, effect'.
inte'rior, in'land.
interlaced', interwo'ven.
in'tricate, involved'.
irresist'ible, overwhelm'ing.
lei'surely, slow'ly.

nar'rowed, contract'ed.
naviga'tion, water trans'port.
occur'rence, interpos'ition.
overflow'ing, flood'ing.
perpet'ual, con'stant.
prod'ucts, produc'tions.
prolif'ic, fruit'ful.
resourc'es, suppl'ies'.
stag'nant, stand'ing.
trib'utaries, af'luents.
tur'bid, mud'dy.
unexplored', not searched.
u'niform, reg'ular.

¹ Cordill'eras, the Spanish name for the Andes (the full name being *Cordillera de los Andes*), the magnificent chain of mountains stretching down the western side of South America.

² Little lake, called *Lauricocha*.
³ Amazon.—This name was given to the river (otherwise called the *Marañon*) by Orellana, a Portuguese adventurer, who was the first European to follow its course (1521). It is said that Orellana, noticing some women bearing arms on the banks of the river, called it the *Amazon*, and the country *Amazonia*, after the Amazons, a fabled race of female warriors in Asia Minor.

⁴ Sierras, mountain ridges resembling the edge of a saw. [Span. *sierra*, from Lat. *serra*, a saw.]

⁵ Rio Negro—that is, *Black River*—a common name for rivers in Spanish America. The water of these rivers is of a dark coffee colour, like moss water; which, under the shade of the trees, appears black.

⁶ Jaguar, the leopard of America. It feeds on deer, monkeys, birds, and fishes, approaching its prey very stealthily, and pouncing upon it suddenly.

⁷ Macaw, a large and very showy bird, closely allied to the parrot.

⁸ Llanos, extensive open plains.

⁹ The tide.—The tide ascends the Amazon, headed by a bore (see p. 149) 12 or 15 feet in height; called by the natives *pororooca*, in imitation of the roar which it makes in crossing shallows. In high tides it devastates isl-

ands, and sometimes even sweeps away their foundations.

¹⁰ Water-paths, called *igarapes*.

¹¹ *Victoria Regia*.—This magnificent

water-lily was first brought to England in 1838 by Sir Robert Schomburgk, a distinguished botanist, who named it after Queen Victoria.

QUESTIONS.—Where has the Amazon its source? How far from Lima? What is the character of its higher waters? Give some idea of the great size of the valley, and of the volume of its waters? What is the length of the river? What is the region above the Rio Negro called? What is the character of the Upper Amazon? What makes its navigation dangerous? What is the chief feature of the Lower Amazon? What connection has the Rio Negro with the Orinoco? What is the largest southern tributary of the Amazon? What is the Strait of Obydos? What width does the river attain before it reaches the Atlantic? What takes place at its mouth? How far up the river does the tide extend? How far out at sea are the waters of the river perceptible? What causes the net-work of water-paths in the Upper Amazon? What is remarkable about them? What is the extent of the inland navigation of the Amazon? Why is so little use made of it? What do its varied products fit it for becoming? Mention some of these products.

NARRATIVE COMPOSITION.

THE writing of simple narrative ought to be practised in every school. One of the latest Government programmes specifies, as an exercise for the highest class in elementary schools, "Writing from memory the substance of a short story or narrative read out twice" to the scholars. The questions at the end of each lesson in this book, as in the other books of the Series, form a most convenient means of practising narrative composition, and of acquiring skill and readiness in the exercise. In preparing the questions, this use of them has been kept steadily in view; and it will be found that the answers to each set of questions form a good consecutive abstract of the lesson. This applies not only to the ordinary reading lessons, but also to those on the *Health of the Body* and on *Plants and their Uses*.

The first difficulty with which young people meet in attempting composition is in knowing "how to begin;" the second is in knowing "what to say next." Now the advantages of the question-method are, that it shows the scholar both how to begin, and how to proceed; and that it at the same time requires the construction of every sentence to be the scholar's own.

The mode of procedure is extremely simple. The exercise consists of two steps:—

1. The answer to every question is written down in the form of a complete sentence.

2. Additional circumstances are introduced, when necessary to make the narrative consecutive, and the composition smooth.

To illustrate the process, we here show how the questions on the preceding lesson may be made the basis of a simple narrative.

FIRST STEP—SIMPLE ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS.

1. The Amazon has its source in a little lake in the very heart of the Cordilleras.

2. T
Lima.
3. I
catara
4. S
acquir
taind
5. T
6. T
7. It
scarcel
8. D
bears a
9. Th
smooth
vegetat
10. O
Orinoco
11. T
12. F
miles fr
13. Be
14. A
the tide.
15. Th
16. Th
at sea.
17. Th
by the le
18. Th
trees mee
19. Th
miles.
20. Litt
very scant
21. Its
the store-h
22. It p
and rice;
dyes; silv

2. That lake is about one hundred and twenty miles north-east of Lima.
3. It is at first a comparatively small stream, flowing in a series of cataracts and rapids through rocky valleys.
4. Some idea of the great size of the valley of the Amazon may be acquired when we reflect that more than half of Europe could be contained in its basin.
5. The length of the main river is not less than four thousand miles.
6. The region above the Rio Negro is called the Upper Amazon.
7. It is a magnificent wilderness, where civilized man as yet has scarcely obtained a footing.
8. During the rainy season its navigation is dangerous, as the current bears along uprooted trees, and often undermines the banks.
9. The chief feature of the Lower Amazon is its vast expanse of smooth water, often bearing on its bosom detached islets of floating vegetation.
10. One of the tributaries of the Rio Negro is an offshoot from the Orinoco.
11. The largest southern tributary of the Amazon is the Madeira.
12. The Strait of Obydos is a narrow channel, about four hundred miles from the mouth of the Amazon.
13. Before it reaches the Atlantic, the Amazon is fifty miles wide.
14. At its mouth a fierce struggle takes place between the river and the tide.
15. The tide makes its way nearly five hundred miles up the river.
16. The influence of the river is perceptible three hundred miles out at sea.
17. The net-work of water-paths in the Upper Amazon is caused by the level character of its plain.
18. They are so narrow in some places that the branches of the lofty trees meet overhead.
19. The inland navigation of the Amazon extends to fifty thousand miles.
20. Little use is made of it because the river flows through a region very scantily peopled.
21. Its varied products fit that region for becoming the garden and the store-house of the world.
22. It produces flesh, fish, and fowl; coffee, cocoa, and sugar; maize and rice; cotton and tobacco; bananas and grapes; spices, drugs, and dyes; silver and gold; fancy-wood and timber.

SECOND STEP—COMPLETED NARRATIVE.

(The simple answers are here repeated in Roman type; the additions are in *Italics*.)

1. The Amazon, *the king of rivers*, has its source in a little lake in the very heart of the Cordilleras, *nearly fourteen thousand feet above the sea-level, and just below the limit of perpetual snow.*

2. That lake is about one hundred and twenty miles north-east of Lima, *the capital of Peru.*

3. It is at first a comparatively small stream, flowing in a series of cataracts and rapids through rocky valleys, *till it reaches the frontier of Ecuador, at a distance of eight hundred miles from its source. Thence a vast valley, clothed with impenetrable forests, stretches eastwards to the far distant Atlantic.*

4. Some idea of the great size of the valley of the Amazon, *and of the volume of its waters*, may be acquired when we reflect that more than half of Europe could be contained in its basin, *and that its tributaries alone exceed in bulk of water all the rivers of Europe put together.*

5. The length of the main river, *with its windings*, is not less than four thousand miles.

6. The region above the Rio Negro, *or Black River, (so named from the dark coffee-colour of its waters,)* is called the Upper Amazon.

7. It is a magnificent wilderness, where civilized man as yet has scarcely obtained a footing. *The climate is healthy, in spite of the sultry atmosphere; and the vegetation is richer even than on the lower river.*

8. During the rainy season its navigation is dangerous, as the tearing current, *one or two miles in width*, bears along a continuous line of up-rooted trees, and often undermines the banks, *which fall into the river with a terrific crash.*

9. The chief feature of the Lower Amazon is its vast expanse of smooth water, *of a pale yellowish colour*, often bearing on its bosom detached islets of floating vegetation, *on which animals are sometimes carried out to sea.*

10. One of the tributaries of the Rio Negro, *the largest northern affluent of the Amazon*, is an offshoot from the Orinoco; *and thus a complete circuit is established, uniting the basins of two mighty rivers in one vast system of interior navigation.*

11. The largest southern tributary of the Amazon is the Madeira, *Its length is nearly as great as that of the Amazon itself, which it joins about sixty miles below the mouth of the Rio Negro.*

12. About four hundred miles from the mouth of the Amazon, *where the river is not more than two thousand paces broad, it rushes with irresistible force through a narrow channel called the Strait of Obydos.*

13. wide.

14.

current of the height

15, 1

the riv out at s

17. T

utaries forming

18. T

of the together,

19. T

for comm

20. I

a region colonists.

21. Y

it for bec

22. It

quantitie

rice; of c

and dyes

WHEN

Genoese

the 'trac

not only

formed

name of

mistake

time.

Aware

13. *But before it reaches the Atlantic its vast flood is fifty miles wide, and, in mid-channel, the opposite banks are entirely lost to view.*

14. *At its mouth a fierce struggle takes place between the downward current of the river, and the upward flow of the tide; and in the meeting of the enormous masses of water a ridge of surf and foam is raised to a height of one hundred and eighty feet.*

15, 16. *While the tide makes its way nearly five hundred miles up the river, the influence of the latter is perceptible three hundred miles out at sea.*

17. *The plain of the Upper Amazon is so level that many of its tributaries are interlaced with it and with one another by mazy channels, forming an intricate net-work of water-paths.*

18. *These water-paths are so narrow in some places that the branches of the lofty trees meet overhead, and form a canopy, which, for miles together, shelters the traveller in his canoe from the noon-day sun.*

19. *The inland navigation of the Amazon and its tributaries available for commerce extends to no less than fifty thousand miles.*

20. *Little use, however, is made of it, because the river flows through a region very scantily peopled by indolent natives and not very active colonists.*

21. *Yet the varied products of that region are so abundant as to fit it for becoming the garden and the store-house of the world.*

22. *It produces flesh, fish, and fowl, of every description, in unlimited quantities; it yields abundance of coffee, cocoa, and sugar; of maize and rice; of cotton and tobacco; of bananas and grapes; of spices, drugs, and dyes; of silver and gold; of every variety of fancy-wood and timber.*

THE PACIFIC OCEAN.

PART I.

WHEN the 'astounding 'sagacity and enterprise of the Genoese¹ had discovered the 'confines of a new world across the 'trackless Atlantic, it was without hesitation concluded, not only by himself, but by all Europe, that the new land formed the extreme eastern shore of Asia. Hence the name of *Indies* was erroneously given to those islands—a mistake which has been 'perpetuated even to the present time.

Aware of the round form of the Earth, the geographers

of that age could well conceive the possibility of reaching India by a westerly course; but, ignorant of the magnitude of the globe, they had formed a very 'inadequate idea of its position, being totally unaware of the vast continent, and still vaster ocean, which separated Asia from the Atlantic. But as, impelled by an 'insatiable thirst for gold, the unprincipled Spaniards pushed their career of robbery and murder further and further into the continent, they began to hear tidings of a boundless sea, which stretched away to the south and west, beyond the horizon of the setting sun.

Balboa,² one of the reckless spirits who sought fortune and fame at all hazards in the newly-found regions, boldly determined to seek the sea of which the Indians spoke. At the head of a little band of men, guided by a Mexican, he succeeded, after severe 'privations and 'imminent dangers, in crossing the isthmus that connects the northern and southern portions of the continent.

They had arrived at the foot of a hill, from the top of which the Indian assured him he would obtain a sight of the wished-for sea, when, in the 'enthusiasm of the moment, leaving his companions behind, the Spanish chief ran to the summit, and beheld a limitless ocean sleeping in its 'immensity at his feet! With the 'spurious piety common to the times—a piety that could consist with the grossest injustice, the blackest 'perjury, and the most barbarous cruelty—he knelt down and gave thanks aloud to God for such a termination of his toils. Then, having descended the cliffs to the shore of the ocean, he bathed in its mighty waters, taking possession of it by the name of the Great South Sea, on behalf of the King of Spain.

This was in the year 1513; but it was not till seven years afterwards that its surface was ruffled by a European keel. Then Magalhaens, or Magellan, a Portuguese 'navigator of great ability, in the service of Spain, having run down the coast of South America, discovered the straits³ which have since borne his name. Through these he sailed,

and
the fi
Sea.

For
during
storm
the 'a
The in
consid
most
with t
acter c
ocean

A 'r
disting
of sma
the por
thousan
almost
isles of
sand m
studded
pelago.⁶

The
globe is
words s
of the
though
are of
largest i

The i
bosom o
the crys
greatly
last desc
are know

and emerging from them on the 28th November 1520, was the first to launch out upon the broad bosom of the South Sea.

For three months and twenty days he sailed across it, during which long period its surface was never ruffled by a storm; and from this circumstance he gave to the ocean the appellation of the "Pacific,"⁴ which it still retains. The immediate vicinity of the straits, however, has been considered peculiarly subject to tempests; while the almost continual prevalence of westerly winds, combined with the severity of the climate, has always given a character of difficulty and hazard to the passage from the one ocean to the other.

A remarkable feature in the Pacific Ocean, and one that distinguishes it from every other sea, is the vast assemblage of small islands with which it is crowded, particularly in the portion situated between the tropics.⁵ For about three thousand miles from the coast of South America, the sea is almost entirely free from islands; but thence to the great isles of India, an extensive belt of ocean, nearly five thousand miles in length, and fifteen hundred in breadth, is so studded with them as almost to be one continuous archipelago.⁶

The term "Polynesia,"⁷ by which this division of the globe is now distinguished, is compounded of two Greek words signifying *many islands*. Very few of these gems of the ocean are more than a few miles in extent, though Tahiti,⁸ and some in the more western groups, are of rather larger dimensions; while Hawaii,⁹ the largest island in Polynesia, is about the size of Yorkshire.

The isles, which in such a vast number thus stud the bosom of the Pacific, are of three distinct forms—the coral, the crystal, and the volcanic. Of these, the first formation greatly predominates; but the largest islands are of the last description; of the crystal formation but few specimens are known.

Imagine a belt of land in the wide ocean, not more than half a mile in breadth, but extending in an irregular curve to the length of ten or twenty miles or more; the height above the water not more than a yard or two at most, but clothed with a mass of the richest and most verdant vegetation. Here and there, above the general bed of luxuriant foliage, rises a grove of cocoa-nut trees, waving their feathery plumes high in the air, and gracefully bending their tall and slender stems to the breathing of the pleasant trade-wind.

The grove is bordered by a narrow beach on each side, of the most glittering whiteness, contrasting with the beautiful azure waters by which it is environed. From end to end of the curved isle stretches, in a straight line, forming, as it were, the cord of the bow, a narrow beach, of the same snowy whiteness, almost level with the sea at the lowest tide, enclosing a semicircular space of water between it and the island, called the lagoon.¹⁰

Over this line of beach, which occupies the leeward side, the curve being to windward, the sea is breaking with sublime majesty. When the long unbroken swell of the ocean, hitherto unbridled through a course of thousands of miles, is met by this rampart, the huge billows, rearing themselves upwards many yards above its level, and bending their foaming crests, "form a graceful liquid arch, glittering in the rays of a tropical sun as if studded with brilliants."¹² But, before the eyes of the spectator can follow the splendid aqueous gallery which they appear to have reared, with loud and hollow roar they fall, in magnificent desolation, and spread the gigantic fabric in froth and spray upon the horizontal and gently broken surface."

Contrasting strongly with the tumult and confusion of the hoary billows without, the water within the lagoon exhibits the serene placidity of a mill-pond. Extending downwards to a depth varying from a few feet to fifty fathoms, the waters possess the lively green hue common

to so
unru
mast
of th

Su
sing
ture,
wond
whole
rock
'perp
our se
coral
curve
luxuri
tion o
pendic
consid
or terr

appella
aqueous
assem'b
aston'is
ious.
cog'niza
compour
con'fines
desola'ti
emerg'in
enthu'sia
environ
extend'in

¹ The C
bus, who
LIVES OF

² Balbo
of Castile
earliest to
Central A
coast of I
town. In
and discov
governor s

to soundings on a white or yellow ground. The surface, unruffled by a wave, reflects with accurate distinctness the mast of the canoe that sleeps upon its bosom, and the tufts of the cocoa-nut plumes that rise from the beach above it.

Such is a coral island; and if its appearance is one of singular loveliness, as all who have seen it testify, its structure, on examination, is found to be no less interesting and wonderful. The beach of white sand, which opposes the whole force of the ocean, is found to be the summit of a rock which rises abruptly from an unknown depth, like a perpendicular wall. The whole of this rampart, as far as our senses can take cognizance of it, is composed of living coral! and the same substance forms the foundation of the curved and more elevated side which is smiling in the luxuriance and beauty of tropical vegetation. The elevation of the coral to the surface is not always abruptly perpendicular; sometimes reefs of varying depths extend to a considerable distance, in the form of successive platforms or terraces.

appella'tion, name.
aqueous, watery.
assembl'age, collection.
aston'ishing, mar'vellous.
cog'nizance, knowl'edge.
compound'ed, made up.
con'fines, borders.
desola'tion, loneliness.
emerg'ing, issuing.
enthusiasm, excitement.
envi'roned, surround'ed.
extend'ing, stretch'ing.

exten'sive, wide.
grace'fully, elegantly.
horizon'tal, level.
immen'sity, vastness.
im'minent, threat'ening.
inad'equat'e, insuffi'cient.
insa'tiable, unquench'able.
in'teresting, attrac'tive.
luxu'riant, exuberant.
navig'ator, sail'or.
per'jury, faith'lessness.
perpendic'ular, ver'tical.

perpet'uated, contin'ued.
placid'ity, quietness.
plat'forms, terraces.
predom'inate, prepon'derates.
priva'tions, straits.
remark'able, strik'ing.
saga'city, penetra'tion.
semicir'cular, half-cir'cular.
spu'rious, mock.
sublime', impos'ing.
track'less, path'less.

¹ The Genoese, Christopher Columbus, who was a native of Genoa. (See LIVES OF GREAT MEN, in Appendix.)

² Balboa, Vasco Nuñez de, a native of Castile in Spain, was one of the earliest to explore the West Indies and Central America. He settled on the coast of Darien, where he founded a town. In 1513 he crossed the isthmus and discovered the Pacific Ocean. The governor sent out by the Spanish king

grew jealous of Balboa's abilities, and caused him to be beheaded in 1517.

³ The straits.—The Straits of Magellan, between South America and the island of Tierra del Fuego (Land of Fire) at its southern extremity.

⁴ Pacif'ic, tranquil; *lit.* peace-making. [Lat. *pax, pacis*, peace; *facio*, I make.]

⁵ Between the tropics, within the torrid zone, the limit of which on the

north is the tropic of Cancer, and on the south the tropic of Capricorn. The tropics [Gr. *trepo*, I turn] are the parallels drawn through the points in the ecliptic at which the sun appears to turn in its course.

⁶ Archipel'ago, a sea filled with small islands, like the Egean Sea, to which the name was first applied; *lit.* the chief sea. [Gr. *archos*, chief; *pelagos*, sea.]

⁷ Polyné'sia, from Gr. *polys*, many; *nēsos*, an island.

⁸ Tahiti, the chief of the Society Islands

⁹ Hawaii (*Hawī'ee*, or *Owhyhee*), the

chief of the Sandwich Islands, in the North Pacific. Here Captain Cook was killed by the natives in 1779.

¹⁰ Lagoon', a shallow lake; the lako within a coral reef. [It and Sp. *laguna*, a marsh: Lat. *lacuna*, a ditch; from *lacus*, a lake: Gr. *lakkos*, a pit or hole.]

¹¹ Lee'ward side, the side towards which the wind blows, as the windward is the part from which it blows. [Eng. *lee*, a sheltered place; Old Eng. *hleow*, shelter.]

¹² Brill'iants, diamonds cut so as to make them glitter or twinkle. [Fr. *briller*, to twinkle.]

QUESTIONS.—What did the earliest discoverer of the western continent suppose it to be? To what mistake has this given rise? Who was the European discoverer of the Pacific Ocean? In what year did he discover it? Who first sailed over it? Why did he call it "Pacific"? What feature distinguishes it from every other sea? What name is given to the island sea? What does "Polynesia" mean? What is the formation of most of these islands? What is the usual shape of a coral island? What stretches from end to end of the curve? What is the water between it and the island called?

THE PACIFIC OCEAN.

PART II.

IN these regions may be seen islands in every stage of their formation: "some presenting little more than a point or summit of a branching 'coralline' pyramid, at a depth scarcely 'discernible through the transparent waters; others spreading, like submarine gardens or shrubberies, beneath the surface, or presenting here and there a little bank of broken coral and sand, over which the rolling wave occasionally breaks." Others, again, exist in the more advanced state that I have just described, the main bank sufficiently elevated to be 'permanently protected from the waves, and already clothed with verdure, and the lagoon enclosed by the narrow 'bulwark of the coral reef.

Though the rampart thus reared is sufficient to preserve the inner waters in a peaceful and mirror-like calmness, it must not be supposed that all access to them from the sea

is exc
line o
someti
the pa
sufficie
large s
The
Witho
vain,—
throug
lashed
verted
'imagin
crews i
It is
tion of
visible
opening
from th



is excluded. It almost invariably happens that in the line of reef one or more openings occur, which, though sometimes narrow and intricate, so as scarcely to allow the passage of a native canoe, are not unfrequently of sufficient width and depth to permit the free ingress of large ships.

The advantage to man of these openings is very great. Without them, the islands might smile invitingly, but in vain,—no access could be obtained to them by shipping, through the tremendous surf by which their shores are lashed; but by these entrances the lovely lagoons are converted into the most quiet, safe, and commodious havens imaginable, where ships may lie and water and refresh their crews in security, though the tempest howl without.

It is a scarcely less beneficent provision, that the position of the openings is in most cases indicated so as to be visible at a great distance. Had there been merely an opening in the coral rock, it could not have been detected from the sea, except by the diminution of the foaming surf

just at that spot,—a circumstance that could scarcely be visible unless the observer were opposite the 'aperture. In general, however, there is on each side of the passage a little islet, raised on the points of the reef, which, being commonly tufted with cocoa-nut trees, is perceptible as far off as the island itself, and forms a most convenient landmark.

Notwithstanding that the highest point of these narrow islets is rarely more than a yard above the tide, it is a remarkable fact that fresh water is frequently found in them. It is probable that the coral rock acts as a filter, allowing the sea water to percolate¹ through its porous substance, but excluding all the saline particles held in solution.

A stranger is forcibly struck with the remarkable fearlessness which the natives of these islands have of the sea. They appear almost as amphibious² as seals, sporting about in the deep sea for many hours, sometimes for nearly a whole day together! No sooner does a ship approach a large island than the inhabitants swim off to welcome her; and long before she begins to take in sail she is surrounded by human beings of both sexes, apparently as much at home in the ocean as the fishes themselves. The children are taken to the water when but a day or two old; and many are able to swim as soon as they are able to walk. In coasting along the shore it is a rare thing to pass a group of cottages, at any hour of the day, without seeing one or more bands of children joyously playing in the sea.

The natives have several games which are played in the water, and which are followed with exceeding avidity, not only by children, but by the adult population.

One of these is the fastening of a long board on a sort of stage, where the rocks are abrupt, in such a manner that it shall project far over the water; then they chase one another along the board, each in turn leaping from the end into the sea. They are also fond of diving from the yard-sam or bowsprit of a ship.

But
all el
deligh
of the
large
much

A l
at the
ment,
by bei
With
board,
the sea
more
pleasur

They
feet un
out to
whole
boiling
his boar
and bre

He n
and wai
he 'adro
with his
wave, an
two of t

to see h
his boar
under the
ing, again

The ut

position o

far forwa

upon the

But the most favourite pastime of all, and one in which all classes and ages, and both sexes, engage with peculiar delight, is swimming in the surf. Mr. Ellis has seen some of the greatest chiefs, between fifty and sixty years of age, large and corpulent men, engage in this game with as much interest as children.

A board, six feet long and one foot wide, slightly thinner at the edges than at the middle, is prepared for this amusement, stained and polished, and preserved with great care by being constantly oiled and hung up in their dwellings. With this in his hand, which he calls the wave-sliding board, each native repairs to the reef, particularly when the sea is running high and the surf is dashing in with more than ordinary violence, as on such occasions the pleasure is the greater.

They choose a place where the rocks are twenty or thirty feet under water, and shelve for a quarter of a mile or more out to sea. The waves break at this distance, and the whole space between it and the shore is one mass of boiling foam. Each person now swims out to sea, pushing his board before him, diving under the waves as they curl and break, until he has arrived outside the rocks.

He now lays himself flat on his breast along his board, and waits the approach of a huge billow. When it comes, he adroitly balances himself on its summit, and, paddling with his hands, is borne on the crest of the advancing wave, amidst the foam and spray, until within a yard or two of the shore or rocks. Then, when a stranger expects to see him the next moment dashed to death, he slides off his board, and, catching it by the middle, dives seaward under the wave, and comes up behind, laughing and whooping, again to swim out as before.

The utmost skill is required, in coming in, to keep the position on the top of the wave; for if the board get too far forward the swimmer will be overturned and thrown upon the beach, and if it fall behind he will be buried be-

neath the 'succeeding wave : yet some of the natives are so expert as to sit, and even to stand upright, upon their board, while it is thus riding in the foam ! P. H. Gosse.

adroit'ly, elev'erly.

adult', grown up.

amuse'ment, pas'time.

ap'erture, o'pening.

avid'ity, ea'gerness.

benef'icent, boun'tiful.

bul'wark, ram'part.

commo'dious, room'y.

cor'alline, made of cor'al.

cor'pulent, stout.

diminu'tion, les'sening.

discern'ible, percep'tible.

fa'vourite, pop'ular [able

imag'inable, conceiv'

inhab'itants, den'izens.

inva'riably, u'niformly.

joy'ously, mer'rily.

pad'dling, row'ing.

per'manently, last'ingly.

pyr'amid, cone.

required', need'ed.

sub'stance, mate'rial.

succeed'ing, fol'lowing.

surround'ed, thronged.

tremen'dous, terrif'ic.

vi'olence, fu'ry.

whoop'ing, yell'ing.

¹ Per'colate, to filter or strain. [Lat. *per-colare*, to strain through.]

² In solution,—viz., by the sea water.

³ Amphib'ious, capable of living both on land and in water. [Gr. *amphi*, both ; *bios*, life.]

QUESTIONS.—In what different stages of formation may coral islands be seen in the Pacific? What means of access is there generally to the lagoons? How is the opening in most cases indicated? What peculiarity of the natives most strikes a stranger? What is their favourite pastime? What apparatus do they use for it? Describe the game. What danger attends it?

THE HIMALAYAH.

PART I.

NORTHWARD of the great plain of India, and along its whole extent, towers the sublime mountain region of the Himalayah, 'ascending gradually till it 'terminates in a long range of summits wrapped in perpetual snow. There may be traced, for the space of 1000 miles, a 'continuous line 20,000 feet above the sea; from which, as a base, detached peaks ascend to the additional height of 8000 or 9000 feet. The inhabitant of the burning plain 'contemplates, not without wonder, this long array of white pinnacles, forming the boundary of the distant horizon. In this 'progressive ascent, Nature assumes a continually changing aspect; and hence it will be necessary to view in succession the different stages through which she passes.

The Himalayah range, where it touches on the champagne¹ country, is almost everywhere girt with a peculiar belt or border, called the Tarryai. This term is applied to

a pl.
upo
high
in su
beds
The
conv
of s
the
sun,
rank
earth
cover

natives are so
at, upon their

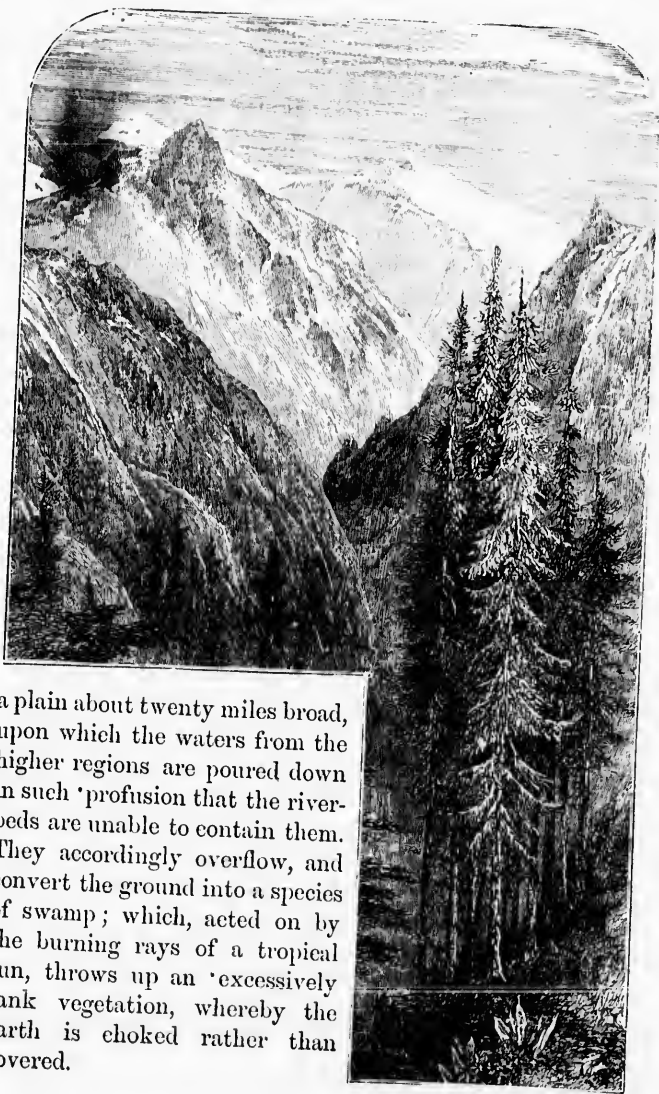
P. H. Gosse.

anently, last'ingly.
mid, cone.
ed', need'ed.
ance, mate'rial.
ed'ing, fol'lowing.
nd'ed, thronged.
n'dous, terrif'ic.
uce, fu'ry.
'ing, yell'ing.

capable of living
water. [Gr. *amphi*,

ral islands be seen
he lagoons? How
f the natives most
apparatus do they

along its whole
of the Hima-
tes in a long
. There may
continuous line
s a base, de-
t of 8000 or
plain 'contem-
of white pin-
horizon. In
a continually
ry to view in
she passes.
on the cham-
with a peculiar
is applied to



a plain about twenty miles broad,
upon which the waters from the
higher regions are poured down
in such 'profusion that the river-
beds are unable to contain them.
They accordingly overflow, and
convert the ground into a species
of swamp; which, acted on by
the burning rays of a tropical
sun, throws up an 'excessively
rank vegetation, whereby the
earth is choked rather than
covered.

The soil is concealed beneath a mass of dark and dismal foliage, while long grass and prickly shrubs shoot up so densely and so close as to form an almost impenetrable barrier. It is still more awfully guarded by the pestilential² vapours exhaling from those dark recesses, which make it, at certain seasons, a region of death. Beneath these melancholy shades, too, the elephant, the tiger, and other wild animals prowl unmolested; while the few human beings who occupy the vicinity present a meagre, dwarfish, and most sickly aspect.

On emerging from this dark and deadly plain, and beginning to ascend the lower mountain-stages, the visitor enjoys a much more pleasing scene. He passes now through smiling and fruitful valleys, overhung by the most romantic steeps, and covered to a great extent with the noblest forests. Amid trees similar to those which spread their majestic foliage on the banks of the Ganges, various species of the more hardy oak and the pine begin to appear. The prospects obtained from commanding points in these regions—consisting in a foreground of smiling and cultured vales, hills behind crowned with natural plantations, steeper and loftier ranges beyond, and in the distance the snow-clad tops of the highest mountain-chain—form a combination of the most sublime and enchanting scenery.

The Himalayah, as it ascends above the picturesque slopes which diversify its lower border, assumes a much bolder and severer aspect. The lofty ridge, the deep valley, the dashing torrent, produce a resemblance to the most elevated portions of the Highlands of Scotland; and Scottish officers, accordingly, who have happened to serve in that remote province, have fancied themselves wandering amid the romantic glens of their native country.

Generally speaking, the character of this mountain-chain is rugged and stern; its ridges rise behind each other in awful array, but they enclose no rural scenes, nor present any gentle undulations. Their steep sides, sometimes

wo
dip
the
to f
cliff
I
regi
gran
mou
rugg
over
folia
pare
steep
throu
So
hims
the r
imm
the l
towar
pinna
Mr
divide
zones
The
The ge
portion
to the
The so
during
undim
almost
central
In N
summer

wooded, sometimes presenting vast faces of naked rock, dip down abruptly, forming dark chasms and ravines, at the bottom of which there is only room for the torrent to force its way through rude fragments fallen from the cliffs above.

In consequence of this peculiar structure, these loftier regions of the Himalayah do not present that tranquil grandeur, and those picturesque views, which render the mountain scenery of Europe so enchanting. They are rugged, gloomy, and monotonous. The mighty summits overhang no soft, pastoral valleys, nor wave with varied foliage, nor are reflected in the bosom of still and transparent lakes. The traveller, hemmed in between their steep precipices, sees only the dark grandeur of the chasm through which he winds.

Sometimes, however, on reaching a clear point, he finds himself in possession of a prospect bearing a character of the most awful sublimity. A spot raised almost to an immeasurable height above the plain beneath, proves only the base whence seven or eight successive ranges rise towards heaven, and terminate at length in a line of snowy pinnacles.

Mr. Royle, in his work on the botany of the Himalayah, divides that region, in respect to vegetation, into three zones or belts.

The first he considers as rising to the height of 5000 feet. The general temperature is here lowered, as usual, in proportion to the elevation, yet without the disappearance, to the extent that might be expected, of tropical plants. The southern exposure, the intense force of the sun's rays during the hot season, and the tropical rains falling in undiminished abundance, enable these to be brought to almost equal maturity with those in the upper part of the central plain.

In Nepaul,⁴ and other favourable situations, rice as a summer, and wheat as a winter crop, form the regular

course of cultivation. But some of the more delicate plants are unable to bear exposure to the keen atmosphere and the nightly breezes; among which are the choicest of fruits, the mango and the pine-apple. At the same time, in the colder season, on elevated peaks, the plants of Europe and other temperate climates are seen springing side by side with those of the tropics. Snow is scarcely ever observed on this lower stage of the mountain territory.

The second belt is considered as reaching to the height of 9000 feet. Snow here falls constantly in winter, often to a great depth, but melts in early spring. Although the vegetation becomes more and more that of the temperate zone, yet the causes already stated enable tropical plants to climb beyond their natural height, and to mingle with those of a very different clime. In sheltered, well-watered valleys, crops of rice are still successfully raised, while wheat grows on the heights above. But though the herbaceous plants are able to mount thus high, it is otherwise with trees, exposed to every vicissitude of the seasons. The palms and other Indian species are seen no longer, and the foliage appears exclusively European.

The third and most elevated belt reaches from the border of the latter to the summit of the Himalayah. The climate here is that of the more northern part of Europe and America, terminating in the perpetual snows of the arctic world. These, even in the lower districts, do not melt till May or June, when the extreme cold of winter is suddenly succeeded by the most intense heat. The rays of the sun, indeed, beat fiercely and painfully, even when the atmosphere is so little affected by them that the thermometer stands many degrees below the freezing point! and hence the traveller is scorched amidst almost unbearable cold—extremes which always prove distressing, and sometimes fatal.

The territory called Bhotan,⁶ constituting the most elevated portion, has the severity of the climate aggravated

by
of
sta
an
Bu
At
at
ber
?
tur
wit
how
or l
M
pre
woo
larc
ceda
of c
sub
W
load
ther
berry
spots
lion,
the g
tricts
tion c
ag'grav
arctic,
ascend
contem
contin'
culture
disappe
distress
enchant
exces'siv

cate plants
sphere and
st of fruits,
ime, in the
Europe and
de by side
r observed

the height
nter, often
hough the
erate zone,
ts to climb
those of a
ed valleys,
heat grows
ous⁶ plants
with trees,
The palms
the foliage

the border
he climate
urope and
the arctic
t melt till
suddenly
f the sun,
the atmo-
rmoneter
and hence
ble cold—
sometimes

most ele-
ggravated

by its rocky surface, so that not above one-sixteenth part of it is fit for cultivation. Yet even here, under circumstances not at all favourable, vegetation displays a luxuriance which could little be expected at so great a height. Buck-wheat and barley are generally raised with success. At 12,000 feet, Captain Webb saw the finest grain; and at 11,680, he observed forests of oak, and beds of strawberries and currants in full blossom!

The pasturage, in consequence probably of copious moisture, combined with the power of the sun's rays, grows with a luxuriance almost unequalled. A productive field, however, is occasionally ruined by the descent of glaciers, or beds of snow, which do not melt for several years.

Notwithstanding the shattered and rocky aspect of those precipices, they are covered with vast masses of hanging wood. Amidst the wilds, tall and majestic forests of pine, larch, spruce, and silver fir, sometimes even of cypress and cedar, grow, flourish, and decay; for there are no means of conveying the timber to any spot where it might be subservient to human use or ornament.

With these trees are intermingled numerous bushes loaded with the fruits which form the luxury of the northern regions of Europe; gooseberry, raspberry, strawberry—all unknown to the plains below. In sheltered spots, the wild rose, the lily of the valley, cowslip, dandelion, and various other flowers, are seen bursting through the green carpet. The trees and rocks in the higher districts are richly clothed with moss and lichen—the vegetation of the countries bordering on the arctic circle.

aggravated, intensified
arctic, north-polar.
ascending, rising.
contemplates, regards.
continuous, unbroken.
cultured, cultivated.
disappearance, absence
distressing, painful.
enchanting, captivating
excessively, extremely.

exclusively, entirely.
exhaling, arising.
fiercely, violently.
fragments, pieces.
glaciers, ice rivers.
immeasurable, immense.
impenetrable, not to be
pierced.
intermingled, mixed.

melancholy, gloomy.
monotonous, same.
pasturage, herbage.
pinnacles, peaks.
plantations, forests.
profusion, abundance.
progressive, gradual.
resemblance, likeness.
romantic, picturesque.
sheltered, protected.

subser'vient, contrib'utary.
sud'denly, abrupt'ly.
tem'perate, cool.
ter'minates, fin'ishes.
ter'ritory, re'gion.

thermom'eter, heat-meas'urer.
tran'quil, calm. [able.
unbear'able, insuf'fer-
undimin'ished, not les'sened.

undula'tions, irregular'ities.
unmolest'ed, undis-turbed.
vegeta'tion, plant-life.
vici'situde, change.

¹ Cham'paign, open; level. [Fr. *Champ*, Lat. *campus*, a plain.]

² Pestilen'tial va'pours — vapours causing pestilence and disease; noxious gases.

³ Trop'ical rains.—In tropical coun-tries the annual rain-fall is three times greater than in the temperate zones. This is due to the fact that evaporation, which causes rain, increases with the temperature. Over the greater part of India, the year consists of three seasons; the *hot* season, from March to June; the *rainy* season, from June to October; and the *temperate* season,

from October to March. The rain of the second season is brought to India by the south-west monsoon, which blows from Africa to Asia (owing to the greater heat of the latter) from April to October.

⁴ Nepaul', an Independent Indian state on the southern slope of the Himalayah, and north of Oudh and the basin of the Ganges.

⁵ Herba'ceous plants—plants with a soft or succulent stem, not a woody stalk.

⁶ Bhotan', an independent state in Northern India, east of Nepaul.

QUESTIONS.—What is the height of the continuous line of the Himalayah? To what height above that do some of the peaks rise? What is the Tarryai? What are its dangers? What is the nature of the country immediately above that? To what is the bolder scenery still higher up compared? Into how many zones, as to vegetation has the Himalayah been divided? What are their limits? What is remarkable in the vegetation of the first zone? What is the character of that of the second zone? How are tropical plants able to grow in those elevated regions? To what extremes is the traveller often exposed in the third zone? Why is the pasturage so luxuriant there? What European fruits and flowers are found there?

THE HIMALAYAH.

PART II.

THE animal world in this higher region 'undergoes a change equally striking with the vegetable. The elephant and the tiger, kings of the forests beneath, disappear, or are very seldom seen. 'Depredations are chiefly committed by the wild cat, the bear, and the hog. The chamois bounds from rock to rock, and the forests are filled with deer of various species; of which the most rare and precious is that 'producing the musk.¹ It is found only in the loftiest heights, amid rocks which the human foot scarcely dares to tread. The most 'intense cold is so essential to its life, that the

young
perish
The
with
here r
man;
difficu
glitter
eagle i
ited by
birds.
various
snows.
The
tures, a
the yak
large n



THE MUSK-DEER.

young, on being brought down to a warm situation, usually perish in a few days.

The forests, at all the more moderate elevations, are filled with flocks of such fowls as are elsewhere domesticated, here running about wild, tempting the pursuit of the sportsman; but, as they very seldom take wing, they are with difficulty reached by the gun. The peacock displays his glittering plumage only on the lower hills. The sovereign eagle is seldom descried amid the cliffs, which are inhabited by kites, hawks, and others of the minor predatory birds. Partridges and pheasants are numerous, and of various species; the latter are even seen flying amid the snows at a great elevation.

The domestic animals, fed by the natives on their rich pastures, are the common black cattle of India, combined with the yak² of Thibet. Sheep and goats are also reared in large numbers, not only for the ordinary purposes of food



THE YAK.

and clothing, but for the 'conveyance of 'merchandise, which they alone are fitted to transport over the steep mountain-passes. Besides the common sheep, there is another breed, powerful and long-legged, and able to bear more than double the burden of the former.

The most elevated part of this 'stupendous range is that to the north of Bengal, along the heads of the Gogra, the Ganges, and the Jumna, and westward as far as the Sutlej. Above fifty peaks rise about 20,000 feet; and Kinchinjunga, 28,180 feet; Karakoram, 28,278 feet; and Everest, 29,000 feet, are the highest known points of the globe.

Notwithstanding the 'gloomy aspect of these mountain scenes, there are a few places in which they open out into smiling plains of considerable extent. The valleys of Nepaul, indeed, besides being very narrow, belong rather to the region of the lower hills. Considerably higher is

foun
'emi
to fo
howe
great
beyon
lation

Th
into
the s
be ca
high
a 'pre
in an
dered
clouds

Do
nues
broke
tions
every
of the
whole
spread
cipitat
on the
throug
mighty
trived
but su
moditie

In p
veller
The at
for sup
impede

found the Rama Serai, or the Happy Valley, where little 'eminences, villages, and richly-cultivated fields, combine to form a delightful scene. The most extensive opening, however, takes place at its western extremity, where these great ridges enclose the little kingdom of Cashmere, which, beyond any other spot on Earth, seems to merit the 'appellation of a 'terrestrial 'paradise.

The passes which extend across this tremendous ridge into Thibet are of extreme and peculiar difficulty. From the structure of the mountains, the roads must generally be carried nearly over their summits, rising sometimes as high as 20,000 feet! They are, in most cases, formed by a 'precarious track along the alpine torrent, which dashes in an unbroken sheet of foam, through dark ravines bordered by 'precipitous mountain walls ascending above the clouds.

Down the perpendicular faces of these stupendous 'avenues descend almost continual showers of stony fragments, broken off from the cliffs above. Occasionally, large portions of rock are detached, and roll down in heaps, effacing every path which has been formed beneath, filling the beds of the rivers, and converting them into cataracts. The whole side of a mountain has been seen thus parted, and spread in fragments at its base. Trees, torn up and 'precipitated into the 'abyss, lie stretched with their branches on the earth and their roots turned up to the sky. Yet through these tremendous 'passes, and across all these mighty 'obstructions, the daring industry of man has contrived to form tracks,—narrow, indeed, as well as perilous, but such as to enable Thibet and India to exchange commodities.

In proceeding along these stupendous heights, the traveller occasionally 'experiences a distressing sensation. The atmosphere, rarefied³ to excess, becomes nearly unfit for supporting 'respiration. The action of the lungs being impeded, the slightest fatigue overpowers him; he stops at

every three or four steps, gasping for breath; the skin is painful, and blood bursts from the lips.

The natives, who are also seized with these symptoms,⁴ without being able to divine the physical cause, ascribe them to *bis*, or *bish*; meaning air poisoned, as they imagine, by the deleterious odour of certain flowers. A little observation would have shown them that the flowers in these regions have scarcely any scent; while it is in the most elevated tracts, where all vegetation has ceased, that the feelings in question become most oppressive.

Amid these awful scenes there are two spots peculiarly sacred and sublime; those, namely, where the Jumna and the Ganges, the two rivers which give grandeur and fertility to the plain of Hindustan, burst from beneath the eternal snows. No mortal foot has yet ascended to their highest springs, situated in the most elevated recesses of the mountains. There they issue forth as torrents, amid broken masses of granite, to force their way through the deep glens of the middle Himalayah.

HUGH MURRAY.

abyss', depths.
appella'tion, name.
av'enuës, pass'es.
convey'ance, trans'port.
dele'terious, poi'sonous.
depreda'tions, plun'der.
domes'ticated, tamed.
el'e'vated, lof'ty.
em'inen'ces, heights.
expe'riences, encoun'ters

fertil'ity, fruit'fulness.
gloom'y, som'bre.
inhab'ited, oc'cupied.
intense', severe'.
mer'chandise, goods.
obstruc'tions, hin'drances.
oppres'sive, pain'ful.
par'adise, E'den.
plu'mage, feath'ers.

preca'rious, dan'gerous.
precip'itated, hurled.
precip'itous, steep.
pred'atory, prey'ing.
prod'ucing, yield'ing.
respira'tion, breath'ing.
stupen'dous, tremen'dous.
teres'trial, earth'ly.
undergoes', suf'fers.

¹ Musk, a substance with a very powerful odour, agreeable only when moderated by mixture with other perfumes. It is obtained from the male of a deer called the musk-deer.

² Yak, the Tartar-ox; so called from its peculiar grunt when roused. It has been domesticated, and is very useful as a beast of burden and a source of food. The milk of the female yak is very rich,

and its flesh is delicious. It is somewhat like the bison in appearance, but is more hairy.

³ Rar'ified, made thinner, expanded by its particles becoming more and more separated.

⁴ Symp'toms, signs or indications of disease; *lit.* things occurring or falling together. [Gr. *syn*, together; *pipto*, I fall, or happen.]

QUESTIONS.—What animals disappear as we reach the higher region? What are the chief animals found there? What is remarkable about the musk-deer? What birds are found there? What domestic animals are reared by the natives? What are the highest peaks in the range? What is the height of Everest?

What is the character of Cashmere? What is the nature of the passes across the Himalayah ridge? What makes travelling by them very dangerous? What painful sensation does the traveller often feel in the higher altitudes? To what do the natives ascribe this? To what is it really owing? What are the two spots which are peculiarly sacred and sublime?

LONDON AND ITS FOOD.

IF, early on a summer morning, before the smoke of 'countless fires had narrowed the horizon¹ of the metropolis,² a spectator were to ascend to the top of St. Paul's, and take his stand upon the 'balcony that with gilded rail flashes like a fringe of fire on the summit of the dome, he would see sleeping beneath his feet the greatest camp of men upon which the sun has ever risen. As far as he could distinguish by the morning light, he would behold stretched before him the mighty map of the metropolis; and could he ascend still higher, he would note the stream of life overflowing the brim of hills which enclose the basin in which it stands.

In the space swept by his vision would lie the 'congregated 'habitations of two and three-quarter millions of his species,—but how vain are figures to convey an idea of so vast a multitude! If Norway, stretching from the Frozen Ocean down to its southern extremity in the North Sea, were to summon all its people to one vast 'conclave, they would number little more than half the souls within the London bills of 'mortality! Switzerland, in her thousand valleys, could not muster such an army; and even busy Holland, within her mast-thronged harbours, humming cities, and populous plains, could barely overmatch the close-packed millions within sound of the great bell at his feet.

As the spectator gazed upon this 'extraordinary prospect, the first stir of the awakening city would gradually steal upon his ear. The rumbling of wheels, the clang of hammers, the clear call of the human voice, all deepening by degrees into a confused hum, would 'proclaim that the

the skin is

symptoms,⁴

use, ascribe

ey imagine,

A little ob-

ers in these

n the most

l, that the

peculiarly

funna and

er and 'fer-

eneath the

ed to their

recesses of

ents, amid

rough the

MURRAY.

s, dan'gerous.

ed, hurled.

s, steep.

, prey'ing.

, yield'ing.

n, bréathing.

s, tremen'-

, earth'ly.

, suf'fers.

It is some-

pearance, but

er, expanded

g more and

ndications of

ng or falling

her; *pipto*, I

gion? What

o musk-deer?

the natives?

of Everest?

mighty city was once more rousing to the labour of the day; and the blue columns of smoke climbing up to heaven would intimate that the morning meal was at hand.

At such a moment the thought would naturally arise in his mind,—In what manner is such an assemblage 'victualled? By what 'complicated wheels does all the machinery move by which two and three-quarter millions of human beings sit down to their meals day by day, as regularly and quietly as though they only formed a snug little party at Lovegrove's³ on a summer afternoon?

As thus he mused 'respecting the means by which the supply and demand of so vast a multitude are brought to agree, so that every one is enabled to procure exactly what he wants, at the exact time, without loss to himself or injury to the 'community, thin lines of steam, sharply marked for the moment, as they advanced one after another from the horizon and converged towards him, would indicate the arrival of the great commissariat⁴ trains, stored with produce from all parts of these isles and from the 'adjacent continent. Could his eye distinguish in addition the fine thread of that far-spreading web⁵ which makes London the most 'sensitive spot on the Earth, he would be enabled to take in at a glance the two agents—Steam and Electricity—which keep the balance true between the wants and the supply of London.

The 'inadequacy of figures to convey a clear impression to the mind of the series of units of which the sums are composed, renders it impossible to give more than a faint idea of the enormous supplies of food required to victual the capital for a single year. But the 'conception may be somewhat assisted by varying the process. Country journals now and then astonish their readers by 'calculations to show how many times the steel pens manufactured in England would form a chain around their own little town, or how many thousand miles the matches of their local factory would extend if laid in a straight line from the

cer
san
pro
Dr
I
pile
in a
far
L
we s
to su
H
ing f
as w
belie
the r
ten a
woul
his sl
On
away
can r
sheph
that i
viro
our be
Alc
Cheap
and a
calves
fares c
see no
gruntin
As
points
black p

centre of their market-place. Let us try our hand on the same sort of picture, and endeavour to fill the eye with a prospect that would satisfy the 'appetite of the far-famed Dragon of Wantley⁶ himself.

If we fix upon Hyde Park as our exhibition-ground, and pile together all the barrels of beer 'consumed in London in a single year, they would form a thousand columns not far short of a mile in 'perpendicular height.

Let us imagine ourselves on the top of this tower, and we shall have a look-out worthy of the feast we are about to summon to our feet.

Herefrom we discover the Great Northern Road, stretching far away into the length and breadth of the land. Lo! as we look, a mighty herd of oxen, with loud bellowing, is beheld approaching from the north. For miles and miles the mass of horns is 'conspicuous winding along the road, ten abreast; and even thus, the last animal of the herd would be seventy-two miles away, and the drover goading his shrinking flank considerably beyond Peterborough.

On the other side of the park, as the clouds of dust clear away, we see the Great Western Road, as far as the eye can reach, thronged with a bleating mass of wool; and the shepherd at the end of the flock (ten abreast), and the dog that is worrying the last sheep, are just leaving the 'environs of Bristol, one hundred and twenty-one miles from our beer-built tower.

Along Piccadilly, Regent Street, the Strand, Fleet Street, Cheapside, and the eastward Mile End Road line, for seven and a half miles, street and causeway are thronged with calves (still ten abreast); and in the great parallel 'thoroughfares of Bayswater Road, Oxford Street, and Holborn, we see nothing for nine long miles but a slow-pacing, deep-grunting herd of swine.

As we watch this moving mass approaching from all points of the horizon, the air suddenly becomes dark—a black pall⁷ seems drawn over the sky—it is the great flock

of birds (game, 'poultry, and wild-fowl) that are come up to be killed. As they fly wing to wing, and tail to beak, they form a square whose 'superficies is not much less than the whole enclosed portion of St. James's Park, or fifty-one acres. No sooner does this huge flight clear away than we behold the park at our feet covered with hares and rabbits. Feeding two thousand abreast, they extend from the marble arch to the round pond in Kensington Gardens—at least a mile.

Let us now pile up all the half-quartern⁸ loaves 'consumed in the metropolis in the year, and we shall find they form a pyramid⁹ which measures two hundred square feet at its base, and rises into the air a height of one thousand two hundred and ninety-three feet, or nearly three times that of St. Paul's.

Turning now toward the sound of rushing waters, we find that the seven companies are filling the mains¹⁰ for the day. If they were allowed to flow into the area of the adjacent St. James's Park, they would in the course of the twenty-four hours flood its entire space with a depth of thirty inches of water, and the whole annual supply would be quite 'sufficient to 'submerge the City part of London (one mile square) ninety feet.

Of the fish we confess we are able to say nothing: when numbers mount to billions, the 'calculations become too trying to our 'patience. We have little doubt, however, that they would be quite 'sufficient to make the Serpentine one solid mass.

Of ham and bacon, again, preserved meats, and all the countless comestibles,¹¹ we have taken no account; and, in truth, they are little more to the great mass than the ducks and geese were to Sancho Panza's¹² 'celebrated mess—"the skinmings of the pot."

The railways having poured this enormous amount of food into the metropolis, as the main arteries¹³ feed the human body, it is 'distributed by the various dealers into

eve
or
and
hav
eve
sup
hur
lary
100
near

L
tion
in t
broo
and
rema
sweet
indee
of sn
an al
arran
all it
partn
don
delive
wax
'rapic
vast

adja'ce
appeti
arrang
bal'con
calcula
cel'ebra
clean'li
commu'

every quarter of the town : first into the wholesale markets, or great centres ; then into the sub-centres, or retail-shops ; and lastly into the moving centres, or barrows of the hawkers. By this means 'nourishment is poured into every corner of the town, and the 'community at large is supplied as 'effectually as are the countless tissues of the human body by the 'infinitely divided net-work of capillary¹⁴ vessels. These food distributors amount to about 100,000. Among them are no less than 7000 grocers, nearly 10,000 bakers, and 7000 butchers. DR. WYNTER.

London, as a city, is in its 'arrangements and 'regulations perhaps the most complete in the world. All seems in the most perfect order,—everything in its place, like the brooms, brushes, dusting-cloths of a perfect housekeeper ; and for that prime virtue, 'cleanliness, it is, perhaps, more remarkable than any other. Even the air of London is sweet, save in a few 'localities. The atmosphere is often, indeed, thick with mingled smoke and fog, but the sense of smell is rarely offended ; and this is the best evidence of an all-pervading 'cleanliness. As a remarkable example of arrangement, nothing can be conceived more complete in all its parts than the 'management of the Post Office 'department in London. Ten times daily throughout London there is a penny post [now also a halfpenny post] delivery of letters ; and notes, often scarce bigger than the wax that seals them, are conveyed with 'exactness and 'rapidity to and from every street, lane, and alley of the vast metropolis.

adja'cent, neigh'bouring.
ap'petite, hun'ger.
arrange'ments, plans.
bal'cony, gal'ery.
calcula'tions, es'timates.
cele'brated, fa'mous.
clean'liness, pu'rity.
commu'nity, pub'lic.

com'plicated, involved'.
concep'tion, ide'a.
con'clave, meet'ing.
con'gregated, assem'bled
conspic'uous, prom'inent
consumed', swal'lowed.
count'less, num'berless.
depart'ment, sec'tion.

distrib'uted, dealt.
effec'tually, thor'oughly.
envi'rons, out'skirts.
exact'ness, ac'curacy.
extraor'dinary, unu'sual.
habita'tions, dwell'ings.
inad'equacy, incompe'tency.

in'finite, end'lessly.
local'ities, dis'tricts.
man'agement, adminis-
tra'tion.
mortal'ity, death'-rate.
nour'ishment, sus'te-
nance.

pa'tience, endur'ance.
perpendic'ular, vertic'al
pou'ltry, domes'tic fowl.
proclaim', announce'.
rapid'ity, speed.
regula'tions, rules.
respect'ing, regard'ing.

sen'sitive, suscep'tible.
submerge', overflow'.
suffic'ient, enough'.
superfici'es, sur'face.
thor'oughfares, streets.
vict'ualled, supplied'
with food.

¹ **Horizon**, the utmost bound of our view, where earth and sky seem to meet. The smoke narrows the horizon, because it limits the view.

² **Metrop'olis**, the chief city in a country; *lit.* the mother-city. - [Gr. *mētēr*, mother; *polis*, city.]

³ **At Lovegrove's**.—The reference is to a fashionable hotel at Greenwich, kept by a person of that name.

⁴ **Commissa'riat**, food-supplying. Properly, the commissariat is that department of an army to which is *com-mitted* the charge of supplying it with provisions.

⁵ **Far-spreading web**.—The web referred to is formed of the telegraphic wires which extend from London to all parts of the civilized world.

⁶ **Dragon of Wantley**.—Described, in the old ballad which bears his name, as a greedy monster that consumed animals wholesale, and even houses and forests.

⁷ **Pall**, the cloth which covers the coffin at a funeral.

⁸ **Half-quartern**, two-pound. A

quartern is quarter of a peck, which is the fourth part of a bushel.

⁹ **Py'r amid**, a solid figure, with trian-gular sides, meeting in a point at the top.

¹⁰ **Mains**, the chief water-pipes.

¹¹ **Comest'ibles**, eatables; *lit.* things *eaten along with* more substantial food. [Lat. *com*, together; *edo*, I eat.]

¹² **San cho Pan'za**, the "good squire" of Don Quixote, the hero of the Span-ish romance which bears his name, written by Cervantes, who died in 1616. Sancho was originally a labourer, whom the knight enticed from his employ-ment and family to enter his service. The "mess" referred to was on the oc-casion of the wedding of Camacho the Rich. (See *Don Quixote*, part II., ch. xx.)

¹³ **Ar'teries**, the tubes that convey the blood from the heart to all parts of the body. Those which convey the blood back to the heart are called *veins*.

¹⁴ **Cap'illary vessels**—the minute hair-like tubes in which the arteries terminate and the veins begin. [Lat. *capillus*, a hair; from *caput*, the head.]

QUESTIONS.—What is the population of London? Illustrate its extent by comparison with Norway. With Switzerland. With Holland. What are the two agents which keep the balance true between the wants of London in the matter of food, and the supply? If all the barrels of beer consumed in London in a year were piled together, what would they form? How far would the oxen stretch, ten abreast? And the sheep? And the calves? And the swine? What area would the birds cover? And the hares and rabbits? Of what size would a pyramid of the loaves consumed in a year be? Give an idea of the annual water supply. How is this food distributed in London? How many do the food-distributors number?

THE WATERS OF THE GLOBE.

WATER is one of the most widely diffused bodies in nature, about three-fourths of the surface of the globe being covered by it. The benevolence of the Creator is manifest in the

wide diffusion of this element. It is indispensable both to the animal and to the vegetable worlds. It serves invaluable purposes in the arts and manufactures; in the form of rivers, lakes, and seas, it becomes a medium of intercourse among the nations of the Earth. To the vast reservoir of water in the ocean, moreover, we are indebted for the clouds, which carry moisture from the sea and let it down upon the parched and thirsty earth in refreshing rain.

There is a river in the sky a hundred times larger than the Amazon or the Mississippi;¹ and not only one, but many. These rivers come to us in the spring rains, the summer showers, the nightly dews, and the winter snows. The water which thus falls from the sky every year would cover the earth, if it were level like a field, to the depth of fully five feet.

All the waters of our mighty rivers and lakes were once clouds, and the clouds are but vapour lifted into the sky from the sea by the secret engineering of the sun. The winds, by the flapping of their mighty wings, drive the vapour over the land to the hills, and the mountains, and the thirsty fields; and there the clouds pour their blessings on the farms, and pastures, and orchards, and the dusty roads and the wayside grass, bringing greenness and gladness everywhere.

The sea is in the sparkling dew-drop, and it falls in the summer shower. It makes the grass grow and the flowers unfold their gay banners—red, white and blue. It ripens the peach and the apple, and loads the fields with the yellow harvest. It spins our thread and weaves our cloth. It is harnessed to mighty engines, and does more work than thousands of men and horses. It saws our timber, lifts our coal from the bowels of the earth, and steams in the iron horse. The sea clothes and cools us, and carries us and works for us. All the water in our rivers, lakes, fountains, in the dew, fog, snow, sleet, and rain, comes alike from the sea.

From whatever source water is procured, whether from ocean, river, lake, or spring, it is always the same. It is true that water from the sea has a different taste from that of rain or river water; but the difference does not lie in the water, but in the substances dissolved in it.

Water is composed of two gases, oxygen and hydrogen, in the proportion of eight parts of oxygen to one of hydrogen, by weight.² It is one of the most marvellous facts in the natural world, that though hydrogen is highly inflammable, and oxygen is a supporter of combustion, both combined form an element destructive to fire.

Pure water is destitute of colour, taste, and smell. It seldom, however, occurs in this state, but usually contains various ingredients,³ derived either from the atmosphere or from the earth. Rain water is the purest that can be obtained, except by distillation.⁴

The waters of the globe are divided into fresh and salt. The fresh water includes all streams and rivers, and nearly all the springs and the greater number of the lakes, on the Earth's surface. They are called fresh, because they contain no amount of saline matter unfitting them for use. It is supposed that the lakes of North America contain more than half of all the fresh water on the face of the globe.

Salt water is that which fills the vast basin of the ocean, besides numerous lakes and springs. It forms much the larger portion of the liquid element. The proportion of saline matter which the ocean contains is about three and a half per cent.⁵ Supposing the sea to have a mean depth of one thousand feet, it has been calculated that the amount of common salt it contains is equal to five times the mass of the Alps, or about one-third less than that of the Himalayah Mountains!

Near the equator and towards the poles the ocean is less salt than in other parts. This is probably owing to the abundant rains at the equator, and to the melting of the ice in the polar regions.

THE
than
navig
grees
of the
preve
ascrib
benev'
ness.
con sec
destruc
dif' fere
dissolv
enginee
ance.

¹ The
the grea
America

² By v
contains
oxygen.

³ Ingr
ent part
go, enter

⁴ Disti
to steam

QUESTI
What im
earth in
diffused
What is t
water inc
proportion
Why is se
healthful

WHO e
Whe
rolling i
'resistles
or sleepi
but by a

The saline ingredients render sea water much heavier than fresh water, and, consequently,⁶ better adapted for navigation. Fresh water freezes at the temperature of 32 degrees; salt water, at that of 28½ degrees. The healthfulness of the ocean is partly ascribed to its constant motion, which prevents its waters from becoming stagnant and corrupt.

ascribed', attributed.
benevolence, bountiful-
ness.

consequently, therefore
destructive, ruinous.
difference, diversity.
dissolved, decomposed.
engineering, contriv-
ance.

greenness, verdure.
harnessed, yoked.
healthfulness, salu-
brity.

includes, comprises.
indebted, obliged.
indispensable, essential
inflammable, combus-
tible.

intercourse, communi-
cation.

marvellous, wonderful
moisture, water.
procured, obtained.
propagation, ratio.
refreshing, reviving.
reservoir, store.

¹ The Amazon or the Mississippi—the greatest rivers of South and North America respectively.

² By weight.—But by *volume*, water contains twice as much hydrogen as oxygen.

³ Ingredients, elements; constituent parts. [Lat. *in*, into; *gradior*, I go, enter.]

⁴ Distillation, converting water into steam by heat, and the steam again

into water by cold. Steam is evaporated water; distilled water is condensed steam.

⁵ Three and a half per cent.—In every 100 parts of salt water, 3½ parts are salt, and 96½ parts are water. Much of the salt used with our food is obtained from sea water by evaporation.

⁶ Consequently; both because its buoyant power is greater, and because it is less easily frozen.

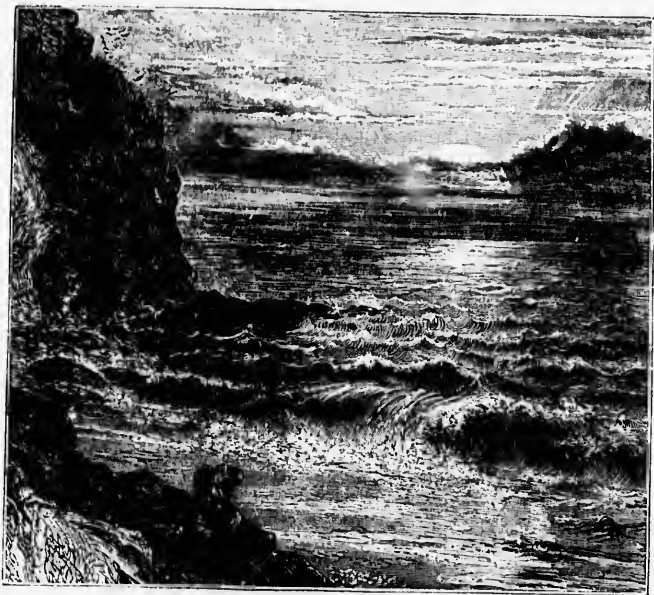
QUESTIONS.—What proportion of the surface of the globe is covered by water? What important purposes does it serve? What amount of water falls upon the earth in a year? Whence does all the water of the globe come? How is it diffused over the land? Of what is water composed? In what proportions? What is the purest water that can be obtained in nature? What does the fresh water include? What are the North American lakes said to contain? What proportion of saline matter does the sea contain? Where is the ocean least salt? Why is sea water better adapted for navigation than fresh? To what is the healthfulness of the ocean partly ascribed?

THE OCEAN.

Who ever gazed upon the broad sea without emotion? Whether seen in stern majesty, hoary with the tempest, rolling its giant waves upon the rocks, and dashing with resistless fury some gallant bark on an iron-bound coast; or sleeping beneath the silver moon, its broad bosom broken but by a gentle ripple, just enough to reflect a long line of

light—a path of silver upon a 'pavement of sapphire ;¹—
 who has looked upon the sea without feeling that it has
 power "to stir the soul with thoughts 'profound'?"

Perhaps there is no earthly object—not even the cloud-
 cleaving mountains of an 'alpine country—so sublime as



the sea in its severe and naked simplicity. Standing on
 some 'promontory whence the eye roams far out upon the
 unbounded ocean, the soul expands, and we conceive a nobler
 idea of the majesty of that God who "holdeth the waters
 in the hollow of his hand." He has set bars and doors, and
 said, "Hitherto shalt thou come, but no further ; and here
 shall thy proud waves be stayed."

GOSSE.

Roll on, thou deep and dark-blue ocean—roll !
 Ten thousand fleets sweep over thee in vain :

al'pine,
 ar'biter
 ar'mam
 control'
 convuls
 emo'tion

¹ Sapp
 erly of a

sapphires; ¹—
 that it has
 d? ”
 in the cloud-
 sublime as



standing on
 t upon the
 ve a nobler
 the waters
 doors, and
 ; and here
 Gosse.

Man marks the earth with ruin—his 'control
 Stops with the shore;—upon the watery plain
 The wrecks are all thy deed, nor doth 'remain
 A shadow of man's 'ravage, save his own,
 When, for a moment, like a drop of rain,
 He sinks into thy depths, with bubbling groan,
 Without a grave, unknelled,² unconfined, and unknown.

The 'armaments which thunder-strike the walls
 Of rock-built cities, bidding nations quake,
 And 'monarchs 'tremble in their capitals;
 The oak leviathans,³ whose huge ribs make
 Their clay creator the vain title take
 Of lord of thee, and 'arbiter of war;—
 These are thy toys, and, as the snowy flake,
 They melt into thy yeast of waves, which mar
 Alike the Armada's⁴ pride and spoils of Trafalgar.⁵

Thy shores are empires, changed in all save thee.
 Assyria,⁶ Greece, Rome, Carthage⁷—what are they?
 Thy waters wasted them while they were free,
 And many a 'tyrant since: their shores obey
 The stranger, slave, or savage: their decay
 Has dried up realms to deserts. Not so thou:
 'Unchangeable save to thy wild waves' play,
 Time writes no wrinkle on thine azure brow—
 Such as Creation's dawn beheld, thou rollest now.

Thou 'glorious mirror, where the Almighty's form
 Glasses⁸ itself in tempests; in all time—
 Calm or 'convulsed—in breeze, or gale, or storm
 Icing the pole, or in the torrid clime
 Dark-heaving,—boundless, endless, and sublime—
 The image of 'Eternity!

BYRON.⁹

al'pine, moun'tainous.
 ar'biter, umpire.
 ar'maments, fleets.
 control', jurisdiction.
 convulsed', agitated.
 emo'tion, intense' feel'ing

eter'nity, end'less dura'.
 glo'rious, splen'did. [tion.
 mon'archs, sov'reigns.
 pave'ment, floor.
 prof'und', deep.
 prom'onory, head'land.

rav'age, devasta'tion.
 remain', survive'.
 resist'less, irresis'tible.
 trem'ble, quake.
 ty'rant, des'pot. [table.
 unchange'able, immu'-

¹ Sapph'ire, a precious stone, prop- | colours are also called sapphires); next
 ertly of a blue colour (for stones of other | in hardness to the diamond.

² Unknelled, having no knell or funeral bell tolled.

³ Oak leviathans—ships of the largest size; so called after the huge sea-animal described in the Book of Job (ch. xli.). So Campbell says, in the *Battle of the Baltic*—

“Like leviathans afloat
Lay their bulwarks on the brine.”

⁴ The Armada—the Spanish Armada, a great fleet sent against England by Philip II. of Spain in the reign of Queen Elizabeth. Defeated 1588.

⁵ Trafalgar, the great naval battle in which Nelson defeated the French and Spanish fleets, and in which he was killed, October 21, 1805.

⁶ Assyria, a country in Asia, between Mesopotamia and Media, the

seat of the most ancient monarchy in the world. Nineveh, its capital, was razed to the ground when Assyria became a Median province, *n. c.* 605.

⁷ Carthage, a great republic in the north of Africa, which disputed with Rome the sovereignty of the world. The Romans triumphed in the end, and burned the city of Carthage, *n. c.* 146.

⁸ Glasses, reflects, as in a glass or mirror.

⁹ Byron, George Gordon, Lord Byron, poet, born 1788. Chief works: *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*, *The Giaour*, *The Corsair*, *Manfred* (a drama), &c. Died in 1824 at Missolonghi in Greece, where he had gone to support the cause of Greek independence.

THE VISION OF MIRZA.

WHEN I was at Grand Cairo I picked up several ‘Oriental’ manuscripts, which I have still by me. Among others, I met with one entitled “The Visions of Mirza,” which I have read over with great pleasure. I intend to give it to the public when I have no other ‘entertainment for them; and shall begin with the first vision, which I have translated word for word as follows:—

“On the fifth day of the moon, which, according to the custom of my forefathers, I always keep holy, after having washed myself and offered up my morning ‘devotions, I ascended the high hills of Bagdat,¹ in order to pass the rest of the day in meditation and prayer. As I was here airing myself on the tops of the mountains, I fell into a profound ‘contemplation on the vanity of human life; and passing from one thought to another, ‘Surely,’ said I, ‘man is but a shadow, and life a dream.’

“Whilst I was thus musing, I cast mine eyes towards the summit of a rock that was not far from me, where I ‘discovered one in the habit of a shepherd, with a little musical instrument in his hand. As I looked upon him,

he a
soun
of tu
differ
mind
souls
wear
them
melte
“I
haunt
had l
that t
by the
my th
looked
‘becko
hand t
“I
superi
captiva
wept.
sion an
and at
which
and tak
thee in
“He
and pla
said he
huge va
it.’ ‘T
Misery
great ti
the tide
again l

he applied it to his lips and began to play upon it. The sound of it was exceeding sweet, and wrought into a variety of tunes that were 'inexpressibly' melodious, and altogether different from anything I had ever heard. They put me in mind of those heavenly airs that are played to the departed souls of good men upon their first arrival in Paradise, to wear out the impressions of their last agonies, and qualify them for the pleasures of that happy place. My heart melted away in secret 'raptures.

"I had often been told that the rock before me was the haunt of a Genius,² and that several who had passed by it had been entertained with music; but I had never heard that the musician had before made himself visible. When, by those 'transporting' airs which he played, he had raised my thoughts to taste the pleasures of his 'conversation, I looked upon him like one astonished. Thereupon he 'beckoned to me, and directed me by the waving of his hand to approach the place where he sat.

"I drew near with that reverence which is due to a superior nature; and as my heart was entirely 'subdued by the captivating strains I had heard, I fell down at his feet and wept. The Genius smiled upon me with a look of compassion and 'affability that familiarized him to my imagination, and at once 'dispelled all the fears and apprehensions with which I approached him. He lifted me from the ground, and taking me by the hand, 'Mirza,' said he, 'I have heard thee in thy soliloquies;³ follow me.'

"He then led me to the highest pinnacle of the rock, and placing me on the top of it, 'Cast thine eyes eastward,' said he, 'and tell me what thou seest.' 'I see,' said I, 'a huge valley, and a 'prodigious tide of water rolling through it.' 'The valley that thou seest,' said he, 'is the Vale of Misery; and the tide of water that thou seest is part of the great tide of Eternity.' 'What is the reason,' said I, 'that the tide I see rises out of a thick mist at the one end, and again loses itself in a thick mist at the other?' 'What

thou seest,' said he, 'is that portion of Eternity which is called Time, measured out by the sun, and reaching from the beginning of the world to its 'consummation.

" 'Examine now,' continued he, 'this sea that is bounded with darkness at both ends, and tell me what thou discoverest in it.' 'I see a bridge,' said I, 'standing in the midst of the tide.' 'The bridge thou seest,' said he, 'is Human Life; consider it 'attentively.' Upon a more leisurely survey of it, I found that it consisted of 'threescore and ten entire arches,⁴ with several broken arches, which, added to those that were entire, made up the number to about an hundred. As I was counting the arches, the Genius told me that this bridge had consisted at first of a thousand arches, but that a great flood had swept away the rest, and left the bridge in the ruinous condition in which I now beheld it.

" 'But tell me further,' said he, 'what thou discoverest on it?' 'I see 'multitudes of people passing over it,' said I, 'and a black cloud hanging on each end of it.' As I looked more attentively, I saw several of the 'passengers dropping through the bridge into the great tide that flowed underneath it; and, upon further examination perceived that there were innumerable trap-doors⁵ that lay 'concealed in the bridge, which the passengers no sooner trod upon than they fell through them into the tide, and immediately disappeared.

"These hidden pit-falls were set very thick at the entrance of the bridge, so that throngs of people no sooner broke through the cloud than many of them fell into them. They grew thinner towards the middle, but 'multiplied and lay closer together towards the end of the arches that were entire.

"There were, indeed, some persons, but their number was very small, that continued a kind of hobbling march on the broken arches; but they fell through one after another, being quite tired and spent with so long a walk.

"I passed some time in the 'contemplation of this wonderful 'structure and the great variety of objects which it presented. My heart was filled with a deep 'melancholy to see several dropping 'unexpectedly, in the midst of mirth and jollity, and catching at everything that stood by them, to save themselves.

"Some were looking up towards the heavens in a thoughtful posture, and in the midst of a 'speculation stumbled, and fell out of sight. Multitudes were very busy in the pursuit of bubbles that glittered in their eyes and danced before them; but often when they thought themselves within the reach of them, their footing failed, and down they sank.

"In this confusion of objects, I observed many with scimitars in their hands,⁶ who ran to and fro upon the bridge, thrusting several persons on trap-doors which did not seem to lie in their way, and which they might have escaped had they not been thus forced upon them.

"The Genius, seeing me indulge myself on this 'melancholy prospect, told me I had dwelt long enough upon it. 'Take thine eyes off the bridge,' said he, 'and tell me if thou yet seest anything thou dost not 'comprehend?' Upon looking up, 'What mean,' said I, 'those great flights of birds that are perpetually hovering about the bridge, and settling upon it from time to time? I see vultures, harpies,⁷ ravens, cormorants, and, among many other feathered creatures, several little winged boys, that perch in great numbers upon the middle arches.' 'These,' said the Genius, 'are 'Envy, 'Avarice, 'Superstition, 'Despair, Love, with the like cares and passions that infest human life.'

"I here fetched a deep sigh. 'Alas,' said I, 'man was made in vain! How is he given away to misery and mortality, tortured in life, and swallowed up in death!'

"The Genius, being moved with compassion towards me, bade me quit so 'uncomfortable a prospect. 'Look no more,' said he, 'on man in the first stage of his existence,

in his setting out for Eternity; but cast thine eye on that thick mist into which the tide bears the several generations of mortals that fall into it.'

"I directed my sight as I was ordered, and (whether or no the good Genius strengthened it with any 'supernatural force, or dissipated part of the mist that was before too thick for the eye to penetrate, I know not, but) I saw the valley opening at the further end, and spreading forth into an immense ocean, that had a huge rock of 'adamant running through the midst of it, and dividing it into two equal parts.

"The clouds still rested on one half of it, insomuch that I could discover nothing in it; but the other^s appeared to me a vast ocean planted with innumerable islands, that were covered with fruits and flowers, and 'interwoven with a thousand little shining seas that ran among them. I could see persons dressed in glorious habits, with 'garlands upon their heads, passing among the trees, lying down by the sides of fountains, or resting on beds of flowers; and I could hear a confused harmony of singing birds, falling waters, human voices, and musical instruments.

"Gladness grew in me upon the discovery of so 'delightful a scene. I wished for the wings of an eagle that I might fly away to those happy seats; but the Genius told me there was no passage to them except through the gates of Death, which I saw opening every moment upon the bridge.

"'The islands,' said he, 'that lie so fresh and green before thee, and with which the whole face of the ocean appears spotted as far as thou canst see, are more in number than the sands on the sea-shore. There are myriads⁹ of islands behind those which thou here discoverest, reaching further than thine eye, or even thine 'imagination, can extend itself. These are the mansions of good men after death, who, according to the degree and kinds of virtue in which they excelled, are distributed among these several islands, which abound with pleasures of different kinds and

de
wh
con
O
app
suc
the
in v
"a
isla
the
the
" "

add
had
been
the a
the
came

accom
ed.
ad'am
affabil
atten'
av'ari
beck'o
compr
stand
concea
consum
tion.
contem
tion.
contenc
convers
delight
despair

¹ Bag
Mesopot
of Asiatic
river Ti
Saracen
Mohamm

degrees, suitable to the 'relishes and perfections of those who are settled in them. Every island is a paradise 'accommodated to its respective inhabitants. Are not these, O Mirza! habitations worth 'contending for? Does life appear miserable, that gives thee opportunities of earning such a reward? Is death to be feared, that will convey thee to so happy an existence? Think not man was made in vain, who has such an eternity reserved for him.'

"I gazed with inexpressible pleasure on these happy islands. At length I said, 'Show me now, I beseech thee, the secrets that lie hid under those dark clouds which cover the ocean on the other side of the rock of adamant.'

"The Genius making me no answer, I turned about to address myself to him a second time, but I found that he had left me. I then turned again to the vision which I had been so long contemplating; but instead of the rolling tide, the arched bridge, and the happy islands, I saw nothing but the long, hollow valley of Bagdat, with oxen, sheep, and camels grazing upon the sides of it."

JOSEPH ADDISON.¹⁰

accommodated, adapted.
adamant, diamond.
affability, courtesy.
attentively, closely.
avarice, greed.
beckoned, motioned.
comprehend', understand'.
concealed', hid'den.
consummation, completion.
contemplation, meditation.
contending', striving.
conversation, discourse'.
delightful, charming.
despair', hopelessness.

devotions, prayers.
discovered, described'.
dispelled', dissipated.
entertainment, amusement.
envy, jealousy.
garlands, wreaths.
imagination, fancy.
inexpressibly, unutterably.
interwoven, interlaced'.
manuscripts, writings.
melancholy, sadness;
sad.
melodious, sweet.
multiplied, increased'.
multitudes, crowds.
oriental, eastern.

passengers, travellers.
prodigious, enormous.
raptures, transports.
relishes, tastes.
speculation, train of thought.
structure, erection.
subdued', charmed.
supernatural, miraculous.
superstition, fanaticism.
three score, sixty.
transporting, captivating.
uncomfortable, disagreeable.
unexpectedly, suddenly.

¹ Bag'dat, a town and division of Mesopotamia, or Algésira, a province of Asiatic Turkey. The town is on the river Tigris. It was the seat of the Saracen Empire (that of the Eastern Mohammedans) from the eighth to the

thirteenth century. It was long a bone of contention between the Persians and the Turks; but it was finally taken by the latter in 1638.

² A Genius, a supernatural being; a spirit.

⁵ Soliloquies, speeches addressed to oneself; spoken meditations.

⁶ Threescore and ten entire arches.

—The arches represent the years of man's average life. The broken arches are the extensions of life which occasionally take place. The "thousand arches" refer to the great age of the antediluvians.

⁷ Trap-doors and pit-falls are the diseases and accidents which beset man, especially in infancy.

⁸ With scimitars in their hands.

—An allusion to the premature deaths caused by war. The scimitar, here put as the emblem of bloodshed, is a short Turkish sword with a curved blade.

⁹ Harpy, a fabulous monster, half woman and half bird. The name is also applied to the crested eagle of Mexico.

¹⁰ The other.—That is, Heaven. The

"immense ocean" is Eternity, divided by a "rock of adamant" (that is, of impenetrable hardness) into a region of bliss and a region of woe. The latter was concealed by dark clouds, through which the eye of Mirza was not allowed to penetrate.

¹¹ Myriads, innumerable multitudes. [Gr. *myrios*, numberless; pl. *myrioi*, ten thousand.]

¹² Joseph Addison, essayist and poet; born in Wiltshire in 1672; studied at Oxford; wrote *The Campaign*, a poem celebrating Marlborough's victory of Blenheim (1704); contributed essays to the *Tatler*, *Spectator*, and *Guardian*, on which his fame rests,—the above is one of his papers in the *Spectator*; wrote *Cato* (a tragedy) in 1713; became Secretary of State in 1717; died at Holland House in 1719.

QUESTIONS.—What does this story profess to be? Where did the vision appear to Mirza? For what purpose had he gone there? On what was he reflecting? Who appeared to him? By what did he captivate him? Where did the Genius lead him? What did he show him? What did the valley represent? And the tide of water? Why was the tide enclosed between thick mists? What stood in the midst of the tide? What did the bridge represent? How many arches had it? Of how many had it at one time consisted? To what is this an allusion? What lay concealed in the bridge? Where were they set most thickly? What does this represent? How are very old persons represented in the vision? How, sudden deaths? How, the devastations of war? What was the meaning of the flights of birds about the bridge? How was the region of Eternity divided? Which part was Mirza not allowed to see? Of what did the other consist? What did the Genius say the islands were? What lessons was Mirza to draw from what he had seen?

A PSALM OF LIFE.

TELL me not, in 'mournful numbers,¹
Life is but an empty dream!
For the soul is dead that 'slumbers,
And things are not what they seem.

Life is real! life is 'earnest!
And the grave is not its 'goal;
"Dust thou art, to dust returnest,"
Was not spoken of the soul.

Not 'enjoyment, and not sorrow,
Is our 'destined end or way;

achiev'in
biv'ouac,
des'tined,
ear'nest,
enjoy'men

¹ Numb
called beca
the number
in each lin
² Art is
of an ancie
brevis—"A
Chancer ha
so short, th

But to act that each to-morrow
Find us further than to-day.

Art is long,² and Time is 'fleeing,
And our hearts, though stout and brave,
Still, like 'muffled drums, are beating
Funeral marches to the grave.

In the world's broad field of battle,
In the 'bivouac of life,
Be not like dumb, driven cattle!
Be a hero in the strife!

Trust no Future, howe'er pleasant!
Let the dead Past bury its dead!
Act—act in the living Present!
Heart within, and God o'erhead!

Lives of great men all 'remind us
We can make our lives 'sublime;
And, departing, leave behind us
'Footprints on the sands of time,—

Footprints that perhaps another,
Sailing o'er life's solemn main,
A 'forlorn and shipwrecked brother,
Seeing, shall take heart again.

Let us, then, be up and doing,
With a heart for any fate;
Still 'achieving, still 'pursuing,
Learn to labour and to wait.

H. W. LONGFELLOW.³

achiev'ing, accom'plish-
biv'ouac, campaign' (ing).
des'tined, appointed.
ear'nest, serious.
enjoy'ment, pleas'ure.

fleet'ing, tran'sient.
foot'prints, tra'ces.
forlorn', des'olate.
goal, end.
mourn'ful, dole'ful

muf'led, dull.
pursu'ing, striv'ing.
remind', suggest' to.
slum'bers, sleeps.
sublime, no'ble.

¹ Numbers—verse or poetry; so called because it requires regularity in the number of syllables and of accents in each line.

² Art is long, &c.—An adaptation of an ancient aphorism: *Ars longa, vita brevis*—"Art is long, life is short." Chaucer has the same idea in "The lyte so short, the craft so long to lerne."

³ Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, American poet; born in Maine in 1807; in 1835 appointed Professor of Modern Languages and Belles Lettres in Harvard College, Cambridge, United States. Chief works: *Voices of the Night*, *The Golden Legend*, *Erangeline*, and *Hiawatha*; has also written prose tales and essays, as *Hyperion*, *Kavanaugh*, &c.

THE TIDE-WAVE IN THE BAY OF FUNDY: ITS GEOLOGICAL VALUE.

THE tide-wave that sweeps to the north-east, along the Atlantic coast of the United States, entering the funnel-like mouth of the Bay of Fundy, becomes 'compressed and elevated as the sides of the bay gradually approach each other. In the narrower parts, the water runs at the rate of six or seven miles an hour, and the vertical rise of the tide amounts to sixty feet or more! At some points these tides, to an 'unaccustomed spectator, have rather the aspect of some rare 'convulsion of nature than of an ordinary daily occurrence.

At low tide, wide flats of brown mud are seen to extend for miles, as if the sea had altogether retired from its bed; and the distant channel appears as a mere strip of muddy water. At the 'commencement of flood, a slight ripple is seen to break over the edge of the flats. It rushes swiftly forward, and, covering the lower flats almost 'instantaneously, gains rapidly on the higher swells of mud, which appear as if they were being dissolved in the turbid waters.

At the same time the torrent of red water enters all the channels, creeks, and estuaries;¹ surging, whirling, and foaming, and often having in its front a white, breaking wave, or "bore,"² which runs steadily forward, meeting and 'swallowing up the remains of the ebb still trickling down the channels. The mud flats are soon covered; and then, as the stranger sees the water gaining with noiseless and steady rapidity on the steep sides of banks and cliffs, a sense of 'insecurity creeps over him, as if no limit could be set to the advancing deluge. In a little time, however, he sees that the fiat,³ "Hitherto shalt thou come, but no further," has been issued to the great bay tide: its 'retreat commences, and the waters rush back as rapidly as they entered.

Much interest attaches to the marine 'sediment of the

Bay,
tide
the
sion
anim
whi
anci
of th
thei
be
by t
We
this
prin
was
to th
in th
"5
water
fine,
struc
stone
to th
border
'estua
bay in
feet a
laid d
neap t
hot s
cracks
up and
"Or
ous lay
someti
ness, h
(411)

FUNDY:

st, along the
the funnel-
pressed and
approach each
at the rate
rise of the
points these
er the aspect
rdinary daily

en to extend
rom its bed;
p of muddy
ght ripple is
ashes swiftly
instantane-
mud, which
rbid waters.
aters all the
irling, and
e, breaking
rd, meeting
ll trickling
vered; and
th noiseless
and cliffs, a
nit could be
owever, he
but no fur-
its retreat
lly as they
ent of the

Bay of Fundy, from the great breadth of it laid bare at low tide, and the facilities which it in consequence affords for the study of sun-cracks, impressions of rain-drops, foot-prints of animals, and other appearances which we find imitated on many ancient rocks. The genuineness of these ancient traces, as well as their mode of preservation, can be illustrated and proved only by the study of modern deposits. We quote a summary of facts of this kind from a paper on Rain-prints by Sir Charles Lyell, who was the first to direct attention to these phenomena as exhibited in the Bay of Fundy.

"The sediment with which the waters are charged is extremely fine, being derived from the destruction of cliffs of red sandstone and shale, belonging chiefly to the coal measures.⁴ On the borders of even the smallest estuaries communicating with a bay in which the tides rise sixty feet and upwards, large areas are laid dry for nearly a fortnight, between the spring and the neap tides;⁵ and the mud is then baked in summer by a hot sun, so that it becomes solidified and traversed by cracks. Portions of the hardened mud may then be taken up and removed without injury.

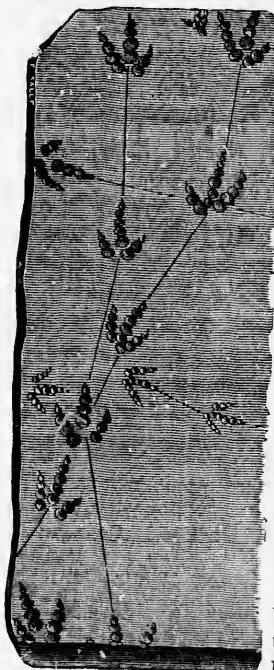
"On examining the edges of each slab, we observe numerous layers, formed by successive tides, usually very thin—sometimes only one-tenth of an inch thick; of unequal thickness, however, because, according to Dr. Webster, the night-



FOOT-PRINTS OF ANIMALS ON A
SLAB OF STONE.

tides, rising a foot higher than the day-tides, throw down more sediment.

“When a shower of rain falls, the highest portion of the mud-covered flat is usually too hard to receive any impressions; while that recently uncovered by the tide, near the water's edge, is too soft. Between these areas a space occurs almost as smooth and even as a looking-glass, on which every drop forms a cavity of circular or oval form. If the shower be transient these pits retain their shape permanently,



FOOT-PRINTS OF BIRDS ON A SLAB OF STONE.

being dried by the sun, and being then too firm to be effaced by the action of the succeeding tide, which deposits upon them a new layer of mud. Hence we find, on splitting open a slab an inch or more thick, on the upper surface of which the marks of recent rain occur, that an inferior layer, deposited perhaps ten or fourteen tides previously, exhibits on its under surface perfect casts of rain-prints which stand out in relief, the moulds of the same being seen in the layer below.”

After mentioning that a continuous shower of rain obliterates the more regular impressions, and produces merely a blistered surface, Sir Charles adds:—

“On some of the specimens there are seen the winding tubular tracks of worms, which have been bored just beneath the surface. Sometimes the worms have dived, and then reappeared. Occasionally

the same mud is traversed by the foot-prints of birds, and of musk-rats, minks,⁶ dogs, sheep, and cats. The leaves

also
the
the
laye
fai
‘min
V

app
rock
natu
ance
of ra
alluv
also,
nette
surfa
taken

A
is the
in the
if not
was u
chang
and b

cav’ity,
commen
ning.
compre
convul’s
es’tuarie
exam’in
gen’uine
tic’ity,
impres’s
indica’ti

¹ Es’tuar
the curre
from the s
their meet
from astu

also of elm, maple, and oak trees have been scattered by the winds over the soft mud, and, having been buried under the deposits of succeeding tides, are found on dividing the layers. When the leaves themselves are removed, very faithful impressions, not only of their outline, but of their minutest veins, are left imprinted on the clay."

We have here a perfect instance, in a modern deposit, of appearances which we notice in some of the most ancient rocks; and it is only by such minute studies of existing nature that we can hope to interpret those older appearances. In some very ancient rocks we have impressions of rain-marks quite similar to those which occur in the alluvial mud of the Bay of Fundy. In those old rocks, also, and especially in the coal formation, we find surfaces netted with sun-cracks precisely like those on the dried surfaces of the modern mud flats, and faithful casts of these taken by the beds next deposited.

A striking geological fact connected with the marshes, is the presence beneath them of stumps of trees still rooted in the soil, and other indications which prove that much, if not the whole of this marine deposit, rests on what once was upland soil supporting forest trees; and that, by some change of level, these ancient forests had been submerged and buried under the tidal deposits.

From DAWSON'S *Acadian Geology*.

cav'ity, hollow.	insecu'rity, dan'ger.	preserva'tion, protec'tion.
commence'ment, begin'ning.	instantaneously, immediately.	re'cently, late'ly.
compressed', narrowed.	inter'pret, explain'.	retreat', retire'ment.
convul'sion, commo'tion	minut'est, fin'est.	sed'iment, depos'it.
es'tuaries, firths.	oblit'erates, effac'es.	solid'ified, hard'ened.
exam'ining, inspect'ing.	occa'sionally, some'times.	spec'imens, exam'ples.
gen'uineness, authent'icity.	per'manently, last'ingly.	swal'lowing, absorb'ing.
impress'ions, cop'ies.	phenom'ena, appear'ances.	trans'ient, pass'ing.
indica'tions, symp'toms.		unaccus'tomed, unfamil'iar.

¹ Es'tuaries, mouths of rivers, where the current meets the tide: so called from the surging or boiling caused by their meeting. [Lat. *æstuarium*, to boil; from *æstus*, burning.]

² Bore, the flow of the tide in a single large wave up funnel-shaped estuaries, such as the Bristol Channel in England. (See p. 149.) [Norse, *baara*, a wave; *bæra*, to surge.]

³ Fiat, decree; solemn command; lit. Let it be done. [Lat. *fat.*]

⁴ Coal measures.—In geology, this term includes the beds of sandstone and shale (slaty rock) between which the coal lies, as well as the coal beds.

⁵ Spring and neap tides.—Spring-tides are the highest tides, being the result of the combined influence of the

sun and the moon. They are so called, because in them the water *springs* or rises beyond its usual level. *Neap*-tides are the lowest tides, and are the result of the modification by the sun of the moon's influence. *Neap* means scanty. [Old Eng. *nep.*] (See p. 152.)

⁶ Mink, a small carnivorous animal of the weasel kind; valued for its fur.

QUESTIONS.—To what does the vertical rise of the tide in the Bay of Fundy amount? What appearance does the coast present at low-tide? What has the torrent of red water often in its front? What does the stranger feel as he sees its advance? For what does the sediment in the Bay of Fundy afford facilities? What do these appearances illustrate? Why is the sediment extremely fine? At what time are large areas of it exposed to the sun? What portion of it is best adapted for receiving impressions? Of what did Lyell find casts between the layers? Of what are these perfect instances? What is inferred from the presence of stumps of trees rooted in the soil?

COAL.

Who can sum up the benefits we derive from coal? It warms and lights our dwellings, cooks our food, illuminates our streets. Coal develops and sustains the force which propels the locomotive along the railway and the ship across the sea; works the printing press, wields the hammer, lifts the weight, draws the load, moves the machinery, grinds the corn, spins the cotton, weaves the cloth, pumps the mine, deepens the river, covers the land with a network of railways, forges the electric wire, and, submerging the ocean telegraph, "will put a girdle round about the Earth in forty minutes."¹ Who shall set bounds to the power of Coal, Iron, and Steam?

The economical and industrial importance of the union of coal and iron² in the British Isles cannot be over-estimated. To the abundance of these minerals in the deposits of the coal formation are owing the increase and prosperity of the British people, their wide-spread mercantile enterprise, their rapid intercourse with all parts of the world, their boundless territories abroad, their opulence and influence at home.

From its 'proximity to a mere patch of the English coal measures—a detached portion not exceeding the area of one of the larger Scottish lakes—Birmingham has risen to the rank of the first iron manufacturing town in the world. Manchester and Glasgow have equally derived their manufacturing and commercial importance from being placed each in the centre of a great coal basin.

The vegetable origin of coal is no longer a matter of doubt. The leaves of ferns, reeds, and other plants, are frequently found between layers of shale or slaty clay, beautifully perfect, but converted into coal. And in many kinds of coal, by means of very thin sections, and by the 'employment of the microscope, the cells of a vegetable structure become visible; thus affording us a distinct proof that coal is really a vegetable substance, and produced by vegetable decay.

The coal plants 'flourished in the widely extended forests of the primeval world; and as they fell and decayed, they left their remains imbedded in sandstone and shales,³ 'accumulating in lakes and the deltas⁴ and estuaries of rivers, to become transformed into coal in the lapse of ages, by the united influences of heat and pressure.

The trunks of the trees, being covered with water, were kept from contact with the air, and gradually decayed, until they were converted into a blackish-brown substance resembling peat, but which still retained more or less of the fibrous structure of wood. The 'decomposed mass became gradually covered with a deposit of sediment, the great pressure of which, when accumulated into beds of clay or sand of some thickness, gave to this substance the hardness and density of a true mineral. It thus became stored up for future 'employment in the service of man.

The trees which grew in the swamps and forests of the coal period derived their carbonaceous⁵ substance from carbonic acid gas and water, existing in the soil and floating in invisible currents in the air. They 'imbibed the gas

by their fronds, leaves, and roots; and separating the solid carbon from the oxygen gas with which it was combined, they appropriated the former for the purposes of their nourishment and growth, and restored the latter to the



IDEAL VIEW OF A MARSHY FOREST OF THE COAL PERIOD.

atmosphere. But the plant can only decompose carbonic acid and water with the aid of the light and heat of the sun—the process ceases in the dark.

In helping the plant to appropriate and deposit carbon

in
h
o
b

ba
th
an
see
tro

dw
our
up
the
this
tak
boil
cal

“
us
year
pres
have
less

accu
ing.
appro
compe
decom
devel
dor in
econon
savin

¹ Wi
of Puc
speare's
ii, Scen
² Coa
British

ing the solid
as combined,
oses of their
atter to the



100.

se carbonic
heat of the
posit carbon

in its tissues, the sun parted with so much of its light and heat, which became latent⁶ in the vegetable. This long 'dormant light and heat are set free by the process of combustion.

When the Yule⁷ log is laid on the blazing hearth of the baron's hall, and the fagots are piled on the peasant's fire, they shed upon the 'radiant faces of the festive circle light and heat which were borrowed from the sun while the seed sprang into a sapling, and at length became a goodly tree, a century or two old.

But the coal glowing in the cheerful fires of our town dwellings, and diffusing light by means of the gas-pipes of our streets, is 'composed of vegetables in which are stored up, in another form, light and heat originally derived from the sunshine of distant ages. In the grate we 'liberate this ancient heat for our comfort; in the 'gasometer we take advantage of the light for our convenience; in our boilers and engines we convert the latent heat into mechanical force.⁸

"Wood fires," says a distinguished philosopher, "give us heat and light which have been got from the sun a few years ago. Our coal fires and gas lamps bring out, for our present comfort, heat and light of the primeval sun, which have lain 'dormant beneath seas and mountains for countless ages."

Sketches in Natural History—ELLIS'S Chemistry.

accu'mulating, gath'er-
ing.
appro'priated, adopt'ed.
composed', made up.
decomposed', decayed'.
devel'ops, evolves'.
dor'mant, sleep'ing.
econom'ical, wealth'-
saving.

employ'ment, use.
flour'ished, grew.
gasom'eter, gas-meas-
urer.
illu'minates, lights.
imbibed', drank in.
indus'trial, pertain'ing
to the arts.
lib'erate, set free.

locomotive, steam-car'-
riage.
op'ulence, wealth.
over-es'timated, exag-
gerated.
prosper'ity, success'.
proxim'ity, nearness.
ra'diant, glow'ing.
subm'erging, sink'ing.

¹ Will put a girdle, &c.—The boast of Puck, the gentle spirit in Shakespeare's *Midsummer-Night's Dream*, Act ii., Scene 1.

² Coal and iron.—Not only do the British Isles contain both coal and iron,

but the greatest iron mines occur in the neighbourhood of the most abundant coal measures, and also of the limestone which is so important in iron manufacture. The distribution of the coal fields in a country at once indicates the

seats of manufacturing industry. On the other hand, mineral wealth without coal makes the working of the minerals difficult and expensive. Thus the copper ore of Cornwall has to be sent to Swansea in Wales to be smelted.

³ Sandstone and shales.—The beds of coal are interposed between those of a yellow or reddish sandstone and those of a dark brown shale or slaty rock; and the term *coal measures* in geology includes all three.

⁴ Delta, a tract of land found at the mouth of some rivers; so called from its resemblance to the Greek letter *delta* (Δ).

⁵ Carbonaceous, consisting of carbon, which is the essential part of charcoal. [Lat. *carbo*, coal.]

⁶ Latent, concealed; inactive. The term here refers to the fact that the power of the sun's rays can be stored

up by vegetables for any length of time. When coal is burned, this stored power is developed in the active form of light and heat.

⁷ Yule log, the large log of wood formerly put on the hearth on Christmas eve, to form the basis of the fire. *Yule* was the general name for the Christmas festival among the Scandinavians. [Old Norse, *jól*, the feast.] In Old Eng. *Geola* was the winter solstice, and the months of December and January were called Fore-Yule and After-Yule respectively.

⁸ Mechanical force.—Thus George Stephenson said that his locomotives were driven by bottled sunbeams. This is the actual fact. The sunbeams leave, as it were, *unburned* waste products. These unburned bodies make up the tissues of the plants, and can be burned again for our use and comfort.

QUESTIONS.—Mention some of the great things done by means of coal. What other mineral is generally found near coal? Mention great cities which owe their importance to coal. What is the origin of coal? How is this proved? How have the coal plants been transformed into coal? Whence did they derive their carbonaceous properties? What are latent or dormant in coal? Whence were they derived? When do they again become active?

THE AIR-OCEAN.

ENVELOPING this solid globe of ours are two oceans—one partial, the other universal. There is the ocean of water, which has settled down into all the depressions of the Earth's surface, leaving dry above it all the high lands—as mountain-ranges, continents, and islands; and there is an ocean of air, which inwraps the whole in one transparent mantle. Through the bosom of that ocean, like fishes with their fins and whales with their flippers, birds and other winged creatures swim; whilst, like crabs and many shellfish, man and other mammalia¹ creep about at the bottom of this aerial sea.

The air-ocean, which everywhere surrounds the Earth, and feeds and nourishes it, is even more simple, more grand, and more majestic than the "world of waters"—more

varied and 'changeful in its moods of storm and calm, of ebb and flow, of brightness and gloom. The atmosphere is, indeed, a wonderful thing—a most perfect example of the 'economy of nature. 'Deprived of air, no animal would live, no plant would grow, no flame would burn, no light would be 'diffused. The air, too, is the sole medium of sound. Without it, mountains might fall, but it would be in perfect silence—neither whisper nor thunder would ever be heard.

The atmosphere is supposed to become inappreciable at the height of between forty and fifty miles from the Earth.

A philosopher of the East, with a richness of imagery truly Oriental, thus describes it :—" It surrounds us on all sides, yet we see it not; it presses on us with a load of fifteen pounds on every square inch of surface of our bodies, or from seventy to one hundred tons on us in all, yet we do not so much as feel its weight.² Softer than the softest down, more 'impalpable than the finest 'gossamer, it leaves the cobweb undisturbed, and scarcely stirs the slightest flower that feeds on the dew it supplies; yet it bears the fleets of nations on its wings around the world, and crushes the most 'refractory substances with its weight.

"When the air is in motion, its force is sufficient to level the most stately forests and stable buildings with the earth; to raise the waters of the ocean into ridges like mountains, and dash the strongest ships to pieces like toys. It warms and cools by turns the Earth, and the living creatures that inhabit it. It draws up vapours from the sea and the land, 'retains them dissolved in itself, or suspended in cisterns of clouds, and drops them down again, as rain or dew, when they are required. It bends the rays of the sun from their path, to give us the twilight of evening and of dawn; it disperses and refracts their various tints to 'beautify the approach and the retreat of the orb of day.

"But for the atmosphere, sunshine would fail us at once; and, on the other hand, at once 'remove us from midnight

darkness to the blaze of noon. We should have no twilight to soften and beautify the landscape, no clouds to shade us from the scorching heat; but the bald Earth, as it revolved on its axis, would turn its tanned and weakened front to the full and unmitigated³ rays of the lord of day. It affords the gas which vivifies and warms our frames, and receives into itself that which has been polluted by use and is thrown off as noxious. It feeds the flame of life exactly as it does that of the fire;—it is in both cases consumed, and affords the food of consumption; in both cases it becomes combined with charcoal, which requires it for combustion, and which is removed by it when this is over.”

“It is only the girdling, encircling air,” says another philosopher, “flowing above and around all, that makes the whole world kin.” The carbonic acid with which to-day our breathing fills the air, to-morrow seeks its way round the world. The date-trees that grow around the falls of the Nile will drink it in by their leaves; the cedars of Lebanon will take of it to add to their stature; the cocoa-nuts of Tahiti⁴ will grow rapidly upon it; and the palms and bananas of Japan will change it into flowers.

“The oxygen that we are breathing was distilled for us some short time ago by the magnolias⁵ of the Susquehanna,⁶ and the great trees that skirt the Orinoco and the Amazon;⁷—the giant rhododendrons⁸ of the Himalayah contributed to it, and the roses and myrtles of Cashmere, the cinnamon-trees of Ceylon, and the forest, older than the Flood, buried deep in the heart of Africa. The rain we see descending was thawed for us out of the icebergs which have watched the polar star for ages; and the lotus lilies⁹ have sucked up from the Nile, and exhaled as vapour, snows that rested on the summits of the Alps.

“The atmosphere, which forms the outer surface of the habitable world, is a vast reservoir, into which the supply of food designed for living creatures is thrown; or, in one word, it is itself the food, in its simple form, of all living

creatures. The animal grinds down the fibre and the tissue of the plant, and the nutritious store that has been laid up within its cells, and converts these into the substance of which its own organs are composed. The plant acquires the organs and nutritious store, thus yielded up as food to the animal, from the air surrounding it.

"But animals are furnished with the means of locomotion and of seizure: they can approach their food, and lay hold of and swallow it. Plants must wait till their food comes to them. No solid particles find access to their frames. The restless ambient air, which rushes past them, loaded¹⁰ with the carbon, the hydrogen, the oxygen, the water, everything they need in the shape of supplies, is constantly at hand to minister to their wants; not only to afford them food in due season, but in the shape and fashion in which alone it can avail them."

There is no employment more ennobling to man and his intellect than to trace the evidences of design and purpose in the Creator, which are visible in all parts of the creation. Hence, to him who studies the physical relations of earth, sea, and air, the atmosphere is something more than a shoreless ocean, at the bottom of which he creeps along.

It is an envelope or covering for dispersing light and heat over the surface of the Earth; it is a sewer,¹¹ into which, with every breath we draw, we cast vast quantities of dead animal matter; it is a laboratory for purification, in which that matter is recomposed and wrought again into wholesome and healthful shapes; it is a machine for pumping up all the rivers from the sea, and conveying the waters from their fountains in the ocean to their sources in the mountains; it is an inexhaustible magazine, marvelously adapted for benign and beneficent purposes.

MAURY.

am'bi-ent, surround'ing.
beau'tify, adorn'.
benign', kind'ly.

bréath'ing, inhál'ing.
change'ful, ac'kle.
depres'sions, cav'ities.

deprived', des'titute.
diffused', shed abroad'.
distilled', lib'rated.

econ'omy, systemat'ic
arrangement.
employ'ment, occupa-
tion.
ennob'ling, elevating.
envelop'ing, surround-
ing.
exhaled', breathed out.
gos'samer, film.

impal'pable, intan'gible.
inexhaust'ible, exhaust-
in'tellect, mind. [less.
lab'oratory, chemist's
room.
locomot'ion, chang'ing
man'tle, gar'ment. [place
min'ister, attend'.
nox'ious, hurt'ful.

nutri'tious, nour'ishing.
pollut'ed, poi'soned.
purifica'tion, cleansing.
refrac'tory, stub'born.
remove', transport'.
res'ervoir, magazine'.
retains', holds.
transpa'rent, clear.
viv'ifies, enlivens.

¹ Mamma'lia, animals that suckle
their young. [Lat. *mam'ma*, the breast.]

² We do not feel its weight—be-
cause its pressure is exerted equally in
every direction.

³ Unmit'igated, unreduced; not soft-
ened or lessened. [Lat. *un*, not; *mitigo*,
I make mild, from *mitis*, mild.]

⁴ Tahit'i, one of the Society Islands,
in the South Pacific Ocean. (See page
299.)

⁵ Magnolia, a species of flowering
tree (to which the tulip-tree belongs),
native of North America. [Called after
Magnol, a French botanist, who died in
1715.]

⁶ Susquehan'na, a river in the United
States, flowing into Chesapeake Bay.

⁷ Orino'co and Am'azon, great rivers
of South America.

⁸ Rhododen'dron, an evergreen shrub
with large rose-like flowers. [Gr. *rho-*
dodendron, rose-tree.]

⁹ Lotus lilies—herbs growing plen-
tifully in the Nile, and venerated by the
ancient Egyptians. Their fruit is gath-
ered by the poor, and used as food.

¹⁰ Loaded, &c.—Four-fifths of the
bulk of the atmosphere are nitrogen,
the remaining fifth being chiefly oxygen,
with a little carbon and watery vapour.

¹¹ Sew'er (*sū'er*), a drain.

QUESTIONS.—Name the two oceans which envelop the globe. What effects
would follow if the globe were deprived of air? With what weight does it press
upon our bodies? What is its force able to do when it is in motion? How does
twilight depend upon it? How does it "make the whole world kin"? Of what is
the atmosphere a vast reservoir? Wherein do plants differ from animals in
regard to food? How does the air minister to plants? Why may the atmos-
phere be compared to a sewer? Why to a laboratory? Why to a pumping-
machine?

UNWRITTEN HISTORY, AND HOW TO READ IT.

It cannot be discovered in what age of the world Britain
first became a scene of human habitation. There is nothing
in all history, no written record of any kind, to yield us any
information concerning the original possessors of the land.

But the history of the early Britons, though it was
never written, may be read. A curious history it is; and
the way in which the materials of it have been gathered
and put together is a fine example of the triumphs of
patient thought. The historian of other periods finds his
materials in books, in written records and documents.

The materials for the history of this period have been found on waste moors and in deep mosses, in caves and on hills, under ancient burial mounds and cairns,¹ by the margins of rivers and on the beds of drained lochs.

Here, for instance, is an ancient boat, found a few years since on the south bank of the Clyde, when excavations were being made for the purpose of enlarging the harbour of Glasgow. It is of oak, not planked or built, but hewn



out of the trunk of a single tree. The hollow has been made with fire, as the marks still show. Within it, when it was discovered, there lay an axe-head of stone.

Now, that fire-hollowed boat and stone axe tell their story as plainly as a printed book. The savage on the shores of the Pacific cuts a groove in the bark round the root of the tree of which he intends to form his canoe. Into this groove he puts burning embers till it is charred

IT.

is, nourishing.
poisoned.
ion, cleansing.
y, stubborn.
transport'.
magazine'.
olds.
ent, clear.
ni'vans.

r in the United
apeake Bay.
on, great rivers

vergreen shrub
thers. [Gr. rho-

growing plen-
nerated by the
r fruit is gath-
d as food.

fifths of the
are nitrogen,
chiefly oxygen,
atery vapour.
n.

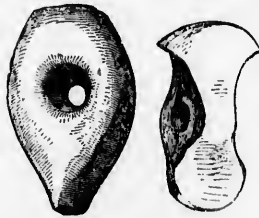
What effects
does it press
? How does
? Of what is
a animals in
y the atmos-
a pumping-

EAD IT.

d Britain
s nothing
ld us any
the land.
n it was
is; and
gathered
mplis of
finds his
cuments.

to some depth. Next he deepens the groove by hewing out the charred wood with his stone hatchet. Then he applies the fire again; and so on, until, by the alternate use of fire and axe, the tree is brought to the ground. By the same process it is hollowed out, and shaped into a canoe. The ancient boat-maker of the Clyde had used exactly such a method of forming his little vessel. The stone axe, brought to light after untold ages, bears mute but expressive witness that its owner was a savage.

The axe with which the ancient Briton hollowed his canoe, served him also as a weapon in battle. Under a large cairn, on a moor in the south of Scotland, a stone coffin of very rude workmanship was found. It contained the skeleton of a man of uncommon size. One of the



STONE AXES.

arms had been almost severed from the shoulder. A fragment of very hard stone was sticking in the shattered bone. That blow had been struck with a stone axe. When the victor, after the fight, looked at his bloody weapon, he saw that a splinter had broken from its edge. Thousands of years passed, the cairn of the dead was opened, and that splinter was found in the bone of the once mighty arm which the axe had all but hewn away. What a curious tale to be told by a single splinter of stone!

On yonder lea field the ploughman turns over the grassy sward. At the furrow's end, as he breathes his horses for a moment and looks at his work, his eye is caught by some object sticking in the upturned mould. He picks it up. It is a barbed arrow-head, neatly chipped out of yellow flint. How came it there? It is no elf-arrow, shot by the fairies. It was once, when tied to a reed with a sinew or a strip of skin, an arrow in the quiver of an ancient British savage hunting the deer.

T
fou
trib
kni
vari
wea
othe
T
were
weap
H
state
over
to co
'skel
and p
tions
No
to the
path.
fore b
in the
and p
grave,
his ran
ably p
had th
Indian
In a
country
progres
elemen
tribes h
The i
history
instead

There are spots where the flint arrow-heads have been found in such numbers as to show that the barbarian tribes had met there in battle. Spear-heads, too, and knives of flint, have been dug up from time to time in various parts. The ancient race who employed such weapons must have existed before the use of iron, or any other metal, was known.

That period when the rude inhabitants of a country were ignorant of metals, and formed their tools and weapons of stone, is called the *Stone Period*.

Had this ancient race any idea of religion and a future state? We shall see. Here is an earthen mound, heaped over the grave of some chief. When dug into, it is found to contain a rude stone coffin. In the coffin with the skeleton are flint arrow-heads, a spear-head, also of flint, and perhaps the stone head of a battle-axe, the wooden portions of these weapons having long since mouldered away.

Now we know that the savage expects to go after death to the happy hunting-grounds, and to follow again the war-path. His implements of war and the chase are therefore buried with him, that he may start up fully equipped in the new state of being. His favourite horse or dog, and perhaps his favourite attendants, are laid beside his grave, that at his rising he may appear in a manner fitting his rank. The contents of the burial-mound unmistakably proclaim that the men of these long-forgotten ages had the same rude idea of a future state which the Red Indian² still has.

In all probability, this ancient race occupied the country, with unchanging habits and with little or no progress, for many centuries. At length, however, the elements of a great change were introduced: the savage tribes became acquainted with the use of metals.

The introduction of metals is the first great stage in the history of civilization. Armed with an axe of metal, instead of the old axe of stone, the savage can go into the

forest and cut down trees at will. He can split them, and hew them into planks. He needs not now to pile up overlapping blocks of stone to roof in his dark, underground abode. He can make a far more convenient dwelling of rough, axe-hewn boards.

He needs not now to hollow out a log-canoe, for his new tools have given him the power of building boats of plank. He can now increase the size of his little vessel, and thus make further and bolder ventures out to sea. The trees nearest his village fall first by his axe; but, year by year, he cuts his way deeper into the forest. The clearings extend, and the soil, which will be corn-land by-and-by, is laid open. He now can form a variety of tools suited to a variety of purposes. New wants are created with the increased facility of meeting them. In a word, with the introduction of metal among a savage race, stationary till then, the march of improvement has begun.

The discovery of copper, silver, and gold, naturally takes place before the discovery of iron. The smelting of iron is an art much too difficult for the savage to master, till he has been long familiar with the working of the softer and easier metals. Accordingly, we find that the earliest metallic implements used in Britain were not of iron, but of bronze. Copper and tin are soft metals; but if a portion of tin is mixed with copper, the result is bronze, a metal harder than either of the two of which it is composed. Tools and weapons made of this metal are a great advance upon those made of stone or flint. Bronze, however, is but a poor substitute for iron and steel, and we may be very sure that the people who made use of bronze tools knew nothing of iron.

That period during which the ancient inhabitants of a country, ignorant as yet of iron, made use of bronze tools and weapons, is called the *Bronze Period*.³

Let us again suppose ourselves present at the opening of an ancient British tomb. It is under a cairn heaped on

the
The
Fro
been
cups
swo
besi
glitt
gold
T
the
love
laid
and
No
drink
is ver
dried
on a
ornan
progr
older
Let
honou
and la
over
Period
'antici
of the
broken
expecte
some b
'acquir
accompl
plet'ed.
acquaint
acquired
(411)

the top of a hill which overlooks a wide tract of moorland. The stone coffin is very short—not over four feet in length. From the position of the bones, the body has 'evidently been placed in a sitting or folded 'posture. There are cups or bowls of pottery, one or more. There is a bronze sword, but it has been broken in two before it was laid beside its owner in his long rest. And what is that which glitters among the warrior's dust? It is an ornament of gold—a bracelet or a collar—which he had worn.

The 'skeleton of a dog is found beside the coffin; for the warrior knew hunting-craft by lake and wood, and loved to pursue his game with hound and bow. So they laid his four-footed favourite, which had licked his hand and followed his halloo, in his long home beside him.

Now 'observe the cup or bowl, which has 'contained drink or food—friendship's last gift to the dead. This cup is very different from the unshapely hand-made and sundried pottery of the Stone Period. It has been rounded on a wheel. It is made of fine baked clay, and is neatly ornamented with a simple 'pattern. There has been progress, then, in the 'mechanical arts since the ruder and older time.

Let the broken sword next tell its story. The last honour paid to the buried warrior was to break his sword and lay it beside him, ere his companions-in-arms piled over him the memorial cairn. The warrior of the Stone Period was buried with axe, lance, and bow, in 'barbarian 'anticipation of warfare beyond the grave; but the warrior of the Bronze Period was laid in his narrow bed with his broken sword, in token of warfare 'accomplished and of expected rest. This speaks in no 'obscure language of some better and higher ideas which this ancient race had 'acquired.

J. MACKENZIE.

accomplished, com- pleted.	alter'nate, by turns.	barba'rian, sav'age.
acquaint'ed, famill'iar.	anticipa'tion, expecta- tion.	civiliza'tion, refine'ment.
acquired', obtained'.	attend'ants, fol'lowers.	contained', held.
(411)		conve'nient, suit'able.

cu'rious, strange.	improve'ment, advance'ment.	quiv'er, ar'row-case.
discov'ered, ascertained'.	informa'tion, knowl'edge	shat'tered, bro'ken.
doc'uments, pa'pers.	mechani'cal, manufac'turing.	skele'ton, bones of the body.
employ'ed, used.	mould'ered, wast'ed.	spli'n'ter, frag'ment.
equip'ped, furn'ished	obscure', dark.	sta'tionary, stand'ing still.
evi'dently, appa'rently.	observe', no'tice.	sub'stitute, exchange'.
excava'tions, cut'tings.	pat'tern, device'. [man.]	uncom'mon, unu'sual.
expres'sive, emphatic.	plough'man, hus'band-	unmistak'ably, clear'ly
facili'ty, ease.	pos'ture, position.	work'manship, execu'tion.
hollow'ed, scooped.	probabili'ty, like'lihood.	
im'plements, in'struments.		

¹ Cairn, a heap of stones piled over a tomb, or on the scene of some memorable event.

² Red Indian.—The original inhabitants of America were called Indians, because when Columbus discovered the islands belonging to the Western Continent he believed that he had reached the East Indies. (See p. 297.) They

are called Red, from their red or copper-coloured skins.

³ The Bronze Period.—The ancient Britons probably learned the art of working in metals from the Tyrians and Carthaginians, who are known to have visited the coast of Cornwall, for supplies of tin, many years before the Christian era.

QUESTIONS.—Where are the materials for unwritten history found? How had the ancient boat found near Glasgow been hollowed out? What was found within it? For what purpose had the axe been used? Where is the same plan followed still? To what, then, does the axe bear witness? For what other purpose did the axe serve the ancient Briton? How can you show this? What other stone implements have been found? What is that period of history called? What shows that the ancient Britons believed in a future state? What is the first great stage in the history of civilization? What work does the introduction of metals enable the savage to improve? What metals are first discovered? Why? What is the period therefore called? How is bronze made? What is its character, compared with copper and tin? What are often found within coffins of the Bronze Period? What difference is observed in the cup, as compared with that of the Stone Period? What story does the broken sword tell?

CHOICE QUOTATIONS.

(To be written from memory.)

TRUE NOBILITY.

HOWE'ER it be, it seems to me
 'Tis only noble to be good:
 Kind hearts are more than coronets,
 And simple faith than Norman blood.

TENNYSON

FEAR GOD.

COUNT life a stage upon thy way,
 And follow conscience, come what may;
 Alike with heaven and earth sincere,
 With hand and brow and bosom clear;
 "Fear God"—and know no other fear.

HUMAN LIFE.

WE live in deeds, not years; in thoughts, not breaths;
 In feelings, not in figures on a dial.
 We should count time by heart-throbs. He most lives
 Who thinks most, feels the noblest, acts the best.

P. J. BAILEY.

CONSCIENCE.

WHAT stronger breastplate than a heart untainted?
 Thrice is he armed, that hath his quarrel just;
 And he but naked, though locked up in steel,
 Whose conscience with injustice is corrupted.

SHAKESPEARE.

HUMAN LIFE.

LIVE while you live, the epicure would say,
 And seize the pleasures of the present day:
 Live while you live, the sacred preacher cries,
 And give to God each moment as it flies!
 Lord, in my views let both united be—
 I live in pleasure, when I live to thee!

DODDRIDGE.

GOOD FOR EVIL.

A MORE glorious victory cannot be gained over another man than this, that when the injury began on his part, the kindness should begin on ours.—TILLOTSON.

LIFE.

HE lives long that lives well; and time mis-spent is not lived, but lost.—FULLER.

CONTENT.

MY crown is in my heart, not on my head;
Not decked with diamonds and Indian stones,
Nor to be seen: my crown is called Content;
A crown it is that seldom kings enjoy.

SHAKESPEARE.

DOING GOOD.

HE that does good to another man, does also good to himself; not only in the consequence, but in the very act of doing it: for the consciousness of well-doing is an ample reward.—SENECA.

H O P E.

WHITE as a white sail on a dusky sea,
When half the horizon's clouded and half free,
Fluttering between the dun wave and the sky,
Is hope's last gleam in man's extremity.

BYRON.

T R U T H.

TRUTH is as impossible to be soiled by any outward touch as the sun-beam.—MILTON.

PLEASURES.

PLEASURES are like poppies spread;
You seize the flower, its bloom is shed:
Or like the snow-fall in the river;
A moment white, then melts for ever.

BURNS.

— SLOTT
riseth
night
him.—

REIGN OF LAW.

THE very law which moulds a tear,
And bids it trickle from its source—
That law preserves the Earth a sphere,
And guides the planets in their course!

ROGERS.

A TIDE IN HUMAN AFFAIRS.

THERE is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune;
Omitted, all the voyage of their life
Is bound in shallows, and in miseries:
And we must take the current when it serves,
Or lose our ventures.

SHAKESPEARE.

INDUSTRY.

SLOTH makes all things difficult, but Industry all easy; and he that riseth late must trot all day, and shall scarce overtake his business at night; while Laziness travels so slowly, that Poverty soon overtakes him.—FRANKLIN.

T I M E.

STILL on it creeps,
Each little moment at another's heels,
Till hours, days, years and ages are made up
Of such small parts as these; and men look back,
Worn and bewildered, wondering how it is.
Thou travellest like a ship in the wide ocean,
Which hath no bounding shore to mark its progress.

JOANNA BAILLIE.

THE BLESSINGS OF A LOW STATION.

'Tis better to be lowly born,
And range with humble livers in content,
Than to be perk'd up in glistening grief,
And wear a golden sorrow.

SHAKESPEARE.

CHILDHOOD.

THE tear down childhood's cheek that flows
Is like the dew-drop on the rose;
When next the summer breeze comes by,
And waves the bush, the flower is dry.

SCOTT.

CHOICE QUOTATIONS.

CHARACTER.

GOOD name, in man and woman,
Is the immediate jewel of their souls.
Who steals my purse, steals trash; 'tis something, nothing;
'Twas mine, 'tis his, and has been slave to thousands;
But he that filches from me my good name,
Robs me of that which not enriches him,
And makes me poor indeed.

SHAKESPEARE.

HUMAN LIFE.

MAN's life's a book of history;
The leaves thereof are days;
The letters, mercies closely joined;
The title is God's praise.

JOHN MASSON.

PRUDENCE.

WHO buys a minute's mirth, to wait a week?
Or sells Eternity to get a toy?
For one sweet grape, who will the vine destroy?
Or what fond beggar, but to touch the crown,
Would with the sceptre straight be stricken down?

SHAKESPEARE.

IDLENESS.

ABSENCE of occupation is not rest;
A mind quite vacant is a mind distressed.

COWPER.

T I M E.

TIME's glory is to calm contending kings;
To unmask Falsehood, and bring Truth to light;
To stamp the seal of Time on aged things;
To wake the morn, and sentinel the night;
To wrong the wronger, till he render right;
To ruate proud buildings with his hours,
And smear with dust their glittering golden towers;
To fill with worms holes stately monuments;
To feed Oblivion with decay of things;
To blot old books, and alter their contents;
To pluck the quills from ancient ravens' wings;
To dry the old oak's sap, and cherish springs;
To spoil antiquities of hammered steel,
And turn the giddy round of Fortune's wheel.

SHAKESPEARE.

CONSCIENCE.

BE fearful only of thyself, and stand in awe of none more than of thine own conscience. There is in every man a severe censor of his manners; and he that reverences this judge, will seldom do anything he need repent of.—FULLER.

PERFECTION NEEDS NO ADDITION.

To gild refin'd gold, to paint the lily,
To throw a perfume on the violet,
To smooth the ice, or add another hue
Unto the rainbow, or with taper-light
To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,
Is wasteful and ridiculous excess. SHAKESPEARE.

IDLENESS.

I WOULD not waste my spring of youth
In idle dalliance: I would plant rich seeds,
To blossom in my manhood, and bear fruit
When I am old. HILLHOUSE.

FALSEHOOD.

LET falsehood be a stranger to thy lips.
Shame on the policy that first began
To tamper with the heart to hide its thoughts!
And double shame on that inglorious tongue,
That sold its honesty and told a lie! HAVARD.

CONSCIENCE.

No man ever offended his own conscience, but first or last it was avenged upon him for it.—SOUTH.

SUBMISSION TO HEAVEN OUR DUTY.

IN common worldly things, 'tis called ungrateful
With dull unwillingness to repay a debt,
Which with a bounteous hand was kindly lent;
Much more to be thus opposite to Heaven,
For it requires the royal debt it lent you. SHAKESPEARE.

CHOICE QUOTATIONS.

THE CARES OF GREATNESS.

PRINCES have but their titles for their glories,—
 An outward honour for an inward toil :
 And, for unfelt imaginations,
 They often feel a world of restless cares :
 So that between their titles and low name
 There's nothing differs but the outward fame.

SHAKESPEARE.

CONSCIENCE.

HE that has light within his own clear breast,
 May sit i' th' centre, and enjoy bright day :
 But he that hides a dark soul, and foul thoughts,
 Benighted walks under the mid-day sun ;—
 Himself is his own dungeon.

MILTON.

SELF-RESPECT.

To thine ownself be true ;
 And it must follow, as the night the day,
 Thou canst not then be false to any man.

SHAKESPEARE.

MERCY.

THE quality of mercy is not strained ;
 It droppeth, as the gentle rain from heaven
 Upon the place beneath : it is twice blessed ;
 It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes.
 'Tis mightiest in the mightiest : it becomes
 The thronèd monarch better than his crown ;
 His sceptre shows the force of temporal power, —
 The attribute to awe and majesty,
 Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings, —
 But mercy is above this sceptred sway ;
 It is enthronèd in the hearts of kings,
 It is an attribute to God himself ;
 And earthly power doth then show likest God's
 When mercy seasons justice.

SHAKESPEARE.

D
 foun
 N
 of E
 fath
 when
 him.
 878,
 plans
 self
 901,
 CH
 bours
 and c
 and a
¹ Al
 crown
 fourth
 tion o
 had de
² Th
 coasts

DES
 the ar
 NA
 Trave

LIVES OF GREAT MEN.

OUTLINES FOR ORAL TEACHING AND FOR COMPOSITION
EXERCISES.

Lives of great men all remind us
We can make our lives sublime;
And, departing, leave behind us
Footprints on the sands of time. — LONGFELLOW

ALFRED THE GREAT.

DESCRIPTION.—The champion of the English against the Danes, and founder of regular government in England.

NARRATIVE.—849 A.D., Born at Wantage in Berkshire; fourth son of Ethelwolf of Wessex. 854, His father takes him to Rome. 857, His father dies. Alfred's three elder brothers rule in succession till 871, when Alfred comes to the throne.¹ The Danes make head against him.² 877, Alfred disbands his troops, and retires to Athelney.³ 878, Enters the Danish camp disguised as a harper, and learns their plans; defeats them at Ethandune;⁴ recovers London; devotes himself to improving his kingdom. 896, Repels a new Danish invasion. 901, Dies. (*Æt.* 52.)

CHARACTER.—A wise and thoughtful prince; systematic in his labours, giving one-third of his time to God, one-third to his subjects, and one-third to rest and recreation; a skilful general; a learned man, and a patron of learning.

¹ Alfred is said to have accepted the crown very unwillingly. Being the fourth son, he had had little expectation of ever reaching the throne, and had devoted himself to study.

² The Danes began to ravage the coasts of England in 787. They had

made great progress during the reigns of Alfred's brothers; and when he came to the throne the kingdom was sadly distracted by them.

³ A small island, at the junction of the Tone and the Parret, in Somersetshire.

⁴ A hill in Somersetshire.

JOHN GUTTENBERG.

DESCRIPTION.—The inventor of cut metal types,¹ and improver of the art of printing.

NARRATIVE.—Born at Mentz,² 1400; of an aristocratic family. Travels in Holland; at Haarlem³ meets Laurence Coster, who dis-

closes to him his plan of printing from wooden types, and his experiments with metal types. Guttenberg at once resolves to perfect the latter idea; retires to Strasburg;⁴ works in the ruins of an old monastery, professedly as a jeweller and metal-worker. His assistants,⁵ jealous of his secret labours, stir up the authorities against him; his goods are forfeited, and he has to leave Strasburg. He returns to Mentz, and enters into partnership with John Fust and Peter Schoeffer. The transcribers of manuscripts in the town form a league against the printers. Fust and Schoeffer⁶ betray and sacrifice Guttenberg, who is driven out of Mentz. He wanders about in poverty and neglect. The Elector of Nassau befriends him. He sets up a printing-press at Wiesbaden,⁷ and prints a number of works; lives peaceably till his death, in 1468. (*Æt.* 68.)

CHARACTER.—A pious man, and a scholar; full of enthusiasm; ingenious and persevering; one of the greatest of the world's benefactors.

¹ Printing from movable wooden types is said to have been invented by Laurence Coster in 1438.

² Better known by its French name Mayence, at the confluence of the Main and the Rhine. A splendid monument in bronze, to the memory of Guttenberg, was erected there in 1837.

³ A town in North Holland, eleven miles west of Amsterdam. A statue of Coster stands in the market-place.

⁴ A fortified town in Alsace, near the left bank of the Rhine, famous for its vast cathedral. Here Schoeffer, afterwards referred to, was born.

⁵ They afterwards became successful printers, and claimed the credit of his invention.

⁶ They became rich through the invention of Guttenberg; and Schoeffer tried to rob him of the credit of it.

⁷ The capital of Nassau.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

DESCRIPTION.—The discoverer of the New World.

NARRATIVE.—1445, Born at Genoa; 1470, settles at Lisbon; trades to the African coast, the Azores, &c. 1480, Publishes his idea of a continent across the Atlantic. Genoa and Portugal refuse him help. Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain at length give him aid. His three vessels sail from Palos,¹ August 3, 1492. His men threaten to mutiny on the voyage; land is discovered, October 12. He lands on San Salvador. Returns to Spain, January 1493. Makes several other voyages, in the course of which he discovers Jamaica and the mainland of South America,² 1498. His enemies plot against him; and in 1500 he is sent from Cuba to Spain in chains³ as a criminal. 1504, On his return from his last voyage he finds Isabella dying, and the king estranged. 1506, Dies at Valladolid, poor and neglected. (*Æt.* 61.)

CHARACTER.—Possessed great persistence and force of will. Not only a daring adventurer, but a discoverer in the highest sense; for his

labor
upon

¹ A
Anda
is the
Mogu
here I
prior,
Isabe
lumb
² H

DE

prom

NA

Colle

Hum

beth.

a fail

Help

Main

is rep

of the

seque

ruine,

appre

out a

CH

honou

and el

¹ Th

very r

ing a

place

whethe

DES

NA

is a gl

labours, and those of all the explorers whom he stimulated, rested upon a theory which he worked out in his mind.

¹ A port of Spain (south-west coast of Andalusia), near Huelva. Near Palos is the old Franciscan monastery of Moguer. Columbus, craving charity here in 1484, was received kindly by the prior, through whose influence Queen Isabella was induced to promote Columbus's schemes.

² Humboldt has proved incontestably that Amerigo Vespucci (after whom America was named) did not discover the northern coast of South America till 1499; so that Columbus was the discoverer, not only of the West Indies, but also of the Southern Continent.

³ Columbus retained his fetters till his death, and gave orders that they should be buried with him.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

DESCRIPTION.—A celebrated navigator and author; one of the earliest promoters of colonization.

NARRATIVE.—1552, Born at Hayes, in Devon. 1568, Enters Oriel College, Oxford. 1576, Sails to America with his brother-in-law, Sir Humphrey Gilbert; returns, 1579. 1580, Is introduced to Queen Elizabeth. ¹ 1584, Fits out an expedition to colonize Virginia, which proves a failure; brings the tobacco-plant and the potato from America. 1588, Helps to defeat the Spanish Armada. ² 1603, Is tried for taking part in the Main Plot, to place Arabella Stuart on the throne, and is condemned; is reprieved, but confined in the Tower, where he writes his *History of the World* (published 1614) and other works. 1616, Is released in consequence of his account of rich mines in Guiana; sails thither; finds no mine, but burns the Spanish town of St. Thomas. On his return, he is apprehended on the complaint of the Spanish Ambassador, and without a new trial is beheaded on his former sentence (1618). (Æt. 66.)

CHARACTER.—Of an enterprising and chivalrous spirit; of stainless honour and integrity; a man of fine poetical taste; as a writer, classical and elevated, without pedantry or affectation.

¹ The manner of his introduction was very romantic. The queen, while taking a walk, was stopped by a muddy place in the footpath. She hesitated whether to proceed or not, when Raleigh, taking off his new plush cloak, spread it on the ground. The act of gallantry did not go unrewarded.

² A great fleet, fitted out by Phillip II. of Spain, and sent to invade England.

WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE.

DESCRIPTION.—The world's greatest dramatic poet.

NARRATIVE.—1564, Born at Stratford-on-Avon, ¹ where his father is a glover, or wool-comber. 1578, Leaves school and joins his father's

business, in his fourteenth year. 1582, Marries in his eighteenth year. 1586, Removes to London, and joins the Blackfriars Theatre as actor and play-wright.² Remains in London acting³ and writing plays,⁴ till 1613, when he returns to Stratford, where he has become the owner of land and houses. 1616, Dies at Stratford. (*Æt.* 52.)

CHARACTER.—Of his personal character and life scarcely anything is known; but his works show him to have been, in point of width and depth of knowledge—especially knowledge of human nature in all its phases—and in respect of poetical power and inventive skill, the greatest author the world has ever seen.

¹ In Warwickshire.

² A play-wright is an adapter of plays for the stage, and a remodeller of old plays.

³ After 1595, he acted also at the Globe Theatre, then newly opened as a summer theatre. He is last mentioned as an actor in 1603. Then he seems also to have been one of the proprietors of the theatre.

⁴ Besides a large collection of *Sonnets* and other poems, he wrote in twenty-five years (1586–1611) at least thirty-six original plays, including such masterpieces as *Hamlet*, *Macbeth*, *King Lear*, *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, *Romeo and Juliet*, and *The Tempest*. The first collected edition of his plays was published in 1623, seven years after his death.

JOHN MILTON.

DESCRIPTION.—The greatest English epic poet.

NARRATIVE.—1608, Born at London; educated at St. Paul's School, and at Cambridge. 1632–37, Continues his studies for five years at his father's country house;¹ writes *L'Allegro* and *Il Penseroso*, and other poems. 1638, Travels in France and Italy. 1639, Undertakes the education of his nephews. 1642, On the outbreak of the differences between the King and the Parliament, he writes pamphlets on the popular side. 1649, He is appointed Foreign Secretary to the Commonwealth; defends the execution of Charles I. 1654, Loses his eye-sight. 1660, At the Restoration, he is included in the Act of Indemnity,² but retires into obscurity; writes *Paradise Lost*,³ which is published in 1667. 1671, *Paradise Regained* is published. 1674, Milton dies at London. (*Æt.* 66.)

CHARACTER.—A great scholar; a sublime poet; an earnest champion of civil and religious liberty, and of the freedom of the press. In religion he was a strict Puritan, and was a man of sincere and pious mind.

¹ At Horton in Buckinghamshire.

² Pardoning those who had taken part against the late king, Charles I. At first Milton was excluded from the indemnity, and the works in which he had attacked the late king's memory were publicly burned by the hangman;

but through the influence of Sir William Davenant, the poet, the pardon was at length extended to Milton.

³ Milton received £5 for the first edition; another £5 for the second; and after his death, his widow resigned her claim to it for £8!

DI
N.
Russ
powe
arts
and
Char
takes
Build
a sec
Fran
myst
ment
CH
ance;
¹ W
Archb
only
resolv
both t

DES
NAR
the E
tion, h
takes
Fren
secre
at Pla
found
land h
having
but he
CHA
ment;
¹ Abo
of Mad
² The
name w
³ In
Calcutt

PETER THE GREAT.

DESCRIPTION.—Founder of the greatness of Russia.

NARRATIVE.—1672, Born at Moscow. 1689, Becomes sole ruler of Russia. 1696, Takes Azof from the Tartars—the beginning of Russia's power in the South.¹ 1697, Travels in Europe to gain knowledge in the arts and sciences; spends some time as a ship-wright in Amsterdam, and in the English dockyards. 1700, Begins his great struggle with Charles XII. of Sweden;² from whom, though at first unsuccessful, he takes Livonia, Finland, &c., thus reaching the shores of the Baltic. Builds St. Petersburg, and makes it his capital in 1711. 1716, Makes a second tour of Europe, visiting Denmark, Germany, Holland, and France. 1718, His son Alexis is condemned for conspiracy, and dies mysteriously in prison. Peter devotes himself to the internal improvement of his kingdom. 1725, Dies. (Æt. 53.)

CHARACTER.—Savage and coarse in conduct; addicted to intemperance; a powerful ruler of men; is called "The father of his country."

¹ When Peter came to the throne, Archangel, on the White Sea, was the only haven Russia possessed. Peter resolved that Russia should be extended both to the Baltic and to the Black Sea.

² He defeated Charles decisively at Pultowa in 1709. Charles fled to Turkey, and did not return to Sweden till 1714. He was killed in 1718 while attempting to conquer Norway.

ROBERT, LORD CLIVE.

DESCRIPTION.—The founder of the British Empire in India.

NARRATIVE.—1725, Born in Shropshire. 1743, Begins life as a clerk in the East India Company's service. 1747, Disgusted with that occupation, he enters the army; distinguishes himself against the French; 1751, takes Arcot¹ with 500 men, and defends it with 300 against 10,000; the French are everywhere repulsed, and the supremacy of the English is secured. 1757, His next great exploit is to defeat the Nabob² of Bengal at Plassey,³ which avenged the Black Hole of Calcutta,⁴ and laid the foundation of the British Empire in India. 1759, On his return to England he is made a peer. 1773, He is charged by the House of Commons with having abused his power, to enrich himself; he is honourably acquitted; but he feels the sting so deeply that he kills himself in 1774. (Æt. 49.)

CHARACTER.—A "heaven-born general;" great capacity for government; very daring; often unscrupulous and cruel.

¹ About seventy-five miles south-west of Madras.

² The native prince of Bengal. His name was Sujah-ad-Dowlah.

³ In Bengal, eighty miles north of Calcutta.

⁴ When the nabob captured Calcutta in 1756, he cast one hundred and forty-six English prisoners into a small dark cellar one afternoon. When the door was opened next morning, only twenty-three came out alive.

CAPTAIN COOK.

DESCRIPTION.—One of England's most famous navigators.

NARRATIVE.—1728, Born in Yorkshire; begins life as a shoemaker, but while still a boy he goes to sea; he serves seven years in the coal trade. 1755, Enters the navy; 1759, takes part in the reduction of Quebec by Wolfe; is engaged to make surveys and charts of the North American coasts. He afterwards takes part in several scientific and exploring expeditions to Polynesia,¹ Australia,² New Zealand; discovers the Society Islands³ in 1769. 1771, His journals are published on his return to England. 1776, Sails to search for a north-west passage; 1778, sails southward to winter at the Sandwich Islands; 1779, he is killed at Owhyhee⁴ in a quarrel with the natives. (Æt. 51.)

CHARACTER.—A scientific as well as a practical seaman; as a commander, cool, wary, and ready-witted; a strict disciplinarian, but a kind-hearted man.

¹ The name given to the vast archipelago in the Pacific Ocean. *Polynesia* comes from two Greek words, and means "many islands."

² Cook proved Australia to be an island distinct from New Guinea. He called it New South Wales, and took

possession of it in the name of Great Britain.

³ So called by Cook in honour of the Royal Society of London, by whose request his expedition was undertaken.

⁴ The largest of the Sandwich Islands, a group in the North Pacific.

HORATIO NELSON.

DESCRIPTION.—England's greatest sailor.

NARRATIVE.—1758, Born in Norfolk; 1770, taken to sea by his uncle in his twelfth year; 1773, sails in the expedition to discover a north-west passage. 1793, The French war having broken out, Nelson sails to the Mediterranean as commander of the *Agamemnon*; 1794, loses his right eye at Calvi,¹ and his right arm at Santa Cruz² in 1798. Shatters the naval power of France and her allies by such victories as St. Vincent³ (1797), the Nile⁴ (1798), Copenhagen⁵ (1801), and Trafalgar⁶ (1805), where he was killed. (Æt. 47.) He had been made a baron in 1798, and a viscount in 1801.

CHARACTER.—Dauntless courage and determination; strong sense of duty. He made England mistress of the seas.

¹ On the island of Corsica.

² In the Azores, islands to the west of Spain.

³ Fought against the Spaniards off Cape St. Vincent, south-west of Portugal.

⁴ He had followed the French fleet to

Egypt, and destroyed thirteen out of seventeen ships.

⁵ By this victory he broke up the northern league (Denmark, Russia, and Sweden), intended to injure British commerce.

⁶ On the south-west coast of Spain.

GEORGE WASHINGTON.

DESCRIPTION.—The founder of the independence of the United States.

NARRATIVE.—1732, Born in Virginia; 1751, first military command as major of Virginian militia; 1753, defeats a detachment of French, and is thanked by the House of Burgesses; 1758, retires from military service and becomes a senator; 1775, takes command of the American Army in the War of Independence; conducts the war with consummate skill; 1783, on the conclusion of peace, he retires into private life; 1789, is elected as first President of the United States; 1793, is re-elected; 1797, retires to his estate at Mount Vernon, where he dies in 1799. (*Æt.* 67.)

CHARACTER.—Possessed of a powerful mind and sound judgment; combined bravery with prudence; of unblemished purity and integrity; in its combination of greatness with goodness, his character has scarcely an equal in history.

NAPOLEON BUONAPARTE.

DESCRIPTION.—The greatest military genius of modern times.

NARRATIVE.—1769, Born at Ajaccio in Corsica; educated for the army. 1793, Is appointed to a command of artillery before Toulon,¹ and expels the English. 1796, Takes the command in Italy; defeats the Austrians and Italians, and gains territory for France. 1798, The French Directory, jealous of his popularity, sends him to Egypt; 1799, he returns unexpectedly to Paris, overthrows the Directory, and is made First Consul. 1804, Becomes Emperor of the French; 1805, vanquishes the Russians and Austrians at Austerlitz,² and the Prussians at Jena³ in 1806. 1808, Subdues Spain, and places his brother Joseph on the throne: this leads to the Peninsular War, in which, after five campaigns, Wellington drives the French out of Spain, 1813. 1812, Napoleon undertakes his great Russian expedition: forced to retreat from Moscow in winter, he loses nearly the whole of his army. 1814, He abdicates, and retires to Elba;⁴ but in less than a year he returns; 1815, is defeated by Wellington and Blucher at Waterloo;⁵ surrenders to the English; is banished to St. Helena;⁶ 1821, dies there. (*Æt.* 52.)

CHARACTER.—Brilliant in devising original plans; heedless of human life; very ambitious, vain, and cruel. For seventeen years he continued to disturb the peace of Europe.

¹ A great naval station on the south of France.

² In Moravia (Austria), fourteen miles south-east of Brunn.

³ In Saxe-Weimar (Germany), twelve miles south-east of Weimar.

⁴ A small island between the north of Corsica and Italy.

⁵ In Belgium, ten miles south of Brussels.

⁶ Upwards of one thousand miles west of the coast of Lower Guinea (Africa).

SIR WALTER SCOTT.

DESCRIPTION.—The greatest of romantic novelists.

NARRATIVE.—1771, Born at Edinburgh; he is bred as a lawyer with his father. 1793, Begins to take down anecdotes and ballads during his visits to the south of Scotland; 1796, publishes a translation of a German ballad; 1799, is appointed Sheriff of Selkirkshire, and devotes his leisure to literature. 1805, His first poetical romance, *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*, is published. 1811, He purchases Abbotsford. 1814, *Waverley*, the first of his novels, appears. 1826, His printer and his publisher fail, and Scott is £130,000 in debt; resolves to clear off his debt by writing. 1831, His health gives way; he is struck down by paralysis; travels abroad. 1832, Reaches home to die. (Æt. 61.)

CHARACTER.—The most famous, as well as the most voluminous, writer of his age. He had acquired vast stores of antiquarian and historical knowledge, and he had wonderful facility in turning them to account in his works of fiction. A great master of character-drawing; possessed a rich vein of humour: in private life, irreproachable; in his family, wise and affectionate. The heroic resolution with which he set himself to write off his large debt has never been surpassed.

WELLINGTON.

(ARTHUR WELLESLEY.)

DESCRIPTION.—The greatest British soldier of modern times.

NARRATIVE.—1769, Born in Ireland; third son of the Earl of Mornington; is educated at Eton: 1787, enters the army as ensign: 1797, takes a leading part in the war in the Carnatic: 1803, gains the great victory of Assaye: 1807, enters Parliament, and becomes Secretary for Ireland: 1809, begins the Peninsular War, in which he deals a fatal blow to French power in Spain: 1815, attends the congress of European Powers at Vienna; defeats Napoleon signally at Waterloo: 1822, enters on his career as a statesman; becomes Prime Minister in 1828: continues to be the trusted, confidential adviser of his sovereign till his death, 1852. (Æt. 83.)

CHARACTER.—His skill as a general was directed by practical wisdom and common sense: he rarely made mistakes, and he provided for every possible contingency. From the strength of his courage and his will, from his shrewdness and inflexible integrity, he was known as the Iron Duke.

¹ The south-east of the peninsula of India.

² A village in the Nizam's dominions, 200 miles north-east of Bombay.

1.
back
2.
ahead
before
3.
autho
teres
4.
mast
foreign
5.
or va
6.
the ch
7.

1. F
must
lable i
2. F
ing.
the inc

may b
many

1. Di
2. Di
3. Di
4. Di
5. Di
6. Di

1. La
as,—
"THR
(411)

RULES FOR GOOD READING.

I.—GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.

1. Keep the body upright, the chest expanded, the shoulders thrown back, and the head erect.
2. Keep the eye and the mind in advance of the tongue; that is, look ahead on the page, and understand clearly what you are about to say before you speak.
3. Endeavour to think the thoughts and feel the emotions of the author you are reading. Thus only can your reading be at once interesting and intelligent.
4. Prepare the reading-lesson carefully. Take as much pains to master the thoughts it conveys as if you were translating them from a foreign language.
5. Articulate every word distinctly, and at the same time modulate or vary the voice as the sense and feeling suggest.
6. As a rule, read slowly, and with deliberation. Hasty reading is the chief cause of the faults that make bad reading.
7. Attend to the Rules for Emphasis and Pause.

II.—EMPHASIS.

1. Emphasis is the stress laid on a word in reading a sentence. It must be distinguished from Accent, which is the stress laid on a syllable in pronouncing a word.
2. Emphasis is laid on the words which are most significant in meaning. The meaning of a sentence may be entirely changed by changing the incidence of the emphasis. For example, the sentence,—

Did you drive to Richmond yesterday?

may be made, by shifting the stress from word to word, to have as many different meanings as there are words in it; thus:—

1. *Did* you drive to Richmond yesterday? No; we did not.
2. Did *you* drive to Richmond yesterday? No; but my brother did.
3. Did you *drive* to Richmond yesterday? No; we walked.
4. Did you drive to *Richmond* yesterday? No; we drove *from* it.
5. Did you drive to *Richmond* yesterday? No; we drove to Kew.
6. Did you drive to Richmond *yesterday*? No; the day before.

RULES FOR EMPHASIS.

1. Lay stress on any word or phrase that is peculiarly significant;

as,—
 "THRICE is he armed that hath his quarrel just"

(411)

2. Lay stress on words and phrases that mark contrast or difference; as,—
 "The GOOD man is *honoured*; the EVIL man is *despised*."
3. Lay additional stress on an emphatic word or phrase when it is repeated; as,—
 "If I were an *American*, as I am an *Englishman*, while a foreign troop remained in my country, I NEVER would lay down my arms—*never*, NEVER, NEVER."
4. In a succession of important words or phrases, the emphasis should be progressive, the greatest stress being laid on the last; as,—
 "Your carelessness caused his *disappointment*, his ANGUISH, his DEATH."

 III.—PAUSE.

1. Pauses are introduced in reading, either to make the meaning plain, or to set it off with proper effect—for the sake of clearness, or for the sake of expression.
2. Pauses introduced for the sake of clearness are called **Grammatical Pauses**. They serve the same purpose in reading as punctuation marks serve in written language—namely, to indicate what words or members of a sentence are to be separated in meaning, and what words or members are to be conjoined.
3. The grammatical pauses are therefore made wherever there are points. The shortest pause is made at the *comma*; that made at the *semicolon* is longer; that at the *colon*, a little longer still; and the longest pause is made at the *full stop*.
4. Pauses introduced for the sake of force are called **Rhetorical Pauses**. They are either made where there are no points, or they are of longer duration than the points indicate.

 RULES FOR RHETORICAL PAUSES.

1. Pause after an emphatic subject; as,—
 "He was my friend, faithful and just to me;
 But Brutus says he was ambitious;
 And Brutus ¶ is an honourable man."
2. Pause after a subject if compound or enlarged; as,—
 "*Sincerity and truth* ¶ form the basis of every *virtue*."
 "*Full many a flower* ¶ is born to blush unseen."
3. Pause after any emphatic word or words at the beginning of a sentence; as,—
 "*Great* ¶ is Diana of the Ephesians."
 "*Flashed* ¶ all their sabres bare."
 "*Silver and gold* ¶ have I none"
 "*Narrow* ¶ is the way that leadeth unto life."

4. Pause before adjectives that follow their nouns; as,—
 "He had a mind ¶ *deep, active, and well stored with knowledge.*"
5. Pause at an ellipsis, whether it is indicated by punctuation or not.
 as,—
 "Homer was the greater genius; Virgil ¶ the better artist."
 "He quotes Milton often; Spenser ¶ never."
6. Pause after words and phrases emphasized for the sake of contrast;
 as,—
 "*Homer* ¶ was the greater genius; *Virgil* ¶ the better artist."
 "*To err* ¶ is human; *to forgive* ¶ divine."
- * * * In the case of contrasted prepositions, the pause after the last is shorter than that after the others; as,—
 "No man despises rank, unless he is either raised very much *above* ¶ or sunk very much *below* ¶ the ordinary standard of humanity."
7. Pause before and after parenthetical or explanatory words and phrases, whether they are marked off by points or not; as,—
 "Homer claims ¶ on every account ¶ our first attention, as the father, not only of epic poetry, but also ¶ in some measure ¶ of poetry itself."
8. Pause before and after complete clauses, whether they are marked off by points or not; as,—
 Milton says beautifully ¶ that truth is as impossible to be soiled by any outward touch ¶ as the sunbeam.
 * * * When a clause is restrictive, no pause is required before it; as,—
 The man-who-painted-that-picture ¶ is dead.
9. A pause is frequently required before a phrase beginning with a preposition; as,—
 The bonfires shone bright ¶ *along* the whole circuit of the ramparts.
 * * * There is no pause before a restrictive phrase; as,—
 The arrival-of-the-doctor ¶ put an end to our suspense.
10. A pause is frequently required before an infinitive; as,—
 "I have often left *my* childish sports ¶ *to ramble* in this place."
 "The greatest misery is ¶ *to be condemned* by our own hearts."

NOTE.—In these examples, the *rest* (¶) indicates where a pause is to be made.
 Two *rests* (¶ ¶) indicate that the pause is to be longer than usual.

POETRY FOR READING AND RECITATION.

THE following poems have been selected expressly to afford the pupils practice in the recitation of passages of considerable length. For this purpose they are well adapted by their sustained and progressive interest:—

THE POOR FISHER FOLK.

'Tis night ; within the close-shut cabin door
The room is 'wrapped in shade, save where there fall
Some twilight rays, that creep along the floor,
And show the fisher's nets upon the wall,

In the dim corner, from the oaken chest
A few white dishes 'glimmer; through the shade
Stands a tall bed with dusky curtains dressed,
And a rough mattress at its side is laid.

Five children on the long low mattress lie,—
A nest of little souls, it heaves with dreams ;
In the high chimney the last 'embers die,
And redden the dark roof with crimson gleams.

The mother kneels and thinks, and, pale with fear,
She prays alone, hearing the billows shout ;
While to wild winds, to rocks, to midnight drear,
The 'ominous old ocean sobs without.

Poor wives of fishers ! Ah, 'tis sad to say,
Our sons, our husbands, all that we love best,
Our hearts, our souls, are on those waves away,—
Those 'ravening wolves that know nor ruth nor rest.

Think how they sport with those belovéd forms,
And how the clarion-blowing wind unties
Above their heads the tresses of the storms :
Perchance even now the child, the husband dies !

For we can never tell where they may be
Who, to make head against the tide and gale,
Between them and the starless, 'soundless sea,
Have but one bit of plank, with one poor sail.

Terrible fear ! We seek the pebbly shore,
 Cry to the rising billows, "Bring them home."
 Alas ! what answer gives their 'troubled roar
 To the dark thought that haunts us as we roam ?

Janet is sad : her husband is alone.
 Wrapped in the black shroud of the bitter night :
 His children are so little, there is none
 To give him aid.—"Were they but old, they might."—
 Ah, mother ! when they too are on the main,
 How wilt thou weep, "Would they were young again !"

She takes her lantern,—'tis his hour at last ;
 She will go forth, and see if the day breaks,
 And if his signal-fire be at the mast ;—
 Ah no,—not yet !—no breath of morning wakes.

No line of light o'er the dark waters lies ;
 It rains, it rains,—how black is rain at morn !
 The day comes 'trembling, and the young dawn cries,—
 Cries like a baby to the world new born.

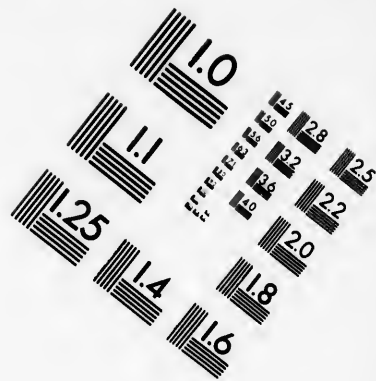
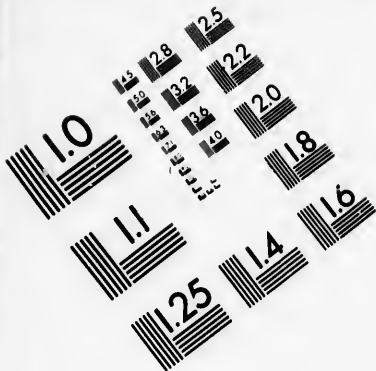
Sudden her human eyes, that peer and watch
 Through the deep shade, a 'mouldering dwelling find.
 No light within,—the thin door shakes,—the thatch
 O'er the green walls is twisted of the wind,

Yellow and dirty as a swollen rill.
 "Ah me !" she saith, "here doth that widow dwell
 Few days ago my good-man left her ill ;
 I will go in and see if all be well."

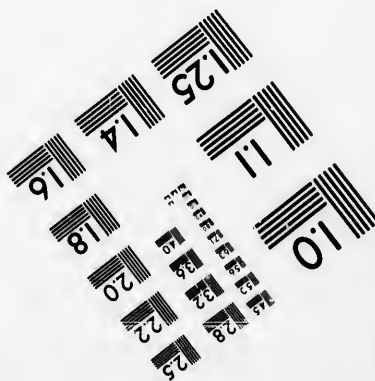
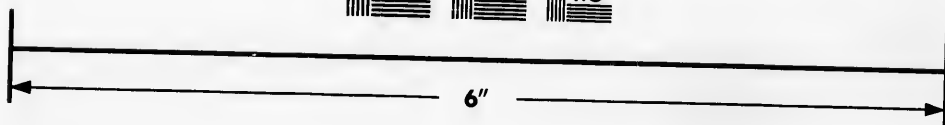
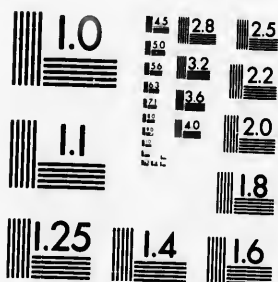
She strikes the door, she listens ; none replies,
 And Janet shudders. "Husbandless, alone,
 And with two children,—they have scant supplies,—
 'Good 'neighbour !'—she sleeps heavy as a stone."

She calls again, she knocks ; 'tis silence still,—
 No sound, no answer : 'suddenly the door,
 As if the 'senseless creature felt some thrill
 Of pity, turned, and open lay before.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

10

15
 28
 32
 25
 22
 20
 18
 16

10
 01
 51
 52

She entered, and her lantern lighted all
 The house so still, but for the rude waves' din.
 Through the thin roof the plashing rain-drops fall,
 But something 'terrible is couched within.

Half clothed, dark-featured, motionless lay she,
 The once strong mother, now 'devoid of life ;
 'Dishevelled 'spectre of dead misery,—
 All that the poor leave after their long strife.

The cold and livid arm, already stiff,
 Hung o'er the soaked straw of her wretched bed.
 The mouth lay open 'horribly, as if
 The parting soul with a great cry had fled,—

That cry of death which startles the dim ear
 Of vast 'Eternity. And all the while
 Two little children, in one cradle near,
 Slept face to face, on each sweet face a smile.

The dying mother o'er them, as they lay,
 Had cast her gown, and wrapped her mantle's fold ;
 Feeling chill death creep up, she willed that they
 Should yet be warm while she was lying cold.

Rocked by their own weight, sweetly sleep the twain,
 With even breath, and foreheads calm and clear ;
 So sound that the last trump might call in vain,—
 For, being 'innocent, they have no fear.

Still howls the wind, and ever a drop slides
 Through the old rafters, where the thatch is weak ;
 On the dead woman's face it falls, and glides
 Like living tears along her hollow cheek.

And the dull wave sounds ever like a bell.
 The dead lies still, and listens to the strain ;
 For when the 'radiant spirit leaves its shell,
 The poor corpse seems to call it back again.

It seeks the soul through the air's dim 'expanse ;
 And the pale lip saith to the sunken eye,
 "Where is the beauty of thy kindling glance ?"
 "And where thy balmy breath ?" it makes reply.

Alas ! live, love, find primroses in spring ;
 Fate hath one end for festival and tear.²
 Bid your hearts 'vibrate, let your voices ring ;
 But as dark ocean drinks each streamlet clear,

So for the kisses that delight the flesh,
 For mother-worship, and for children's bloom,
 For song, for smile, for love so fair and fresh
 For laugh, for dance, there is one goal,—the tomb.

And why does Janet pass so fast away ?
 What hath she done within that house of dread ?
 What foldeth she beneath her mantle gray ?
 And hurries home, and hides it in her bed ;
 With half-averted face, and 'nervous tread,
 What hath she stolen from the awful dead ?

The dawn was whitening over the sea's verge
 As she sat 'pensive, touching broken chords
 Of half-'remorseful thought, while the hoarse surge
 Howled a sad concert to her broken words.

" Ah, my poor husband ! we had five before ;
 Already so much care, so much to find,
 For he must work for all. I give him more.—
 What was that noise ? His step ? Ah no ! the wind.

" That I should be afraid of him I love !
 I have done ill. If he should beat me now,
 I would not blame him.—Did not the door move ?
 Not yet, poor man."—She sits with careful brow,
 Wrapped in her inward grief ; nor hears the roar
 Of winds and waves that dash against his prow,
 Nor the black cormorant³ 'shrieking on the shore.

Sudden the door flies open wide, and lets
 Noisily in the dawn-light scarcely clear ;
 And the good fisher, dragging his damp nets,
 Stands on the 'threshold with a joyous cheer.

" 'Tis thou !" she cries, and eager as a lover
 Leaps up, and holds her husband to her breast ;
 Her 'greeting kisses all his 'vesture cover.
 "'Tis I, good-wife !" and his broad face expressed

How gay his heart that Janet's love made light.
 "What weather was it?" "Hard."—"Your fishing?" "Bad.
 The sea was like a nest of thieves to-night ;
 But I embrace thee, and my heart is glad.

"There was a demon in the wind that blew :
 I tore my net, caught nothing, broke my line,
 And once I thought the bark was broken too.—
 What did you all the night long, Janet mine ?"

She, trembling in the darkness, answered, " I ?
 Oh, naught ! I sewed, I watched, I was afraid ;
 The waves were loud as thunders from the sky :
 But it is over." Shyly then she said :—

"Our neighbour died last night ; it must have been
 When you were gone. She left two little ones,
 So small, so frail,—William and Madeline ;
 The one just lisps, the other scarcely runs."

The man looked grave, and in the corner cast
 His old fur bonnet, wet with rain and sea ;
 Muttered a while, and scratched his head,—at last,
 "We have five children, this makes seven," said he.

"Already in bad weather we must sleep
 Sometimes without our supper. Now— Ah, well,
 'Tis not my fault. These accidents are deep ;
 It was the good God's will. I cannot tell.

"Why did He take the mother from those scraps,
 No bigger than my fist ? 'Tis hard to read ;
 A learned man might understand, perhaps ;—
 So little, they can neither work nor need.

"Go fetch them, wife ; they will be frightened sore,
 If with the dead alone they waken thus ;—
 That was the mother knocking at our door,
 And we must take the children home to us.

"Brother and sister shall they be to ours,
 And they shall learn to climb my knee at even.
 When He shall see these strangers in our bowers,
 More fish, more food will give the God of heaven.

"I will work harder; I will drink no wine—
Go fetch them. Wherefore dost thou linger, dear?
Not thus were wont to move these feet of thine."
She drew the curtain, saying,—"They are here!"

VICTOR HUGO: translated by H. W. ALEXANDER.

ac'cidents, cas'ualties.	knock'ing, rap'ping.	shriek'ing, scream'ing.
an'swered, replied'.	mould'ering, crum'bling.	shy'ly, dif'fidently.
de'void, des'titute.	mut'ered, spoke low.	sound less, unfath'om- able.
dishev'elled, disor'dered.	neigh'bour, one dwell- ing near.	spec'tre, appar'ition.
em'bers, cin'ders.	ner'vous, excit'ed.	sud'denly, unexpect'edly.
eter'nity, unlim'ited	om'inous, boding evil.	ter'rible, dread'ful.
dur'a'tion.	pen'sive, thought'ful.	thresh'old, door-step.
expanse', range.	perchance', perhaps'.	trem'bling, quiv'ering.
fright'ened, ter'rified.	ra'diant, beam'ing.	troub'led, disturb'ed.
glim'ner, shine faintly.	rav'ening, rapa'cious.	vest'ure, gar'ment.
greet'ing, saluta'tion.	remorse'ful, regret'ful.	vi'brate, throbb.
hor'ribly, aw'fully.	sense'less, inan'imate.	wrapped, enclosed'.
in'nocent, guile'less.		

¹ Cabin door. Not the cabin of a ship, but a humble cottage.
² Fate hath one end for festival and tear. *Festival* is here put for joy, and *tear* for grief; and both have one end—the tomb, as explained in next stanza.
³ Cor'morant, the sea raven; a gluttonous bird of the pelican order, which lives chiefly on fish.

QUESTIONS.—Who was kneeling in the fisherman's cottage? What time was it? How many children had the woman? Where were they? Where was her husband? Why does she take her lantern and go out? What does she find in her neighbour's cottage? What does her husband say when he hears what has happened? What does she show him?

THE SHIP ON FIRE.

MORNING † all 'speedeth well; the bright sun
Lights up the deep blue wave, and favouring breeze
Fills the white sails, while o'er that Southern Sea
The ship, with all the busy life within,
Holds on her ocean course, alone, but glad!
For all is yet, as all has been the while
Since the white cliffs were left, without or fear
Or danger to those hundreds 'grouping now
Upon the sunny deck.

Fire!—Fire!—Fire!—Fire!

* * * *

Scorching smoke in many a wreath,
'Sulphurous blast of heated air,

Grim 'presentment of quick death,
 Crouching fear and stern 'despair,
 Hist, to what the master saith,—
 "Steady, steersman, steady there!"—Ay! ay!
 To the deck the women led
 The children—helped by 'stalwart men;
 Calmly, firmly 'mustered,
 All the crew assemble then;
 And to orders briefly said,
 Comes the sharp 'response again,—Ay! ay!
 "To the mast-head!"—it is done;
 "Look to leeward!"¹—scores obey;
 "And to windward!"²—many a one
 Turns, and never turns away:
 'Steadfast is the word and tone,
 "Man the boats, and clear away!"—Ay! ay!
 Hotter! hotter!—heave and strain;
 In the hollow, on the wave:
 "Pump! and flood the deck again,—
 Work! no danger 'daunts the brave:
 Hope and trust are not in vain,—
 God looks on, and He can save."—Ay! ay!
 'Desolate! all desolate!
 Nothing, nothing to be seen!—
 "Wait and watch, and hope and wait;
 Hope has never hopeless been:
 Men, ye know that God is great;
 Would He—He can 'intervene."—Ay! ay!
 "What above?"—nor sail, nor sound;
 "Leeward?"—nothing, far or near;
 "What to windward?"—to the bound
 Of the horizon³ all is clear;—
 Yet again the words go round,
 "Work, men, work; we dare not fear!"—Ay! ay!
 From a heavy lurch abeam,⁴
 Struggling, 'shivering, reeling back,—
 Crash!—with rush and shout and scream
 Comes the foreyard,⁵ with its wrack

Crushing hope, as it might seem,—

“Steady!—keep the sun-line track!”—Ay! ay!

All is order—ready all—

Watching in appointed place

Underneath the smoky pall,

Firm of foot, with tranquil face,

•Resolute, whate'er befall,

Holds the captain's 'measured pace.—Ay! ay!

Hotter! hotter! hotter still!

Backward driven every one;

All in vain the 'various skill,

All that man may do is done:

“Brave hearts, strive yet with a will!

Never deem that hope is gone!”—Ay! ay!

Hisi!—as if a sudden thought

Dared not utter what it knew,—

Falls a trembling whisper, fraught

As of hope, to 'frightened few;

With a doubting heart-ache caught,

And a choking “Is it true?”—Ay! ay!

Then it comes,—“A sail! a sail!”—

Up from 'prostrate misery,

Up from heart-break woe and wail,

Up to shuddering 'ecstasy;—

“Can so strange a promise fail?”—

“Call the master; let him see!”—Ay! ay!

Silence! Silence! Silence!—Pray!

* * * *

Every moment is an hour,

Minutes long as weary years,

While with 'concentrated power

Through the haze that clear eye peers,—

“No,”—“Yes,”—“No:” the strong men cower,

Till he sighs,—faith conquering fears,—“Ay! ay!”

Riseth now the throbbing cry,

Born of hope and hopelessness;

Iron men weep bitterly,

Unused hands and cheeks 'caress,—

Feeling's wild variety ;—
 Strange and heartless were it less.—Ay ! ay !
 Through the sunlight's 'glittering gleam
 On old Ocean's rugged breast,
 As a 'fantasy in dream,
 Yet beyond all doubt confessed,
 Comes the ship—God's gift, they deem :
 Ah, "He overruleth best!"—Ay ! ay !
 Coming !—Come !—that foremost man
 Shouts as only true heart may,
 "Ship on fire!"—"You will"—"You can"—
 "Near us, for the 'rescue, stay?"
 Almost as the words began,
 Answering words are on their way,—“Ay ! ay !”
 “Ay ! ay !”¹—words of little worth
 But as 'imaging the soul.
 See, the boats are struggling forth !—
 Marvel ! how they pitch and roll
 On the dark wave, through the froth,—
 God can bring them safe and whole.—Ay ! ay !
 “Have a care, men ! have a care !
 Steady, steady, to the stern :
 Now, my brave hearts, handy there,—
 See, the deck begins to burn !
 Child and woman, soft and fair,
 Go—thank God—be quick—return.”—Ay ! ay !
 Blinding smoke all dim and red,—
 'Writhing flakes of 'lurid flame,—
 Decks that scorch the hasty tread,—
 Shuddering sounds, as if they came
 Wailing from a tortured bed,—
 “Boatswain,⁶ call each man by name!”—Ay ! ay !
 Strong, sad men, one by one,
 At the voice which all obey,
 Silently, till all are gone,
 Fill the boats, and pass away,
 And the captain stands alone ;—
 Has he not done well to-day ?—Ay ! ay !

Oh, that boat-load!—anxious eyes,
 Hearts, where painful throbbings swell,
 Watch and wait, with 'sympathies
 Far too deep for tongue to tell;
 All 'suppressed are words and cries,—
 Surely it will all go well!—Ay! ay!

All is well! that man so true
 Stands upon the stranger's deck,
 And a 'thrilling pulse runs through
 Those glad hearts, which none may check,—
 Listen to the wild halloo!
 Rainbow joy, in fortune's wreck.—Ay! ay!

Pah!—a rush of smothered light
 Bursts the staggering ship asunder,—
 Lightning flashes, fierce and bright,—
 Blasting sounds, as if of thunder,—
 Dread 'Destruction wins the fight,
 Round about, above, and under!—Ay! ay!

Come away! we may not stay;
 All is done that man can do;
 Let us take our onward way,
 Life has claims and duties new;
 God is a strong help and stay,
 He can guide all sorrow through!—Ay! ay!

Thanks unceasing! thanks and praise!
 For His great 'deliverance shown;
 Let the 'remnant of our days
 'Testify what He has done;
 'Marvellous His loving ways!
 Merciful, as we have known!—Ay! ay!

And so the good ship *Merchantman* sailed on,
 With double freight of life, and God's kind care,
 Till at the Cape,⁷ the rescued voyagers left
 To other kindness of the dwellers there,
 She spread her sails again, and went her way.

HENRY BATEMAN.

caress', fondle.	im'aging, represent'ing.	shiv'ering, trem'bling.
con'centrated, absorbed'	intervene', interpose'.	speed'eth, pros'pereth.
daunts, dismays'	lu'rid, gloom'y.	stal'wart, powerful.
deliv'erance, salva'tion.	mar'vellous, won'derful.	stead'fast, firm.
des'olate, waste.	meas'ured, u'niform.	sul'phurous, stif'ling.
despair', hope'lessness.	mus'tered, assem'bled.	suppressed', restrained'.
destruc'tion, ruin.	present'ment, foreböd'	sym'pathies, tel'low-
ec'stasy, rap'ture.	pros'trate, ab'ject. (ing.)	feel'ings.
fan'tasy, v'ision.	rem'nant, res'idue.	tes'tify, wit'ness.
fright'ened, ter'rified.	res'cue, deliv'erance.	thrill'ing, tin'gling.
glit'tering, spark'ling.	res'olute, deter'mined.	va'rious, dif'ferent.
group'ing, clus'tering.	res'ponse, an'swer.	writh'ing, twist'ing.

¹ Lee'ward, that side of a ship facing the quarter *towards* which the wind blows.

² Wind'ward, that side of a ship facing the quarter *from* which the wind blows.

³ Hori'zon, the meeting-line of sky and ocean.

⁴ Abeam', on the beam; across the direction of the ship's keel.

⁵ Fore'yard, the yard or beam from which the fore-sail is hung.

⁶ Boat'swain,—pronounced *bo's'n*,—the officer on board ship who summons the men to their posts.

⁷ The Cape,—viz., of Good Hope.

THE BRETON SAILOR, HERVÉ RIEL.

On the sea and at the Hogue,¹ sixteen hundred ninety-two,
 Did the English fight the French—woe to France!
 And, the thirty-first of May, helter-skelter through the blue,
 Like a crowd of 'frightened porpoises² a shoal of sharks pursue,³
 Came crowding ship on ship to St. Malo⁴ on the Rance,
 With the English fleet in view.

'Twas the 'squadron that escaped, with the victor in full chase:
 First and foremost of the drove, in his great ship, Damfreville;⁵
 Close on him fled, great and small,
 Twenty-two good ships in all;
 And they 'signalled to the place,
 "Help the winners of a race!
 Get us 'guidance, give us harbour, take us quick,—or, quicker
 still,
 Here's the English can and will!"

Then the pilots of the place put out brisk and leaped on board.
 "Why, what hope or chance have ships like these to pass?"
 laughed they;

"Rocks to starboard, rocks to port,⁶ all the passage scarred and scored,

Shall the *Formidable* here, with her twelve and eighty guns,
Think to make the river-mouth by the single narrow way,—
Trust to enter where 'tis 'ticklish for a craft of twenty tons,
And with flow at full beside ?

Now 'tis 'slackest ebb of tide.
Reach the mooring ? Rather say,
While rock stands or water runs,
Not a ship will leave the bay !"

Then was called a council 'straight ;—
Brief and bitter the 'debate :

"Here's the English at our heels ; would you have them take
in tow

All that's left us of the fleet, linked together stern and bow,
For a prize to Plymouth Sound ?
Better run the ships aground !"

(Ended Damfreville his speech.)

"Not a minute more to wait !

Let the captains all and each
Shove ashore, then blow up, burn the vessels on the beach !
France must undergo her fate."

"Give the word !" But no such word
Was ever spoke or heard ;

For up stood, for out stepped, for in struck amid all these,—
A captain ? A lieutenant ? A mate—first, second, third ?

No such man of mark, and meet

With his betters to 'compete !

But a simple Breton⁷ sailor pressed by Tourville⁸ for the
fleet—

A poor coasting-pilot he, Hervé Riel the Croisickese.⁹

And "What 'mockery or 'malice have we here ?" cries Hervé
Riel ;

"Are you mad, you Malouins ? Are you cowards, fools, or
rogues ?

Talk to me of rocks and shoals, me who took the 'soundings, tell
On my fingers every bank, every shallow, every swell

'Twixt the offing here and Grève,¹⁰ where the river 'disem-
bagues ?

Are you bought by English gold? Is it love the lying's for?
 Morn and eve, night and day,
 Have I piloted your bay,
 Entered free and anchored fast at the foot of Solidor.
 Burn the fleet, and ruin France! That were worse than fifty
 Hognes!

Sirs, they know I speak the truth! Sirs, believe me, there's
 a way!

Only let me lead the line,
 Have the biggest ship to steer,
 Get this *Formidable* clear,
 Make the others follow mine,
 And I'll lead them, most and least, by a passage I know well,
 Right to Solidor, past Grève,
 And there lay them safe and sound;
 And if one ship 'misbehave—
 Keel so much as grate the ground—
 Why, I've nothing but my life; here's my head!" cries Hervé
 Riel.

Not a minute more to wait.

"Steer us in, then, small and great!

Take the helm, lead the line, save the squadron!" cried its
 Chief.

Captains, give the sailor place!

He is Admiral, in brief.

Still the north-wind, by God's grace.

See the noble fellow's face

As the big ship, with a bound,

Clears the entry like a hound,

Keeps the passage as its inch of way were the wide sea's pro-
 found!"

See, safe through shoal and rock,

How they follow in a flock;—

Not a ship that misbehaves, not a keel that grates the
 ground,

Not a spar that comes to grief!

The 'peril, see, is past,—

All are harboured to the last;

And just as Hervé Riel hollas "Anchor!"—sure as fate,

Up the English come—too late!

So the storm 'subsides to calm ;
 They see the green trees wave
 On the heights o'erlooking Grève :
 Hearts that bled are 'stanch'd with balm.
 "Just our 'rapture to 'enhance,
 Let the English rake the bay,
 Gnash their teeth and glare 'askance
 As they cannonade away !

'Neath 'rampired Solidor pleasant riding on the Rance !"
 How hope succeeds despair on each captain's 'countenance !
 Outburst all with one accord :

"This is Paradise for Hell !
 Let France—let France's King
 Thank the man that did the thing !"

What a shout, and all one word,—
 "Hervé Riel !"

As he stepped in front once more,
 Not a 'symptom of 'surprise
 In the frank blue Breton eyes,—
 Just the same man as before.

Then said Damfreville, "My friend,
 I must speak out at the end,
 Though I find the speaking hard :
 Praise is deeper than the lips ;
 You have saved the king his ships,
 You must name your own 'reward.
 Faith, our sun was near 'eclipse !

Demand whate'er you will,
 France remains your debtor still.
 Ask to heart's content, and have ! or my name's not Damfreville."

Then a beam of fun outbroke
 On the bearded mouth that spoke,
 As the honest heart laughed through
 Those frank eyes of Breton blue :
 "Since I needs must say my say,
 Since on board the duty's done,
 And from Malo Roads to Croisic Point, what is it but a run ?—
 Since 'tis ask and have I may,—
 Since the others go ashore,—

Come! A good whole holiday!

Leave to go and see my wife, whom I call the Belle Aurore!¹
That he asked, and that he got—nothing more!

Name and deed alike are lost;
Not a pillar nor a post

In his Croisic keeps alive the feat as it befell;
Not a head in white and black

On a single fishing-smack,

In 'memory of the man but for whom had gone to 'wrack

All that France saved from the fight whence England bore
the bell.

Go to Paris; rank on rank

Search the heroes flung pell-mell

On the Louvre,¹² face and flank;

You shall look long enough ere you come to Hervé Riel.

So, for better and for worse,

Hervé Riel, accept my verse!

In my verse, Hervé Riel, do thou once more

Save the squadron, honour France, love thy wife the Belle
Aurore!

ROBERT BROWNING.¹³

askance', side'ways.
compete', strive.
coun'tenance, face.
debate', discuss'ion.
disembogues', emp'ties
itself.
eclipse', extinc'tion.
enhance', increase'.
fright'ened, ter'rified.
guid'ance, steer'age.
mal'ice, spite.

mem'ory, commemora'-
tion.
misbehave', is misman'-
aged.
mock'ery, deris'ion.
per'il, dan'ger.
ram'pired, fort'ified.
rap'ture, ec'stasy.
reward', recompense.
sig'nalled, tel'ographed.
slack'est, low'est.

sound'ings, depths.
squad'ron, divi'sion of
the fleet.
stanch'd, stopp'd bleed-
ing.
straight, imme'diately.
subsides', set'tles.
surprise', aston'ishment.
symp'tom, sign.
tick'lish, dif'ficult.
wrack, destruc'tion.

¹ The Hogue.—La Hogue is a cape on the eastern shore of the peninsula of Cotentin, in Normandy, twenty miles south-east of Cherbourg. It must not be confounded with Cape la Hague, which is twenty-four miles north-west of Cherbourg. The Battle of La Hogue was fought on May 19, 1692. Tourville, the French Admiral, had sailed from Brest for the camp formed near La Hogue by the Irish Jacobites, and was totally defeated by Admiral Russell.

² Porpoises.—The porpoise (pro-

nounced *por'pus*), or hog-fish, is an animal of the whale species, but much smaller than the whale in size. Its length rarely exceeds six feet. Porpoises frequent estuaries in shoals, in search of food.

³ A shoal of sharks pursue.—Supply *whom* before these words.

⁴ St. Mâ'lo, a small sea-port in the north of Bretagne, near the mouth of the river Rance, thirty-six miles south of Jersey.

⁵ Dam'freville, captain of the For-

midable (92 guns), the largest ship in the French fleet.

⁶ Starboard...port.—The starboard side of a ship is that on the right hand of the steersman. The port or larboard side is that on his left hand.

⁷ Breton, a native of Bretagne or Brittany, an old province in the north-west of France; so called after the Britons who settled there in the sixth century, when driven out of Britain by the Angles and Saxons.

⁸ Pressed by Tourville—forced to serve in the fleet. When the fleet could not obtain a sufficient supply of men by voluntary enlistment, merchant seamen were impressed into the service. The detachment of sailors, sent out under an officer for this purpose, was called a *press-gang*. The Count de Tourville (*Toor'veel*) was the French Admiral. Born, 1642; died, 1701.

⁹ Croisickese' (*Crow'-sik-ees*), a native of Croisic, a small sea-port of France, near the mouth of the Loire, forty-four miles west of Nantes.

¹⁰ Grève (*Grave*), a village at the mouth of the Rance. The *oſing* is the deep water beyond rocks and shoals.

¹¹ As its inch of way, &c.—The ship keeps its course as securely as if its narrow passage (inch of way) were the broad and deep sea.

¹² The Louvre (*Loo'vr*), a palace in Paris, appropriated to rich collections of paintings and sculpture, among which are pictures of French victories and portraits of national heroes.

¹³ Robert Browning occupies with Alfred Tennyson the front rank of living English poets. He was born at Camberwell (London) in 1812. He possesses great dramatic genius, and a wonderful power of condensed expression.

AN ORDER FOR A PICTURE.

O good painter, tell me true—
Has your hand the 'cunning to draw
Shapes of things that you never saw?
Ay? Well, here is an order for you.

Woods and corn-fields, a little brown—
The picture must not be over-bright—
Yet all in the golden and 'gracious light
Of a cloud, when the summer sun is down.

Always and always, night and morn,
Woods upon woods, with fields of corn
Lying between them, not quite sear,
And not in the full, thick, leafy bloom,
When the wind can hardly find breathing-room
Under their tassels—cattle near,
Biting shorter the short green grass,
With bright birds 'twittering all around—
(Ah, good painter, you can't paint sound!)—
These, and the house where I was born.

Low and little, and black and old,
 With children, many as it can hold,
 All at the windows, open wide—
 Heads and shoulders clear outside,
 And fair young faces all 'ablush :
 Perhaps you may have seen, some day,
 Roses crowding the self-same way,
 Out of a 'wilding wayside bush.

Listen closer. When you have done
 With woods and corn-fields and grazing herds,
 A lady, the 'loveliest ever the sun
 Looked down upon, you must paint for me.
 Oh! if I only could make you see
 The clear blue eyes, the tender smile,
 The 'sovereign sweetness, the gentle grace,
 The woman's soul, and the angel's face
 That are beaming on me all the while!—
 I need not speak these foolish words ;
 Yet one word tells you all I would say,—
 She is my mother : you will agree
 That all the rest may be thrown away.

Two little 'urchins at her knee
 You must paint, sir: one like me ;
 The other with a clearer brow,
 And the light of his 'adventurous eyes
 Flashing with boldest 'enterprise.
 At ten years old he went to sea,—
 God knoweth if he be living now,—
 He sailed in the good ship *Commodore* ;
 Nobody ever crossed her track
 To bring us news, and she never came back.
 Ah! 'tis twenty long years and more
 Since that old ship went out of the bay.
 With my great-hearted brother on her deck ;
 I watched him till he shrank to a speck,
 And his face was toward me all the way

Bright his hair was, a golden brown,
 The time we stood at our mother's knee ;

That 'beauteous head, if it did go down,
Carried sunshine into the sea :

Out in the fields one summer night
We were together, half afraid
Of the corn-leaves' 'rustling, and of the shade
Of the high hills, stretching so still and far :—
'Loitering till after the low little light
Of the candle shone through the open door ;
And over the hay-stack's pointed top,
All of a tremble, and ready to drop,
The first half-hour, the great yellow star,
That we, with staring, 'ignorant eyes,
Had often and often watched to see
Propped and held in its place in the skies
By the fork of a tall red mulberry-tree,
Which close in the edge of our flax-field grew,—
Dead at the top,—just one branch full
Of leaves, notched round, and lined with wool,
From which it 'tenderly shook the dew
Over our heads, when we came to play
In its handbreadth of shadow, day after day :—
Afraid to go home, sir ; for one of us bore
A nest full of 'speckled and thin-shelled eggs ;
The other, a bird, held fast by the legs,
Not so big as a straw of wheat.
The berries we gave her she would not eat,
But cried and cried, till we held her bill,
So slim and shining, to keep her still.

At last we stood at our mother's knee.
Do you think, sir, if you try,
You can paint the look of a lie ?
If you can, pray have the grace
To put it solely in the face
Of the urchin that is likest me :
I think 'twas 'solely mine, indeed ;
But that's no matter—paint it so ;
The eyes of our mother (take good heed)
Looking not on the nestful of eggs,
Nor the 'fluttering bird, held so fast by the legs,

But straight through our faces down to our eyes,—
 And, oh! with such 'injured, 'reproachful 'surprise!
 I felt my heart bleed where that glance went, as though
 A sharp blade struck through it.

You, sir, know,

That you on the canvas are to 'repeat
 Things that are fairest, things most sweet :—
 Woods, and corn-fields, and mulberry-tree—
 The mother—the lads, with their bird, at her knee;
 But, oh! that look of reproachful woe!—
 High as the heavens your name I'll shout,
 If you paint me the picture, and leave that out.

ALICE CARY.

ablush', blush'ing.	ig'norant, untaught'.	sole'ly, exclu'sively.
advent'urous, dar'ing.	in'jured, hurt.	sov'ereign, supreme.
beau'teous, love'ly.	loi'tering, lin'gering.	spec'kled, spot'ted.
cun'ning, skill.	love'liest, most beau'ti-	surprise', aston'ishment
en'terprise, spirit of ad-	ful.	ten'derly, gen'tly.
vent'ure.	repeat', reproduce'.	twit'tering, chirp'ing.
flut'tering, quiv'ering.	reproach'ful, repröv'ing.	ur'chins, child'ren.
gra'cious, kindly.	rus'tling, whispering.	wild'ing, grow'ing wild.

ROCK ME TO SLEEP.

BACKWARD, turn backward, O Time, in your flight;
 Make me a child again, just for to-night!
 Mother, come back from the echoless shore;
 Take me again to your heart as of yore,—
 Kiss from my forehead the 'furrows of care,
 Smooth the few silver threads out of my hair,
 Over my slumbers your loving watch keep,—
 Rock me to sleep, mother,—rock me to sleep!

Backward, flow backward, O tide of the years!
 I am so weary of toil and of tears,—
 Toil without 'recompense, tears all in vain,—
 Take them and give me my childhood again!
 I have grown weary of dust and decay,—
 Weary of 'flinging my soul-wealth away,—
 Weary of sowing for others to reap,—
 Rock me to sleep, mother,—rock me to sleep!

blos
 endr
 fling
 fur T

Tired of the 'hollow, the base, the untrue,
 Mother, O mother, my heart calls for you !
 Many a summer the grass has grown green,
 Blossomed and faded—our faces between—
 Yet with strong 'yearning and 'passionate pain,
 Long I to-night for your presence again :
 Come from the silence so long and so deep,—
 Rock me to sleep, mother,—rock me to sleep !

Over my heart, in the days that are flown,
 No love like mother-love ever has shone,—
 No other devotion abides and 'endures,
 Faithful, 'unselfish, and 'patient like yours,—
 None like a mother can charm away pain
 From the sick soul and world-weary brain :
 Slumbers soft, calm, o'er my heavy lids creep,—
 Rock me to sleep, mother,—rock me to sleep !

Come, let your brown hair, just lighted with gold,
 Fall on your shoulders again as of old,—
 Let it drop over my forehead to-night,
 Shading my faint eyes away from the light !
 For, with its sunny-edged shadows once more,
 Haply will throng all the visions of yore :
 Lovingly, softly, its bright billows sweep,—
 Rock me to sleep, mother,—rock me to sleep !

Mother, dear mother ! the years have been long
 Since last I 'listened your 'lullaby song :
 Sing, then, and unto my soul it shall seem
 Womanhood's years have been only a dream ;
 Clasped to your heart in a loving embrace,
 With your light lashes just sweeping my face,
 Never hereafter to wake or to weep,—
 Rock me to sleep, mother,—rock me to sleep !

MRS. AKERS.

blos'somed, bloomed.
 endures', lasts.
 fling'ing, throw'ing.
 fur'rows, wriñ'kles.

hol'low, empty.
 lis'tened, hear'kened to.
 lul'laby, sooth'ing.
 pas'sionate, ar'dent.

pa'tient, submis'sive.
 rec'ompense, reward'.
 unself'ish, disin'terested.
 yearn'ing, desire'.

THE LITTLE BOY THAT DIED.

I AM all alone in my 'chamber now,
 And the midnight hour is near,
 And the fagot's crack and the clock's dull tick
 Are the only sounds I hear :
 And over my soul, in its 'solitude,
 Sweet feelings of sadness glide ;
 For my heart and my eyes are full, when I think
 Of the little boy that died.

I went one night to my father's house,—
 Went home to the dear ones all,—
 And 'softly I opened the garden gate,
 And softly the door of the hall :
 My mother came out to meet her son ;
 She kissed me, and then she sighed ;
 And her head fell on my neck, and she wept
 For the little boy that died.

And when I gazed on his 'innocent face,
 As still and cold he lay,
 And thought what a lovely child he had been,
 And how soon he must 'decay,—
 "O Death, thou lovest the 'beautiful!"
 In the woe of my spirit I cried ;
 For 'sparkled the eyes, and the forehead was fair,
 Of the little boy that died.

Again I will go to my father's house.—
 Go home to the dear ones all,—
 And sadly I'll open the garden gate,
 And sadly the door of the hall :
 I shall meet my mother, but never-more
 With her 'darling by her side ;
 But she 'll kiss me, and sigh and weep again
 For the little boy that died.

I shall miss him when the flowers come
 In the garden where he played ;
 I shall miss him more by the fireside,
 When the flowers have all decayed ;

I shall see his toys and his 'empty chair,
And the horse he used to ride;
And they will speak, with a 'silent speech,
Of the little boy that died.

I shall see his little sister again
With her 'playmates about the door;
And I'll watch the children in their sports
As I never did before;
And if in the group I see a child
Like him, so laughing-eyed,
I'll love the face that speaks to me
Of the little boy that died.

We shall all go home to our Father's house,—
To our Father's house in the skies,
Where the hope of our souls shall have no blight,
And our love no broken ties :
We shall roam on the banks of the River of Peace,
And bathe in its 'blissful tide;
And one of the joys of our heaven shall be—
The little boy that died !

J. D. ROBINSON.

beau'tiful, love'ly.
bliss'ful, joy'ful.
châm'ber, room.
dar'ling, fa'vourite.

decay', waste away.
emp'ty, unoc'cupied.
in nocent, gulle'less.
play'mates, compan'ions

si'lent, sound'less.
soft'ly, gen'tly.
sol'itude, lone'liness
spar'kled, gleamed.

RING OUT, WILD BELLS.

Ring out, wild bells, to the wild sky,
The flying cloud, the frosty light :
The year is dying in the night ;
Ring out, wild bells, and let him die.

Ring out the old, ring in the new ;
Ring, happy bells, across the snow :
The year is going, let him go ;
Ring out the false, ring in the true.

Ring out the grief that saps the mind,
 For those that here we see no more ;
 Ring out the 'feud of rich and poor,
 Ring in 'redress to all mankind.

Ring out a slowly dying cause,
 And 'ancient forms of party 'strife ;
 Ring in the nobler modes of life,
 With sweeter 'manners, purer laws.

Ring out the want, the care, the sin,
 The 'faithless 'coldness of the times ;
 Ring out, ring out my 'mournful 'rhymes,
 But ring the fuller 'minstrel in.

Ring out false pride in place and blood,
 The 'civic 'scandal and the spite ;
 Ring in the love of truth and right,
 Ring in the common love of good.

Ring out old shapes of foul 'disease ;
 Ring out the 'narrowing lust of gold ;
 Ring out the thousand wars of old,
 Ring in the thousand years of peace.

Ring in the 'valiant man and free,
 The larger heart, the kindlier hand ;
 Ring out the darkness of the land,—
 Ring in the Christ that is to be.

TENNYSON.

an'cient, antique'.

civ'ic, public.

cold'ness, unconcern'.

disease', pes'tilence.

faith'less, unbeliev'ing.

feud, quar'el.

man'ners, bear'ing.

min'strel, poet.

mourn'ful, sad.

nar'rowing, cramp'ing.

redress', repara'tion.

rhymes, verses.

scan'dal, slan'der.

strife, war'fare.

val'iant, brave.

THEY
 They
 rhet'
 spect

TILL
 he w
 prec
 read
 so.

musi
 at or

Ag

and

furth

soun

If yo
 beau

and i

I M

poetr

verse

prose

learn

diffic

once

Po

into p

ure ;—

in our

musin

buildi

in the

perha

and c

our ca

Sha

men d

thoug

may r

by me

RHETORICAL PASSAGES.

THE following pieces have been selected as examples of modern eloquence. They are to be used, alternately with the poetical extracts in the volume, for rhetorical reading and recitation. In connection with this important exercise, special attention is invited to the Introduction, "On Learning by Heart:"—

INTRODUCTION—ON LEARNING BY HEART.

TILL he has fairly tried it, I suspect a reader does not know how much he would gain from committing to memory passages of real excellence; precisely because he does not know how much he overlooks when merely reading. Learn one true poem by heart, and see if you do not find it so. Beauty after beauty will reveal itself, in chosen phrase, or happy music, or noble suggestion, otherwise undreamed of. It is like looking at one of Nature's wonders through a microscope.¹

Again: how much in such a poem that you really did feel admirable and lovely on a first reading, passes away, if you do not give it a further and much better reading!—passes away utterly, like a sweet sound, or an image on the lake, which the first breath of wind dispels. If you could only fix that image, as the photographers² do theirs, so beautifully, so perfectly! And you can do so! Learn it by heart, and it is yours for ever!

I have said, a true poem; for naturally men will choose to learn poetry—from the beginning of time they have done so. To immortal verse the memory gives a willing, a joyous, and a lasting home. Some prose, however, is poetical, is poetry, and altogether worthy to be learned by heart; and the learning is not so very difficult. It is not difficult or toilsome to learn that which pleases us; and the labour, once given, is forgotten, while the result remains.

Poems, and noble extracts, whether of verse or of prose, once so reduced into possession and rendered truly our own, may be to us a daily pleasure;—better far than a whole library unused. They may come to us in our dull moments, to refresh us as with spring flowers; in our selfish musings, to win us by pure delight from the tyranny of foolish castle-building, self-gratulations, and mean anxieties. They may be with us in the work-shop, in the crowded street, by the fireside; sometimes, perhaps, on pleasant hill-sides, or by sounding shores;—noble friends and companions—our own! never intrusive, ever at hand, coming at our call!

Shakespeare, Milton, Wordsworth, Tennyson,—the words of such men do not stale upon us, they do not grow old or cold.....Further: though you are young now, some day you may be old. Some day you may reach that time when a man lives in great part *for* memory and *by* memory. I can imagine a chance renewal, a chance visitation, of

the words long remembered, long garnered³ in the heart, and I think I see a gleam of rare joy in the eyes of the old man.

For those, in particular, whose leisure time is short, and precious as scant rations to beleaguered⁴ men, I believe there could not be a better expenditure of time than deliberately giving an occasional hour—it requires no more—to committing to memory chosen passages from great authors. If the mind were thus daily nourished with a few choice words of the best English poets and writers; if the habit of learning by heart were to become so general, that, as a matter of course, any person presuming to be educated might be expected to be equipped with a few good pieces,—I believe that it would lead, much more than the mere sound of it suggests, to the diffusion of the best kind of literature, and to the right appreciation of it; and that men would not long rest satisfied with knowing a few stock pieces.....

The only objection I can conceive to what I have been saying is, that a relish for higher literature may be said to be the result of cultivation, and to belong only to the few. But I do not admit that even the higher literature must belong only to the few. Poetry is, in the main, essentially catholic—addressed to all men; and though some poetry requires knowledge and culture, much, and that the noblest, needs only natural feeling and common experience. Such poetry, taken in moderation, followed with genuine good-will, shared in common, will be intelligible and delightful to most men who take the trouble to be students at all, and ever more and more so.

Perhaps, also, there may be a fragment of truth in what Charles Lamb⁵ has said,—that any *spouting* “withers and blows upon a fine passage;” that there is no enjoying it after it has been “pawed about by declamatory boys and men.” But surely there is a reasonable habit of recitation as well as an unreasonable one; there is no need of declamatory pawing. To abandon all recitation, is to give up a custom which has unquestionably given delight and instruction to all the races of mankind. If our faces are set against vain display, and set towards rational enjoyment of one another, we need not fear that our social evenings will be marred by an occasional recitation. And, moreover, it is not for reciting's sake that I chiefly recommend this most faithful form of reading—learning by heart.

I come back, therefore, to this, that learning by heart is a good thing, and that it is neglected among us. Why is it neglected? Partly because of our indolence; but partly, I believe, because we do not sufficiently consider that it *is* a good thing, and needs to be taken in hand. We need to be reminded of it. I here remind you. Like a town-crier, ringing my bell, I would say to you, “Oyez, oyez!” Lost, stolen, or strayed, a good ancient practice—the good ancient practice of learning by heart. Every finder shall be handsomely rewarded.”.....

If you ask, “What shall I learn?” the answer is, Do as you do with tunes—begin with what you sincerely like best, what you would most wish to remember, what you would most enjoy saying to yourself or

rep
“ke
prof
som

1 M
amir
2 E
cise
ing
surfa
3 S
4 E

STR,
hon
char
deny
of th
num

W
will
age
whic
if vi
The
thou
only
of 'a
hairs
be ab
virtu
'pros
spend

Bu
actin
some
sentin
anoth
lu

repeating to another. You will soon find the list inexhaustible. Then "keeping up" is easy. Every one has spare ten minutes: one of the problems of life is how to employ them usefully. You may well spend some in looking after and securing this good property you have won.

VERNON LUSHINGTON.

¹ *Microscope*, an instrument for examining very minute objects.

² *Photographers*, those who practise photography, or the art of producing pictures by the action of light on surfaces chemically prepared.

³ *Garnered*, stored as in a granary.

⁴ *Beleaguered*, besieged.

⁵ *Charles Lamb*, essayist; born 1775, at London; clerk in the India House. Author of *Essays of Elia*, *Prose Tales* founded on the *Plays of Shakespeare* (in conjunction with his sister Mary), and occasional poems. Died in 1835.

⁶ *Oyez, oyez!*—Hear, hear!—that is, listen.

PITT'S REPLY TO WALPOLE.

SIR,¹—The 'atrocious crime of being a young man, which the honourable gentleman² has, with such spirit and 'decency, charged upon me, I shall attempt neither to 'palliate nor to deny; but shall content myself with wishing, that I may be one of those whose follies cease with their youth, and not of that number who are ignorant in spite of experience.

Whether youth can be 'imputed to any man as a 'reproach, I will not, sir, assume the province of 'determining; but surely age may become justly 'contemptible, if the opportunities which it brings have passed away without improvement, and if vice appears to prevail when the passions have subsided. The wretch who, after having seen the consequences of a thousand errors, continues still to blunder, and whose age has only added 'obstinaacy to 'stupidity, is surely the object either of 'abhorrence or of contempt, and deserves not that his gray hairs should secure him from insult. Much more, sir, is he to be abhorred who, as he has advanced in age, has receded from virtue, and become more wicked with less temptation; who 'prostitutes himself for money which he cannot enjoy, and spends the remains of his life in the ruin of his country.

But youth, sir, is not my only crime: I have been accused of acting a 'theatrical part. A theatrical part may either imply some 'peculiarities of gesture, or a 'dissimulation of one's real sentiments, and an adoption of the opinions and language of another man.

In the first sense, sir, the charge is too trifling to be con-

futed, and deserves only to be 'mentioned that it may be 'despised. I am at liberty like every other man, to use my own language; and though, perhaps, I may have some ambition to please that gentleman,³ I shall not lay myself under any 'restraint, nor very 'solicitously copy his diction or his mien, however matured by age or modelled by experience.

But if any man shall, by charging me with theatrical 'behaviour, imply that I utter any sentiments but my own, I shall treat him as a 'calumniator and a villain; nor shall any protection shelter him from the treatment he deserves. I shall on such an occasion, without scruple, trample upon all those forms with which wealth and dignity 'intrench themselves; nor shall anything but age restrain my 'resentment—age, which always brings one privilege, that of being insolent and 'supercilious without punishment.

But with regard, sir, to those whom I have offended, I am of opinion, that if I had acted a borrowed part, I should have avoided their censure. The heat that offended them is the ardour of conviction, and that zeal for the service of my country which neither hope nor fear shall influence me to suppress. I will not sit 'unconcerned while my liberty is invaded, nor look in silence upon public robbery. I will exert my endeavours, at whatever 'hazard, to repel the aggressor, and drag the thief to justice, whoever may protect him in his villany, and whoever may partake of his plunder.

WILLIAM PITT.⁴

abhor'ence, detesta-
tion.
atro'cious, fla'grant.
behāv'our, con'duct.
calum'niator, slan'derer.
contemp'tible, despi-
cable.
de'cency, propri'ety.
despised, scorned.
deter'mining, decid'ing.

dissimula'tion, falsify-
hazard, risk. [ing.
impū'ted, ascribed'.
intrench', fortify.
men'tioned, named.
ob'stinacy, stub'born-
ness.
pal'liate, excuse'.
peculiar'ities, od'dities.
pros'titutes, debās'es.

reproach', discre'tit.
resent'ment, indigna-
tion.
restraint', check.
soli'citously, anx'iously.
stup'idity, folly.
supercil'ious, disdain'-
ful.
theāt'rical, dramatic.
unconcerned', heed'less.

¹ Sir.—The Speaker of the House of Commons, who presides at its meetings, and to whom all speeches are addressed. He is so called because he is the spokesman or representative, of the people in approaching the Sovereign. In the House of Lords, speeches are addressed to the members collectively: as, "My Lords," "Your Lordships," &c.

² The honourable gentleman.—The form used by members of the House of Commons when referring to one another in debates. Members of the Privy Council are called "Right honourable." It is a breach of etiquette to refer to members of the House by name. They are spoken of as "The member for the city of Lon-

dor
of
pol
Cha
stat
Com
and
vige

WA
the
ing
tim
T
wh
'car
sanc
and
is h
rema
that

T
ing
the t
and
lie fa
tant
begin
Ocea
we di
the i
yond
WH
contin
eat u
stepp
his m

don," "The member for the University of Oxford," &c.

³ That gentleman,—Sir Robert Walpole.

⁴ William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham, one of England's greatest statesmen. He entered the House of Commons in his twenty-seventh year, and soon distinguished himself by the vigour of his attacks on Sir Robert

Walpole. In the course of a debate in 1740, Walpole, then sixty-four—exactly double Pitt's age—taunted the latter with his youth and inexperience. This gave occasion to Pitt's famous "Reply;" but there is reason to believe that much of its antithetical point is due to Samuel Johnson, who "reported" it in *The Gentleman's Magazine*. Walpole died in 1745, Pitt in 1778.

TRACES OF OCEAN.

Was it the sound of the distant surf that was in mine ears, or the low moan of the breeze as it crept through the 'neighbouring wood? Oh, that hoarse voice of Ocean, never silent since time began—where has it not been uttered?

There is stillness amid the calm of the arid and rainless desert, where no spring rises and no 'streamlet flows, and the long 'caravan plies its weary march amid the blinding glare of the sand, and the red unshaded rays of the fierce sun. But once and again, and yet again, has the roar of Ocean been there. It is *his* sands that the winds heap up; and it is the skeleton remains of his 'vassals—shells and fishes, and the stony coral—that the rocks underneath enclose.

There is silence on the tall mountain-peak, with its 'glittering mantle of snow, where the panting lungs labour to inhale the thin, bleak air; where no insect 'murmurs and no bird flies, and where the eye wanders over 'multitudinous hill-tops that lie far beneath, and vast dark forests that sweep on to the distant 'horizon, and along deep valleys where the great rivers begin. But once and again, and yet again, has the roar of Ocean been there. The 'elegies of his more ancient 'denizens we find sculptured on the crags,¹ where they jut from beneath the ice and the mist-wreath; and his later beaches,² stage beyond stage, terrace the descending slopes.

Where has the great destroyer not been—the devourer of continents, the blue foaming dragon whose 'vocation it is to eat up the land? His ice-floes³ have alike 'furrowed the flat steppes of Siberia⁴ and the rocky flanks of Schiehallion;⁵ and his nummulites⁶ and fish lie embedded in great stones of the

Pyramids, hewn in the times of the Pharaohs, and in rocky folds of Lebanon still untouched by the tool.

As long as Ocean exists there must be 'disintegration, 'dilapidation, change; and should the time ever arrive when the elevatory agencies,⁷ motionless and chill, shall sleep within their 'profound depths to awake no more, and should the sea still continue to 'impel its currents and to roll its waves, every continent and island would at length disappear, and again, as of old, when "the fountains of the great deep were broken up,"⁸

"A shoreless ocean tumble round the globe."

HUGH MILLER.*

car'avan, company of travellers.	fur'rowed, ploughed.	mur'murs, hums.
den'izens, inhab'itants.	glit'tering, spark'ling.	neigh'bouring, adja'cent
dilapida'tion, decay'.	hori'zon, meeting-line of earth and sky.	profound', far-reaching.
disintegra'tion, separa'tion into parts.	impel', drive.	stream'let, little stream.
el'egies, fune'real songs.	multitu'dinous, nu'merous.	vas'sals, ser'vants.
		voca'tion, appoint'ed work.

¹ Sculptured on the crags, refers to the traces of the action of water and icebergs on rocks now elevated miles above the surface of the ocean.

² Later beaches, refers to such instances as the so-called "parallel roads" of Glenroy, in Inverness-shire. These terraces, which occur in pairs of the same level on opposite sides of the valley, are now universally admitted to be a series of sea-beaches.

³ Ice-floes, floating masses of ice.

⁴ Steppes of Siberia.—The vast plains of Asiatic Russia are so called.

⁵ Schiehallion, a lofty and majestic mountain in Perthshire.

⁶ Num mulite, a flat fossil resembling a coin. [Lat. *nummus*, coin, money; Gr. *lithos*, stone.]

⁷ Elevatory agencies, the agencies

which elevate the land, raising it higher out of the ocean. For example, the Scandinavian coasts, both eastern and western, are slowly rising. So are the west coasts of Italy, and the north-west of Hindostan. What the agencies are is unknown.

⁸ When the fountains, &c.—See *Gen.* vii. 11.

* Hugh Miller, an eminent geologist, was born at Cromarty in 1802. He worked many years as a stone-mason; but, giving his leisure to study, he became a recognised authority in geological science, and one of the most vigorous and picturesque writers of his day. Chief works, *The Old Red Sandstone*, *First Impressions of England and its People*, and *My Schools and Schoolmasters*. Died 1856.

THE HUNGARIAN REVOLUTION.

THREE years ago yonder House of Austria,—which had chiefly me to thank for not having been swept away by the revolution of Vienna¹ in March 1848,—having, in return, 'answered by the most foul, most 'sacrilegious conspiracy against the 'char-

tered rights, freedom, and national existence of my native land, it became my duty, being then a member of the Ministry, with 'undisguised truth to lay before the Parliament of Hungary the immense danger of our bleeding fatherland. Having made the sketch, (which, however dreadful, could be but a faint shadow of the horrible reality,) I proceeded to explain the 'alternative which our terrible 'destiny left to us, after the failure of all our attempts to avert the evil—to present the neck of the realm to the stroke aimed at its very life, or to bear up against the horrors of fate, and manfully to fight the battle of 'legitimate defence. Scarcely had I spoken the words,—scarcely had I added that the defence would require two hundred thousand men and eighty millions of florins,—when the spirit of freedom moved through the hall; nearly four hundred 'representatives rose as one man, and, lifting their right arms towards Heaven, 'solemnly said, "We grant it—freedom or death!"

There they stood, with uplifted arms, in calm and silent majesty, awaiting what further words might fall from my lips. And for myself,—it was my duty to speak, but the 'grandeur of the moment and the rushing waves of 'sentiment 'benumbed my tongue. A burning tear fell from my eye, a sigh of 'adoration to the Almighty fluttered on my lips; and bowing low before the majesty of my people, as I bow now before you, gentlemen, I left the 'tribunal silently—speechless, mute.

Pardon me my emotion,—the shadows of our 'martyrs pass before my eyes; I hear the millions of my native land once more shouting "Freedom or death!" As I was then, sirs, so am I now.² I would thank you, gentlemen, for the generous 'sympathy with which, in my 'undeserving person, you have honoured the bleeding, the 'oppressed, but not broken, Hungary. I would thank you for the ray of hope which the sympathy of the English people casts on the night of our fate. I would thank you, gentlemen, warmly as I feel, and as becomes the 'dignity of your glorious land. But the words fail me: they fail me, not only from want of knowledge of your language, but chiefly because my sentiments are deep, and 'fervent, and true. The tongue of man is powerful enough to render the ideas which the human intellect conceives; but in the realm of true and deep sentiments, it is but a weak 'interpreter. These are 'inexpressible, like the endless glory of the 'Omnipotent.

LOUIS KOSSUTH.³

adora'tion, wor'ship.
alter'native, choice be-
tween two courses.
an'swered, respond'ed.
benumbed', paralyzed.
char'tered, guaranteed'.
des'tiny, fate.
dig'nity, no'bleness.
fer'vent, glowing.
gran'deur, sublim'ity.

inexpress'ible, unut'ter-
able.
inter'preter, expos'itor.
legit'imate, law'ful.
mar'tyrs, suf'ferers for
pa'triotism.
Omnip'otent, Almighty.
oppressed', per'secuted.
represen'tatives, mem-
bers of Parli'ament.

sacri'legious, im pious.
sen'timent, feel'ing.
sol'emnly, ear'nestly.
sym'pathy, fellow-feel-
ing.
tribu'tal, ros'trum; plat'-
form.
undeserv'ing, unwor-
thy.
undisguis'ed', open.

¹ **Revolution of Vienna.**—The French Revolution of 1848 was accompanied by sympathetic movements in Bavaria, Italy, Austria, Hungary, and Slavonia. The insurrection in Vienna on 13th March led to serious consequences. In May the Emperor Ferdinand fled. He returned to Vienna in August; but a further outbreak in October forced him to abdicate. In December he was succeeded by Francis-Joseph, the reigning Emperor.

² **So am I now.**—This speech was delivered by Kossuth at a banquet held in his honour during his visit to England in 1851.

³ **Louis Kos'suth.**—The leader of

the Hungarian insurrection of 1848. In 1849 Hungary declared herself a Free State, with Kossuth as Supreme Governor (April). Hostilities then began, in which Austria was aided by Russia. The war continued with varying success till August, when the Hungarians were utterly defeated. Kossuth fled to Turkey; where, by the study of Shakespeare and other English classics, he acquired that marvellous power over our language which made him one of the most eloquent English orators of his day. He has lived in exile since 1849. In 1868 he was elected a member of the Hungarian legislature, but declined the office.

LORD BROUGHAM ON NEGRO SLAVERY.¹

I TRUST that at length the time is come when Parliament will no longer bear to be told, that slave-owners are the best 'law-givers on slavery—no longer suffer our voice to roll across the Atlantic in empty warnings and fruitless orders. Tell me not of rights—talk not of the property of the planter in his slaves. I deny his right—I 'acknowledge not the property. The principles, the feelings of our common nature, rise in rebellion against it. Be the appeal made to the 'understanding or to the heart, the sentence that rejects it is the same.

In vain you tell me of laws that sanction such a claim! There is a law above all the 'enactments of human codes—the same throughout the world—the same in all times. Such as it was before the daring genius of Columbus² pierced the night of ages—opening to one world the sources of power, wealth, and knowledge, to another all 'unutterable woes—such is it at

this day. It is the law written by the finger of God on the heart of man; and by that law, 'unchangeable and eternal, while men despise fraud, and loathe rapine, and hate blood, they shall reject with indignation the wild and guilty 'phantasy, that man can hold property in man!

In vain you appeal to treaties, to covenants between nations. The covenants of the Almighty, whether the old covenant or the new, 'denounce such unholy 'pretensions. To these laws did they of old refer who maintained the African trade. Such treaties did they cite, and not untruly; for, by one shameful 'compact,³ you 'bartered the glories of Blenheim for the traffic in blood. Yet, in despite of law and of treaty, that infernal traffic is now destroyed, and its votaries are put to death like other pirates.

How came this change to pass? Not, assuredly, by 'Parliament leading the way: but the country at length awoke; the indignation of the people was kindled; it 'descended in thunder, and smote the traffic, and 'scattered its guilty profits to the winds.

Now, then, let the planters beware—let their assemblies beware—let the Government at home beware—let the Parliament beware! The same country is once more awake—awake to the condition of negro slavery; the same indignation kindles in the bosom of the same people; the same cloud is gathering, that 'annihilated the slave-trade;⁴ and if it shall descend again, they on whom its crash may fall will not be destroyed before I have warned them; but I pray that their 'destruction may turn away from us the more terrible 'judgments of God.

HENRY, LORD BROUGHAM.⁵

acknowl'dge, admit'.
annihilated, destroyed'.
bar'tered, exchanged'.
com'pact, agree'ment.
denounce', ex'ecrate.
descend'ed, came down.
destruc'tion, o'verthrow.

enact'ments, laws.
judg'ments, visita'tions.
law-givers, legis'lators.
Parliament, the Leg-
islature.
phan'tasy, illu'sion.
preten'sions, claims.

scat'tered, dispersed'.
unchange'able, unal'ter-
able.
understand'ing, intel-
lect.
unut'terable, unspeak'-
able.

¹ Negro slavery.—The slave trade, —that is, the traffic in slaves between the coast of Africa and America,—was abolished by Parliament in 1807. But slavery existed as an institution in the British West Indian colonies till August 1834, when the slaves were

emancipated by an Act passed in August 1833. Lord Brougham's advocacy helped powerfully to bring about that result. The above passage is from the speech with which he opened the question on July 13, 1830, by asking "the House of Commons to resolve that the state

of slavery in our colonies should be taken into consideration at the earliest practicable period of the next session, with a view to the present mitigation and final extinction of slavery." The compensation given to the slave owners by Parliament amounted to twenty millions sterling.

² Columbus discovered the New World in 1492. (See LIVES OF GREAT MEN, p. 362.)

³ Shameful compact.—By the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713 the British Government engaged to furnish 4800 negroes annually to Spanish America for thirty years. The Battle of Blenheim (1704) was one of Marlborough's great victories, which led to the Treaty of Utrecht. The compact was renewed

under the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748, but it was abandoned in 1750. *Asiento* is the name by which slave contracts with the King of Spain are known in history.

⁴ Annihilated the slave trade.—In 1833-4, as explained in Note 1.

⁵ Henry, Lord Brougham, a distinguished statesman and orator, was born at Edinburgh in 1778. He entered the House of Commons in 1810, and was there the champion of parliamentary reform, of popular education, and of civil and religious freedom. He was Lord Chancellor from 1830 till 1835. He devoted the remainder of his long life to scientific and literary pursuits, and to law reform. He died in 1868.

CHATHAM ON THE AMERICAN WAR.

I CANNOT, my lords, I will not, join in 'congratulation on misfortune and disgrace.¹ This, my lords, is a 'perilous and tremendous moment. It is not a time for 'adulation; the smoothness of flattery cannot save us in this rugged and awful crisis. It is now necessary to instruct the Throne in the language of truth. We must, if possible, dispel the 'delusion and darkness which envelop it, and display, in its full danger and genuine colours, the ruin which is brought to our doors.

Can ministers still presume to expect support in their 'infatuation? Can Parliament be so dead to its dignity and duty as to give its support to measures thus 'obtruded and forced upon it,—measures, my lords, which have reduced this late flourishing empire to scorn and contempt? "But yesterday, and Britain might have stood against the world: now, none so poor as to do her reverence."²

The people whom we at first despised as rebels, but whom we now 'acknowledge as enemies, are 'abetted against us—supplied with every military store, have their interest consulted, and their 'ambassadors entertained—by our 'inveterate enemy;³ and ministers do not, and dare not, interpose with dignity or effect.

The 'desperate state of our army abroad is in part known.

No man more highly esteems and honours the British troops than I do. I know their virtues and their valour. I know they can 'achieve anything but impossibilities; and I know that the conquest of British America is an impossibility.

You cannot, my lords, you cannot conquer America. What is your present situation there? We do not know the worst; but we do know that in three 'campaigns we have done nothing, and suffered much. You may swell every expense, 'accumulate every assistance, and extend your traffic to the 'shambles of every German despot; your attempts will be forever vain and impotent: doubly so, indeed, from this 'mercenary aid on which you rely; for it irritates, to an incurable 'resentment, the minds of your adversaries, to overrun them with the mercenary sons of rapine and plunder, devoting them and their possessions to the 'rapacity of hireling cruelty.

If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop remained in my country I *never* would lay down my arms;—*never!*—*NEVER!*—*NEVER!*

But, my lords, who is the man that, in addition to the disgraces and mischiefs of the war, has dared to 'authorize and associate to our arms the *tomahawk* and the *scalping-knife*⁴ of the savage?—to call into civilized alliance the wild and inhuman inhabitant of the woods?—to 'delegate to the merciless Indian the defence of disputed rights, and to wage the horrors of his barbarous war against our brethren? My lords, these 'enormities cry aloud for redress and punishment.

But, my lords, this barbarous measure has been defended, not only on the principles of policy and necessity, but also on those of morality; "for it is perfectly allowable," says Lord Suffolk, "to use all the means which God and nature have put into our hands"! I am 'astonished, I am shocked, to hear such principles confessed,—to hear them avowed in this house or in this country.

My lords, I did not intend to 'encroach so much on your attention, but I cannot repress my 'indignation—I feel myself impelled to speak. My lords, we are called upon, as members of this House, as men, as Christians, to protest against this horrible barbarity. "That God and nature have put into our hands"! What ideas of God and nature that noble lord may entertain, I know not; but I know that such 'detestable principles are equally 'abhorrent to religion and to humanity.

What! to attribute the sacred 'sanction of God and nature to the massacres of the Indian scalping-knife!—to the cannibal savage, torturing, murdering, devouring, drinking the blood of his mangled victims! Such notions shock every 'precept of morality, every feeling of humanity, every 'sentiment of honour. These abominable principles, and this more abominable avowal of them, demand the most 'decisive indignation.

I call upon that right reverend and this most learned bench⁵ to 'vindicate the religion of their God, to support the justice of their country. I call upon the bishops to interpose the 'unsullied sanctity of their lawn,⁶—upon the judges to interpose the purity of their ermine,⁷ to save us from this pollution. I call upon the honour of your lordships to reverence the dignity of your ancestors, and to maintain your own. I call upon the spirit and humanity of my country to vindicate the national character. I 'invoke the genius of the constitution.

To send forth the merciless cannibal, thirsting for blood!—against whom? Our brethren!—To lay waste their country, to 'desolate their dwellings, and 'extirpate their race and name, by the aid and instrumentality of these horrible hounds of war!

Spain can no longer boast 'preëminence in barbarity. She armed herself with blood-hounds to extirpate the wretched natives of Mexico!⁸ We, more 'ruthless, loose these dogs of war against our countrymen in America, endeared to us by every tie that can sanctify humanity!

I solemnly call upon your lordships, and upon every order of men in the State, to stamp upon this infamous procedure the 'indelible 'stigma of public abhorrence. More particularly, I call upon the holy prelates of our religion to do away this iniquity: let them perform a lustration,⁹ to purify the country from this deep and deadly sin.

My lords, I am old and weak, and at present unable to say more; but my feelings of indignation were too strong to have said less. I could not have slept this night in my bed, nor even reposed my head upon my pillow, without giving vent to my eternal abhorrence of such enormous and 'preposterous principles.

WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF CHATHAM.

abet'ted, encouraged.
abhor'rent, repug'nant.
accu'mulate, heap up

achieve', accomplish.
acknowl'edge, recognise
adula'tion, flattery.

ambas'sadors, envoys.
aston'ished, surprised'.
au'thorize, permit'.

campaigns', seasons of war.	extirpate, root out.	preposterous, ridiculous.
congratulation, compliment.	indelible, ineffaceable.	rapacity, voracity.
decisive, determined.	indignation, scornful rage.	resentment, anger.
delegate, depute.	infatuation, madness.	ruthless, pitiless.
delsion, deception.	inveterate, confirmed.	sanc'tion, approval.
desolate, ravage.	invoke', call down.	sentiment, feeling.
desperate, hopeless.	mercenary, hireling.	shambles, slaughter-house, or meat-market.
detestable, hateful.	obtruded, thrust.	stigma, brand.
encroach', trespass. (ties.)	perilous, dangerous.	unsullied, spotless.
enormities, monstrous.	precept, rule. (ity.)	vindicate, maintain'.
	preem'inance, superior'.	

¹ Misfortune and disgrace.—This speech was delivered in the House of Lords by Chatham in 1777, when the Government (Lord North's) was taking credit to itself for the victories of Lord Cornwallis at Brandywine and Philadelphia. Chatham considered that these victories over men of the same race were a "misfortune and disgrace." This is sometimes supposed to have been his last speech, at the end of which he fell down in an apoplectic fit. But that speech was, in tendency, directly the opposite of this one. It was made on April 7, 1778, in opposition to a motion to put an end to the war. Chatham was then as strongly opposed to the dismemberment of the empire as he had formerly been to the coercion of the colonies. He could do no more, however, than mutter a few rambling sentences, when he fell down, and died a few weeks afterwards, May 11, 1778.

² Now none so poor, &c.—Varied from Mark Antony's oration over the body of Cæsar:—

"But yesterday, the word of Cæsar might

Have stood against the world: now lies he there,

And none so poor to do him reverence."

Julius Cæsar, Act III., Scene 2.

³ Our inveterate enemy.—France,

which, at the beginning of the third campaign (1777), sent both men and money to the colonists.

⁴ Tom'ahawk and scalping-knife.

—The former is a war-hatchet used by the North American Indians. The blade was originally of stone. With the *scalping-knife* the Red Indians were wont to cut off the hairy scalps of their enemies, and preserve them as trophies.

⁵ That right reverend and this most learned bench.—The bench of bishops and that of judges.

⁶ Lawn.—Bishops are distinguished by wearing wide sleeves of white lawn, or fine linen.

⁷ Er'mine.—The robes of judges are usually lined or trimmed with ermine fur, which is therefore emblematic of purity.

⁸ Mexico.—Discovered in 1517, it was conquered for Spain by Fernando Cortez, between 1519 and 1521. Montezuma, the native emperor, was cruelly murdered, and many other barbarities were committed by the Spaniards.

⁹ A lustration.—A service of purification performed by the priests in ancient Rome. A stated ceremony (*lustrum*) was performed, after the taking of the census, every fifth year. Hence *lustrum* was applied to a period of five years. The root is, Lat. *luo*, I pay a debt; or, I avert calamity by expiation.

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

WHEN we call a cunning man, a *fox*; a beautiful girl, a *lily*; a fertile land, a *garden*; or the moon, the *lamp of night*—we use the words *fox*, *lily*, &c., not in their ordinary or literal sense, but with a fanciful application. The special forms of language used in this way are called the Figures of Speech. The use of these figures makes a writer's style, or manner of writing, graceful and lively.

The common figures are—1. Simile; 2. Metaphor; 3. Personification; 4. Apostrophe; 5. Interrogation; 6. Exclamation; 7. Climax.

1. Simile expressly compares two objects, for the purpose of assigning to the one some property or properties belonging to the other; as,—

"Charity, *like the sun*, brightens every object on which it shines."

Here the two objects compared are *charity* and *the sun*. The object of the figure is to illustrate the effects of charity by comparing them to the well-known brightening influences of sunlight.

A simile is always introduced by the word *like*, or *as*.

2. Metaphor also compares two objects; but it treats the one as if it really were the other; as,—

"Charity warms and brightens every object on which it shines."

Here charity is not said to be *like* the sun, but is spoken of as if it actually were the sun.

3. Personification speaks of the lower animals and things without mind as if they were human beings; as,—

"All the trees of the field shall *clap their hands*."

A work like "The Pilgrim's Progress," in which personification and metaphor are used throughout, is called an *Allegory*. *Parables* and *Fables* belong to the same class.

4. Apostrophe turns aside from the main line of thought to address the absent or the lifeless; as,—

"Then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. *O Death! where is thy sting?*"

5. Interrogation asks a question for the purpose of making an assertion in a striking and lively way; as,—

"Have not the ministers promised to support the measure?" That is to say, The ministers *have* promised to do so.

6. Exclamation asserts in the form of an interjection; as,—

"How beautiful is night!" That is to say, Night is very beautiful.

7. Climax makes a series of statements, increasing in force and dignity as they advance; as,—

"What a piece of work is man! How noble in reason! how infinite in faculties! in form and moving, how express and admirable! in action, how like an angel! in apprehension, how like a god!"

DICTATION EXERCISES.

ON SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS.

The plan adopted in the following Exercises is to select a word representing a familiar idea, with its opposite; to place a few synonyms under each; and to follow these by short sentences, showing the proper use of each word. These sentences are to be used as Dictation Exercises.

Synonyms are words of similar meaning; as *joy, gladness; sorrow, grief.*

Antonyms are words of opposite meaning; as *joy, sorrow; gladness, grief.*

begin.

commence.
initiate.
inaugurate.

end.

conclude.
perfect.
consummate.

EXERCISE.—A river *begins* at its source. The year *begins* on the first of January, and *ends* on the last of December. An army *commences* operations in spring, and *concludes* them in autumn. We *initiate* a student in a certain study, but he must *perfect* himself. A great movement, such as the abolition of slavery, is *inaugurated* and *consummated*. A dignitary is *inaugurated* when he is inducted into office. Proceedings *commence* and *conclude*. A struggle *begins* and *ends*.

later.

latter.
this.

earlier.

former.
that.

EXERCISE.—A *later* train; a *later* edition. An *earlier* delivery. The *latter* of two trains, or editions. His *former* situation. The difference between education and instruction is, that the *former* trains the mind;

the *latter* fills it with information; —*that* draws out and stimulates its powers; *this* stores and often clogs it.

accomplish.

execute.
achieve.
perform.
promote.

fail.

defeat.
frustrate.
mar.
baffle.

EXERCISE.—We either *accomplish* an object, or we *fail* in it. A general has to *execute* his own projects, as well as to *defeat* those of the enemy. Great designs are often *frustrated*; seldom *achieved*. It is often easier to *mar* other folk's work than to *perform* our own. A scheme is *promoted* by its friends; *baffled* by its enemies. A schemer is *baffled*, as well as his design. It is easier to promise than to *perform*.

prosecute.

remain.
support.
protect.
vindicate.
retain.

abandon.

leave.
forsake.
desert.
renounce.
relinquish.

EXERCISE.—We *abandon* studies which it is not profitable to *prosecute*. A man *leaves* the party in which he does not wish to *remain*. Friends are *forsaken* and *deserted* by those who ought to *support* and *protect* them. We should *renounce* opinions which we cannot *vindicate*. We *relinquish* an office when we cannot *retain* it. A son often *deserts* the cause which his father *supported*. We *relinquish* purposes. We *abandon* principles. We *leave* the country.

constant.

continual.
continuous.
perpetual.
uniform.

irregular.

interrupted.
broken.
limited.
variable.

EXERCISE.—A *constant* friend, is one who never fails us. A *constant* demand, is one that never declines. An *irregular* demand rises and falls. A *continual* struggle, is one that has never been interrupted. A *continuous* line of railway, is one which is *broken* at no point. *Perpetual* banishment, is that to which there is no end. That which has an end is *limited*. A *uniform* standard; a *variable* standard. *Uniform* courtesies; *variable* winds.

beautiful.

lovely.
elegant.
graceful.
picturesque.
sublime.
grand.

ugly.

plain-looking.
deformed.
awkward.
tame.
ridiculous.
paltry.

EXERCISE.—A *beautiful* face. An *ugly* man. A *lovely* child. A *plain-*

looking girl. An *ugly* trick. An *elegant* form. A *deformed* limb. A *graceful* movement. An *awkward* movement. A *graceful* action. A *graceful* compliment. An *awkward* mistake. *Picturesque* scenery is the reverse of *tame*. A *sublime* thought. A *ridiculous* fancy. A *ridiculous* blunder. A *grand* scheme. A *paltry* contrivance.

praise.

commend.
approve.
exonerate.
encourage.

blame.

censure.
reprove.
rebuke.
chide.

EXERCISE.—A master *blames* or he *praises* his servant. A critic *censures* or *commends* a book or a course of action. *Reproof* and *rebuke* are stronger than simple *blame*; they are *blame* expressed in words addressed to the object of it. To *exonerate*, is to relieve from a burden of blame. We *exonerate* one from a charge. A parent lovingly *chides* his child when he does wrong, and *encourages* him when he is doing right.

timid.

fearful.
spiritless.
cowardly.
craven.

bold.

fearless.
courageous.
brave.
chivalrous.

EXERCISE.—A *bold* man. A *bold* step. A *bold* adventure. A *timid* girl. *Timid* policy. A *fearless* foe. A *fearful* calamity, is one that excites fear. A *courageous* spirit. *Spiritless* conduct. A *brave* soldier. A *cowardly* act. A *chivalrous* en-

terp'se. A *chivalrous* spirit. A *craven* spirit. *Craven* fears.

coarse.

rough.
rude.

refined.

gentle.
polished.

EXERCISE.—*Coarse* language is the sign of a vulgar mind. *Refined* taste accompanies delicacy of feeling. Manners are *rough* or *gentle*. A *rough* sailor; a *gentle* nurse. A *rough* storm; a *gentle* breeze. *Rude* language is a sign of ignorance; *polished* language, of education. A *rude* shock. *Rude* behaviour; *polished* manners. A *polished* style of writing.

accurate.

careful.
exact.
faithful.
precise.

inaccurate.

careless.
incorrect.
faulty.
defective.

EXERCISE.—An *accurate* history is the work of a *careful* historian. A *careless* observer makes *inaccurate* statements. There may be an *exact* copy of an *incorrect* drawing. A narrative may be *precise* as far as it goes, and yet may be *defective* in some particulars. A *faithful* portrait may yet be a *faulty* picture. A *faithful* friend. A *careful* student. A *defective* education.

reject.

refuse.
repudiate.
disclaim.
deny.

admit.

grant.
acknowledge.
avow.
confess.

EXERCISE.—We often *admit* facts while we *reject* the inferences drawn

from them. A man may *confess* that he has been careless, but *deny* that he has been fraudulent. He may *acknowledge* the charge of neglect, but *repudiate* the charge of fraud. A prisoner has often *avowed* his guilt after *disclaiming* all knowledge of the crime. We *repudiate* friends whom we do not wish to *acknowledge*. We *confess* our faults. We *refuse* requests which we cannot *grant*. Permission is *refused*, or it is *granted*.

benefit.

advantage.
profit.
favour.
service.

injury.

disadvantage.
loss.
hindrance.
disservice.

EXERCISE.—*Benefits* and *injuries* are properly acts. *Advantage* and *disadvantage* are properly states of superiority and inferiority respectively. We confer *benefits*. We do *injuries*. We enjoy *advantages*. We lie under *disadvantages*. We have or gain *profit*. We suffer *loss*. *Favours* come from superiors; *services* from inferiors or from equals. *Hindrance* prevents us from acting; *disservice* acts so, as to do us harm.

deny.

dispute.
contradict.
oppose.

affirm.

assert.
declare.
maintain.

EXERCISE.—We *affirm* or *deny* statements. We *assert* or *dispute* rights and claims. We *declare* intentions and convictions. We *contradict* what we do not believe. We *maintain* a cause, and we *oppose* an enemy. Men are prone

both to *affirm* and to *deny* without sufficient knowledge. He *asserted* his rights with calmness, and *maintained* them with courage. His claim was *disputed* by his cousin, who *opposed* him with all his might. Witnesses, in giving evidence, often *contradict* one another, sometimes even themselves.

common.

ordinary.
vulgar.
mean.

rare.

remarkable.
polite.
noble.

EXERCISE.—*Common* things are cheap; *rare* things are dear. A man of *common* education. A man of *rare* ability. An *ordinary* occurrence. A *remarkable* genius. A *remarkable* result. The manners of an uneducated man are *vulgar*; those of one who has mixed in good society are *polite*. A *mean* action. A *mean* spirit. A *mean* advantage. A *mean* trick. A *mean* fellow. A *noble* action. *Noble* conduct. A *noble* institution.

increase.

enlarge.
magnify.
aggravate.
augment.

abate.

lessen.
diminish.
mitigate.
reduce.

EXERCISE.—A storm *abates* or *increases*. Our interest in a subject *abates* or *increases*. Hope *lessens*. Projects are *enlarged*. Strength is often *diminished* in reality when it is *magnified* by report. When an offence is *aggravated* by previous misconduct, punishment is not likely to be *mitigated*. A man's income may

be *reduced* or *augmented*. Friendship *magnifies* a man's merits, and *lessens* his faults.

authentic.

genuine.
true.
real.

fictitious.

spurious.
false.
counterfeit.

EXERCISE.—An *authentic* history, is one whose statements may be accepted as facts. A *genuine* work, is one which is really the production of the author whose name it bears. A work which is not *genuine* as to its authorship, is *spurious*; a work which is not *authentic* as to its facts, is *unreliable* or *fictitious*. A *true* or a *false* statement. A *true* friend. A *false* impression. *Real* diamonds. *Counterfeit* gems.

neglect.

omission.
disregard.
contempt.

attention.

observance.
regard.
esteem.

EXERCISE.—*Neglect* of duty is a serious fault, deserving punishment; *neglect* of parents or friends dependent on us is culpable in the highest degree. An *omission* may be the result of accident, and is a less serious offence. *Attention* implies more effort of will than simple *observance*. Culpable *neglect*. A slight *omission*. Close *attention* to duty. Regular *observance* of the laws. We have *regard* for friends; we *disregard* advice. We *esteem* honour, and feel *contempt* for meanness. *Regard* for the truth. *Sabbath observance*. *Contempt* of court.

PARAPHRASING.

A PARAPHRASE expresses the meaning of a passage of prose or of poetry in different language. The change made is one of form or expression only, not of substance or of thought. A paraphrase resembles a free translation; a translation, that is, which does not follow the original, word by word, but gives its pith or spirit in a new and independent form.

The order of the ideas in the original should be retained, as well as their relative importance; that is to say, those thoughts to which most prominence is given in the original must be most prominent also in the paraphrase: but it is not necessary to retain every detail, even in an altered form. The following are examples of the changes usually made in paraphrasing short passages:—

1. Change of expression; as,—

"The power of Fortune is confessed only by the miserable; for the happy impute all their success to prudence and merit."

Changed:

The influence of Fortune is admitted only by the *unfortunate*; for the *prosperous* ascribe all their success to *forethought* and merit.

2. Change of order; as,—

"In all speculations on men and on human affairs, it is of no small moment to distinguish things of accident from permanent causes."

Changed:

To distinguish things of accident from permanent causes, is of no small moment in all speculations on men and on human affairs.

3. Change of construction; as,—

"What passion cannot music raise and quell?"

Changed:

There is no passion which music cannot raise and quell.

Or,

Every passion can be raised and quelled by music.

4. Change of figures into plain language; as,—

(1.) "And now the rising morn with rosy light
Adorns the skies, and puts the stars to flight."

Changed:

And now day breaks

Or,

And now morning begins to dawn.

(2.) "Now came still evening on, and twilight gray
Had in her sober livery all things clad."

Changed:

Evening stole over the landscape, and all nature was covered with the gray shades of twilight.

5. Change of words peculiar to poetry; as,—

"My sire Anchises."

Changed :

My father Anchises.

6. Putting a general word for particulars; as,—

"Helm, axe, and falchion glittered bright."

Changed :

Arms and armour gleamed brightly.

7. Change of figure; as,—

"The evil that men do lives after them ;
The good is often interred with their bones."

Changed :

Men's evil deeds are recorded on brass ; their good ones are often written in water.

8. Omission of unnecessary remarks and ornaments of style; as,—

"Wide o'er the sky the splendour glows,
As that portentous meteor rose ;
Helm, axe, and falchion glittered bright,
And in the red and dusky light
His comrade's face each warrior saw,
Nor marvelled it was pale with awe.
Then high in air the beams were lost,
And darkness sank upon the coast."

Paraphrased :

As the meteor rose higher and higher, and its brightness increased, the faces of the warriors turned pale from fear. At last, when high up in the heavens, it disappeared, and all was dark.

It is necessary that the pupil should make himself completely master of the passage to be paraphrased. Any vague or erroneous conception formed in his mind will inevitably be reproduced in the paraphrase. One of the chief ends of paraphrase is to ascertain whether the pupil has understood the passage. If he has fairly grasped the author's meaning, he will have comparatively little difficulty in expressing it in words of his own.

*** The best way to write a paraphrase of a passage, either of prose or of poetry, is first to frame a series of questions on its subject-matter. These questions will bring out clearly the salient points in the passage; and the answers to them—put in the form of complete sentences, and linked together by whatever connecting phrases may be required—will form a complete and lucid paraphrase, having the freedom and freshness of an original composition.

The questions appended to the following passages for paraphrasing are intended to be used in this way. In the case of the first of them, the answers to the questions forming the paraphrase are also given. For condensed paraphrase of prose narrative, any of the lessons in the book may be selected, as is illustrated at p. 294.

PASSAGES FOR PARAPHRASING.

THE LAST DAYS OF GEORGE III.

"HE was not only sightless, he also became utterly deaf. All light, all reason, all sound of human voices, all the pleasures of this world, were taken from him. Some slight lucid moments he had, in one of which the queen, desiring to see him, entered the room, and found him singing a hymn, and accompanying himself at the harpsichord. When he had finished, he knelt down and prayed aloud for her, then for his family, and then for the nation; concluding with a prayer for himself, that it might please God to avert his heavy calamity from him, but, if not, to give him resignation to submit. He then burst into tears, and his reason again fled."

THACKERAY.

QUESTIONS.

1. By what physical infirmities was the insanity of George III. accompanied?
2. From what sources of pleasure was he cut off?
3. Did his intelligence ever return?
4. Who, on one of these occasions, went into his room?
5. What was he doing as she entered?
6. That over, what did he do?
7. For whom did he pray?
8. What did he ask for himself?
9. What followed?
1. During his insanity, George III. became both blind and deaf.
2. From all the sweetest enjoyments of life he was hopelessly cut off;—from the pleasant sunshine without, as from the light of reason within; from the sounds of nature, as from the cheering voices of his friends.
3. Sometimes, for a brief interval, his intelligence returned.
4. On one of these occasions his queen went into his room to see him.
5. As she entered he was playing on the harpsichord and singing a hymn.
6. 7. That done, he knelt down and prayed, for his queen, for his family, for his people, and lastly for himself.
8. He asked that, if it pleased God, his great affliction might be removed; but, if that could not be, that he might have submission and patience.
9. Then came a flood of tears, and his brief lucid interval was over.

A TRUE MAN.

"THE man whom I call worthy of the name, is one whose thoughts and exertions are for others rather than for himself; whose high purpose is adopted on just principles, and is never abandoned while heaven or earth affords means of accomplishing it. He is one who will neither seek an indirect advantage by a specious road, nor take an evil path to secure a really good purpose."

SCOTT.

QUESTIONS.—Who alone is worthy to be called a man? On what is such an one's lofty aim based? How long is it pursued? What means of securing indirect benefits will he avoid? What, in his estimation, will a good end not justify?

THE FISHERMAN.

"A PERILOUS life, and sad as life may be,
Hath the lone fisher, on the lonely sea;
O'er the wild waters labouring far from home,
For some bleak pittance e'er compelled to roam:
Few hearts to cheer him through his dangerous life,
And none to aid him in the stormy strife
Companion of the sea and silent air,
The lonely fisher thus must ever fare:
Without the comfort, hope,—with scarce a friend,
He looks through life, and only sees its end!"

BARRY CORNWALL.

QUESTIONS.—What kind of life does the fisher lead? Where does he labour? For what is he forced to go so far from home? What are there few hearts to do to him? Where are there none to give him help? What are his sole companions? Of what comfort is the solitary fisher destitute? What is the only thing in life of which he is certain?

THE STREAM OF LIFE.

LIFE bears us on like the stream of a mighty river. Our boat at first glides down the narrow channel, through the playful murmuring of the little brook, and the winding of its grassy border. The trees shed their blossoms over our young heads; the flowers on the brink seem to offer themselves to our young hands; we are happy in hope, and we grasp eagerly at the beauties around us: but the stream hurries on, and still our hands are empty.

"Our course in youth and manhood is along a wider and deeper flood, amid objects more striking and magnificent. We are animated by the moving picture of enjoyment and industry passing before us; we are excited by some short-lived disappointment.

"The stream bears us on, and our joys and our griefs are alike left behind us. We may be shipwrecked, but we cannot be delayed. Whether rough or smooth, the river hastens toward its home, till the roar of the ocean is in our ears, and the tossing of its waves is beneath our feet, and the land lessens from our eyes, and the floods are lifted up around us, and we take our leave of earth and its inhabitants. Of our further voyage there is no witness, save the Infinite and the Eternal."

BISHOP HEBER.

QUESTIONS.—To what may the progress of life be compared? What is its aspect in youth? By what beauties are we surrounded? What do we strive eagerly to do? With what success?—What is the character of the flood in youth and manhood? By what are we stimulated? by what ruffled?—What do we leave behind us, as the stream bears us on? What can we not be, even though shipwrecked? As the river nears its home, what is in our ears? what is beneath our feet? Of what do we lose sight? What surround us? Of what do we take leave? Who is sole witness of our further progress?

what is such
of securing
ood end not

e,

ERNWALL.
he labour?
rts to do to
ompanions?
hing in life

at at first
ing of the
rees shed
k seem to
, and we
urries on,
per flood,
d by the
; we are

alike left
delayed.
till the
beneath
re lifted
nts. Of
and the
HEBER.

hat is its
we strive
in youth
at do we
n thov'h
beneath
we take

<u>Prov</u>	<u>Cap</u>	<u>Area</u>	<u>prop</u>
N. S	Halifax	= 29 / 36 sq " 4166	450,000
N. B	Fredricton	" 166	350,000
P. E. I	Charlottetown	" 46	110,000
Que	Quebec	" 2458	1,250,000
Ont	Toronto	" 425	1,800,000
Man	Winnipeg	" 360	over 750,000

The Royal readers.

PE
1117
R88
1880
no.5

SP.
COLL.

NON
CIRC.



